TEST BANK

to accompany

Edwards * Wattenberg * Lineberry

GOVERNMENT IN AMERICA
People, Politics, and Policy

Thirteenth AP* Edition

*AP is a registered trademark of the College Board, which was not involved in the production of, and does not endorse, this product.

Dennis Plane
Juniata College

Wanda L. Hill
Tarrant County College, South

New York  Boston  San Francisco
London  Toronto  Sydney  Tokyo  Singapore  Madrid
Mexico City  Munich  Paris  Cape Town  Hong Kong  Montreal
This work is protected by United States copyright laws and is provided solely for the use of instructors in teaching their courses and assessing student learning. Dissemination or sale of any part of this work (including on the World Wide Web) will destroy the integrity of the work and is not permitted. The work and materials from it should never be made available to students except by instructors using the accompanying text in their classes. All recipients of this work are expected to abide by these restrictions and to honor the intended pedagogical purposes and the needs of other instructors who rely on these materials.

Test Bank to accompany Government in America: People, Politics, and Policy, 13th AP* Edition

Copyright ©2008 Pearson Education

All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Instructors may reproduce portions of this book for classroom use only. All other reproductions are strictly prohibited without prior permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews.


1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10-OPM-10 09 08 07
CONTENTS

Chapter 1   Introducing Government in America .................................................................1
Chapter 2   The Constitution ..............................................................................................35
Chapter 3   Federalism .......................................................................................................80
Chapter 4   Civil Liberties and Public Policy .................................................................131
Chapter 5   Civil Rights and Public Policy .................................................................183
Chapter 6   Public Opinion and Political Action ..........................................................230
Chapter 7   The Mass Media and the Political Agenda ....................................................278
Chapter 8   Political Parties ............................................................................................319
Chapter 9   Nominations and Campaigns .........................................................................362
Chapter 10  Elections and Voting Behavior .......................................................................408
Chapter 11  Interest Groups ............................................................................................450
Chapter 12  Congress .......................................................................................................494
Chapter 13  The Presidency .............................................................................................536
Chapter 14  The Congress, the President, and the Budget:
The Politics of Taxing and Spending .............................................................................583
Chapter 15  The Federal Bureaucracy .............................................................................624
Chapter 16  The Federal Courts .......................................................................................666
Chapter 17  Economic Policymaking ...............................................................................712
Chapter 18  Social Welfare Policymaking .......................................................................740
Chapter 19  Policymaking for Health Care and the Environment ...............................771
Chapter 20  National Security Policymaking ..................................................................795
Chapter 21  The New Face of State and Local Government .......................................842
Multiple-Choice Questions

1) There is a tremendous gap between youth and the elderly in all of the following EXCEPT
   A) political knowledge.
   B) political participation.
   C) political interest.
   D) volunteering.
   E) media use.

   Answer: D

2) Political knowledge
   A) is greater among youth than the elderly.
   B) fosters political tolerance.
   C) is not that important in a democracy.
   D) is generally high in the United States.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: B

3) Voter turnout matters because
   A) federal funds are allocated on the basis of the number of voters in a congressional district.
   B) better candidates are selected when more people vote.
   C) politicians pay more attention to those who vote than to those who do not vote.
   D) it makes citizens feel better.
   E) it makes our country look better.

   Answer: C
4) Government is defined as the
   A) organization that brings problems to the attention of public officials.
   B) body that is concerned with economic problems while leaving social problems to other institutions of society.
   C) agency that implements policies that have been enacted by other institutions of the political system.
   D) executive branch and its agencies.
   E) institutions and processes through which public policies are made for society.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 8
   Edition: National

5) The policymaking institutions of the American national government include all of the following EXCEPT
   A) the Supreme Court.
   B) the presidency.
   C) political parties.
   D) Congress.
   E) the Senate.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 12-13
   Edition: National

6) One advantage of the Internet for democracy is that it
   A) provides less information than newspapers.
   B) makes it easy to avoid political topics.
   C) makes it easier for citizens to communicate directly with government.
   D) will provide more political information to political elites.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 7-8
   Edition: National
7) Things that are indivisible, nonexclusive, and that everyone can share are called
   A) intangible property.
   B) socialized.
   C) community property.
   D) communist.
   E) public goods.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 9
Edition: National

8) Governments in the modern world, whether democratic or not, are similar in doing all of the following EXCEPT
   A) protecting citizens' civil liberties.
   B) maintaining a national defense.
   C) providing public goods.
   D) collecting taxes.
   E) providing public services.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 9–10
Edition: National

9) A public good is defined as
   A) something in which any member of society can share.
   B) something provided by the government that cannot be provided by the private sector.
   C) a choice that government makes in response to a political issue.
   D) a public policy that is good for the nation as a whole.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 9
Edition: National

10) Which of the following statements about public goods is FALSE?
   A) The government usually provides public goods.
   B) Public goods are things that everyone can share.
   C) Individuals have powerful incentives to provide public goods.
   D) Public goods are not profitable.
   E) Public goods are indivisible and nonexclusive.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 9
Edition: National
11) All governments

A) provide public goods and socialize citizens into the political and social system.
B) ensure safety on the high seas and promote free enterprise.
C) maintain national parks and a national defense.
D) guarantee a capitalist economy and collect taxes.
E) hold elections.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 9–10
Edition: National

12) All governments

A) have written constitutions.
B) are elected.
C) have a legislature.
D) provide services.
E) have a president.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 9–10
Edition: National

13) Which of the following statements about taxes is TRUE?

A) One out of every three dollars earned by an American citizen is used to pay taxes.
B) Despite the image presented by the media, survey data reveal that Americans feel they are getting their money’s worth for the taxes they pay.
C) About one-tenth of the average American citizen’s salary goes to taxes.
D) The tax burden in the United States is higher than in most other democratic nations.
E) All of these are true.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 10
Edition: National
14) An interest group so single-minded that its members often vote on only one issue, ignoring a politician’s stand on everything else, is known as
   A) a one-issue group.
   B) a uni-issue group.
   C) a hot-button group.
   D) a single-issue group.
   E) a mono-issue group.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 10
   Edition: National

15) When compared with the rest of the world, America has a relatively low
   A) number of offices up for election.
   B) number of candidates who seek office.
   C) frequency of elections.
   D) voter turnout in elections.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 10
   Edition: National

16) Many politicians believe that single-issue groups
   A) stimulate the political system to solve public policy problems.
   B) are essential to democracy.
   C) complicate efforts to seek the middle ground on various issues.
   D) play a unifying role in American politics.
   E) do not affect policymaking.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 12
   Edition: National

17) Politics is defined by Harold Lasswell as
   A) conflict in society.
   B) the exercise of power.
   C) the resolution of conflict in a way that serves the public.
   D) who gets what, when, and how.
   E) a course of action to solve a problem.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 10
   Edition: National
18) Single-issue groups
   A) are rapidly losing prominence in American politics.
   B) usually run their own candidates for public office.
   C) have little sympathy for compromising.
   D) help facilitate the construction of a cohesive national public policy.
   E) are highly regarded by political scientists for their contributions to democracy.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 12
Edition: National

19) Which of the following statements best describes voter turnout in the United States?
   A) Among democratic nations, the United States leads the world in voter turnout.
   B) Voter turnout in the United States is constitutionally mandated.
   C) Voters are usually a microcosm of the entire body of American citizens.
   D) Most American voters consider politics as critical to their interests.
   E) The United States has one of the lowest voter turnout rates in the world.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 10
Edition: National

20) The list of problems to which political leaders are paying serious attention is a(n)
   A) problem set.
   B) policy agenda.
   C) issue constellation.
   D) legislative package.
   E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 11-12
Edition: National

21) _______ is the process by which policy comes into being and evolves over time.
   A) Democracy
   B) A policymaking system
   C) A constellation
   D) The bureaucracy
   E) Government

Answer: B
Page Ref: 12-13
Edition: National
22) The process from above is
   A) a policymaking system.
   B) political decision making.
   C) a policy agenda.
   D) a government.
   E) a linkage institution.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 12-13
   Edition: National

23) An example of public policymaking would be
   A) Congress and the president deciding not to act on the AIDS crisis.
   B) a majority of the public supporting the idea of government dealing with unemployment.
   C) the president meeting with the heads of oil companies.
   D) the press creating public concern about racial discrimination.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 13
   Edition: National

24) All of the following are parts of the policymaking system EXCEPT
   A) public goods.
   B) policymaking institutions.
   C) linkage institutions.
   D) people’s political interests.
   E) policy.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 12
   Edition: National
25) Which of the following statements about a government's policy agenda is FALSE?

A) When you vote, you are partly looking at whether a candidate shares your agenda or not.
B) Bad news gets an issue on the policy agenda more quickly than good news.
C) When people confront government officials with problems to be solved, they are trying to influence the government's policy agenda.
D) A government's policy agenda tends to remain constant over time.
E) None of the above; all are true.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 11-13
Edition: National

26) A political party is a key _______ in America’s democratic system.

A) stimulus-response
B) linkage institution
C) input
D) majoritarian inhibitor
E) output

Answer: B
Page Ref: 11
Edition: National

27) In a democratic society, parties, elections, interest groups and the media are all examples of _______ between the preferences of citizens and the government's policy agenda.

A) cross-pollination
B) inputs and outputs
C) ideological bridges
D) obstacles
E) linkage institutions

Answer: E
Page Ref: 11
Edition: National
28) Which of the following is NOT a linkage institution?
   A) political parties
   B) the media
   C) interest groups
   D) Congress
   E) All of these are linkage institutions.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 11
   Edition: National

29) Which of these is a linkage institution?
   A) USA Today
   B) the president’s cabinet
   C) the House of Representatives
   D) the ambassador to France
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 11
   Edition: National

30) Parties and interest groups
   A) determine which issues are on the policy agenda.
   B) are not particularly interested in the policy agenda.
   C) work hard to get the issues they want on the policy agenda.
   D) have no effect on the policy agenda.
   E) determine the congressional agenda.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 11-12
   Edition: National

31) A choice that government makes in response to some issue on its agenda is called
   A) public policy.
   B) selective selection.
   C) a law.
   D) stimulus-response.
   E) rational choice theory.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 13
   Edition: National
32) ______ arise when people disagree about a problem or a public policy choice made to combat a problem.
   
   A) Revolutions
   B) Political issues
   C) Social crises
   D) Governments
   E) Wars

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 12
   Edition: National

33) A key question that confronts government regarding different public policy choices is

   A) whether an appropriate linkage institution is willing to frame a policy.
   B) which is the most complicated one to deal with.
   C) which is the least complicated one to deal with.
   D) whether or not government should do anything about them.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 13
   Edition: National

34) Public policy is defined as a

   A) policy directed at more than one person.
   B) course of action to solve a problem.
   C) set of rules and regulations issued by a government agency.
   D) course of action by a political party.
   E) choice that government makes in response to an issue.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 13
   Edition: National
35) Political issues

A) are always acted upon by the government.
B) arise when people disagree about a problem or public policy choices made to combat a problem.
C) are limited in number in the United States.
D) usually emerge out of group consensus on a problem.
E) all of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 12
Edition: National

36) Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels published

A) *The Communist Manifesto.*
B) *A Theory of Democracy.*
C) *The Federalist Papers.*
D) *Poor Richard's Almanac.*
E) *War and Peace.*

Answer: A
Page Ref: 14
Edition: National

37) One type of linkage institution is

A) an interest group.
B) a government.
C) a bureaucracy.
D) a legislature.
E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 11-12
Edition: National

38) The effects a policy has on people and problems is called

A) policy outputs.
B) policy implementation.
C) policy issues.
D) policy impacts.
E) policy agenda.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 13
Edition: National
39) The writers of the United States Constitution
   A) were distrustful of democracy.
   B) sought to establish the most democratic system they could.
   C) were interested in promoting equality above all else.
   D) patterned our government after Britain’s except for the King.
   E) believed in majority rule.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 14
   Edition: National

40) A means of selecting policymakers and or organizing government so that policy represents and responds to the public’s preferences is
   A) government.
   B) politics.
   C) public administration.
   D) democracy.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 14
   Edition: National

41) Which of these is NOT a criterion of traditional democratic theory, as formulated by Robert Dahl?
   A) freedom of speech and press
   B) One person gets one vote.
   C) Citizenship must be open to all within a nation.
   D) Those who participate in political organizations must be representative of the general population.
   E) Citizens must make rational choices.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 15
   Edition: National
42) Which of the following is NOT one of the cornerstones of an ideal democracy?

A) a constitution
B) effective participation
C) citizen control of the agenda
D) economic equality
E) equality in voting

Answer: D
Page Ref: 15
Edition: National

43) Two of the most important principles of democratic theory are majority rule and

A) the plurality rule.
B) judicial review.
C) minority rights.
D) majority restraint.
E) Roberts’ Rules of Order.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 15
Edition: National

44) Which of the following takes the most positive view of democracy in the United States?

A) democratic centralism
B) pluralist theory
C) hyperpluralism
D) democratic positivism
E) elite theory

Answer: B
Page Ref: 16
Edition: National

45) Pluralist theory contends that in the United States

A) society is governed solely by an upper-class elite.
B) too many influential groups cripple government’s ability to govern.
C) many groups vie for power with no one set of groups dominating.
D) the many members of Congress dominate a singular official such as the president.
E) because most citizens fail to pay attention to serious issues, government has become an elite institution.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 16
Edition: National
46) All of the following are ingredients of a pluralistic democracy EXCEPT
   A) group competition for policy benefits.
   B) bargaining and compromise.
   C) majority rule.
   D) multiple access points to policymakers.
   E) separation of powers.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 16
   Edition: National

47) The most fundamental element of democratic theory is
   A) "power to the people!"
   B) government efficiency.
   C) equality.
   D) majority rule.
   E) access to information.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 15
   Edition: National

48) Representation refers to
   A) majority rule.
   B) all policy views being included in political debate.
   C) the protection of minority rights in a pluralist system.
   D) electing office-holders in fair and free elections.
   E) the correspondence between the few leaders and the many followers in a democracy.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 15
   Edition: National

49) Which of the following individuals have suggested that pluralist theory is less descriptive of American politics than in the past?
   A) Anthony King
   B) Robert Dahl
   C) Alexis de Tocqueville
   D) Robert Putnam
   E) Thomas Jefferson
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 16
   Edition: National
50) American government is viewed most positively by the

   A) socialist theory.
   B) pluralist theory.
   C) positivist philosophy.
   D) hyperpluralist theory.
   E) elite and class theory.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 16
   Edition: National

51) A system in which many groups make themselves heard and felt somewhere in the policy process is

   A) pluralistic.
   B) direct democracy.
   C) hyperpluralistic.
   D) elitist.
   E) bureaucratic.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 16
   Edition: National

52) The theory that argues that group competition results in a rough approximation of the public interest in public policy is

   A) hyperpluralist theory.
   B) balance of power theory.
   C) elite and class theory.
   D) pluralist theory.
   E) bureaucratic theory.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 16
   Edition: National
53) Which of the following is NOT a contemporary theory of democracy?
   A) hyperpluralism
   B) class theory
   C) democratic centralism
   D) pluralism
   E) elite theory

   Answer: C

54) Robert Putnam's claim that Americans are now "bowling alone" is a criticism of
   A) pluralism.
   B) elite theory.
   C) hyperpluralism.
   D) social network theory.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: A

55) Which of the following is most fundamentally critical of American democracy?
   A) traditional democratic theory
   B) democratic negativism
   C) pluralist theory
   D) critical democratic theory
   E) elite and class theory

   Answer: E

56) Many elite and class theorists believe that _______ of Americans control most government policy decisions.
   A) 5 percent
   B) a majority
   C) the vast middle class
   D) 1 percent
   E) 10 percent

   Answer: D
57) Over a third of America's wealth is owned by
   A) the United States government.
   B) one percent of the population.
   C) a third of the population.
   D) seven percent of the population.
   E) Japanese investors.

Answer: B
*Page Ref: 16-17
*Edition: National

58) At the center of all theories of elite domination of politics is
   A) big business.
   B) the Congress.
   C) the nouveau riche.
   D) the Trilateral Commission.
   E) the president.

Answer: A
*Page Ref: 17
*Edition: National

59) Elite and class theory holds that
   A) all societies are divided along class lines and that an upper-class elite will rule.
   B) power is dispersed among many institutions.
   C) in a democracy the majority class must overthrow the government and rule by itself if government is to be freed from the control of the rich.
   D) there is little consensus in policymaking among elites.
   E) politics is the basis of elite power.

Answer: A
*Page Ref: 17
*Edition: National

60) The theory that sees wealth as the basis of power is the
   A) democratic theory.
   B) hyperpluralist theory.
   C) Jeffersonian theory.
   D) elite and class theory.
   E) pluralist theory.

Answer: D
*Page Ref: 16-17
*Edition: National
61) Hyperpluralists believe that the dominant player in American politics is
   A) groups.
   B) the president.
   C) the government.
   D) the media.
   E) rich individuals.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 17-18
   Edition: National

62) In evaluating American democracy, hyperpluralists
   A) claim that competing groups vying for power make for generally efficient, honest government.
   B) claim that society is governed solely by an upper-class elite.
   C) claim that too many influential groups cripple government's ability to govern.
   D) believe that the public interest is nearly always translated into public policy in the United States.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 18
   Edition: National

63) According to hyperpluralists, the increasing caseloads of federal and state courts demonstrate
   A) the high status of attorneys in the United States.
   B) the inability to control the bureaucracy in implementing policy.
   C) that groups are more likely to appeal to different institutions in order to gain policy benefits.
   D) the expanding scope of government in the United States.
   E) the increasing complexity of our social networks.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 18
   Edition: National
64) The "power of the few" in the United States today is likely to refer to
   A) high-level bureaucrats.
   B) elected officials.
   C) property holders.
   D) technical experts.
   E) a silent majority.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 18
Edition: National

65) The nature of groups and the government in hyperpluralist theory is
   A) strong government and strong groups.
   B) weak groups and strong government.
   C) weak groups, strong elites, and weak government.
   D) strong groups and weak government.
   E) too few groups result in the creation of many governments.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 17-18
Edition: National

66) Hyperpluralists would argue that
   A) too many influential groups cripple government’s ability to govern.
   B) society is divided along class lines.
   C) group competition will result in a rough approximation of the public interest.
   D) wealth is the basis of power.
   E) too few groups lead to a proliferation of governments.
Answer: A
Page Ref: 18
Edition: National

67) Which of these is NOT considered a challenge to democracy by the textbook?
   A) the diversity of the American people
   B) the level of political participation by Americans
   C) PACs
   D) the specialization of knowledge held by experts
   E) the tendency of the American political system to change rapidly
Answer: E
Page Ref: 18-19
Edition: National
68) Which of the following would NOT be considered a contemporary challenge to American democracy?

A) complexity of the issues
B) the threat of communism
C) the use of money in politics
D) political participation rates
E) diversity

Answer: B

Page Ref: 18-19
Edition: National

69) Increased technical expertise is a challenge to democracy because

A) it is difficult to have an informed "non-technical" public debate on technical issues.
B) it goes against the tenets of pluralist political theory.
C) it violates the notion of one man, one vote.
D) elected officials find it hard to understand technical experts.
E) interest groups have a difficult time securing technical expertise.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 18
Edition: National

70) PAC stands for

A) Partisan Assistance Contribution.
B) Party Affairs Council.
C) Policy Advisory Commission.
D) Politically Active Constituency.
E) Political Action Committee.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 19
Edition: National

71) People who worry about PACs are most especially concerned about

A) the decline in American voter turnout.
B) the close connection between money and politics.
C) too much democracy being dangerous to social stability.
D) the role Party Affairs Councils play in elections.
E) single-issue voters.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 19
Edition: National
72) Escalating campaign costs are a challenge to democracy because
   A) it is believed that PAC contributions affect the way members of Congress vote on single issues.
   B) they are associated with more technical policies.
   C) they lead to policy gridlock.
   D) they reflect diverse interests.
   E) they make it easier for candidates to raise money.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 19
Edition: National

73) According to the text, the diversity of political interests in America is resulting in
   A) a decrease in political participation.
   B) policy gridlock.
   C) the breakdown of the educational system.
   D) an increase in political participation.
   E) a cultural renaissance.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 19
Edition: National

74) The ability of groups to prevent the government from taking actions adverse to their interests leads to what the text calls
   A) Dahl's "ideal democratic process."
   B) elite dominance.
   C) budget deficits.
   D) enlightened understanding.
   E) policy gridlock.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 19
Edition: National
75) The overall set of shared values in a society is known as
A) individualism.
B) value added voting.
C) populism.
D) political culture.
E) collectivism.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 19
Edition: National

76) According to G.K. Chesterton, the United States is the only country in the world that is founded on
A) heredity.
B) a creed.
C) isolationism.
D) civic virtue.
E) religious principles.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 19
Edition: National

77) During the American Revolution, Patrick Henry said
A) "We fight for truth, justice, and the American way!"
B) "Give me liberty or give me death."
C) "I regret that I have but one life to give for my country."
D) "Our fathers brought forth on this continent, a new nation, conceived in Liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal."
E) "Live free or die."

Answer: B
Page Ref: 20
Edition: National
78) According to Thomas Jefferson, which of the following is an inalienable right?

A) Liberty  
B) Taxes  
C) Justice  
D) Jurisprudence  
E) Incontinence

Answer: A
Page Ref: 20
Edition: National

79) The Declaration of Independence says that "all men are created equal." Which aspect of the American creed does this suggest?

A) Individualism  
B) Egalitarianism  
C) Liberty  
D) Capitalism  
E) Populism

Answer: C
Page Ref: 20
Edition: National

80) One of the primary reasons for the comparatively small scope of American government is

A) liberalism.  
B) pluralism.  
C) judicial review.  
D) capitalism.  
E) individualism.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 20-21
Edition: National
81) According to Frederick Jackson Turner, the existence of the frontier in American history most directly resulted in

A) the abolition of slavery.
B) a strong preference for limited government.
C) the environmental movement.
D) the space program.
E) the civil rights movement.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 21
Edition: National

82) Populism emphasizes

A) the people.
B) the elected officials.
C) representative democracy.
D) the meritocracy.
E) prosperity.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 21-22
Edition: National

83) Those who argue that the United States is in the midst of a culture war argue that Americans are becoming increasingly

A) isolationist.
B) secular.
C) hypocritical.
D) egalitarian.
E) polarized.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 22
Edition: National
84) National, state, and local governments in America spend almost ________ of the gross domestic product.
   A) 3 percent
   B) 30 percent
   C) all
   D) 10 percent
   E) none

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 24
   Edition: National

85) The United States government owns ________ of the land in the United States
   A) all
   B) 5 percent
   C) one-third
   D) 2 percent
   E) none

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 24
   Edition: National

86) The largest item in the United States government budget, consuming more than one-fifth of spending, is
   A) Social Security payments.
   B) foreign aid.
   C) education spending.
   D) national defense.
   E) welfare for the poor.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 24
   Edition: National
87) The United States national government spends about _______ a year.
   A) $4 billion
   B) $250 billion
   C) $1,000,000,000,000
   D) $500 billion
   E) $2.8 trillion

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 24
   Edition: National

88) Which of the following categories is the largest expenditure in the federal budget?
   A) Social Security
   B) Medicaid
   C) environment
   D) national defense
   E) homeland security

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 24
   Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) A recent study of college freshmen recently found that only 34 percent said that "keeping up with politics" was an important priority for them.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 4
   Edition: National

2) In a 2004 survey of political knowledge, young people provided the correct answer to only one-third of these questions, whereas people over 65 were correct half the time.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 4
   Edition: National

3) The revolutionary expansion of channels and Web sites anticipated in the near future is likely to enhance the political interest and involvement of young people.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 7
   Edition: National
4) Public goods are things that everyone shares, such as clean air.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 9
Edition: National

5) Governments have little incentive to provide public goods.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 9
Edition: National

6) The voter turnout rate in the United States is one of the highest in the world.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 10
Edition: National

7) Government often acts on issues that are not especially high on the policy agenda.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 11-12
Edition: National

8) In a democracy, public officials are supposed to pay attention to the problems that concern voters.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 11-12
Edition: National

9) All issues on the government's policy agenda are carefully considered by public officials.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 12
Edition: National

10) A political issue arises when people disagree about a problem or about a public policy choice made to combat a problem.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 12
Edition: National

11) Most governmental policies are made by a single institution.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 12-13
Edition: National
12) Very few policies are made by a single policymaking institution in the United States.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 12-13
   Edition: National

13) A non-decision is one type of policy decision made by government.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 12-13
   Edition: National

14) The writers of the Constitution were unanimously and devotedly committed to democracy.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 14
   Edition: National

15) "Government by the people" is a meaningful and useful definition of democracy.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 14
   Edition: National

16) Pluralist theory holds that because so many groups compete for power in the United States, none has a majority say and public policy roughly approximates the public interest.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 16
   Edition: National

17) According to Robert Putnam, many of the problems of American democracy today stem from a decline in group-based participation.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 16
   Edition: National

18) Elite theorists maintain that whoever holds office in Washington is of marginal consequence; the corporate giants always have the power.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 16-17
   Edition: National

19) Elite theorists believe that whoever is elected to office in the federal government has little influence on policymaking.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 16-17
   Edition: National
20) AIDS is an example of policy being made by inaction.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 13
Edition: National

21) Kevin Phillips’ description of the 1980s as the "triumph of upper America" is evidence of hyperpluralism in the United States.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 17
Edition: National

22) It is clear that ordinary citizens can make sound political judgments on technical issues in our society.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 18
Edition: National

23) The more participation in a democracy, the healthier the democracy is thought to be.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 18
Edition: National

24) The American creed includes laissez-faire.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 21
Edition: National

25) New Hampshire’s official state motto is "Give me liberty or give me death."

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 20
Edition: National

26) A key aspect of egalitarianism is political equality.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 20
Edition: National

27) Immigrants to the United States often brought a sense of individualism with them.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 20-21
Edition: National
28) Politicians who argue that "the people should be put first" are emphasizing populism.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 21-22
Edition: National

29) Nearly all political scientists agree that the United States is in the midst of a culture war.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 22
Edition: National

30) The national government in the United States now spends approximately $2.8 trillion every year.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 24
Edition: National

31) The national government employs nearly ten million people.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 24
Edition: National

32) When taxes do not grow, tax revenue must grow to pay the additional costs, or a budget deficit results.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 24
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) Because they pay so little attention to politics, _______ are less likely than _______ to be well-informed about politics in government.

Answer: youth; the elderly
Page Ref: 4
Edition: National

2) Define public goods and give an example.

Answer: Goods, such as clean air and clean water, that everyone must share.
Page Ref: 9
Edition: National

3) Lasswell defines politics as _______.

Answer: "who gets what, when, and how"
Page Ref: 10
Edition: National
4) Politics determines _______.
Answer: whom we select as our governmental leaders and what policies these leaders pursue
Page Ref: 10
Edition: National

5) Those who cast their votes based solely on how candidates stand on one topic, such as abortion rights, belong to what are known as ________ groups.
Answer: single-issue
Page Ref: 10
Edition: National

6) Whom we select as our government leaders and the policies these leaders pursue _______.
Answer: is determined by politics
Page Ref: 10
Edition: National

7) Define public policy. Give examples of different types of public policies.
Answer: Public policy is a choice that government makes in response to a political issue; a course of action taken with regard to the same problem.
Page Ref: 13
Edition: National

8) In a democratic society, parties, elections, interest groups and the media are key ________.
Answer: linkage institutions
Page Ref: 11
Edition: National

9) What are the key linkage institutions in the United States?
Answer: elections, political parties, interest groups and the media
Page Ref: 11
Edition: National

10) ________ is a means of selecting policymakers and of organizing government so that policy represents and responds to the public’s preferences.
Answer: Democracy
Page Ref: 14
Edition: National

11) What is a democracy? Define the term, and then briefly describe three characteristics typically associated with democracies in traditional democratic theory.
Answer: A system of selecting policymakers and of organizing government so that policy represents and responds to the public’s preferences; equality in voting, effective participation, enlightened understanding, citizen control of the agenda, or inclusion.
Page Ref: 14-15
Edition: National
12) What is meant by representation? How important is it in a democracy, and why?

Answer: Representation is the correspondence between the few leaders and the many followers in a democracy. It is important because the greater the representation, the better the democracy.

Page Ref: 15
Edition: National

13) Compare and contrast majority rule and minority rights. What is their importance in a democratic society?

Answer: Majority rule is a fundamental principle of traditional democratic theory, and requires that the majority’s desire be respected in decision making. Minority rights is another principle of traditional democratic theory that guarantees rights to those who do not belong to majorities and allows that they might join majorities through persuasion and reasoned argument.

Page Ref: 15
Edition: National

14) Compare and contrast the role of groups in pluralist theory and hyperpluralist theory.

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 16-18
Edition: National

15) What is the role of wealth (or money) in pluralist theory vs. elite theory?

Answer: Wealth is not very important in elite theory, which argues that all groups are able to influence government, regardless of a group’s wealth. Elite theory, however, assumes that wealth is power. Therefore, the wealthiest one percent of Americans (who own one-third of all wealth) has tremendous political power.

Page Ref: 16-17
Edition: National

16) Those who espouse the _______ theory contend that United States society is divided along class lines, and that an upper class rules here regardless of America’s rhetoric of equality.

Answer: elite and class

Page Ref: 16-17
Edition: National

17) Name the theory of government that argues that too many influential groups are so strong that the government is unable to act, as government tends to cave in to every conceivable interest and single issue-group.

Answer: hyperpluralism

Page Ref: 17-18
Edition: National
18) Identify two challenges to democracy today, as identified in the text.
   Answer: increased technical expertise, limited participation in government, escalating campaign costs or diverse political interests
   Page Ref: 18-19
   Edition: National

19) _______ occurs when no coalition is strong enough to form a majority and establish a policy.
   Answer: Policy gridlock
   Page Ref: 19
   Edition: National

20) What are the five elements of the American creed?
   Answer: Liberty, egalitarianism, laissez-faire, individualism, and population
   Page Ref: 20-22
   Edition: National

21) When people talk about a culture war, what do they mean?
   Answer: The belief that the American population is becoming increasingly polarized along ideological lines.
   Page Ref: 22
   Edition: National

22) The _______ is the sum total of the value of all the goods and services produced in a nation.
   Answer: gross domestic product
   Page Ref: 24
   Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Discuss the political differences between young people and older adults. What might account for these differences? And what are the implications of these differences for democracy in the United States?
   Page Ref: 4-6
   Edition: National

2) Discuss the differences in political involvement between young people and older adults. How might youth involvement be increased in our democracy?
   Page Ref: 4-6
   Edition: National

3) What are the major functions performed by all governments? Give examples of how these functions are performed in the United States.
   Page Ref: 8-10
   Edition: National
4) Describe the components of the policymaking system and explain how public policies make their way through the political system.

Page Ref: 11-13
Edition: National

5) Describe the five principles of traditional democratic theory, as identified by Robert Dahl. Under what circumstances would the reality of democratic politics fall short of each of these ideal principles? Provide specific examples in your answer.

Page Ref: 15
Edition: National

6) Compare and contrast the three leading contemporary theories of how American democracy works. Which do you think most accurately describes the reality today? Explain.

Page Ref: 15-18
Edition: National

7) Compare and contrast pluralist, elite and class theory, and hyperpluralism and assess their applicability to American government.

Page Ref: 16-18
Edition: National

8) Describe the five aspects of the American creed.

Page Ref: 20-22
Edition: National

9) Some argue that the United States is in the midst of a culture war. What is meant by “culture war”? What are the arguments for and against the existence of a culture war? Which set of arguments do you find most convincing and why?

Page Ref: 22
Edition: National
Chapter 2  The Constitution

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Which of these is TRUE about the United States Constitution?
   A) It centralizes political power.
   B) It is superseded only by decrees of the president.
   C) It sets neutral rules for the game of politics.
   D) All of these are true.
   E) None of these are true.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 35-36
   Edition: National

2) In setting the broad rules of the game of politics, constitutions
   A) are never neutral; they give some participants advantages over others.
   B) are fair and impartial.
   C) allow all participants the same political opportunities.
   D) have no effect on the distribution of power in society.
   E) are constantly changing.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 32
   Edition: National

3) By eighteenth-century standards, life was ________ for most people in the United States at the time of the Revolution.
   A) hell both politically and economically
   B) politically oppressive
   C) ideal
   D) not bad
   E) an economic nightmare

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 32
   Edition: National
4) The British government stepped up its controls over the American colonies with new taxes and stronger commerce regulations right after
   A) King Phillip’s War.
   B) the assassination of the Duke of Windsor.
   C) King George’s War.
   D) the Civil War.
   E) the French and Indian War.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 32
Edition: National

5) During the colonial period,
   A) Americans experienced less freedom than citizens of most European nations.
   B) Britain was involved in nearly every aspect of American politics.
   C) Americans were burdened with cumbersome feudal and hierarchical restraints.
   D) Americans suffered one of the lowest standards of living in the world.
   E) the King and Parliament generally confined themselves to governing the colonies’ foreign and trade policies.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 32
Edition: National

6) The British levied new taxes on its North American colonies in the eighteenth century in order to pay for
   A) maintaining the elegant lifestyle of the British royalty.
   B) conquest of territories in Africa and Asia.
   C) defending new territories obtained after the French and Indian War.
   D) tax cuts and social welfare programs for residents of the British Isles.
   E) the rising cost of tea.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 32
Edition: National
7) Who issued the Declaration of Independence?
   A) the Constitutional Convention of 1776
   B) the Continental Congress
   C) President George Washington
   D) the 13 colonial legislatures
   E) General George Washington

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 33
   Edition: National

8) The Declaration of Independence was a
   A) valid legal document under British law.
   B) bitter attack against the British king for abuses said to have been done to the colonists over a long period of time.
   C) proclamation from King George III granting the American colonists the right to form their own nation.
   D) thoughtful, cautious explanation of why independence might be a good idea if certain demands were not met.
   E) last effort by the American colonists to get back on good terms with England, while only threatening independence.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 33
   Edition: National

9) The Declaration of Independence was primarily
   A) a treaty with France for war against Britain.
   B) an original philosophical treatise on politics.
   C) an outline for a new government.
   D) a polemic, announcing and justifying a revolution.
   E) the United States' first constitution.

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 34
   Edition: National
10) The primary author of the Declaration of Independence was
   A) Thomas Jefferson.
   B) Benjamin Franklin.
   C) James Madison.
   D) King George III.
   Answer: A
Page Ref: 33
Edition: National

11) The Declaration of Independence
   A) contained completely new ideas on political philosophy.
   B) became one of the most important statements of American political philosophy.
   C) took several months to write.
   D) blamed the British parliament for abuses on the colonies.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: B
Page Ref: 33
Edition: National

12) The American Revolution was based upon the ideas of
   A) intellectual slaves.
   B) intellectual frontiersmen.
   C) George Washington.
   D) European political thinkers.
   E) American farmers.
   Answer: D
Page Ref: 35–36
Edition: National

13) The foundation of John Locke's philosophy was that human beings
   A) derive their rights from nature.
   B) have rights that are granted them by government.
   C) determine their own rights.
   D) derive their rights from God.
   E) are granted their rights by their King.
   Answer: A
Page Ref: 34–35
Edition: National
14) Which of these was NOT among John Locke’s key philosophical concepts?
   A) checks and balances
   B) limited government
   C) natural rights
   D) consent of the governed
   E) property rights

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 34-35
   Edition: National

15) John Locke’s ideas on natural rights were related to human law in that
   A) natural rights were less important than human law.
   B) natural rights were considered higher than human law.
   C) human law was the source of natural rights.
   D) human law protected property rights, making human law equal to natural rights.
   E) human law and natural rights were unimportant after revolution.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 34-35
   Edition: National

16) John Locke believed in each of the following EXCEPT
   A) limited government.
   B) consent of the governed.
   C) natural rights.
   D) divine right of kings.
   E) both C and D

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 34-35
   Edition: National

17) The Declaration of Independence argued that
   A) nations are indivisible and a people must never secede from their mother nation.
   B) people should revolt when they suffer deep injustices.
   C) the British parliament was to blame for the evils imposed upon the colonists.
   D) people should always work peacefully within the system to redress any grievances they have.
   E) revolution is justifiable whenever people become angry with their government.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 35-36
   Edition: National
18) Reflecting the natural rights philosophy, the Declaration of Independence stated that governments derive their just powers from

A) God.
B) the consent of the governed.
C) tradition.
D) their elected leaders.
E) a Constitution.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 35-36
Edition: National

19) The justification for separation from England in the Declaration of Independence was based heavily on the ideas of the English philosopher

A) Lord North.
B) Henry VIII.
C) Oliver Cromwell.
D) David Hume.
E) John Locke.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 35-36
Edition: National

20) The sole purpose of government, according to John Locke, was to

A) promote the common good.
B) prevent anarchy.
C) educate its people.
D) protect individuals from violence.
E) protect natural rights.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 34-35
Edition: National
21) John Locke believed that the "end of government" was
   A) preservation of property.
   B) majority rule.
   C) equality of man.
   D) pursuit of happiness.
   E) "the beginning of life."
   
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 34-35
   Edition: National

22) In John Locke's philosophy, the requirements that standing laws be known and private property be preserved
   A) are always threatened by democratic government.
   B) impose two major limits on government.
   C) are unenforceable when government is limited.
   D) must be sacrificed in the interest of democracy.
   E) could only be enforced by a powerful king.
   
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 34-35
   Edition: National

23) Lockean thought and the Declaration of Independence are similar in that both
   A) recognize the right of the people to determine their own form of government, short of resorting to revolution.
   B) were developed in the late 1700s.
   C) value the preservation of private property.
   D) seek common ideals in government through the establishment of a constitutional monarchy.
   E) support the concept of natural rights and the idea that government be built on the consent of the governed.
   
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 36
   Edition: National
24) Thomas Jefferson's phrase "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness" was a modification of John Locke's phrase "Life, liberty, and ________." 

A) property  
B) God  
C) heaven  
D) health  
E) equality

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 36  
Edition: National

25) The American Revolution  
A) was heavily influenced by the earlier successes of the French Revolution.  
B) strongly reflected the widespread class conflict that would eventually lead to deadly riots for two generations.  
C) was very similar to the French, Russian, and Iranian Revolutions.  
D) was a radical social movement that drastically altered the colonists' way of life.  
E) was an essentially conservative movement that did not drastically alter the colonists' way of life.

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 37  
Edition: National

26) The primary goal of the American Revolution was  
A) to gain control over the colonies' trade with foreign nations.  
B) to cut taxes.  
C) to win the right to print paper money that could be used to pay off debts.  
D) to restore the colonists' rights as British subjects.  
E) to gain control of the western frontier.

Answer: D  
Page Ref: 37  
Edition: National
27) The American Revolution was different from the French, Russian, and Iranian revolutions in that
   A) it was much bloodier.
   B) it was much shorter.
   C) it did not result in a change of government.
   D) it produced little societal change.
   E) It was different in all these ways.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 37
   Edition: National

28) The Articles of Confederation were adopted by
   A) the Continental Congress.
   B) President George Washington.
   C) a small, self-appointed committee of the nation’s political leaders.
   D) the British Parliament.
   E) the Continental Army under command of General George Washington.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 37
   Edition: National

29) Beginning in 1781, the United States was governed under the
   A) Articles of Confederation.
   B) Mayflower Compact.
   C) Basic Law of 1781.
   D) British Constitution.
   E) current United States Constitution.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 37
   Edition: National

30) The primary goal of the American Revolution was to
   A) establish a new political system.
   B) restore rights the colonists felt were already theirs as British subjects.
   C) create a new economic order.
   D) institutionalize new social values based on equality.
   E) establish property rights.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 37
   Edition: National
31) The American Revolution
A) did not drastically alter the colonists' way of life.
B) produced great societal change.
C) was won quickly and decisively by the superior American troops.
D) created class conflicts that split society.
E) was fought between a large army of colonials and a small British army.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 37
Edition: National

32) Under the Articles of Confederation, most power rested with the
A) the British Parliament.
B) president.
C) United States Senate.
D) state legislatures.
E) Continental Congress.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 37
Edition: National

33) Which of the following is FALSE about the United States government under the Articles of Confederation?
A) Each state had only one vote in Congress.
B) Most authority rested with the United States Congress rather than the state governments.
C) The Congress had only one house.
D) There was no president.
E) All of these are false.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 37
Edition: National
34) Which of the following was NOT a problem with the national government under the Articles of Confederation?
   A) the threat of some of the Continental Army to establish George Washington as king
   B) the lack of power given to state legislatures
   C) the lack of an executive to lead the nation
   D) the inability of the central national government to regulate foreign trade or regulate the national economy
   E) the unwillingness of the states to send money requisitioned by the central national government

Answer: B
Page Ref: 37-39
Edition: National

35) After the Revolution, power in the state legislatures shifted
   A) from merchants to lawyers.
   B) from the poor to the wealthy.
   C) from radicals to conservatives.
   D) from the wealthy to those with more moderate incomes.
   E) from the upper to the lower chambers.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 38-39
Edition: National

36) The United States government under the Articles of Confederation can best be described as
   A) weak and ineffective.
   B) overly prone to intervention in foreign affairs.
   C) overly bureaucratic.
   D) dictatorial.
   E) a personal tool of George Washington.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 38
Edition: National
37) Which of the following was NOT a source of revenue for the United States government under the Articles of Confederation?
   A) taxes levied by the Continental Congress
   B) printing its own money
   C) selling off western lands
   D) state governments
   E) All of the above were revenue sources.
   Answer: A

38) Which of the following was NOT a problem with the national government under the Articles of Confederation?
   A) the unwillingness of the states to send money requisitioned by the central national government
   B) the lack of an executive to lead the nation
   C) the lack of power given to state legislatures
   D) the inability of the central national government to regulate foreign trade or regulate the national economy
   E) None of these were problems at the time.
   Answer: C

39) Under the Articles of Confederation most governmental power rested in
   A) the state governments.
   B) the national government.
   C) the president.
   D) the Congress.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: A
40) After the Revolution, a major power shift occurred in the states from ________ to ________. 
   A) the broad middle class; a handful of wealthy individuals 
   B) countryside; city 
   C) city; countryside 
   D) the east coast; the western interior 
   E) wealthy individuals; broad middle class 

Answer: E 
Page Ref: 38-39 
Edition: National 

41) After the American Revolution, state legislatures were composed of 
   A) significantly more middle-class representatives and fewer wealthy members compared 
   to before the war. 
   B) revolutionary war militiamen. 
   C) about the same ratio of wealthy members and not so wealthy members as before the war. 
   D) significantly more landless laborers and poor farmers than any other group. 
   E) a higher percentage of wealthy planters, lawyers, and merchants than ever before. 

Answer: A 
Page Ref: 38-39 
Edition: National 

42) Right after the Revolutionary War, a dramatic change swept through the new country 
resulting in 
   A) a dramatic increase in democracy and freedom. 
   B) a population shift from the cities to the country. 
   C) a population shift from country to city. 
   D) an explosion in prosperity. 
   E) full-scale industrialization. 

Answer: A 
Page Ref: 38 
Edition: National
43) Under the Articles of Confederation, Congress had the power to
   A) levy taxes.
   B) overturn state laws.
   C) regulate commerce.
   D) maintain an army and navy.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: D

44) Which of the following was NOT occurring in the states during the time of the Articles of Confederation?
   A) abolishment of religious qualifications for holding office
   B) adoption of bills of rights
   C) upper-class dominance
   D) expanded political participation
   E) all of the above
   Answer: C

45) Under the Articles of Confederation, power in the states began to shift to the hands of
   A) merchants and lawyers.
   B) middle-class farmers and craft workers.
   C) governors.
   D) low-income landowners.
   E) new industrialists.
   Answer: B

46) In post-Revolutionary America, state governors were often selected by
   A) judges.
   B) the president.
   C) heredity.
   D) the people directly.
   E) state legislatures.
   Answer: E
47) At the end of the Revolutionary War,
   A) captured British troops were herded into large prison camps where they served life sentences for their treachery.
   B) a strong, new national government began immediately to keep the economy running smoothly with careful regulation.
   C) a postwar depression severely hurt small farmers and many others.
   D) the condition of the economy was largely the same as it had been before the war.
   E) a period of tremendous economic prosperity began.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 39
   Edition: National

48) A small band of farmers in western Massachusetts took up arms in what is remembered as
   A) the Farmers’ Revolt.
   B) King George's War.
   C) the Boston Tea Party.
   D) the Whiskey Rebellion.
   E) Shays' Rebellion.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 39
   Edition: National

49) After the Revolution, James Madison observed that "the most common and durable source of faction has been
   A) urban and rural divisions."
   B) the various and unequal divisions of property."
   C) aristocracy." 
   D) the British army." 
   E) racial inequalities."

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 39
   Edition: National
50) At the top of the political agenda during the period of the Articles of Confederation was
   A) economic issues.
   B) social-equality issues.
   C) military issues.
   D) voting rights issues.
   E) slavery.
   Answer: A
   
51) Among the factors that contributed to economic turmoil under the Articles of Confederation was the
   A) postwar depression that left many small farmers unable to pay their debts and threatened mortgage foreclosures.
   B) decreasing economic viability of slavery.
   C) power shift from middle-class farmers to wealthy landowners.
   D) state legislatures that favored creditors and created more debt.
   E) All of these factors contributed to the economic turmoil.
   Answer: A
   
52) Shays' Rebellion was
   A) the most decisive battle of the Revolution, after which British troops were never again able to mount a major offensive against American troops.
   B) a slave uprising in Virginia.
   C) an uprising by small merchants demanding credit.
   D) an uprising by Revolutionary War veterans demanding pensions.
   E) an uprising by farmers to prevent judges from foreclosing on farms.
   Answer: E
53) Which state boycotted the Constitutional Convention?
   A) Texas, because it took too long to get to Philadelphia
   B) Virginia
   C) Rhode Island
   D) No state boycotted.
   E) Both Virginia and Rhode Island boycotted.

   Answer: C

54) What was the significance of the Annapolis meeting?
   A) It was the first national convention of women demanding the right to vote.
   B) It issued the Declaration of Independence.
   C) It dissolved the Continental Congress.
   D) It selected George Washington as the first post-Revolutionary president.
   E) It issued the original call for the Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia.

   Answer: E

55) In Annapolis, Maryland, in 1786, delegates from five states met to discuss
   A) the problems of the national government under the Articles of Confederation.
   B) the need to declare independence from England.
   C) the need for a Bill of Rights.
   D) the issue of slavery.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A

56) Those who met at the Constitutional Convention in 1787 were
   A) a mix of wealthy and middle-class Americans.
   B) wealthy planters, lawyers, and merchants.
   C) overwhelmingly middle-class farmers.
   D) primarily British officials overseeing the implementation of the new government agreed to in the peace treaty.
   E) split evenly between Democrats and Republicans.

   Answer: B
57) What was the original, sole, and express purpose of the convention in Philadelphia?
   A) to revise the Articles of Confederation
   B) to choose the first president
   C) to negotiate the peace treaty with Great Britain
   D) to abolish the Articles of Confederation
   E) to grant women the right to vote
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 40
   Edition: National

58) Which of the following was NOT a characteristic of the 55 delegates who attended the Constitutional Convention?
   A) Most were residents of the western frontiers.
   B) They were all men.
   C) A significant number were urbanites.
   D) Many were college graduates.
   E) They were mostly wealthy planters.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 41
   Edition: National

59) The first two weeks of the Constitutional Convention were spent debating
   A) the nature of republican government.
   B) the economic structure of the new government.
   C) the terms of Britain’s surrender.
   D) military issues and the need for a standing army.
   E) practical political issues.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 41
   Edition: National
60) What view of human nature did the delegates at the Constitutional Convention have?

A) Humans are basically good.
B) Cynical view: human beings are selfish and greedy.
C) There is no human nature and humans are the product of their environment.
D) Human nature is basically evil.
E) Altruistic view: humans are deeply concerned about each others’ welfare, apart from their own self-interests.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 42
Edition: National

61) According to James Madison and many of the delegates at the Constitutional Convention, what is the primary source of political conflict?

A) ignorance
B) stupidity
C) emotions
D) religious beliefs
E) unequal distribution of wealth

Answer: E

Page Ref: 42
Edition: National

62) Most of the delegates at the Constitutional Convention regarded what as the greatest threat to government?

A) factions
B) kings
C) slaves
D) foreign adversaries
E) charismatic leaders

Answer: A

Page Ref: 42
Edition: National
63) The view of human nature most prevalent among the Founding Fathers was that
   A) men abhor power and the burdens that come with it.
   B) people are self-interested in acquiring wealth and power.
   C) human nature can be perfected, given the right social and political institutions.
   D) people are basically cooperative and community-oriented.
   E) people are disorganized and without vision.

   Answer: B

64) Delegates to the Constitutional Convention generally agreed on each of the following EXCEPT
   A) questions of human nature.
   B) the need for a limited government.
   C) the object and nature of a republican government.
   D) causes of political conflict.
   E) issues of equality.

   Answer: E

65) The Founding Fathers believed that a major source of political conflict was the
   A) government's attempt to preserve private property.
   B) absence of majority rule.
   C) unequal distribution of property.
   D) religious differences in society.
   E) Indian tribes.

   Answer: C

66) The _______, offered as a proposal at the Constitutional Convention, called for each state to
be equally represented in Congress.
   A) Equal Rights Amendment (ERA)
   B) New Jersey Plan
   C) Connecticut Compromise
   D) three-fifths compromise
   E) Virginia Plan

   Answer: B
67) Most delegates to the Constitutional Convention believed that the secret of good government is a
   A) centralized government.
   B) balanced government.
   C) government that is open and not secretive.
   D) popularly controlled government.
   E) strong executive.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 42
   Edition: National

68) The Virginia and New Jersey Plans introduced at the Constitutional Convention differed mainly over whether
   A) states should send equal numbers of representatives to Congress.
   B) there should be a president.
   C) the states or the national government should regulate interstate commerce.
   D) there should be a legislative branch at the national level.
   E) slavery should be permitted in the country.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 43
   Edition: National

69) Which of these was NOT one of the big three disagreements at the Constitutional Convention?
   A) what to do about slavery
   B) who should have the right to vote
   C) whether or not the states should have an equal number of votes in Congress
   D) whether the courts should have the power of judicial review
   E) issues of equality
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 43-44
   Edition: National
70) According to the Constitution, each state was entitled to how many senators?

A) as many as it wanted to send
B) none
C) one
D) It depended on the state's population.
E) two

Answer: E
Page Ref: 44
Edition: National

71) As originally established by the Constitution, the House of Representatives had how many members from each state?

A) seven
B) one
C) two
D) It depended on the state's population.
E) none

Answer: D
Page Ref: 44
Edition: National

72) At the time of the constitutional convention, slavery

A) existed only in Georgia and the Carolinas.
B) was permitted in all thirteen states.
C) was illegal only in Massachusetts.
D) was prohibited north of the Mason–Dixon line.
E) was prohibited by the Connecticut Compromise, which was never put into effect.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 44
Edition: National
73) The Connecticut Compromise at the Constitutional Convention

A) resolved the impasse between those who favored the New Jersey Plan and those who preferred the Virginia Plan.
B) added the Bill of Rights to the Constitution in order to lessen concerns about too much power for the new government.
C) settled the dispute over whether slavery should be allowed in the final constitution.
D) threw out the idea of having a monarchy in the United States, opting instead for an indirectly elected president.
E) involved all of these elements.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 44
Edition: National

74) The Constitutional Convention dealt with slavery by

A) prohibiting it only north of the Mason–Dixon line.
B) recognizing it by providing for the return of escaped slaves.
C) prohibiting it after twenty years.
D) counting the slaves as a full part of the population for the purposes of representation in the House.
E) emancipating slaves on the principle of equality.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 44
Edition: National

75) On the issue of slaves, the Constitution specified

A) that a gradual end to slavery must be worked out by Congress and the states within ten years.
B) that slavery would be banned beginning in 1800.
C) a boundary, known as the Mason–Dixon line, south of which slavery would be legal.
D) Nothing. It was too controversial a subject and the delegates could not agree on anything regarding it.
E) that slaves would count as three-fifths persons for counting the nation's population and determining seats in the House.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 44
Edition: National
76) In determining congressional representation and taxation, the Constitution

A) counted slaves as three-fifths of a person.
B) did not count slaves.
C) counted slaves the same as free persons.
D) was silent on the issue of how slaves would be counted, instead leaving the issue to each state to decide.
E) counted slaves as one-half of a person.

Answer: A

77) Regarding the right to vote in national elections, the framers of the Constitution

A) required that all free, adult males with property worth at least $50 be allowed to vote.
B) decided to leave it up to the individual states to determine voter qualifications in their own states.
C) finally granted women the right to vote.
D) included a requirement that all free, adult males be allowed to vote.
E) provided that free men and women over the age of 20 be allowed to vote.

Answer: B

78) Which of the following was NOT one of the economic difficulties the writers of the Constitution attempted to address?

A) some states kept printing virtually worthless money
B) the tariffs states had erected against one another to protect their state-made products
C) lack of unemployment compensation and welfare payments
D) the difficulty of the Continental Congress in raising money from the states
E) All of these were dealt with in the Constitution.

Answer: C
79) The debate at the Philadelphia Convention over eligibility to vote was resolved by
   A) allowing all males, but no females to vote.
   B) requiring voter registration before one would be eligible to vote.
   C) requiring universal manhood suffrage.
   D) leaving it up to the individual states.
   E) permitting all citizens over 21 to vote.

   Answer: D

80) A major purpose of the economic provisions in the Constitution was to
   A) promote a more equal distribution of wealth in the country.
   B) guarantee the states a significant economic role.
   C) preserve and strengthen the farm economy to the disadvantage of manufacturing.
   D) establish a comprehensive set of social welfare programs to assist people in times of need.
   E) create a strong national government so as to bring stability out of economic chaos.

   Answer: E

81) Which of the following situations was NOT considered an economic problem by the writers of the Constitution?
   A) States put up tariffs against products from other states.
   B) Paper money was virtually worthless in some states.
   C) The economy was in a recession.
   D) States were passing laws favoring debtors over creditors.
   E) National taxes were too high.

   Answer: E
82) Compared to the government under the Articles of Confederation, the Constitution gave the central government
   A) far fewer powers.
   B) total control of the economy.
   C) about the same economic powers.
   D) more economic powers.
   E) almost no economic powers.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 46-47
Edition: National

83) In order to put the national economy on sound footing, the Constitution obligated the new government to _______ all the government debts incurred under the Continental Congress.
   A) forgive
   B) renegotiate at lower interest rates
   C) renegotiate at higher interest rates
   D) repay
   E) negate

Answer: D
Page Ref: 47
Edition: National

84) The framers of the Constitution gave the chief economic policymaking role to
   A) the courts.
   B) the Federal Reserve Board.
   C) the president.
   D) Congress.
   E) the states.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 47
Edition: National
85) The Constitution prohibited the states from doing each of the following EXCEPT
   A) harboring runaway slaves.
   B) placing duties on imports from other states.
   C) printing paper money.
   D) establishing a republican form of government.
   E) interfering with lawfully contracted debts.

Answer: D  
*Page Ref: 47  
Edition: National*

86) The delegates to the Constitutional Convention did not worry about preserving individual rights for all of the following reasons EXCEPT
   A) every state had its own bill of rights.
   B) they were constructing a limited government that could not threaten personal freedoms.
   C) they included a bill of rights in Article V.
   D) they dispersed power so that each branch or level could constrain the other.
   E) the various states were already doing a sufficient job of protecting individual rights.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 47-48  
Edition: National*

87) Each of the following violations of individual rights is forbidden in the original Constitution EXCEPT
   A) passing *ex post facto* laws.
   B) strict limits on the prosecution of treason.
   C) passing bills of attainder.
   D) suspension of the *writ of habeas corpus*.
   E) suspension of freedom of speech.

Answer: E  
*Page Ref: 48  
Edition: National*
88) The government designed at the Constitutional Convention allowed the voters to directly elect
   A) both the House and Senate.
   B) the president and all members of Congress.
   C) only the Senate.
   D) only the president.
   E) only the House of Representatives.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 49
   Edition: National

89) Madisonian principles in the Constitution were based on
   A) states’ rights.
   B) a concentration of power, so that the minority faction could dominate the government.
   C) the belief that government should always be dominated by the majority.
   D) concern that government would be dominated by a majority or minority faction.
   E) the ideas of a group of professors at Madison University.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 48-49
   Edition: National

90) The one element of government that Madison’s plan placed within direct control of the voters was the
   A) Senate.
   B) presidency.
   C) Congress.
   D) House of Representatives.
   E) Supreme Court.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 49
   Edition: National
91) Two key elements of the Madisonian model were to

A) keep most of the government beyond the control of a popular majority and separate the powers of different institutions.
B) promote state power while separating the powers of different national institutions.
C) keep as much of the government as possible beyond the control of a popular majority and extend the right to vote to everyone.
D) combine the powers of different institutions and create a powerful presidency.
E) require a system of checks and balances and extend democracy.

Answer: A

92) The system of checks and balances in the Constitution means that

A) a majority can easily manipulate the system, but a minority cannot.
B) changes in government policy can be made with relative ease, with few obstacles to stop a popular new force.
C) we have a direct democracy, with all branches equally accessible to strong public pressure.
D) change usually comes slowly, if at all, and moderation and compromise are typical in our political system.
E) each branch of government has its own powers independent of the other.

Answer: D

93) The Madisonian requirement that each branch of government acquire the consent of the others for many of its actions created a system of

A) confederated government.
B) checks and balances.
C) constitutional republic.
D) cross-cutting requirements.
E) separation of powers.

Answer: B
94) The Madisonian system
   A) is a form of direct democracy.
   B) encourages change.
   C) has a conservative bias favoring the status quo.
   D) discourages moderation and compromise.
   E) both C and D
   Answer: C
   *Page Ref: 49*
   *Edition: National*

95) Under the Madisonian model, people desiring change
   A) find a government that is highly responsive and acts quickly and decisively.
   B) must usually have a sizable majority.
   C) have no chance of victory.
   D) need only win at one point in the policymaking process.
   E) need just a simple majority over 50 percent.
   Answer: B
   *Page Ref: 49*
   *Edition: National*

96) The Federalist Papers were
   A) essays in support of ratification of the constitution.
   B) essays written that were critical of the constitution.
   C) newspapers which backed the Federalist party in early United States elections.
   D) the original name of the constitution written by the Constitutional Convention.
   E) the notes that George Washington took at the Constitutional Convention.
   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 52*
   *Edition: National*

97) Ratification of the Constitution
   A) needed the approval of nine states.
   B) needed the approval of a majority of the people.
   C) occurred when it was approved by the delegates to the Constitutional Convention.
   D) needed the approval of all the states.
   E) was by two-thirds vote of the Continental Congress.
   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 51-52*
   *Edition: National*
98) Which of the following statements about the Anti-Federalists is FALSE?
   A) The Anti-Federalists were basically unpatriotic and un-American.
   B) The Anti-Federalists fought to prevent ratification of the new constitution.
   C) The Anti-Federalists believed that the new government was an enemy of freedom.
   D) The Anti-Federalists believed the new government would erode fundamental liberties.
   E) The Anti-Federalists believed the new Constitution was a class-based document.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 52-53
Edition: National

99) The Anti-Federalists believed that the new constitution
   A) was a thinly disguised attempt to abolish a federal form of government in the United States.
   B) was an enemy of freedom and designed to give control of the government to a rich elite.
   C) created a new government too weak to be effective, and they preferred a monarchy to ensure stability.
   D) was too democratic and would lead to tyranny of the masses against the wealthy.
   E) with whatever faults it might have, was the young nation’s best hope for a workable government.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 52
Edition: National

100) Opposition to ratification of the Constitution was based on the belief that it would
   A) provide for elite control, endanger liberty, and weaken the states.
   B) produce more democratic elements than desirable for a strong central government.
   C) give too much power to the states.
   D) promote pluralism, which would threaten liberty.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 52
Edition: National
101) The Bill of Rights was added to the Constitution

A) during the ratification process, before final ratification of the constitution.
B) during the Constitutional Convention, at the insistence of Thomas Jefferson.
C) after the ratification process was complete, and partly to fulfill a promise to those who supported ratification.
D) in 1865 after the union victory in the Civil War.
E) piece by piece during the first hundred years of its operation.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 54
Edition: National

102) Ratification of the Constitution was done by

A) the voters in each state casting open ballots.
B) special conventions in each state.
C) the state legislatures approving the document.
D) approval by the Supreme Court.
E) majority vote of the delegates at the Constitutional Convention.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 55
Edition: National

103) The Constitution was ratified by

A) popular vote in each of the states.
B) special conventions in each of the states.
C) the electoral college.
D) state representatives to the Constitutional Convention.
E) the state legislatures.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 55
Edition: National

104) The amendments that have been added to the Constitution have made it

A) more egalitarian and democratic.
B) more elitist and undemocratic.
C) more protective of property rights.
D) weaker and less significant to American society.
E) much more like the European constitutions it originally condemned.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 56
Edition: National
105) Constitutional amendments are usually ratified by
A) state conventions called by two-thirds vote in Congress.
B) a national convention.
C) a majority of the Supreme Court.
D) a two-thirds vote in each house of Congress.
E) legislatures of three-fourths of the states.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 55-56
Edition: National

106) The most important effect of the constitutional amendments has been to
A) expand liberty and equality.
B) reinforce elite control of government.
C) expand the powers of the states.
D) strengthen the capitalist economy.
E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 56
Edition: National

107) Which of the following statements about the Equal Rights Amendment (ERA) is FALSE?
A) The ERA was opposed by many southern states.
B) The ERA was proposed by Congress in 1978.
C) Public opinion polls showed little support for the ERA after 1960.
D) The ERA was first proposed in 1923.
E) The ERA never became part of the Constitution.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 56-57
Edition: National

108) To propose a formal amendment to the Constitution, one needs to have a
A) three-quarters vote in Congress.
B) national convention requested by half of the states.
C) majority vote of the Supreme Court.
D) two-thirds vote in Congress.
E) the president’s approval.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 55
Edition: National
109) The failure of the Equal Rights Amendment showed that

A) Congress was unwilling to support a measure opposed by a strong minority of the public.
B) a national majority in favor of an amendment is not sufficient to add it to the Constitution.
C) most states did not want to grant constitutional equality to women.
D) we are a democracy, and majority opinion prevails.
E) men are pigs, still unwilling to grant women equal rights.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 56-57
Edition: National

110) Which of the following is established by the written Constitution?

A) the right to an abortion
B) media coverage of the House and Senate
C) political parties
D) All of these are mentioned in the written Constitution.
E) None of these are mentioned in the written Constitution.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 59-60
Edition: National

111) Informal changes to the Constitution have reflected changes in all of the following EXCEPT

A) technology.
B) political practice.
C) judicial interpretation.
D) constitutional amendments.
E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 58-60
Edition: National
112) How has the electoral college changed from the original intent of the framers?

A) Affirmative action programs have made the student body much more diverse, although standards have also been lowered.

B) The president must now be elected by two-thirds vote of the electoral college rather than a simple majority.

C) The number of electors has decreased dramatically.

D) Almost all electors now vote for the presidential candidate who wins the most popular votes in their state.

E) Today, the electors vote for whom they personally feel would make the best president.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 60
Edition: National

113) The Supreme Court in *Marbury v. Madison* (1803) asserted the power of the Court to

A) check the actions of the other branches through judicial review.

B) nullify constitutional amendments.

C) confirm presidential appointments.

D) determine its own size and makeup.

E) impeach the president.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 58-59
Edition: National

114) Political parties are an important example of the

A) Third Amendment.

B) formal amendment process.

C) unwritten constitution.

D) wishes of the founders.

E) rigidity of the Constitution.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 59-60
Edition: National
115) Which of the following statements about judicial interpretation is FALSE?

A) Judicial interpretation can profoundly affect how the Constitution is understood.
B) The power of judicial review gives courts the right to decide whether legislative actions are in accord with the Constitution.
C) The power of judicial interpretation is explicitly stated in the Constitution.
D) In the case of Marbury v. Madison, the Supreme Court decided it would be the one to decide constitutional disputes.
E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 58-59
Edition: National

116) The development of the two-party system is an example of informal constitutional change through

A) political practice.
B) technology.
C) judicial interpretation.
D) increasing demands on policymakers.
E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 59-60
Edition: National

117) The United States Constitution

A) lists the executive departments that are required to advise the president.
B) does not prescribe the function and structure of government in detail.
C) is one of the oldest and longest constitutions in the world.
D) gives particular detail to the function of the judiciary.
E) was modeled on the British Constitution.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 60
Edition: National
118) Which of the following is FALSE about the Constitution?

A) It creates many government access points where groups can attempt to initiate or block policy changes.
B) It discourages hyperpluralism.
C) It places many limits on the government’s powers.
D) It protects individual liberty.
E) It creates government gridlock and inaction.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 64–65
Edition: National

119) Some scholars have suggested that a consequence of separation of powers and checks and balances has been

A) the inability of groups to get their grievances heard.
B) fragmented policymaking processes.
C) the tyranny of the majority.
D) streamlined, but hasty, government decision making.
E) political instability.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 65
Edition: National

120) The separation of powers and the checks and balances established by the Constitution

A) allow almost all groups some place in the political system where their demands for public policy can be heard.
B) have acted to discourage the growth of groups in American society.
C) have made the United States one of the most democratic countries in the world.
D) create so many obstacles that groups have no place for their policy demands to be heard.
E) are basically undemocratic since only elites can formulate policies within the system.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 65
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Burning the flag is a legally protected form of political expression.

Answer: TRUE

Page Ref: 30-31
Edition: National
2) A Constitution is never neutral.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 32
   Edition: National

3) The Declaration of Independence was written primarily by James Madison.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 33
   Edition: National

4) The philosophy of the writers of the Constitution was based in part on the belief that the principal object of government was the preservation of property.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 42
   Edition: National

5) The Annapolis meeting of 1787 produced the first real reform of the Articles of Confederation.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 40
   Edition: National

6) Most delegates to the Constitutional Convention in 1787 held a cynical view of human nature.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 42
   Edition: National

7) According to James Madison, factions arise from the unequal distribution of wealth.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 42
   Edition: National

8) The Connecticut Compromise gives more power to the House of Representatives.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 44
   Edition: National

9) The three-fifths compromise at the Constitutional Convention resolved delegates’ differences over the issue of state representation.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 44
   Edition: National
10) The Connecticut Compromise at the Constitutional Convention led to an agreement that slaves would be counted as three-fifths persons in the census for purposes of determining representation in Congress.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 44
Edition: National

11) The founders believed that state governments, where most of the governmental activity was expected to take place, would act as checks on the power of the national government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 49
Edition: National

12) The Constitution obligated the new government to repay all the public debt incurred under the Continental Congress and the Articles of Confederation.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 47
Edition: National

13) The system of checks and balances and the separation of powers in the Constitution have a conservative bias because they favor the status quo.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 49-50
Edition: National

14) Those who opposed the ratification of the Constitution were known as Federalists.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 52
Edition: National

15) The Constitution was unanimously approved and signed by every delegate attending the Constitutional Convention.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 55
Edition: National

16) The Bill of Rights had to be added to the Constitution before any states would ratify it.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 54
Edition: National

17) The president has no formal role in amending the Constitution.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 55-56
Edition: National
18) Nearly every successful amendment to the Constitution has been proposed by a national convention.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 55-57
Edition: National

19) Informal changes to the Constitution have been rare and ineffective.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 58
Edition: National

20) The Constitution requires a member of the electoral college to vote for the candidate preferred by his or her state’s electorate.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 60
Edition: National

21) The Constitution usually means what the Supreme Court says it means.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 58-59
Edition: National

22) The Constitution was intended to be static.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 61
Edition: National

23) The Constitution created a Republic.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 62
Edition: National

24) Amendments to the Constitution over the nation’s history have expanded the American electorate by extending the right to vote to women, non-whites, and 18 year-olds, thus further democratizing our system of government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 56
Edition: National

25) Technology has had the effect of diminishing the separation of the people from those who exercise power.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 60
Edition: National
26) Women were given the right to vote in the Nineteenth Amendment, passed in 1820.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 56
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) A(n) _______ is a nation's basic law.

Answer: constitution
Page Ref: 32
Edition: National

2) The Declaration of Independence was written primarily by ________.

Answer: Thomas Jefferson
Page Ref: 33
Edition: National

3) According to Locke, government must be based on ________, the idea that government derives its authority from the people.

Answer: the consent of the governed
Page Ref: 35
Edition: National

4) Briefly describe the characteristics of the delegates who met in Philadelphia.

Answer: A select group of economic and political notables; they were mostly wealthy planters, successful lawyers and merchants and men of independent wealth. Many were college graduates and most had practical political experiences. Most were coastal residents, and a significant number were urbanites.
Page Ref: 41
Edition: National

5) The Declaration of Independence included many of the same ideas earlier expressed by the English philosopher ________.

Answer: John Locke
Page Ref: 34
Edition: National

6) Explain why the American Revolution is considered a "conservative" revolution.

Answer: It did not drastically alter the colonists' way of life; its primary goal was to restore rights the colonists felt were already theirs as British subjects.
Page Ref: 37
Edition: National
7) Describe the events associated with Shays' Rebellion, and their significance for the writing of the Constitution.

   Answer: Answers will vary.

   Page Ref: 39
   Edition: National

8) The _______ Compromise settled the dispute between large states and small states at the Constitutional Convention over representation in Congress.

   Answer: Connecticut

   Page Ref: 44
   Edition: National

9) What was the rationale for obligating the new American government to repay all the public debt incurred under the Articles of Confederation?

   Answer: It would ensure that money would flow into the American economy and would also restore the confidence of investors in the young nation.

   Page Ref: 47
   Edition: National

10) What is a republic?

    Answer: A form of government in which the people select representatives to govern them and make laws.

    Page Ref: 51
    Edition: National

11) The articles written under the pseudonym Publius to encourage ratification of the Constitution, explaining the document detail-by-detail, were known collectively as the _______.

    Answer: Federalist Papers

    Page Ref: 52
    Edition: National

12) The Bill of Rights constitutes the first _______ amendments to the Constitution.

    Answer: ten

    Page Ref: 54
    Edition: National

13) How are formal amendments to the Constitution proposed and ratified?

    Answer: An amendment may be proposed either by a two-thirds vote in each house of Congress or by a national convention called by Congress at the request of two-thirds of the state legislatures. An amendment may be ratified either by the legislatures of three-fourths of the states or by special state conventions called in three-fourths of the states.

    Page Ref: 55–56
    Edition: National
14) The _______ was passed by Congress in 1972 by large majorities, then ratified by a majority of states, but fell three states short of the number required in order to be added to the Constitution.

Answer: Equal Rights Amendment
Page Ref: 56-57
Edition: National

15) What is the Equal Rights Amendment and why did it fail?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 56-57
Edition: National

16) In the case of Marbury v. Madison, the Supreme Court claimed for itself the power of _______.

Answer: judicial review
Page Ref: 58
Edition: National

17) What is the significance of the Supreme Court case of Marbury v. Madison (1803)?

Answer: The Supreme Court asserted its right to determine the meaning of the Constitution, resulting in the establishment of the Courts power of judicial review over acts of Congress.
Page Ref: 56
Edition: National

18) The informal influences on constitutional change include ______, ______, and ______.

Answer: judicial interpretation; changing political practice; increasing demands on policymakers.
Page Ref: 58-60
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Explain how the colonial experience and the ideas of John Locke influenced the Declaration of Independence and the United States Constitution.
Page Ref: 33-34
Edition: National

2) Discuss how the power in state legislatures changed after the revolution. How did these changes differ in Northern and Southern states? What do these changes suggest about the nature of the revolution itself?
Page Ref: 38-39
Edition: National

3) Describe the major features of the Articles of Confederation and explain why the Articles failed.
Page Ref: 37-38
Edition: National
4) Describe the strengths and weaknesses of the national government under the Articles of Confederation. Would you call the Constitution an improvement? Explain.

   Page Ref: 37–38
   Edition: National

5) What was the economic condition of the country at the time of the Constitutional Convention? What were the major economic issues at the convention and how were they resolved? Why were economic issues so important to the founders?

   Page Ref: 39
   Edition: National

6) What were the personal characteristics of the delegates to the Constitutional Convention? What were their basic philosophical views and how did these views affect the document they ultimately approved?

   Page Ref: 41
   Edition: National

7) Some have referred to the Constitution as a conservative victory. In what ways were the framers less interested in republican liberty than in property and social order? Was this necessary for the country’s survival, or was it selfish? Explain.

   Page Ref: 43–47
   Edition: National

8) At the Constitutional Convention, there was consensus on some policy issues and conflict necessitating compromise on others. Identify these issues and describe how the convention dealt with them.

   Page Ref: 43–45
   Edition: National

9) Describe the founders’ attitudes toward democracy. What specific features of the Constitution reflect this sentiment?

   Page Ref: 48–49
   Edition: National

10) How was the issue of slavery resolved at the Constitutional Convention? Was this necessary for national survival? Explain.

   Page Ref: 44
   Edition: National

11) Describe the major elements of the Madisonian model as embodied in the Constitution. Why did the Founding Fathers make this model so fundamental to the document?

   Page Ref: 48–50
   Edition: National
12) Describe some of the key checks and balances in the United States government as established by the Constitution. Does this lead to more smooth and efficient government? Why or why not?
   Page Ref: 49-50
   Edition: National

13) Describe which groups in society the Federalists and Anti-Federalists represented. How did the political views of the Federalists and Anti-Federalists differ?
   Page Ref: 52-53
   Edition: National

14) Summarize the major arguments of the Federalists and Anti-Federalists. What were the major political compromises and manipulations used to ensure ratification of the Constitution?
   Page Ref: 52-53
   Edition: National

15) What was the significance of the first ten amendments to the United States Constitution? Were they intended to extend or to limit the power of the central national government? Explain.
   Page Ref: 54
   Edition: National

16) Identify and explain the formal method of amending the Constitution. Give examples of both successful and unsuccessful amendments.
   Page Ref: 55-57
   Edition: National

17) How can the Constitution be amended? Is this process meant to encourage or discourage changes? Explain and evaluate.
   Page Ref: 55-60
   Edition: National

18) Some argue that the Constitution has been "democratized" over the years. Explain what is meant by "democratization," and give examples using references to relevant Constitutional amendments.
   Page Ref: 55-60
   Edition: National

19) Evaluate the democratic nature of the original and current Constitution with its amendments. Does the Constitution, with its checks and balances and separation of powers facilitate or impede effective policy making? Use relevant examples.
   Page Ref: 43-50; 55-60
   Edition: National

20) Explain what the founders intended the scope of the new United States government to be. Has the structure created by the founders actually limited government—or made it more accessible to citizens?
   Page Ref: 60-61
   Edition: National
Chapter 3  Federalism

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) The government’s responses in the wake of Hurricane Katrina underscores
   A) the necessity of complying with the letter and the spirit of the Third Amendment.
   B) the tensions between Congress and the president.
   C) the ability of the U.S. military to mobilize and deploy quickly.
   D) the complexity of American federalism.
   E) all of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 69
Edition: National

2) Federalism is
   A) a system of shared power by the state and national governments.
   B) the same as unitary government.
   C) sole government authority in the national government.
   D) sole government authority in the states.
   E) a three-branch government with a system of checks and balances.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 70
Edition: National

3) Federalism is
   A) unique to the United States alone.
   B) practiced by about half the nations worldwide.
   C) practiced in about half the American states.
   D) practiced by nearly all of the 190 nations worldwide.
   E) practiced by fewer than 20 nations worldwide.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 70
Edition: National
4) A form of governmental structure in which the national government is weak and most or all power is in the hands of its components (e.g., states) is known as
   
   A) federalism.  
   B) statist.  
   C) a confederation.  
   D) parliamentary.  
   E) a unitary government.  

   Answer: C  
   Page Ref: 70  
   Edition: National

5) The workings of the federal system are sometimes called
   
   A) internal relations.  
   B) intergovernmental relations.  
   C) intrastate relations.  
   D) interstate relations.  
   E) international relations.  

   Answer: B  
   Page Ref: 72  
   Edition: National

6) Which of the following is NOT true? 
   
   A) Few countries have federal systems.  
   B) Most federal systems are democracies.  
   C) Authoritarian regimes generally do not use federalist systems.  
   D) No unitary governments are democratic.  
   E) Only some democracies use federal systems.  

   Answer: D  
   Page Ref: 70  
   Edition: National
7) Most of the governments in the world today are ________, in which all power resides in the central national government.

   A) unitary
   B) federalist
   C) nationalist
   D) confederations
   E) fiscal

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 70
   Edition: National

8) Which of the following statements is TRUE?

   A) The American states have unitary governments.
   B) Federalism is the typical way nations organize their governments.
   C) Great Britain has a federal system.
   D) Most European countries are confederations.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 70
   Edition: National

9) A unitary system is a way of organizing government so that

   A) power is concentrated in state and local governments.
   B) national and state governments have separate powers over different areas and people.
   C) power is concentrated in a central government.
   D) both national and state levels of government have authority over the same land and people.
   E) every single government is independent of the others and possesses its own specialized power and authority.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 70
   Edition: National
10) Which of the following is an example of a confederation?

A) state governments in the United States
B) the United Nations
C) OPEC
D) Britain
E) France

Answer: B
Page Ref: 70
Edition: National

11) How is a unitary system different from a federal one?

A) The national government can coin money, conduct foreign relations, and declare war.
B) The national government can change the boundaries of states, or abolish them.
C) State governments have political autonomy and can nullify national laws.
D) Administrative subunits, such as states, can collect taxes, conduct elections, and make laws independently of the national government.
E) both B and C

Answer: B
Page Ref: 70-71
Edition: National

12) Federalism is a way of organizing a nation so that

A) power is centralized in state and local government.
B) both national and state levels of government have authority over the same land and people.
C) there is one federal government and all regional governments are administrative subunits of it.
D) power is centralized in the national government.
E) there are three branches of government and a system of checks and balances.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 70
Edition: National
13) Which one of the following countries has federalism as its method of governing?
   A) Canada
   B) China
   C) France
   D) Kenya
   E) No other country uses federalism.

   Answer: A

14) The federal system
   A) decreases judicial power.
   B) centralizes our politics.
   C) decreases opportunities for political participation.
   D) decreases the number of government officeholders.
   E) decentralizes our politics.

   Answer: E

15) Which of the following is NOT an effect of federalism?
   A) It simplifies the governmental system.
   B) Courts are called upon to be referees, and they gain power.
   C) It decentralizes political power.
   D) It creates more access points to government.
   E) It increases bureaucracy.

   Answer: A

16) The power to directly regulate such things as drinking ages, marriage and divorce, and sexual behavior has been granted
   A) to all governments by the Bill of Rights.
   B) to the national government.
   C) to the president.
   D) to state governments.
   E) to both the state and national governments.

   Answer: D
17) States are responsible for most public policies dealing with each of the following issues EXCEPT
   A) economic issues.
   B) social issues.
   C) police powers.
   D) family issues.
   E) moral issues.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 73
   Edition: National

18) Laws that directly regulate abortion, drinking ages, marriage and divorce, or sexual behavior are policy prerogatives that belong to
   A) the bureaucracy.
   B) the states.
   C) Congress.
   D) local governments.
   E) federal courts.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 70
   Edition: National

19) All of the following are examples of how federalism decentralizes our policies EXCEPT
   A) federal income tax.
   B) regulation of abortion.
   C) death penalty.
   D) funding of education.
   E) homeland security.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 72-73
   Edition: National
20) Which of these is NOT among the factors that tend to lead to the creation of a federal form of government in a country?
   A) large population
   B) diverse population
   C) large land area
   D) the existence of multiple religions
   E) industrialization

Answer: E

Page Ref: 71
Edition: National

21) In our federal system, the powers of the state governments are ultimately granted by
   A) their state's Supreme Court.
   B) the people of their state.
   C) their state legislature.
   D) the United States Constitution.
   E) the United States government.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 74
Edition: National

22) As the framers wrote the Constitution they had no practical choice but to adopt a federal system for all but which of the following reasons?
   A) The confederation had clearly failed in managing the country's problems.
   B) The population was too dispersed for a unitary system to work.
   C) Americans' loyalty to state governments was stronger than it was to the United States.
   D) America had always had a federal system and it would have been too radical and disruptive a change to adopt another system.
   E) The country's transportation and communication systems were too primitive for a unitary government to work.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 74
Edition: National
23) From clean-air legislation to welfare reforms, the states constitute a ________ to develop and test public policies and share the results with other states and the national government.

A) major roadblock  
B) national laboratory  
C) neglected resource  
D) last chance  
E) severe reluctance

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 73-74*  
*Edition: National*

24) Almost every policy the national government has adopted has originated with

A) the Senate.  
B) the states.  
C) the House of Representatives.  
D) the Supreme Court.  
E) the president.

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 73*  
*Edition: National*

25) Which of the following statements about federalism is FALSE?

A) Federalism was hotly debated at the Constitutional Convention.  
B) Eighteenth-century Americans had little experience in thinking of themselves as Americans first and state citizens second.  
C) There was no other practical choice in 1787 but to create a federal system of government.  
D) Loyalty to state governments was so strong that the Constitution would have been resoundingly defeated had it tried to abolish them.  
E) None of the above; all are TRUE.

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 74*  
*Edition: National*
26) The supremacy clause of the Constitution states that all of the following are the supreme law of the land, EXCEPT

A) laws of the national government (when consistent with the Constitution).
B) the United States Constitution.
C) state constitutions.
D) treaties of the national government (when consistent with the Constitution).
E) both C and D

Answer: C

Page Ref: 74
Edition: National

27) The Constitution’s supremacy clause

A) does not apply to state and local matters.
B) gives the states superiority over the national government’s Constitution and laws.
C) made the Constitution, the laws of the national government, and the national government’s treaties the supreme law of the land.
D) is vague about which level of government should prevail in a dispute involving federalism.
E) makes the president supreme in any constitutional conflicts with the other two branches.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 74
Edition: National

28) The efforts of Candy Lightner and Mothers Against Drunk Driving (MADD) to raise the legal drinking age to 21 are an example of

A) the supremacy of state government to regulate its own affairs.
B) the constitutional authority of the national government to impose policies on state governments.
C) states acting as policy innovators.
D) the unconstitutionality of age discrimination.
E) the ability of the national government to influence state policy.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 73
Edition: National
29) The supremacy clause
A) establishes the Constitution, laws of the national government, and treaties as the supreme law of the land.
B) establishes the Supreme Court as the final arbiter in all civil and criminal disputes.
C) declares that the national government is superior to the states in every concern.
D) states that powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by the states, are reserved to the states.
E) states that the people are the supreme authority in the United States and that the government shall be subservient to them.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 74
Edition: National

30) The primary thrust of the original intent and wording of the Tenth Amendment is that
A) state legislatures have the ultimate authority to determine what a state government's powers are.
B) states have certain powers that the national government cannot encroach upon.
C) the national government can take control of a state government during a national emergency.
D) national laws override state laws when there is a conflict between the two.
E) both the states and national government are bound by the limitations in the Bill of Rights.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 74–75
Edition: National

31) In the Constitution, the powers to coin money, to enter into treaties, and to regulate commerce with foreign nations and among the states were given to
A) neither the individual states nor the national government.
B) the national government.
C) the individual states.
D) the Senate only.
E) both the individual states and the national government.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 75
Edition: National
32) The Tenth Amendment

A) declares that the national government is superior to the states in every concern.
B) establishes the Constitution, laws of the national government, and treaties as the
   supreme law of the land.
C) establishes the Supreme Court as the final arbiter in all civil and criminal disputes.
D) establishes the number of electoral votes each state can cast in the electoral college.
E) states that powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited
   by the states, are reserved for the states.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 74
Edition: National

33) Only the national government is allowed to

A) levy taxes.
B) regulate commerce with foreign nations.
C) take private property for public purposes.
D) make and enforce laws.
E) all of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 75
Edition: National

34) What was the main criticism of the national bank created by the United States government?

A) It was printing too much worthless paper money which debtors were using to pay off
   their debts.
B) It was charging exorbitant interest rates on its loans.
C) It was borrowing too much money, putting the United States government hopelessly in
   debt.
D) It was an instrument of the elite and gave the national government too much control of
   the economy.
E) It did not efficiently distribute money to the states.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 76–77
Edition: National
35) Which of these was NOT a principle established in the case of McCulloch v. Maryland?

A) State governments are forbidden spending more money than they raise each year, while there is no such requirement on the national government.

B) The national government can establish a national bank, even though the Constitution does not say it can.

C) The national government is supreme to the states when it is acting within its sphere of action.

D) The national government has certain implied powers that go beyond its enumerated powers.

E) State laws preempt national laws when the national government clearly exceeds its constitutional powers and intrudes upon state powers.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 76-77
Edition: National

36) In its McCulloch v. Maryland decision, the Supreme Court ruled in favor of

A) judicial restraint.

B) judicial review.

C) the supremacy of the national government over the states.

D) the supremacy of the states over the national government.

E) Maryland in a dispute with the national government.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 76-77
Edition: National

37) The McCulloch v. Maryland case dealt with what specific grievance?

A) a state taxing a national bank

B) toll bridges on interstate roads

C) the location of Maryland’s capital city

D) a state coining its own money

E) import taxes on goods made in other states

Answer: A

Page Ref: 76-77
Edition: National
38) The principle of the supremacy of federal law over state law was affirmed in
   A) Marbury v. Madison.
   B) the Tenth Amendment.
   C) United States v. Darby.
   D) McCulloch v. Maryland.
   E) the presidential election of 1804.

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 77
   Edition: National

39) The Supreme Court case of McCulloch v. Maryland (1819)
   A) established Baltimore as the capital of Maryland.
   B) stated that the Constitution gave Congress implied powers.
   C) established the principle of judicial review.
   D) established the supremacy of state governments.
   E) recognized that Congress was limited to its enumerated powers.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 77
   Edition: National

40) The principle that the national government has certain implied powers that go beyond its enumerated powers was first elaborated in the Supreme Court's decision in
   A) United States v. the States.
   B) Gibbons v. Ogden.
   C) Miranda v. Arizona.
   D) McCulloch v. Maryland.
   E) Marbury v. Madison.

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 77
   Edition: National

41) The enumerated powers of Congress and the national government are those
   A) specifically spelled out in the Constitution.
   B) set out in the first ten amendments.
   C) involving taxes, spending, and fiscal policy.
   D) not specifically spelled out in the Constitution, but nonetheless acknowledged.
   E) requiring ratification by the states.

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 77
   Edition: National
42) Federal policies to regulate food and drugs, build interstate highways, protect consumers, try to clean up dirty air and water, and do many other things are all justified as ________ of Congress.

   A) implied powers
   B) categorical grants
   C) constitutionally specified powers
   D) reserved powers
   E) enumerated powers

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 77
   Edition: National

43) The Constitution’s provision that Congress has the right to "make all laws necessary and proper for carrying into execution” its powers is often referred to as the

   A) enumerated powers.
   B) heart of fiscal federalism.
   C) Unwritten Amendment.
   D) elastic clause.
   E) privileges and immunities.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 77
   Edition: National

44) In determining the power of Congress to regulate commerce in the case of Gibbons v. Ogden (1824), the Supreme Court

   A) prohibited Congress from regulating business activity on the grounds it violated private property rights.
   B) listed the implied powers of Congress and the national government.
   C) defined commerce very narrowly in considering the right of Congress to regulate it.
   D) listed the enumerated powers of Congress and the national government.
   E) defined commerce very broadly, encompassing virtually every form of commercial activity.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 77
   Edition: National
45) The Constitution states that Congress has the power to establish post offices. This is an example of
   A) enumerated powers.
   B) delegated powers.
   C) implied powers.
   D) reserved powers.
   E) shared powers.
   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 77
   *Edition: National

46) Which of the following federal policies exemplifies the implied powers of Congress?
   A) environmental protection law
   B) income tax
   C) the regulation of interstate commerce
   D) the provision of an army and a navy
   E) all of the above
   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 77
   *Edition: National

47) Federal policies to regulate food and drugs, build interstate highways, and protect consumers are all justified as
   A) presidential prerogatives.
   B) enumerated powers of Congress.
   C) delegated powers of Congress.
   D) implied powers of Congress.
   E) both C and D
   Answer: D
   *Page Ref: 77
   *Edition: National
48) The Supreme Court case of Gibbons v. Ogden

A) defined the meaning of the elastic clause.
B) settled the contested presidential election of 1824.
C) defined commerce as virtually every form of commercial activity.
D) established the principle of implied powers.
E) established the supremacy of the national government.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 77
Edition: National

49) Enumerated powers are those that are

A) reserved for the states.
B) stated in the Constitution.
C) implied in the Constitution.
D) involving money matters.
E) granted specifically to the president.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 77
Edition: National

50) Abraham Lincoln announced in his 1861 inaugural address that he would willingly support a constitutional amendment to

A) prohibit states from seceding from the Union.
B) return the United States to a confederation, with greater powers given to the states.
C) establish the United States as a unitary system, where states would have to obey all national government decisions.
D) outlaw slavery.
E) guarantee slavery.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 78
Edition: National
51) The Supreme Court case of \textit{Printz v. United States}

A) enhanced the powers of Congress by expanding its interpretation of commerce.
B) denied Congress the power of regulating guns in school zones.
C) voided the congressional mandate in the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act requiring local community officials to conduct background checks on prospective gun purchasers.
D) affirmed the provisions of the Brady Handgun Violence Prevention Act.
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 78
Edition: National

52) In the 1950s and 1960s, the proclamation of states’ rights was usually made by those opposing the national government’s efforts in the area of

A) the Vietnam War.
B) abortion rights.
C) civil rights for African Americans.
D) the interstate highway system.
E) the Korean War.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 78
Edition: National

53) The Constitution requires that states give _______ to the public acts, records, and civil judicial proceedings of every other state.

A) privileges and immunities
B) due process
C) full faith and credit
D) some consideration
E) extradition

Answer: C

Page Ref: 79
Edition: National
54) Contracts between business firms can be enforced across state boundaries as part of the constitutional provision of
   A) interstate compacts.
   B) privileges and immunities.
   C) implied powers of the states.
   D) extradition.
   E) full faith and credit.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 79
Edition: National

55) A marriage license issued in one state is valid and honored in all states under the constitutional provision of
   A) separation of powers.
   B) full faith and credit.
   C) national supremacy.
   D) national licensure.
   E) privileges and immunities.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 79–80
Edition: National

56) The fact that a driver’s license from one state is valid in other states is an example of
   A) privileges and immunities.
   B) extradition.
   C) implied powers.
   D) full faith and credit.
   E) unmandated reciprocity.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 79
Edition: National
57) The constitutional requirement that the states return a person charged with a crime in another state to that state for trial or imprisonment is known as

A) forfeiture.  
B) extradition.  
C) privileges and immunities.  
D) full faith and credit.  
E) the elastic clause.  

Answer: B

Page Ref: 80
Edition: National

58) One recently controversial application of the "full faith and credit" provision of the Constitution is for

A) extradition.  
B) birth certificates.  
C) same gender marriages.  
D) bigamy.  
E) abortion

Answer: C

Page Ref: 79–80
Edition: National

59) Extradition is the requirement that states

A) provide sanctuary for federal criminals.  
B) cannot discriminate against citizens of other states.  
C) recognize each others public acts, records, and civil judicial proceedings.  
D) must return a person charged with a crime in another state to that state for trial or imprisonment.  
E) enforce federal law within their state.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 80
Edition: National
60) In _______ federalism, the powers and policy assignments of the different levels of government are distinct, like a layer cake.

A) fiscal
B) dual
C) tripartite
D) cooperative
E) anti-

Answer: B
Page Ref: 81
Edition: National

61) The national government has exclusive control over foreign and military policy, the postal system, and monetary policy, while the states have exclusive control over other specific areas. This division of responsibilities reflects

A) dual federalism.
B) divided government.
C) tripartite federalism.
D) cooperative federalism.
E) fiscal federalism.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 81
Edition: National

62) In Saenz v. Roe, the Supreme Court ruled that

A) California was required to recognize the legality of same sex marriages.
B) California could not require a new resident to wait one year before being eligible for welfare benefits.
C) California could withhold educational benefits from children of illegal immigrants.
D) California was required to offer bilingual education programs in the public elementary schools.
E) California could not provide welfare benefits to illegal immigrants.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 81
Edition: National
63) A tuition difference between in-state and out-of-state students is an example of

A) dual federalism.
B) federal exceptions to the full faith and credit provision.
C) full faith and credit being extended to all students.
D) how states make exceptions to the privileges and immunities clause.
E) project grants to the states.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 80
Edition: National

64) If the allocation of power in a cooperative federal system were compared to a cake it would be most like

A) a layer cake with two distinct layers.
B) a single-layer cake.
C) a cake walk: who gets what is random.
D) fifty marbled cupcakes.
E) a layer cake with many layers.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 81
Edition: National

65) If the allocation of power under dual federalism were compared to a cake it would be most like

A) a marbled cake where the flavors blend into each other.
B) an angel food cake—fluffy with little substance.
C) New York cheesecake—heavy and crushing under its own weight.
D) a layer cake, with two distinct layers.
E) a cupcake.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 81
Edition: National
66) Over time, there has been a gradual change from a dual federalism to a(n) ________ federalism.
   A) unitary
   B) single
   C) tripartite
   D) cooperative
   E) fiscal

Answer: D
Page Ref: 81
Edition: National

67) In ________ federalism, the powers and policy assignments of different levels of government are like a marble cake, with mingled responsibilities and blurred distinctions between layers of government.
   A) fiscal
   B) mixed
   C) dual
   D) cooperative
   E) tripartite

Answer: D
Page Ref: 81
Edition: National

68) In dual federalism,
   A) the state governments assume greater fiscal responsibility.
   B) there are only two branches of government.
   C) the federal government assumes greater fiscal responsibility.
   D) powers are shared between states and the federal government.
   E) states and the national government each remain supreme within their own spheres.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 81
Edition: National
69) In cooperative federalism,
   A) states and the national government each remain supreme within their own spheres.
   B) responsibilities are mingled and distinctions are blurred between the levels of government.
   C) powers and policy assignments of the layers of government are distinct.
   D) states are supreme over the national government.
   E) both A and B

   Answer: B

70) Since the ratification of the Constitution, American federalism has gradually changed from
   A) cooperative to dual federalism.
   B) state domination to national domination.
   C) dual to cooperative federalism.
   D) a unitary to a federal system.
   E) a federal system to a unitary one.

   Answer: C

71) Which of the following statements about federalism is false?
   A) In cooperative federalism, sometimes even blame is shared when programs do not work well.
   B) The American system has always been neatly separated into purely state and purely national responsibilities.
   C) In cooperative federalism, policy assignments are shared between states and the national government.
   D) Cooperative federalism today rests on several standard operating procedures.
   E) None; all are true.

   Answer: B
72) Federal support for public education is an example of a
    A) pragmatic federalism.
    B) dual federalism.
    C) cooperative federalism.
    D) layer cake federalism.
    E) separation of powers
    Answer: C
    Page Ref: 81-82; 83
    Edition: National

73) Funding for the interstate highway system is an example of
    A) dual federalism.
    B) cooperative federalism.
    C) tripartite federalism.
    D) a unitary system of government.
    E) national federalism.
    Answer: B
    Page Ref: 82
    Edition: National

74) The National Defense Education Act, the Elementary and Secondary Education Act, and the Interstate Highway System are all examples of
    A) dual federalism.
    B) cooperative federalism.
    C) triangulation.
    D) layer cake federalism.
    E) unitary federalism
    Answer: B
    Page Ref: 82
    Edition: National
75) Which of the following is NOT a standard operating procedure of cooperative federalism today?
   A) distinctly separated powers of state and national governments
   B) federal grants-in-aid
   C) shared administration of programs
   D) shared financing of government
   E) federal guidelines imposed on states

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 82
   Edition: National

76) Which of the following does NOT characterize the standard operating procedure of cooperative federalism today?
   A) federal guidelines
   B) grants-in-aid
   C) shared costs
   D) separate and distinct roles for the national and state governments
   E) shared administration

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 82
   Edition: National

77) Standard operating procedures in cooperative federalism include each of the following EXCEPT
   A) shared administration.
   B) shared costs.
   C) federal funding with no strings attached.
   D) federal guidelines.
   E) categorical and block grants.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 82
   Edition: National
78) In cooperative federalism, in order to qualify for federal grant money, cities and states must
   A) match federal funding dollar for dollar.
   B) propose standard operating procedures.
   C) allow federal agencies to administer the funds.
   D) follow federal guidelines for adopting and enforcing federal laws.
   E) all of the above

Answer: D

79) Federal regulation of state governments is usually accomplished through
   A) United States Supreme Court decisions.
   B) presidential decrees.
   C) attaching conditions to grants it gives them.
   D) federalization of a state's national guard.
   E) direct, executive orders.

Answer: C

80) About _______ of the funds state and local governments spend comes from the federal government.
   A) 33 percent
   B) 25 percent
   C) 50 percent
   D) 75 percent
   E) 90 percent

Answer: B

81) Federal aid to state and local governments accounts for how much of federal spending?
   A) 33 percent
   B) 50 percent
   C) 2 percent
   D) 18 percent
   E) 75 percent

Answer: D
82) The main instrument the national government uses to influence state governments is
   A) grants-in-aid.
   B) mandates.
   C) judicial review.
   D) the Tenth Amendment.
   E) presidential decrees.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 85
Edition: National

83) Fiscal federalism is
   A) the pattern of spending, taxing, and providing grants in the federal system.
   B) the distinct separation of national government spending versus state and local
government spending.
   C) the federal government's regulation of the money supply and interest rates.
   D) the federal income tax.
   E) a sharing of local and national resources practiced in other countries but not in the
   United States.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 85
Edition: National

84) The pattern of spending, taxing, and providing grants in the federal system is called
   A) economic federalism.
   B) dual federalism.
   C) cooperative federalism.
   D) fiscal federalism.
   E) monetary federalism.

   Answer: D

Page Ref: 85
Edition: National
85) The main instrument the national government uses for both aiding and influencing states and localities is
   A) judicial decisions.
   B) politics.
   C) grants-in-aid.
   D) mandates.
   E) revenue sharing.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 85
Edition: National

86) Of all the funds spent by state and local governments, federal aid accounts for about
   A) two-thirds.
   B) one-half.
   C) one-fourth.
   D) three percent.
   E) one-third.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 85–86
Edition: National

87) The principal type of federal aid for states and localities is
   A) categorical grants.
   B) disaster loans.
   C) revenue sharing.
   D) block grants.
   E) urban renewal grants.
Answer: A
Page Ref: 86
Edition: National
88) Which of the following is NOT true about categorical grants?

A) The federal government is less likely to apply conditions to these grants today than in the 1970s.
B) There are several hundred specific purposes or categories for which these grants can be used.
C) Virtually every one is enshrouded in rules and regulations for its use.
D) A project grant is the most typical type of categorical grant.
E) Categorical grants are monies that can be spent in broad categories of functions.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 86
Edition: National

89) The main type of federal aid to state and local governments is in the form of

A) block grants.
B) formula grants.
C) categorical grants.
D) project grants
E) revenue sharing.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 86
Edition: National

90) The requirement of a drinking age provision before states can receive federal highway aid is an example of

A) a string attached to categorical grants.
B) an important element of the "formula" used to calculate formula grants.
C) a project grant supported by the interest groups.
D) the efforts of state agencies to get federal funds.
E) an unfunded mandate.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 86
Edition: National
91) The most common type of categorical grant is
   A) block grants.
   B) a rescission fund.
   C) project grants.
   D) disaster relief.
   E) revenue sharing.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

92) A project grant is
   A) money awarded for public housing in urban areas of the nation.
   B) awarded more or less automatically to states or communities.
   C) awarded on the basis of competitive application.
   D) restricted to construction projects.
   E) distributed on the basis of population, per capita income, percentage of rural population, or some other factor.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

93) Programs such as Medicaid and Aid for Families with Dependent Children, where applicants automatically qualify for aid if they meet the requirements, are examples of
   A) dual federalism.
   B) project grants.
   C) formula grants.
   D) block grants.
   E) welfare.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National
94) In contrast to the Democratic Congress of recent decades, the new Republican majority in Congress is passing more federal aid in the form of

A) revenue sharing.
B) categorical grants.
C) block grants.
D) tax credits.
E) tax expenditures.

Answer: C

95) The fact that the former Republican majority in Congress prefers block grants to categorical grants indicates that

A) they want to increase federal aid to state governments.
B) they want federal money to be spent at the neighborhood level rather than the state level.
C) they want to decrease federal aid to state governments.
D) they want the federal government to exercise less authority over the states.
E) they intend to raise more money from state governments to reduce the federal budget deficit.

Answer: D

96) In response to complaints from state and local governments about the paperwork and requirements attached to most grants, Congress has established _______ to support programs in areas like community development and social services.

A) formula grants
B) block grants
C) project grants
D) categorical grants
E) computerized grant applications

Answer: B
97) On the whole, federal grant distribution follows the principle of

A) universalism.
B) stinginess.
C) cronyism.
D) to the victors go the spoils.
E) needs-testing.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 88
Edition: National

98) Project grants

A) have no strings attached.
B) are awarded on the basis of competitive applications.
C) are distributed according to a specific formula.
D) are automatically given to states and communities.
E) all of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

99) Grants for specific programs distributed according to community demographic factors, such as population or income, are

A) formula grants.
B) categorical grants.
C) revenue sharing grants.
D) project grants.
E) block grants.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

100) Medicaid and Aid for Families with Dependent Children are examples of

A) categorical grants.
B) formula grants.
C) project grants.
D) state grants.
E) block grants.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National
101) Grants that are given more or less automatically to states or communities, which have discretion in deciding how to spend the money are called

A) project grants.
B) discretionary grants.
C) formula grants.
D) categorical grants.
E) block grants.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

102) A broad program for community development would most likely be supported through a(n)

A) formula grant.
B) enterprise zone.
C) project grant.
D) categorical grant.
E) block grant.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

103) Which of the following statements about federal block grants is FALSE?

A) Block grants were created to lessen the paperwork and strings attached to many grants-in-aid.
B) Congress has established an unlimited number of block grants to support narrowly defined programs.
C) The Republican Congress is increasing block grants.
D) States have discretion in deciding how to spend block grant money.
E) They provide the states more flexibility in spending.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 87
Edition: National
104) The largest percentage of federal grants to states and localities is in the area of
   A) defense.
   B) health.
   C) transportation.
   D) education.
   E) homeland security.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 86
   Edition: National

105) Expansions of mandated programs by the national government present especially difficult funding problems for
   A) Congress.
   B) federal taxpayers.
   C) state and local governments.
   D) foreign governments.
   E) the recipient of the service or program.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 88–89
   Edition: National

106) In 1995, the Republican majority in Congress, in contrast to previous Democratic Congresses,
   A) limited the use of unfunded mandates.
   B) prohibited the states from using unfunded mandates.
   C) limited the use of block grants.
   D) avoided funded mandates.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 85
   Edition: National

107) Medicaid is an example of
   A) a federal grant program that produces considerable competition between the states.
   B) a federal grant program that receives little support from the political parties.
   C) a federal block grant.
   D) a federal grant program that puts an economic strain on the states.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 88
   Edition: National
108) Which of the following is most equitably distributed in America?

A) income  
B) access to education  
C) taxes  
D) credit  
E) federal aid to states and cities

Answer: E
Page Ref: 88
Edition: National

109) Which of the following statements is TRUE?

A) Federal grants can put an unwanted financial burden on states.  
B) When Congress imposes a program on the states, it also provides the funds for the program.  
C) Congress decreased funding of Medicaid in the 1980s to relieve state financial burdens.  
D) States are always seeking increases in grant programs.  
E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 88-89
Edition: National

110) A number of states have sued the federal government for reimbursement of funds on the grounds that

A) overcrowded prisons are a form of cruel and unusual punishment.  
B) Trick question! States cannot sue the federal government.  
C) it has no right to charter a national bank.  
D) the federal government isn’t preventing illegal immigration into their states.  
E) the Federal Reserve Board has pushed interest rates too high, increasing state borrowing costs.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 90
Edition: National
111) ______ have usually found the individual state governments to be more sympathetic than the national government to their demands.

   A) Feminists
   B) Civil rights advocates
   C) Business interests
   D) Those favoring the closing of military bases
   E) Supporters of organized labor

Answer: C

112) Sometimes states tackle problems that are generally considered national problems. This is most likely to occur when the federal government acts in a way that most state residents do not like. An example of this is

   A) state funding for stem cell research in California.
   B) lowering the minimum wage.
   C) collecting taxes on purchases made on the Internet.
   D) restrictions on the chemicals that can be used for developing digital photographs.
   E) local school board policies about which textbooks are appropriate.

Answer: A

113) Business interests have traditionally found their demands received most favorably by

   A) state governments.
   B) the courts.
   C) Congress.
   D) the president.
   E) cities.

Answer: A
114) Federalism is advantageous for democracy for each of the following reasons EXCEPT
A) allows for a greater diversity of opinion to be reflected in public policies.
B) increases the number of decisions and compromises made at the national level.
C) increases access to government.
D) allows more opportunities for political participation.
E) allows customization of policies for local needs.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 90-91
Edition: National

115) Federalism contributes to democracy by each of the following ways EXCEPT
A) easing the burdens on the national government so it can function more effectively.
B) increasing the opportunities for government to be responsive to demands for policies.
C) increasing access to government.
D) having state governments add thousands of elected offices for which citizens may vote or run.
E) providing a means for unified public policy.
Answer: E
Page Ref: 90-91
Edition: National

116) As a result of our federal form of government, the death penalty in the United States
A) is mandatory.
B) is in violation of the Eighth Amendment.
C) is permissible at the federal level, but banned at the state level.
D) varies substantially by state.
E) is permissible because it is not considered cruel and unusual punishment.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 90-91
Edition: National
117) Each of the following is considered a disadvantage of federalism for democracy EXCEPT
   A) local interests may be able to thwart national majority support of certain policies.
   B) powerful interests in a state can use the state as a power base to promote their interests.
   C) voter turnout rates in state and local elections are even lower than in national elections.
   D) large number of governments in the United States make exercising democratic control more difficult.
   E) policy diversity can discourage states from providing services that would otherwise be available.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 92-93
   Edition: National

118) Spending on public education illustrates
   A) cooperation between states and federal government for unified policy.
   B) the advantages of fiscal federalism.
   C) the diversity in the quality of education among states as a result of federalism.
   D) the national curriculum that exists in the United States.
   E) advantages of relying on states to supply public services.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 92
   Edition: National

119) How many governments are there in the United States?
   A) 538
   B) over 100,000
   C) 51
   D) one
   E) 50

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 93
   Edition: National
120) Which of the following statements is FALSE?

A) The federal government has given billions of dollars in subsidies to private industries.
B) The national government took a direct interest in economic affairs from the very founding of the republic.
C) As the country became more industrialized many interests asked the national government to restrain monopolies and encourage open competition.
D) As the country became more industrialized and urbanized, economic interest groups turned to the state governments rather than the federal government for help.
E) The national government has increasingly involved itself in the economic marketplace.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 94
Edition: National

121) Which of the following statements is FALSE?

A) Federalism reduces decision making and conflict at the national level.
B) Federalism reduces the opportunities for political participation.
C) Federalism allows the diversity of opinion within the country to be reflected in different public policies among the states.
D) There are over a half million elected officials in the United States as a result of the federal system.
E) The federal system ensures that each state can establish a power base to promote its interests.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 90-91
Edition: National

122) Over the last 125 years the people of the United States have turned increasingly to the national government to solve problems or provide assistance because

A) the Tenth Amendment gave increased power to the national government.
B) a problem or policy often requires the authority and resources of the national government.
C) of corruption at the state level.
D) we have a unitary government.
E) of persistent corruption in state and local government.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 94-95
Edition: National
123) America’s _______ society makes it more sensible to have Social Security administered on a national rather than a state-by-state basis.

A) electronic  
B) free enterprise  
C) mobile  
D) multi-ethnic  
E) aging

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 94*  
*Edition: National*

124) Today, the national government spends roughly _______ of the gross domestic product.

A) 15 percent  
B) 20 percent  
C) 2.5 percent  
D) 9 percent  
E) 44 percent

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 95*  
*Edition: National*

125) The proportion of the United States gross national product spent by state and local governments has _______ since 1929.

A) increased at a much faster rate compared to the national government  
B) increased, but not nearly as fast as the national government's  
C) dropped considerably  
D) remained steady  
E) dropped slightly

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 95*  
*Edition: National*
126) Today, roughly ________ of the gross domestic product is spent by state and local governments.
   A) 7.5 percent
   B) 25 percent
   C) 10 percent
   D) 15 percent
   E) 1 percent

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 95
   Edition: National

127) The rapid growth of the national government is largely due to the fact that
   A) the diversity of interests within and among the states require a national focus.
   B) states are constitutionally prohibited from maintaining independent defense forces and policies.
   C) the states have failed to adequately represent their interests.
   D) the Constitution requires that most programs be administered by the national government.
   E) most problems and policies require the authority and resources of the national government.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 94
   Edition: National

128) Since 1929, the national government's share of American governmental expenditures has
   A) dropped.
   B) remained the same.
   C) approached nearly 100 percent.
   D) grown rapidly.
   E) grown at a slower rate than the states' share.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 94
   Edition: National
129) Today, the national government spends about

A) a tenth of our gross domestic product.
B) a half of our gross domestic product.
C) 100 percent of our gross domestic product.
D) a fifth of our gross domestic product.
E) a third of our gross domestic product.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 95
Edition: National

130) Which of the following statements about the state governments is accurate?

A) They carry out virtually all the functions they always have, while the national government has taken on new functions.
B) The national government has taken away nearly all the functions the states used to perform.
C) The national government has taken away about half the functions the states used to perform.
D) There has been a sharp decrease in the proportion of gross national product spent by states and localities since 1929.
E) Their policy functions have nearly been taken over by the national government.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 95
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) The federal government immediately took responsibility for its anemic response to Hurricane Katrina.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 68–70
Edition: National

2) Federalism is unique to the Western Hemisphere.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 70
Edition: National

3) The United Nations is an example of a confederation.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 70
Edition: National
4) Most nations of the world have federal systems.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 70
   Edition: National

5) Most federal systems are democracies, although most democracies are not federal systems.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 71
   Edition: National

6) The federal system in the United States centralizes our politics.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 72
   Edition: National

7) The Tenth Amendment is sometimes called the supremacy clause, because it reinforces the power of the national government over the state governments.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 74
   Edition: National

8) The Constitution specifically denied states the power to coin money, to enter into treaties, or to tax imports or exports.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 74–75
   Edition: National

9) The Supreme Court has ruled that the Tenth Amendment does not give states power superior to that of the national government for activities not mentioned in the Constitution.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 74–75
   Edition: National

10) The word federalism is absent from the Constitution.
    Answer: TRUE
    Page Ref: 74
    Edition: National

11) McCulloch v. Maryland was a victory for those advocating the states’ rights position as supreme over the national government.
    Answer: FALSE
    Page Ref: 76–77
    Edition: National
12) In *Gibbons v. Ogden*, the Supreme Court ruled that national government’s power to regulate interstate commerce encompasses virtually every form of commercial activity.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 77
Edition: National

13) In recent years, the Supreme Court has scrutinized Congress’s use of the commerce clause with a skeptical eye, overturning congressional legislation in various decisions.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 77-78
Edition: National

14) Congress once made an exception to the full faith and credit provision of the Constitution by passing the Defense of Marriage Act, which allows states to not recognize same-sex marriages conducted in other states.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 79
Edition: National

15) The Constitution says that the states must return a person charged with a crime in another state to that state for trial or imprisonment.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 80
Edition: National

16) Most politicians and political scientists today argue that America’s federalist system has moved away from a dual federalism to a cooperative federalism.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 81
Edition: National

17) States allow many exceptions to the privileges and immunities clause.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 80-81
Edition: National

18) Most officials at both the state and national levels agreed with Reagan’s reduction in federal funds for state and local governments.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 83
Edition: National
19) State and local agencies can obtain categorical grants only by applying for them, and then by meeting certain qualifications.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 86
Edition: National

20) Categorical grants and block grants are the two major types of federal aid to state and local governments.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 86-87
Edition: National

21) The percentage of federal aid to state and local governments in the form of block grants began decreasing in 1995 as the new Republican majority in Congress passed more federal aid in the form of formula grants, including grants for welfare programs.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

22) With more than $400 billion in federal grants at stake, most states and many cities have established full-time staffs in Washington.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 88
Edition: National

23) Federal grants are notorious for being poorly distributed. Some states and regions receive the lion’s share, others come away with almost nothing.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 88
Edition: National

24) Only school districts in the poorest communities receive federal assistance.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 82
Edition: National

25) Federal aid to states and cities is more equitably distributed than income, access to education, or taxes in the United States.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 88; 91–92
Edition: National
26) The federal system of government increases opportunities for participation in American politics.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 90
Edition: National

27) After nearly 200 years of widely different practices, the entire United States now has a uniform death penalty law.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 90-91
Edition: National

28) State governments have gained power relative to the federal government over the past century.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 95
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) Most governments in the world today are not federalist, but ________.

Answer: unitary
Page Ref: 70
Edition: National

2) According to the supremacy clause, what three items are the supreme law of the land?

Answer: the Constitution, laws of the national government (when consistent with the Constitution) and treaties (which can be made only by the national government)
Page Ref: 74
Edition: National

3) What is the Tenth Amendment, and how has it been interpreted by the courts?

Answer: The Constitutional amendment stating that “The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.” It is interpreted to mean that states have independent powers of their own—not that state powers are superior to those of the national government.
Page Ref: 74-75
Edition: National

4) The ________ states that the powers not delegated to the national government by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or the people.

Answer: Tenth Amendment
Page Ref: 74-75
Edition: National
5) In its decision of 1819, known as ________, the Supreme Court ruled that the federal government was supreme over the states.

Answer: McCulloch v. Maryland
Page Ref: 76
Edition: National

6) The Constitution’s provision that Congress has the power to "make all laws necessary and proper for carrying into execution" its specified powers is known as the ________ clause.

Answer: elastic
Page Ref: 77
Edition: National

7) Compare and contrast enumerated powers and implied powers.

Answer: Enumerated powers are powers of the federal government that are specifically identified in the Constitution, including the power to coin money, regulate its value, and impose taxes. Implied powers are powers of the federal government that go beyond those enumerated in the Constitution, as suggested by the phrase that Congress has the power to "make all laws necessary and proper for carrying into execution" the powers enumerated in Article 1.

Page Ref: 77
Edition: National

8) Why is the necessary and proper clause sometimes referred to as the elastic clause?

Answer: Because hundreds of congressional policies involve powers not specifically mentioned in the Constitution, and these are justified as implied powers of Congress.

Page Ref: 77
Edition: National

9) In what ways has the policy issue of equality been an issue of federalism?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 78
Edition: National

10) Article IV of the Constitution requires that states give ________ to the public acts, records, and civil judicial proceedings of every other state.

Answer: full faith and credit
Page Ref: 78
Edition: National

11) The requirement that states must return a person charged with a crime in another state to that state for trial or imprisonment is known as ________.

Answer: extradition
Page Ref: 79
Edition: National
12) The cornerstone of the national government's relations with the state and local governments is ______ federalism: the pattern of spending, taxing, and providing grants in the federal system.

Answer: fiscal
Page Ref: 85
Edition: National

13) ______ are the main instrument the national government uses to influence states and localities.

Answer: Grants-in-aid
Page Ref: 85
Edition: National

14) ______ is the policy area that receives the largest percentage of federal grants.

Answer: Health care
Page Ref: 86
Edition: National

15) What is a categorical grant, and how is it different from a block grant?

Answer: Categorical grants can be used only for specific purposes of state and local spending, and come with strings attached. Block grants are given more or less automatically to states or communities to support broad programs in areas such as community development or social services.
Page Ref: 86-87
Edition: National

16) The withholding of federal funds for one program if a state does not take action in another area is a(n) _______.

Answer: cross-over sanction
Page Ref: 86
Edition: National

17) A condition on one federal grant that is extended to all activities supported by federal funds is a(n) _______.

Answer: cross-cutting requirement
Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

18) ______ occur when a condition on one federal grant is extended to all activities supported by federal funds, regardless of their source.

Answer: Cross-cutting requirements
Page Ref: 87
Edition: National
19) A(n) _______ occurs when the federal government requires state and local governments to comply with federal rules under threat of penalty or as a condition of receipt of a federal grant.

Answer: mandate

Page Ref: 88
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Define the term federalism and compare and contrast it with unitary and confederation governments. Give examples of each.

Page Ref: 70
Edition: National

2) Describe American federalism and contrast federalism to unitary government. For a country like the United States, is federalism an appropriate system? Explain.

Page Ref: 70
Edition: National

3) Why is federalism considered so important? Explain how federalism decentralizes politics and policies.

Page Ref: 71-74
Edition: National

4) Describe the federal system as formulated in the original design of the Constitution. Explain how federalism has evolved or changed since the writing of the Constitution, particularly in terms of the establishment of national supremacy.

Page Ref: 74-78
Edition: National

5) List some of the powers specifically granted to the state governments by the Constitution. List some of the powers specifically denied the states by the Constitution. Do the powers granted and denied seem wise? Explain.

Page Ref: 79-81
Edition: National

6) Briefly describe and state the historical significance of the McCulloch v. Maryland decision. Did the Supreme Court issue a fair decision or did this undermine a proper balance in federalism? Explain.

Page Ref: 76
Edition: National

7) Explain what happened in the Supreme Court cases of McCulloch v. Maryland and Gibbons v. Ogden? What is the importance of each case to the distribution of powers between the states and the national government?

Page Ref: 76
Edition: National
8) Explain the relationships and obligations between the states in the American federal system. Use specific examples to illustrate your answer.
Page Ref: 79-81
Edition: National

9) Compare and contrast dual federalism and cooperative federalism. What are the standard operating procedures for cooperative federalism?
Page Ref: 81-82
Edition: National

10) Define what is meant by "fiscal federalism." How is it manifested through the federal grant system? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each of the different types of grants?
Page Ref: 85-90
Edition: National

11) What means and strategies do the states and communities use to compete with each other for federal dollars? Under what circumstances might the states and localities not want to receive federal aid?
Page Ref: 88-90
Edition: National

12) To what extent did the Republican majority, first elected in mid 1990s, limit the scope of government? To what extent did it enhance the scope of government?
Page Ref: 87
Edition: National

13) What are the advantages and disadvantages to democracy under a federal system? If you were drafting the Constitution today, would you opt to continue federalism or try something else? Explain.
Page Ref: 90-93
Edition: National

14) Discuss how federalism creates a more democratic political system.
Page Ref: 90-92
Edition: National

15) Explain and give specific examples of the advantages and disadvantages of federalism for democratic government.
Page Ref: 90-93
Edition: National

16) Generally, how do the 50 states and Washington, D.C. differ in their laws regarding state welfare benefits? On per-capita spending on public education? Is this a problem in a country like the United States, or a strength of our system? Explain.
Page Ref: 91-92; 95
Edition: National
17) Describe how our federal system allocates responsibilities to state and federal governments. Have these responsibilities changed over time? How has federalism influenced the scope of government?

Page Ref: 88–90
Edition: National
Chapter 4  Civil Liberties and Public Policy

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Civil liberties are
   A) freedoms that are not specified in the Constitution or in statutory laws, but make up the Unwritten Constitution.
   B) the rights to vote and participate in the political process in a democracy.
   C) laws that provide and set limits on one's freedoms.
   D) citizens' rights to equal treatment under the law.
   E) individual legal and constitutional protections against the government.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 100
   Edition: National

2) Americans' civil liberties are set down in
   A) the Declaration of Independence.
   B) the Bill of Rights.
   C) Article I of the Constitution.
   D) no written document or law.
   E) the Preamble to the Constitution.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 100
   Edition: National

3) The _______ is the final interpreter of the content and scope of Americans' civil liberties.
   A) president
   B) Congress
   C) Supreme Court
   D) American Civil Liberties Union
   E) Constitution

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 100
   Edition: National
4) Civil liberties consist of
   A) legal and constitutional protections against the government.
   B) the right to be treated equally under the law.
   C) the cumulative decisions of the Supreme Court.
   D) the right of citizens to sue government.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 100
Edition: National

5) At the time of the ratification of the Constitution,
   A) all states had bills of rights but there was no national Bill of Rights.
   B) the national Bill of Rights also applied to the states.
   C) there were no bills of rights in the United States.
   D) both the national government and the states had bills of rights.
   E) the national government had a Bill of Rights but, there were no state bills of rights.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 100–101
Edition: National

6) The Bill of Rights was written and proposed by
   A) the United States Supreme Court in 1796.
   B) the First Congress of the United States in 1789.
   C) the Constitutional Convention in 1787.
   D) President George Washington in 1789.
   E) President Thomas Jefferson in 1801.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 101
Edition: National

7) The Bill of Rights was adopted primarily in response to
   A) the Spanish Inquisition.
   B) British abuses of the colonists’ civil liberties.
   C) the abuses committed by the United States Continental Army during the Revolutionary War.
   D) the horrors of the French Revolution.
   E) Shays’ Rebellion.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 101
Edition: National
8) Which of the following statements about the Bill of Rights is FALSE?
   A) The Bill of Rights was written by the First Congress of the United States.
   B) The Bill of Rights consists of the first ten amendments to the Constitution.
   C) Most state constitutions did not have a Bill of Rights at the time of the Constitutional Convention.
   D) Many states made adoption of a Bill of Rights a condition of ratification of the Constitution.
   Answer: C

9) In the case of ________, the Supreme Court ruled that the Bill of Rights restrained only the national government, not states and cities.
   A) Miranda v. Arizona
   B) Barron v. Baltimore
   C) New York v. the United States
   D) Engel v. Vitale
   E) Gitlow v. New York
   Answer: B

10) The great freedoms of speech, press, religion, and assembly are contained in the
    A) First, Second, Third and Fourth Amendments.
    B) Fourth Amendment.
    C) Second Amendment.
    D) Third Amendment.
    E) First Amendment.
    Answer: E
11) The Supreme Court decision in *Barron v. Baltimore* (1833) maintained that the Bill of Rights intended to prevent

- A) both the national and state governments from violating civil rights.
- B) cities from taking private property without due process.
- C) only the national government from abridging civil liberties.
- D) the states from infringing on individual rights.
- E) the United States government from granting titles of royalty.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 102
Edition: National

12) Today, ________ apply to the states.

- A) all of the Bill of Rights except the First Amendment
- B) all of the Bill of Rights
- C) none of the Bill of Rights
- D) four amendments of the Bill of Rights
- E) all but five provisions or amendments of the Bill of Rights

Answer: E

Page Ref: 102
Edition: National

13) Beginning with the case of ________ in 1925, the Supreme Court began to rule that the Bill of Rights applied directly to the states, as well as to the national government.

- A) *United States v. Bill of Rights*
- B) *Miranda v. Arizona*
- C) *Engel v. Vitale*
- D) *Barron v. Baltimore*
- E) *Gitlow v. New York*

Answer: E

Page Ref: 102
Edition: National
14) In deciding to incorporate parts of the Bill of Rights into state laws since 1925, the Supreme Court has relied on the due process clause of the

A) First Amendment.
B) Twenty-sixth Amendment.
C) Fourteenth Amendment.
D) Fifth Amendment.
E) Eighteenth Amendment.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 102
Edition: National

15) The _______ includes the clause “Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion.”

A) Fifth Amendment
B) First Amendment
C) Second Amendment
D) Religious Rights Amendment
E) Fourteenth Amendment

Answer: B

Page Ref: 102
Edition: National

16) The incorporation doctrine involves

A) application of the Bill of Rights to the states.
B) the government’s power to regulate corporations.
C) the procedures for creating a city government.
D) the interpretation of the commerce clause.
E) the extension of judicial review to state courts.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 102
Edition: National
17) Thomas Jefferson argued that the First Amendment created a "wall of separation" between
   A) the government and the people.
   B) the Congress, the president, and the Supreme Court.
   C) the people and the Supreme Court.
   D) church and state.
   E) men and women.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 102–103
   Edition: National

18) Unlike Great Britain and many other nations, the United States does not have an _______ church that is officially supported by the government and recognized as a national institution.
   A) ecclesiastical
   B) adjudicated
   C) imperial
   D) incorporated
   E) established

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 103
   Edition: National

19) Today, ______ have (has) an established church that is officially supported by the government.
   A) the United States
   B) no nation
   C) Great Britain
   D) all nations
   E) both the United States and Great Britain

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 103
   Edition: National
20) In *Gitlow v. New York* (1925), the decision that states could not abridge the freedoms of expression protected by the First Amendment was based on the

A) Fifth Amendment.  
B) New York State Constitution.  
C) Fourteenth Amendment.  
D) First Amendment.  
E) exclusionary rule of the judiciary.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 102*  
*Edition: National*

21) The significance of *Gitlow v. New York* (1925) was that

A) a provision of the Bill of Rights was applied to the states for the first time.  
B) the national government was prevented from violating the Bill of Rights.  
C) a state constitution had precedence over the United States Constitution within that state.  
D) the Bill of Rights was interpreted as restraining only the national government and not cities or states.  
E) the U.S. Constitution has precedence over the state constitution within the state.

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 102*  
*Edition: National*

22) Aid to parochial schools was first passed in the 1960s at the request of

A) Richard M. Nixon.  
B) Jimmy Carter.  
C) John F. Kennedy.  
D) Lyndon Johnson.  
E) Barry Goldwater.

Answer: D  
*Page Ref: 104*  
*Edition: National*
23) In *Lemon v. Kurtzman*, the Supreme Court established that aid to church–related schools must do all of the following EXCEPT

A) have a secular purpose.
B) inhibit religion.
C) not advance religion.
D) not create excessive government entanglement with religion.
E) treat all religions equally.

Answer: B

24) The abridgment of citizens' freedom to worship, or not to worship, as they please is prohibited by the

A) due process clause.
B) establishment clause.
C) free exercise clause.
D) freedom of religion.
E) Second Amendment.

Answer: C

25) In dealing with First Amendment cases involving religion, the Supreme Court has ruled that

A) the Constitution does not protect anti–religious beliefs and practices.
B) such questions should be resolved at the state and local levels of government.
C) while all religious beliefs are constitutionally protected, all religious practices are not.
D) government must not interfere with any expression of religious faith.
E) none of the above

Answer: C
26) In the *Lemon v. Kurtzman* decision of 1971, the Supreme Court ruled that

A) any aid of any sort to church-related schools is not constitutional, because it violates church-state separation.

B) aid to church-related schools is fully constitutional, and can be used for any purposes needed by the schools.

C) spoken prayers in public schools were unconstitutional.

D) aid to church-related schools must be for secular purposes only, and cannot be used to advance or inhibit religion.

E) devotional Bible-reading in public schools was unconstitutional.

Answer: D

*Page Ref: 104
Edition: National*

27) In the *Engel v. Vitale* case of 1962, the Supreme Court ruled that ______ was (were) unconstitutional.

A) prayers done as classroom exercises in public schools

B) the Connecticut statute barring the distribution of birth control information

C) segregation

D) prior restraint

E) police search or seizure without an authorized warrant

Answer: A

*Page Ref: 105
Edition: National*

28) The Supreme Court has interpreted the establishment clause of the First Amendment as

A) grounds for denying federal aid to children attending parochial schools.

B) merely preventing the establishment of a national church.

C) prohibiting school-organized Bible-reading and prayer in public schools.

D) allowing nondenominational school prayer.

E) all of the above

Answer: C

*Page Ref: 104
Edition: National*
29) Which of the following statements about religion and politics is FALSE?

A) Many school districts have simply ignored the Supreme Court’s ban on school prayer and hold prayers in their classrooms.

B) The religious diversity in America has made it difficult to establish one state religion such as Britain has.

C) The Supreme Court has never permitted the claim of religious freedom to permit every sort of behavior.

D) Efforts are underway to amend the Constitution to permit school prayer.

E) In recent years, religious issues and controversies have become less visible in political debate.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 103-109
Edition: National

30) In Lemon v. Kurtzman (1971), the Supreme Court ruled that

A) states can prohibit pornography despite the freedom of the press.

B) aid to church-related schools must have a secular legislative purpose.

C) religious freedom takes precedence over compulsory education laws.

D) an official prayer at a public-school graduation violated the constitutional separation of church and state.

E) voluntary prayer in public schools is unconstitutional.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 104
Edition: National

31) The Supreme Court has ruled that government aid to church-related schools

A) is acceptable for things such as field trips and teacher salaries, but not for textbooks or transportation to school.

B) is permitted when the aid is for a non-religious purpose.

C) is acceptable if the school is affiliated with a major religion but not for small, fringe religious sects.

D) violates the Establishment Clause.

E) does not constitute an establishment of religion.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 104-105
Edition: National
32) Government aid to religious schools has been a major issue

A) since the Civil War.
B) since the colonial era.
C) since the mid 1960s.
D) since ratification of the Bill of Rights.
E) since the growth of the fundamentalist movement in the 1980s.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 104–105
Edition: National

33) Which of the following is NOT a free exercise issue?

A) animal sacrifice
B) religious use of peyote
C) teacher led prayers in public schools
D) whether Amish children must go to school
E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 106–109
Edition: National

34) In 2005, the Supreme Court found that two Kentucky counties violated the establishment clause of the First Amendment by

A) establishing English as the "official first language of the State of Kentucky."
B) by posting the Ten Commandments as a way of promoting religion.
C) banning "intelligent design" from the curriculum
D) providing an "inefficient" system of public education.
E) requiring students to say the Pledge of Allegiance.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 106
Edition: National
35) During the 1980s, the Supreme Court _______ the displaying of Christmas nativity scenes and Hanukkah menorahs on public property.

A) refused to hear cases challenging
B) first permitted and then prohibited
C) upheld the constitutionality of
D) declared unconstitutional
E) encouraged

Answer: C

Page Ref: 106
Edition: National

36) In free exercise cases, the Supreme Court

A) allows the government to interfere with religious practices as long as it is not specifically aimed at religion.
B) permits the government to interfere with religious practices.
C) prohibits prayer in public schools but permits government aid to religious schools.
D) prohibits the government from interfering with religious practices.
E) never allows the government to interfere with religious practices.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 107
Edition: National

37) In regard to the free exercise clause, the Supreme Court has made each of the following rulings

EXCEPT

A) polygamy may be justified for Mormons on religious grounds.
B) the Air Force can enforce its dress code even against religiously based dress choices.
C) Amish parents may take their children out of school after the eighth grade.
D) people could become conscientious objectors to war on religious grounds.
E) public schools cannot require Jehovah’s Witnesses to attend flag saluting ceremonies.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 107–108
Edition: National
38) The Supreme Court ruled that freedom of religious practice was more important than the right of the government to interfere in deciding in favor of

A) a Mormon who justified polygamy on religious grounds.
B) the right of Amish parents in Wisconsin to take their children out of public school after the eighth grade.
C) the right of an orthodox Jewish Air Force captain to wear his yarmulke despite the strict military dress code.
D) the Louisiana law requiring schools that taught Darwinian theory to teach the Bible’s version of creation as well.
E) Christian Scientists’ religious opposition to scientific medical treatment for themselves or their children.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 108
Edition: National

39) Freedom of expression

A) has sometimes been limited when it conflicts with other rights and values.
B) is protected by the Fourth and Fifth Amendments.
C) is an absolute right protected by the First Amendment.
D) includes freedom of speech and press, but not actions.
E) would not protect a political rally to attack an opposition candidate’s stand on issues.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 109
Edition: National

40) Which of the following statements about freedom of expression is FALSE?

A) Universities cannot prohibit racial, religious, or sexual insults.
B) Obscenity and libel are not protected by the First Amendment.
C) Picketing is considered symbolic speech and receives First Amendment protection.
D) Government can limit expression more easily than it can limit action.
E) Holding a political rally to attack an opposition candidate’s stand on important issues gets First Amendment protection.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 109
Edition: National
41) ________ refers to a government's censorship of material before it is published.
   A) The exclusionary rule
   B) Probable cause
   C) Equal protection
   D) Prior restraint
   E) Just cause
   Answer: D

Page Ref: 109
Edition: National

42) In what case did the Supreme Court rule that a newspaper, no matter how outrageous its opinions, must be allowed to publish without prior restraint?
   A) Wisconsin v. Yoder
   B) Miranda v. Arizona
   C) Near v. Minnesota
   E) Mapp v. Ohio
   Answer: C

Page Ref: 110
Edition: National

43) The extent of an individual's or group's freedom from prior restraint depends on
   A) whether the nation is at war.
   B) nothing—it is absolute.
   C) the moods of the Supreme Court justices.
   D) who the individual or group is.
   E) the Constitution.
   Answer: D

Page Ref: 110
Edition: National
44) In its *Near v. Minnesota* decision of 1931, the Supreme Court ruled that
   
   A) the state government could not use prior restraint to shut down an outspoken newspaper.
   B) a school newspaper was not a public forum and could be regulated “in any reasonable manner” by school officials.
   C) states had the power to use prior restraint broadly, but the national government did not.
   D) a CIA agent could not publish a personal memoir without clearing it through the agency.
   E) states were prohibited from publishing newspapers because that amounted to government censorship of the press and constituted the establishment of a government monopoly.
   
   Answer: A
   
   *Page Ref: 110*
   *Edition: National*

45) The Supreme Court has permitted prior restraint of which of the following?
   
   A) high school newspapers
   B) compact discs by 2 Live Crew
   C) the Pentagon Papers
   D) a newspaper that called local officials "Jewish gangsters"
   E) It has permitted prior restraint of all of these.
   
   Answer: A
   
   *Page Ref: 110*
   *Edition: National*

46) The Pentagon Papers dealt with
   
   A) a documented history of United States involvement in the Vietnam War which the government wanted kept secret.
   B) a documented history of United States involvement in the Korean War which the government wanted kept secret.
   C) prisoners of war from World War II.
   D) secret agreements between the United States and the Soviet Union.
   E) all of the above
   
   Answer: A
   
   *Page Ref: 111*
   *Edition: National*
47) Which of the following elements of the Bill of Rights was extended to the states by the Supreme Court case of Near v. Minnesota?
   A) freedom of speech
   B) freedom of the press
   C) right to counsel in felony cases
   D) grand jury requirement
   E) right to privacy

   Answer: B

Page Ref: 110
Edition: National

48) Time and time again, the Supreme Court has protected freedom of the press by
   A) ruling in favor of strict libel laws.
   B) striking down prior restraint.
   C) refusing to allow the subpoena of reporters.
   D) relaxing due process procedures.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: B

Page Ref: 109
Edition: National

49) The case of Near v. Minnesota (1931)
   A) ruled that newspapers could not publish secret information that threatens national security.
   B) ruled that states cannot prohibit animal sacrifice.
   C) held that government had illegally issued a prior restraint.
   D) identified an exception to the Constitutional guarantees barring government censorship of the press.
   E) upheld Minnesota's right to close down a newspaper making slanderous remarks.

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 110
Edition: National
50) Prior restraint is most often considered acceptable on the grounds of
   A) libel.
   B) obscenity.
   C) national security.
   D) cruel and unusual punishment.
   E) religious freedom.
Answer: C

Page Ref: 110
Edition: National

51) In the case of Dennis v. United States, the Supreme Court
   A) upheld the federal law banning the Nazi party in the United States and prohibiting its activities.
   B) upheld the convictions of Communist party officials who had been sent to prison because of their beliefs.
   C) overturned the convictions of Communist party officials who had been sent to prison because of their beliefs.
   D) ruled that burning a draft card was not covered under free speech.
   E) overturned the federal law against burning or desecrating the American flag, arguing that it violated free speech.
Answer: B

Page Ref: 110–111
Edition: National

52) In the case of New York Times v. United States in 1971, the Supreme Court ruled
   A) against permitting racy advertisements for massage parlors, saunas, and escort services which could be deemed obscene.
   B) against prior restraint in the case of the Pentagon Papers, which allowed them to be published.
   C) that the government cannot file libel suits against newspapers, because, it would result in government censorship.
   D) in favor of permitting racy advertisements for massage parlors, saunas, and escort services as freedom of speech.
   E) in favor of prior restraint in order to prevent publication of the Pentagon Papers.
Answer: B

Page Ref: 111
Edition: National
53) In *Schenck v. United States* (1919), Justice Holmes said that speech can be restricted when it

A) is uttered by government officials in an effort to establish a religion.
B) provokes "a clear and present danger" to people.
C) advocates the violent overthrow of the United States.
D) is spoken rather than non-verbal or symbolic.
E) is expressed on private property.

Answer: B

54) Constitutional protections of free speech are _______ on private property.

A) completely invalidated
B) fully protected
C) diminished
D) untested
E) unchanged

Answer: C

55) A shield law

A) gives reporters the right to withhold information from the courts.
B) gives judges the right to issue a gag order.
C) protects certain religious practices not covered by Supreme Court rulings.
D) prevents the courts from closing criminal trials to the press.
E) prevents reporters from disclosing secret government information.

Answer: A

56) The Supreme Court ruled in *Branzburg v. Hayes* (1972) that in the absence of shield laws,

A) the right of a free trial preempts the reporter's right to protect sources.
B) that newspaper files are protected by the First Amendment.
C) that reporters have more rights than other citizens.
D) judges can bar cameras from the courtroom.
E) none of the above

Answer: A
57) In Roth v. United States, the Supreme Court held that
   A) outdoor drive-ins could not be barred from showing a film which included nudity.
   B) the possession of child pornography was not covered by any right to free speech or press, and could be made a crime.
   C) the government cannot prohibit discrimination against women priests by churches because it would violate the free exercise of religion.
   D) obscenity is not within the area of constitutionally protected free speech.
   E) the film Carnal Knowledge, which had critical acclaim but a sexual theme and explicit scenes, could not be banned.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 114–115
Edition: National

58) The principle that “obscenity is not within the area of constitutionally protected speech or press” was established in
   A) Roth v. United States.
   B) Osborne v. Ohio.
   C) Miller v. California.
   D) United States v. Snepp.
   E) Ohio v. Pussycat Theater.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 114
Edition: National

59) Obscenity is
   A) equated with nudity by the Supreme Court.
   B) clearly defined as it pertains to both freedom of the press and freedom of speech.
   C) prohibited in the First Amendment.
   D) a matter of federal standards rather than state or local standards.
   E) not protected under the Constitution.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 114
Edition: National
60) In *Zurcher v. Stanford Daily*, the Supreme Court ruled that
   A) the *Stanford Daily* had complete control over its photograph files.
   B) the *Stanford Daily* must cease publication of military strategy papers.
   C) the *Stanford Daily* must open its files for use as police evidence.
   D) the *Stanford Daily* must disclose the location of its reporters.
   E) the *Stanford Daily* is controlled by the University president, not state laws.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 114
Edition: National

61) In ______, the Court clarified its doctrine of what was obscene, including such gauges as
whether material appealed to merely a prurient interest in sex, and whether it lacked serious
artistic, literary, political or scientific merit.
   A) Osborne v. Ohio
   B) Engel v. Vitale
   C) Miller v. California
   D) Near v. Minnesota
   E) Federal Communications Commission v. Stern

Answer: C
Page Ref: 115
Edition: National

62) In *Miller v. California* (1971), the Court ruled that decisions regarding whether or not material
was obscene should generally be made by
   A) Congress, through statutory law.
   B) lower federal judges as they see fit, but in conformance with the First Amendment.
   C) local communities, with some guidelines provided by the Court itself about how to make
      such judgments.
   D) the Supreme Court itself, on a case-by-case basis.
   E) individual persons in their own private lives.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 115
Edition: National
63) Miller v. California (1973)

A) achieved a workable definition of legal obscenity.
B) abolished pornographic material only when it involved children.
C) resulted in uniform state laws regulating obscenity.
D) stated that local communities should have more responsibility over deciding what constitutes obscenity.
E) prohibited hanging as a cruel and unusual punishment.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 115
Edition: National

64) The Communications Decency Act banning obscene material and criminalizing the transmission of indecent speech or images to anyone under the age of 18 was

A) affirmed by the Court.
B) opposed by Christian groups.
C) overturned by the Supreme Court.
D) the first regulation of obscenity affirmed by the Court.
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 116
Edition: National

65) At the urging of feminists and conservative Christians, some cities have banned pornography on the grounds it dehumanizes and endangers women. How have the courts dealt with these bans?

A) They have upheld them based on the Equal Protection Clause of the Fourteenth Amendment.
B) They have refused to review them.
C) They have struck them down as violations of the First Amendment.
D) They have upheld them based on the First Amendment.
E) The courts have been erratic, allowing some ordinances and revoking others.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 116
Edition: National
66) In the case of New York Times v. Sullivan (1964), the Supreme Court ruled that

A) government officials cannot sue newspapers for libel since this would entail prior restraint of the press.

B) the Pentagon Papers could be legally published despite the government's desire to keep the material secret.

C) the publication of the Pentagon Papers could be legally barred as a matter of national security.

D) statements made about political figures, however malicious, can never be deemed libelous.

E) statements made about political figures are libelous only if made with malice and reckless disregard for the truth.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 117
Edition: National

67) The publication of statements known to be false that are malicious and tend to damage a person's reputation is called

A) obscenity.

B) symbolic.

C) slander.

D) libel.

E) fraud.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 116
Edition: National

68) What happened when Jacksonville, Florida, tried to ban movies with nudity in them from being shown at drive-in theaters on grounds of obscenity?

A) The Court upheld the ban to protect citizens' rights to privacy.

B) The Supreme Court ruled that all nudity cannot be deemed obscene.

C) The ban was upheld to help the community rid itself of a public nuisance and potential traffic hazard.

D) The Court ruled that X-rated movies were protected under the First Amendment.

E) a riot

Answer: B
Page Ref: 116–117
Edition: National
69) The principle that statements about public figures are libelous only if made with malice and reckless disregard for the truth was established in

A) *Texas v. Johnson.*


C) *Osborne v. Ohio.*

D) the Anti-Defamation Act of 1952.

E) *Hustler Magazine v. Falwell.*

Answer: B

Page Ref: 117
Edition: National

70) Which of the following statements regarding libel is FALSE?

A) Public figures are protected against libel since publications must prove that what they wrote is true and not malicious.

B) Libel cases are very difficult for public figures to win.

C) Libel laws do inhibit the press to some extent.

D) General William Westmoreland failed to prove libel.

E) It is more difficult for a public figure than a private individual to win a libel suit.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 117
Edition: National

71) Wearing an arm band and burning a United States flag are examples of ________: actions that do not consist of speaking or writing but that express an opinion.

A) commercial speech

B) symbolic speech

C) obscenity

D) the free exercise clause

E) unspoken speech

Answer: B

Page Ref: 118
Edition: National
72) Symbolic speech
   A) consists of speech criticizing the symbols of government.
   B) cannot be prohibited because it is too vague for government to legislate against.
   C) has been ruled as disruptive and as a criminal activity.
   D) consists of action that expresses an opinion.
   E) is prohibited under the First Amendment.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

73) Advertising is considered a form of ________, and, according to the decisions of the Supreme Court, is subject to greater restrictions on free speech than religious or political speech.
   A) symbolic speech
   B) paid speech
   C) imaged expression
   D) propaganda
   E) commercial speech

Answer: E
Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

74) Commercial speech on radio and television is regulated by
   A) state and local governments.
   B) no government agency, as such would be a violation of the freedom of speech.
   C) the Federal Communications Commission.
   D) the Federal Trade Commission.
   E) the Bureau of Consumer Affairs.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

75) One of the most regulated forms of speech is
   A) symbolic speech.
   B) obscenity.
   C) libel.
   D) unintended speech.
   E) commercial speech.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 118
Edition: National
76) The content and nature of radio and television broadcasting are regulated by
A) the Public Broadcasting System.
B) the Federal Communications Commission.
C) the Federal Trade Commission.
D) the Department of Commerce.
E) no government agency, as any such regulation would be a violation of the freedoms of speech and the press.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

77) Which of the following statements concerning the public airways is FALSE?
A) The FCC restricts the use of obscene words on public airways.
B) The same restrictions that apply to radio and television also apply to newspapers.
C) About two-thirds of American homes have cable TV.
D) Cable television has fewer restrictions placed on them than the public airways.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 119
Edition: National

78) In 2000, the Supreme Court ruled that
A) government had a legitimate interest in protecting sexually explicit material on cable stations.
B) government had no right to regulate sexually explicit material on cable stations.
C) government had a legitimate interest in prohibiting sexually explicit material on cable stations.
D) government regulation of sexually explicit material on cable stations must be narrowly tailored to promote the government’s interest in protecting children.
E) government had a legitimate interest in protecting sexually explicit print material.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 120
Edition: National
79) The content, nature, and existence of radio and television broadcasting is regulated by
   A) the National Broadcasting Board.
   B) the states.
   C) Congress.
   D) the Federal Communications Commission.
   E) no one, because to do so would violate the freedom of the press as applied to
      broadcasters.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 118
   Edition: National

80) Freedom of assembly includes the right to do all of the following EXCEPT
   A) riot.
   B) parade.
   C) protest.
   D) picket.
   E) demonstrate.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 120
   Edition: National

81) In the case of ________, the Supreme Court ruled that requiring an organization to turn over
    its membership lists was an unconstitutional restriction on freedom of association.

   A) Planned Parenthood v. Casey
   B) NAACP v. Alabama
   C) Near v. Minnesota
   D) Mapp v. Ohio
   E) United States v. Communist Party

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 122
   Edition: National
82) Which of the following statements about freedom of assembly is FALSE?

A) Freedom of assembly is often neglected alongside the great freedoms of speech, press, and religion.

B) Without freedom of assembly we would not have the right to form political parties or interest groups.

C) Freedom of assembly includes the right to assemble and the right to associate.

D) Nazis have the constitutional right to march through a heavily Jewish community.

E) Freedom of assembly allows groups to demonstrate at any time, at any place, or in any manner they wish.

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 120–122  
Edition: National

83) In the case of NAACP v. Alabama (1958), the Supreme Court ruled that

A) Alabama could not require segregated schools.

B) the First Amendment's freedom of assembly does not include freedom of association.

C) the state of Alabama was unlawfully restricting the NAACP’s freedom of association.

D) picketing in residential neighborhoods can be restricted.

E) the NAACP had to turn over its membership list to the government.

Answer: C  
Page Ref: 122  
Edition: National

84) In the case of the Nazis' proposed 1977 march on Skokie, a suburb north of Chicago with many Holocaust survivors which had denied the Nazis a permit to march, the Supreme Court, a year after the fact, let stand a lower court ruling that

A) communities have the right to impose local standards on the right to march.

B) Nazis and Communists are among a select list of groups that because of their anti-democratic nature are not protected by the First Amendment.

C) the Nazis could only march if they publicly repudiated the murderous actions of the Nazis before and during WWII.

D) certain groups are so predisposed to violence that their freedom of assembly is not guaranteed.

E) no community could use its power to grant parade permits to stifle free expression or freedom of assembly.

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 121  
Edition: National

157
85) Most of the wording of the Bill of Rights concerns
   A) the rights of people accused of crimes.
   B) the right to bear arms.
   C) freedom of religion and the establishment clause.
   D) freedom of speech and freedom of the press.
   E) freedoms of expression.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 122
   Edition: National

86) The rights of accused persons included in the Bill of Rights were originally intended to protect the accused in
   A) federal civil cases.
   B) federal criminal cases.
   C) local civil and criminal cases.
   D) political arrests and trials.
   E) police custody.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 122
   Edition: National

87) Which of the following is an accurate statement about the Bill of Rights and its relevance to the stages of the criminal justice system?
   A) The rights of accused persons are protected up to the point of actual arrest.
   B) The rights of accused persons are protected up to the point of being convicted of a crime.
   C) The Bill of Rights does not apply to accused criminals.
   D) The rights of accused persons are protected up to the point of the trial itself.
   E) The rights of accused persons and convicted criminals are guaranteed at every stage, from gathering of evidence to the imposition of punishment.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 122
   Edition: National
88) Unreasonable searches and seizures are specifically forbidden in the
   A) Sixteenth Amendment.
   B) Fifth Amendment.
   C) Second Amendment.
   D) Tenth Amendment.
   E) Fourth Amendment.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 124
   Edition: National

89) To prevent abuse of police power, the Constitution requires that no court may issue _______ unless probable cause exists to believe that a crime has occurred or is about to occur.
   A) a writ of habeas corpus
   B) a prior restraint
   C) an exclusionary rule
   D) a search warrant
   E) any of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 123
   Edition: National

90) Viewing the stages of the criminal justice system as a series of funnels of decreasing size tells us that
   A) most arrests result in a trial.
   B) most trials result in a guilty verdict.
   C) many more trials are held than prosecutions.
   D) the likelihood of being punished decreases as one moves through the system.
   E) many more arrests occur than trials.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 122
   Edition: National
91) Unless they witness a crime, police officers cannot arrest a suspect without
A) due process.
B) a search warrant.
C) informing them of their Miranda rights.
D) probable cause.
E) a writ of habeas corpus.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 123
Edition: National

92) Which of the following statements about the Bill of Rights and the rights of the accused is FALSE?
A) The great majority of the words in the Bill of Rights deal with the rights of the accused rather than freedoms of expression.
B) The Bill of Rights covers every stage of the criminal justice system.
C) The language of the Bill of Rights regarding the rights of the accused is often vague.
D) Defendants’ rights are well-defined in the Bill of Rights.
E) Most defendants’ rights, as provided in the Bill of Rights, have been incorporated by the states.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 122-123
Edition: National

93) In the case of ________, the Supreme Court ruled that the protection against unreasonable search and seizure applied to the state and local governments, as well as the national government, thus nationalizing the exclusionary rule.
A) Miranda v. Arizona
B) Gideon v. Wainwright
C) Roth v. United States
D) United States v. New York
E) Mapp v. Ohio
Answer: E
Page Ref: 124
Edition: National
94) Ever since 1914, the courts have used _______ to prevent illegally seized evidence from being introduced into the courtroom.

A) prior restraint
B) the Miranda rule
C) probable cause
D) search warrants
E) an exclusionary rule

Answer: E
Page Ref: 124
Edition: National

95) The exclusionary rule, which was applied to state governments, as well as the federal government in *Mapp v. Ohio* (1961), meant that

A) federal agents may make arrests for state crimes.
B) state governments are excluded from prosecuting federal crimes.
C) searches by police could not be made without a legal search warrant.
D) probable cause must be established prior to arrest.
E) unlawfully obtained evidence could not be used in court.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 124
Edition: National

96) The Fifth Amendment forbids

A) cruel and unusual punishment.
B) forced self-incrimination.
C) illegal searches and seizures.
D) the government establishment of a national religion.
E) all of the above except D

Answer: B
Page Ref: 126
Edition: National
97) The _______ Amendment forbids forced self-incrimination, stating that no person "shall be compelled to be a witness against himself."

A) First
B) Twenty-sixth
C) Fifth
D) Fourth
E) Ninth

Answer: C
Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

98) In the case of Miranda v. Arizona, the Supreme Court ruled that

A) illegally obtained evidence cannot be used in a trial.
B) police must inform any suspect of a series of rights, including the constitutional right to remain silent.
C) the death penalty could be imposed for the most extreme of crimes.
D) defendants in all felony cases have a right to counsel, even if the state has to provide such legal assistance.
E) the police must show probable cause before making an arrest.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

99) In what case did the Supreme Court rule that suspects must be told of their constitutional rights to remain silent, that what they say can be used against them, and of their right to have an attorney present during any questioning?

A) Gideon v. Wainwright
B) Near v. Minnesota
C) Plucenik v. United States
D) Miranda v. Arizona
E) Mapp v. Ohio

Answer: D
Page Ref: 126
Edition: National
100) Which of the following is TRUE about the Supreme Court's decision in *Miranda v. Arizona*?

A) Miranda's innocence or guilt was not at issue; his rights had been violated, so his conviction was overturned.

B) The Court's decision greatly relieved members of police departments throughout the country.

C) The Court ruled that Miranda was innocent, and Miranda later became a famous public defender in the local courts.

D) The Court ruled that Miranda's constitutional rights had not been violated and that he could be legally executed.

E) The Court concluded that Miranda was innocent, overturned his conviction, and ordered him freed from prison.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

101) Fifth Amendment protection against self-incrimination means that

A) you have a right to confront witnesses against you.

B) you can be granted immunity from prosecution in exchange for your testimony.

C) as a defendant you have a right to counsel.

D) you cannot be forced to be a witness against yourself.

E) police officers may use whatever force is necessary to protect themselves from harm in arrest situations.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

102) Fifth Amendment rights were expanded to include guidelines for police interrogation procedures in the famous case of

A) *California v. Simpson*.

B) *Dennis v. United States*.

C) *Gideon v. Wainwright*.

D) *Miranda v. Arizona*.

E) *Mapp v. Ohio*.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 126
Edition: National
103) The Miranda Rule

A) has been strengthened by the Court in recent years.
B) was openly welcomed by police departments throughout the country.
C) has made police interrogations easier.
D) was based on the probable cause clause of the Fourth Amendment.
E) has required all police officers to inform accused persons of their rights.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

104) Today, courts must provide a lawyer for a defendant

A) whenever imprisonment could be imposed.
B) only in felony cases or where civil fines exceeding $10,000 could be levied.
C) whenever they plead not guilty.
D) only in capital cases where the punishment would be execution.
E) immediately after being arrested.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 127
Edition: National

105) In the 1963 case of ________, the Supreme Court ruled that defendants in all felony cases had a right to counsel, and if they could not afford to hire a lawyer, one must be provided.

A) Mapp v. Ohio
B) Engel v. Vitale
C) Gideon v. Wainwright
D) Miranda v. Arizona
E) National Bar Association v. United States

Answer: C

Page Ref: 128
Edition: National
106) According to the Constitution and the Bill of Rights, how many members should there be on a jury?
   A) a minimum of six
   B) a minimum of twelve
   C) between six and twelve
   D) a maximum of twelve
   E) no specifications are made as to jury size

Answer: E
Page Ref: 128
Edition: National

107) Most criminal cases are settled in
   A) the Supreme Court.
   B) plea bargaining.
   C) municipal and county courts.
   D) district court.
   E) the jury room.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 128
Edition: National

108) The Supreme Court case of *Gideon v. Wainwright*
   A) extended the right to counsel to everyone accused of a felony.
   B) prohibited government officials from issuing gag orders to the media.
   C) ruled that illegally seized evidence can not be used in court.
   D) gave only those accused of capital crimes the right to counsel.
   E) set guidelines for police questioning of suspects.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 128
Edition: National
109) The Sixth Amendment right to counsel in federal courts was expanded in the famous 1963 Supreme Court case of

A) Gregg v. Georgia.
B) Gideon v. Wainwright.
C) Arizona v. the United States.
D) Mapp v. Ohio.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 128
Edition: National

110) Most cases are settled through

A) plea bargaining.
B) paupers' petitions.
C) judicial tribunals.
D) trial by a judge.
E) trial by jury.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 128
Edition: National

111) The Eighth Amendment to the Constitution

A) is the freedom of privacy.
B) forbids cruel and unusual punishment.
C) is the right to bear arms.
D) grants women equal rights including the right to vote.
E) protects freedom of assembly.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 129
Edition: National
112) What was the Supreme Court's decision in *Hamdam v. Rumsfeld*?

A) Terrorists are not entitled to protection by the Bill of Rights.

B) The procedures for trying prisoners at Guantanamo Bay, Cuba were insufficient for ensuring a fair trial.

C) The Geneva Convention does not apply because the "enemy combatants" are not soldiers in a recognized army.

D) The president has "inherent power" to fight the war on terror as he sees fit. Therefore, the president can establish judicial procedures on his own.

E) all of the above

Answer: B

*Page Ref: 129*

*Edition: National*

113) Cruel and unusual punishment is forbidden by the

A) self-incrimination clause.

B) Sixth Amendment.

C) Eighth Amendment.

D) exclusionary clause.

E) Fifth Amendment.

Answer: C

*Page Ref: 129*

*Edition: National*

114) The right to a "speedy trial" and the prohibition against "cruel and unusual punishment"

A) are included in the Bill of Rights, but are rather vague and subject to the interpretation of the courts themselves.

B) are so important that they were among the few civil liberties actually guaranteed by the original constitution.

C) are not guaranteed by the Bill of Rights but, however vague in their wording, are considered vital to our court system.

D) were ruled unconstitutional in 1976 because they were so ill-defined as to be meaningless.

E) are included in the Bill of Rights, are self-evident, and have not required much court interpretation.

Answer: A

*Page Ref: 130*

*Edition: National*
115) In *Gregg v. Georgia* (1976), concerning applications of the Eighth Amendment, the Supreme Court ruled that

A) only the federal government, and not the states, can impose the death penalty.

B) execution by electrocution is cruel and unusual punishment.

C) Georgia’s death penalty law was "freakish" and "random."

D) capital punishment is an extreme sanction, but it is suitable to the most extreme of crimes.

E) the death penalty constitutes cruel and unusual punishment.

Answer: D

116) Which of the following is NOT protected in the First Amendment?

A) right to privacy

B) right of people to petition the government for a redress of grievances

C) no establishment of religion

D) freedom of speech

E) freedom of the press

Answer: A

117) Where is the right to privacy found in the Constitution?

A) Tenth Amendment

B) First Amendment

C) Sixth Amendment

D) Ninth Amendment

E) none of the above

Answer: E
118) Which of the following is NOT specifically stated in the Bill of Rights?
   A) right to privacy
   B) protection against double jeopardy
   C) right to bear arms
   D) freedom of speech
   E) All of these are specifically stated.

   Answer: A

119) In *Roe v. Wade*, the Supreme Court ruled that in the third trimester of pregnancy
   A) states can ban abortion except when the mother’s health is in danger.
   B) states are prohibited from funding the abortions of poor women.
   C) states cannot ban abortion unless the mother’s life is in danger.
   D) states cannot ban abortion.
   E) the federal government, but not the states, is prohibited from funding abortions for poor women.

   Answer: A

120) The Supreme Court’s *Roe v. Wade* decision was issued in
   A) 1979.
   B) 1954.
   C) 1973.
   E) 1985.

   Answer: C
121) The Supreme Court ruled in its *Roe v. Wade* decision that

A) each state and not the federal government has authority to determine whether to permit or prohibit abortion in that state.

B) all restrictions on abortions at any stage of a pregnancy were a violation of a woman’s right to privacy.

C) abortion was murder.

D) abortion was to be allowed only in cases of rape or incest, or when the life of the pregnant woman was in danger.

E) abortion could not be prohibited by any state during the first trimester of pregnancy.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 133
Edition: National

122) Since its *Roe v. Wade* decision, the Supreme Court has

A) generally moved to allow states more room to regulate abortions (e.g., waiting periods) than was true in Roe.

B) not moved an inch from its dramatic original ruling.

C) greatly extended the right of a woman to make her own decision about terminating her pregnancy.

D) reversed itself within the last few years, and has now overturned the Roe decision.

E) been silent on the politically divisive issue of abortion.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 134
Edition: National

123) The idea that the Constitution guarantees a right to privacy was first enunciated in

A) *Griswold v. Connecticut*.

B) *Marbury v. Madison*.

C) *Roe v. Wade*.

D) *Webster v. Reproductive Health Services*.

E) *Planned Parenthood v. Casey*.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 132
Edition: National
124) The right to privacy was applied to the states by the Supreme Court case of
   B) Gitlow, Near & Mapp v. the States.
   C) Mapp v. Ohio.
   D) Near v. Minnesota.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 132
   Edition: National

125) The most important application of privacy rights has come in the area of
   A) abortion.
   B) birth control.
   C) sexual preference.
   D) pornography.
   E) the death penalty.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 132
   Edition: National

126) The Supreme Court case of Roe v. Wade (1973) ruled that
   A) abortions are not protected under the Constitution.
   B) a state cannot forbid abortions during the first trimester of pregnancy.
   C) a state cannot regulate abortions under any circumstances.
   D) family planning services cannot provide women any abortion counseling.
   E) states must permit abortions on demand during all nine months of pregnancy.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 133
   Edition: National

127) The abortion decision in Roe v. Wade (1973) was justified by the Supreme Court largely on the
   grounds of
   A) the freedom of religion clause of the First Amendment.
   B) the free exercise clause of the First Amendment.
   C) the right of privacy implied in the Bill of Rights.
   D) our constitutional right to life.
   E) new advances in medical technology.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 133
   Edition: National
128) In the 1992 case of Planned Parenthood v. Casey, the Supreme Court ruled that abortion
A) could be completely outlawed by individual states.
B) must be funded by state governments when the mother cannot afford it, or it would be a violation of the Equal Protection Clause.
C) restrictions could be imposed by states if they did not involve "undue burdens" on the women seeking abortions.
D) funding by any level of government was unconstitutional.
E) was a fundamental right, and any restrictions on such a right had to be judged by a "strict scrutiny."

Answer: C
Page Ref: 134
Edition: National

129) In recent years, the Supreme Court has
A) increased protection of women’s physical access to abortion clinics.
B) restricted women’s physical access to abortion clinics.
C) permitted states to close down increasing numbers of abortion clinics.
D) prohibited demonstrations within sight of abortion clinics.
E) done nothing to protect women’s physical access to abortion clinics despite the calls of many women’s groups.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 134
Edition: National

130) Which of the following statements about the Supreme Court and abortion is FALSE?
A) The Supreme Court has forbidden any state regulation of abortion during the first trimester.
B) The Supreme Court upheld a state law requiring teenagers to secure the consent of at least one parent before obtaining an abortion.
C) The Court permits states to require a 24-hour waiting period before getting an abortion.
D) The Court allows states to require a woman to give her husband advance notice of an abortion.
E) The Supreme Court permits states to forbid the use of any state funds to pay for abortions.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 134
Edition: National
131) Civil liberties
   A) reflect the wishes of the majority.
   B) never conflict with each other.
   C) make government less democratic.
   D) limit what the majority can ask the government to do.
   E) were established in the 1960s.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 136
Edition: National

132) Civil liberties relating to defendants’ rights have often been used to
   A) break up factions.
   B) enhance the power of the courts
   C) enhance diversity.
   D) protect individual rights.
   E) gain a plea bargain.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 136
Edition: National

133) In Planned Parenthood v. Casey, the Supreme Court
   A) struck down a law requiring minors to notify one or both parents or a judge before obtaining an abortion.
   B) changed its standard for evaluating restrictions on abortion from one of “strict scrutiny” of any restraints on a “fundamental right” to one of “undue burden” that permits more regulation.
   C) specified that family planning services receiving federal funds could not provide women any counseling regarding abortion.
   D) affirmed a provision requiring a married woman to tell her husband of her intent to have an abortion.
   E) made abortions for minors illegal.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 134
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) The Supreme Court of the United States is the final interpreter of the scope of the civil liberties of Americans.

Answer: TRUE

Page Ref: 100
Edition: National
2) The Twenty-sixth Amendment, ratified in 1971, has been used by the Supreme Court to incorporate most of the Bill of Rights into state laws.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 102
Edition: National

3) In *Zelman v. Simmons-Harris*, the Supreme Court allowed state vouchers to be used to pay tuition at religious schools.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 104
Edition: National

4) In most cases, courts have ruled that teachers can not discuss creationism as an alternative to evolution, but they can discuss "intelligent design."

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 106
Edition: National

5) The Supreme Court has never permitted religious freedom to be an excuse for any and all behaviors.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 106–107
Edition: National

6) It is unconstitutional to pray in school.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 105
Edition: National

7) The courts often issue injunctions prohibiting the publication of material, especially in the area of national security.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 109–110
Edition: National

8) In *Dennis v. United States* (1951), the Supreme Court overturned prison sentences of several United States Communist party leaders, and criticized the case against them as purely political and a violation of free speech.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 110
Edition: National

9) No nationwide consensus exists that offensive, pornographic material should be banned.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 115
Edition: National
10) Slander refers to making spoken statements known to be false that are malicious and tend to damage a person’s reputation, and the courts have ruled that such spoken defamations are not protected by freedom of speech.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 116
Edition: National

11) Private individuals have a lower standard to meet for winning lawsuits for libel than public figures.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 117
Edition: National

12) Commercial speech, such as advertising, is restricted far more extensively than expressions of opinion on religious, political, or other matters.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

13) Commercial speech is regulated more rigidly than other types of speech.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

14) In 2000, the Court held that student–led prayer at football games was unconstitutional.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 105
Edition: National

15) The Bill of Rights allows a group to hold a spontaneous demonstration anytime, anywhere, and anyway it chooses.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 120–121
Edition: National

16) According to a recent Supreme Court decision, public universities can ban military recruiters from their campuses.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 122
Edition: National

17) Before making an arrest, police need what the Constitution calls probable cause to believe that someone is guilty of a crime.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 123
Edition: National
18) The Rehnquist Court has diligently honored the exclusionary rule, but made exceptions to the Miranda ruling.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

19) The Fifth Amendment forbids forced self-incrimination, stating that no person "shall be compelled to be a witness against himself."

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

20) President George W. Bush ordered eavesdropping on the international telephone and email communications of those within the United States.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 126
Edition: National

21) In the decades since the Miranda decision, the Supreme Court has made no exceptions to its requirements.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 127
Edition: National

22) The right to privacy is specifically guaranteed in the Bill of Rights.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 131
Edition: National

23) The Supreme Court has ruled that the death penalty violates the equal protection of the law guaranteed by the Fourteenth Amendment.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 129–130
Edition: National

24) Nowhere does the Bill of Rights explicitly state that Americans have a right to privacy.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 131
Edition: National

25) In the case of Roe v. Wade (1973), the Supreme Court outlawed any state laws to restrict a woman’s right to an abortion at any point in her pregnancy.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 133
Edition: National
Short Answer Questions

1) The first ten amendments to the Constitution comprise the _______.
   
   Answer: Bill of Rights
   Page Ref: 100
   Edition: National

2) Supreme Court decisions extending the Bill of Rights to cover the actions of the states have been based on the _______ Amendment.
   
   Answer: Fourteenth
   Page Ref: 102
   Edition: National

3) Explain the significance of Gitlow v. New York to the Fourteenth Amendment.
   
   Answer: The Supreme Court interpreted the Fourteenth Amendment to say that states could not abridge the freedoms of expression protected by the First Amendment; it began the development of the incorporation doctrine, the legal concept under which the Supreme Court has nationalized the Bill of Rights.
   Page Ref: 102
   Edition: National

4) The First Amendment’s _______ clause prohibits the government from organizing or recognizing an official national church.
   
   Answer: establishment
   Page Ref: 102
   Edition: National

5) _______ refers to a government’s censorship action that, in advance, prevents material from being published.
   
   Answer: Prior restraint
   Page Ref: 109
   Edition: National

6) Describe how the Supreme Court has evaluated freedom of speech with respect to obscenity on the Internet.
   
   Answer: Congress has recently decided that the Internet is not the electronic equivalent of the printing press and thus does not deserve the free-speech protection of the First Amendment. Instead, it regards the Internet as a broadcast medium, subject to government regulation.
   Page Ref: 116
   Edition: National
7) Define prior restraint. How has the Supreme Court dealt with this issue?

Answer: Prior restraint is when a government prevents material from being published. The Supreme Court has consistently struck down prior restraint on speech and press.

Page Ref: 109
Edition: National

8) In the famous case of Schenck v. United States, Justice Holmes wrote in his ruling that government can limit free speech only if such speech provokes a(n) _______ of substantive evils.

Answer: clear and present danger

Page Ref: 110
Edition: National

9) What is the principle of clear and present danger?

Answer: Enunciated by Justice Holmes in Schenck v. United States; that government can limit free speech only if such speech provokes such danger of substantive evils.

Page Ref: 110
Edition: National

10) An utterance not protected by the First Amendment is ________, the publication of statements known to be false and malicious and that tend to damage a person’s reputation.

Answer: libel

Page Ref: 116
Edition: National

11) How has the Supreme Court dealt with the issue of libel?

Answer: Libel, the publication of false statements that are malicious and damage a person’s reputation, is applied differently to private and public individuals. Public officials have to prove that whoever wrote or said untrue statements about them knew the statements were untrue and intended to harm them; private individuals only have to show that the statements were falsehoods and the author was negligent.

Page Ref: 116-117
Edition: National

12) Wearing an arm band and burning a flag are examples of ________: actions that do not consist of speaking or writing, but that express an opinion.

Answer: symbolic speech

Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

13) What is meant by symbolic speech?

Answer: actions that do not consist of speaking or writing but that express an opinion

Page Ref: 118
Edition: National
14) Before making an arrest, police need what the courts call _______ to believe that someone is guilty of a crime.

Answer: probable cause

Page Ref: 123
Edition: National

15) In a longstanding policy criticized by many, the courts have used a(n) _______ to prevent illegally seized evidence from being introduced in the courtroom.

Answer: exclusionary rule

Page Ref: 124
Edition: National

16) What is the exclusionary rule and how has it been used by the Supreme Court?

Answer: the rule that evidence, no matter how incriminating cannot be introduced into a trial if it was not constitutionally obtained; an increasingly conservative Court made some exceptions to the exclusionary rule beginning in the 1980s, establishing a “good faith exception to the rule

Page Ref: 124
Edition: National

17) What is the significance of the Supreme Court case of Gideon v. Wainwright?

Answer: extended the right to an attorney to anyone accused of a felony in a state court

Page Ref: 128
Edition: National

18) How has the Supreme Court dealt with the issue of capital punishment?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 129-130
Edition: National

19) In what way does the Constitution guarantee a right to privacy?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 132
Edition: National

20) The Supreme Court's decision in the 1973 case of _______ gave women the right to an abortion during the first trimester of pregnancy, thus overturning the abortion restrictions of most states.

Answer: Roe v. Wade

Page Ref: 133
Edition: National

21) How does the scope of the American government affect the protection of civil liberties?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 135-136
Edition: National
Essay Questions

1) How would you characterize the first ten amendments to the Constitution? Why, taken together, are these so significant? Do you consider them too narrow, too broad, or about right? Explain.
   
   Page Ref: 100–101
   Edition: National

2) How and why have the provisions of the Bill of Rights been incorporated into state laws? Do you think this is an infringement on the rights of the states, or appropriate to protect national civil liberties in all cases? Explain.
   
   Page Ref: 102
   Edition: National

3) Explain how the Bill of Rights was extended to the states. Cite key Supreme Court cases to illustrate your answer.
   
   Page Ref: 102
   Edition: National

4) What is the establishment clause and the free exercise clause? What controversies have arisen in the United States over the issue of freedom of religion, and how have they been resolved?
   
   Page Ref: 102–103
   Edition: National

5) How have issues like prayer and Bible reading in public schools been settled by the Supreme Court, and why? How high would you construct the "wall of separation" between church and state, and why?
   
   Page Ref: 103–106
   Edition: National

6) Describe the Supreme Court's decisions regarding freedom of expression. How have the Court's decisions protected or extended democracy? Limited democracy?
   
   Page Ref: 109–118
   Edition: National

7) Explain how the freedoms of speech and press have been compromised in the name of public order and the right of a fair trial.
   
   Page Ref: 110–112; 126
   Edition: National

8) The First Amendment states that "Congress shall make no law...abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press..." Under what circumstances has the Supreme Court decided that it is constitutional to abridge freedom of speech and press? Give examples of specific cases to illustrate your answer.
   
   Page Ref: 109–110
   Edition: National
9) Describe the historical development of Supreme Court decisions regarding free press/fair trial, and obscenity, citing specific court cases. What are the main features of the Court's current posture in this area?

Page Ref: 113–116
Edition: National

10) How has the Court dealt with obscenity cases and the very definition of obscenity? Should obscenity be protected as freedom of expression, or should local communities be allowed to set standards of what is and is not obscene? Explain.

Page Ref: 114–116
Edition: National

11) Compare and contrast the civil liberty issues involved in the different types of speech such as obscenity, libel, symbolic speech, commercial speech, and speech over the public airways.

Page Ref: 114–120
Edition: National

12) Why have flag burning and wearing a black armband been protected by the Court? Do you think this is appropriate or not? Explain.

Page Ref: 118
Edition: National

13) Should freedom of assembly include the right of groups like the American Nazi party, the Ku Klux Klan, the Communist Brigade, and similar groups to march and hold rallies? Explain your answer and why others might argue otherwise.

Page Ref: 120–121
Edition: National

14) Explain the two facets of the freedom of assembly. What restrictions have been put on the right to assemble?

Page Ref: 120–121
Edition: National

15) Present the argument that the extension of defendants' rights have hurt the police and benefited criminals. What specific court decisions have extended defendants' rights and how?

Page Ref: 122–130
Edition: National

16) Describe the specific provisions of the Bill of Rights in regard to those brought before the criminal justice system. Why do you think the Bill of Rights is so explicit in these matters, and do you approve these safeguards? Explain.

Page Ref: 122–130
Edition: National
17) Describe the various ways in which the Constitution protects the rights of the accused through the stages of the criminal justice system. Give examples of how these protections have been challenged in the courts.

Page Ref: 122-130
Edition: National

18) Describe the significance of the Supreme Court rulings in Miranda v. Arizona and Gideon v. Wainwright. Do you think the Court was properly enforcing provisions of the Bill of Rights in these cases or overreaching? Explain.

Page Ref: 126-128
Edition: National

19) What is the Supreme Court's current stance on the death penalty? Do you agree with it? Do you think that the death penalty violates the Eighth Amendment? Explain. For what crimes, if any, is the death penalty justified?

Page Ref: 129-130
Edition: National

20) One of the greatest debates concerning Americans' civil liberties lies in the area of privacy rights. How does the right to privacy relate to the issue of abortion? Explain how the courts have dealt with this issue.

Page Ref: 133-134
Edition: National

21) Describe the significance of the Supreme Court's Roe v. Wade ruling? Did the Court overstep its authority, or did it properly extend the right of privacy in this case? How have later Court decisions changed Roe? Explain.

Page Ref: 133-134
Edition: National

22) How have civil liberties affected democratic government in the United States? What are the basic conflicts between civil liberties and democracy?

Page Ref: 135-136
Edition: National

23) Explain why the text concludes that an expansion of individual freedom may require an expansion of the scope of government.

Page Ref: 136
Edition: National
Chapter 5  Civil Rights and Public Policy

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Policies that extend basic rights to groups historically subject to discrimination are known as
   A) civil rights.
   B) civil liberties.
   C) human rights.
   D) suffrage.
   E) affirmative action.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 142
   Edition: National

2) Civil rights
   A) is the other term for civil liberties.
   B) are policies that extend basic rights to groups historically subject to discrimination.
   C) involve the principles of criminal justice.
   D) consist of legal and constitutional protections against the government.
   E) can be divided into the great political freedoms and protections at the bar of justice.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 142
   Edition: National

3) The phrase "all men are created equal" comes from the
   A) Bill of Rights.
   B) Constitution.
   C) famous pamphlet, Common Sense.
   D) Declaration of Independence.
   E) Bible.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 142
   Edition: National
4) The concept that everyone should have the same chance is called equality of
   A) distribution.
   B) fate.
   C) rewards.
   D) results.
   E) opportunity.

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 142  
Edition: National

5) American society generally emphasizes equal
   A) pay for equal work.
   B) results.
   C) rewards.
   D) distribution.
   E) opportunity.

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 142  
Edition: National

6) Which of the following statements is TRUE?
   A) The American Revolution was fought principally in the name of equality.
   B) The delegates to the Constitutional Convention did not resolve the tension between slavery and the principles of the Declaration of Independence.
   C) Women's rights were hotly debated at the Constitutional Convention.
   D) Most colonists were eager to defend slavery.
   E) all of the above

Answer: B  
Page Ref: 143  
Edition: National
7) Thomas Jefferson, who wrote in the Declaration of Independence "We hold these truths to be self evident, that all men are created equal," believed

   A) that slavery was immoral.
   B) in the principle of equal rewards.
   C) that blacks were genetically inferior to whites.
   D) that there were no differences among human beings.
   E) that all people are created equal at birth, but become unequal over time.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National

8) The Fourteenth Amendment was one of three passed

   A) during the 1960s.
   B) directly following the Civil War.
   C) during George Washington’s administration.
   D) during the Depression of the 1930s.
   E) right after the Revolutionary War.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National

9) The Fourteenth Amendment specifically forbids the states from denying to anyone

   A) freedom on the basis of race.
   B) freedom of privacy.
   C) the right to vote on the basis of race.
   D) equal protection of the laws.
   E) the right to vote on the basis of sex.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National

10) The first and only place in which the idea of equality appears in the Constitution is in the

    A) Fourteenth Amendment.
    B) Ninth Amendment.
    C) Preamble.
    D) First Amendment.
    E) Declaration of Independence.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National
11) The concept of equality before the law was introduced to the Constitution in the
   A) Fourteenth Amendment.
   B) Preamble.
   C) Fifteenth Amendment.
   D) Sixteenth Amendment.
   E) Thirteenth Amendment.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National

12) Over the last 100 years, the provisions of the Fourteenth Amendment have become the vehicle for
   A) extending the right to vote to non-whites, women, and 18-year-olds.
   B) expansive constitutional interpretation to outlaw arbitrary classifications which deny equality under the law.
   C) limiting the national government’s ability to interfere in matters affecting individual states.
   D) government regulation of business and industry.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 143-144
   Edition: National

13) Standards of review used by the Supreme Court in discrimination cases include all of the following EXCEPT
   A) inherently suspect.
   B) more than reasonable.
   C) reasonable.
   D) intermediate, between reasonable and inherently suspect.
   E) cautious.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 144-145
   Edition: National
14) The courts have recently ruled that, under the Fourteenth Amendment, racial and ethnic classifications by states in regard to any matter

A) are reasonable.
B) are unconstitutional.
C) are inherently suspect.
D) are not the proper business of the federal courts to consider, but are up to the states individually.
E) are arbitrary, but usually reasonable.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 144
Edition: National

15) Classifications by race and ethnicity have now been ruled by the Court to be acceptable only in

A) matters wherein certain races or ethnic groups show greater talent or less aptitude.
B) laws passed by Congress, not those passed by the individual states.
C) regard to rules and regulations of the armed forces.
D) laws seeking to remedy previous discrimination.
E) matters involving national security.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 144
Edition: National

16) Equal protection of the laws

A) means that laws cannot establish different standards for the treatment of different groups.
B) is guaranteed in the original Constitution.
C) means that states have to make their laws promote equality among persons.
D) provides a rigid standard for constitutional interpretation.
E) does not deny states treating classes of citizens differently if the classification is reasonable.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 143
Edition: National
17) The Supreme Court has ruled that racial and ethnic classifications are
A) legal if they are reasonable.
B) not covered by the Fourteenth Amendment.
C) inherently suspect.
D) never permissible.
E) exempt from the constitutional penumbras of the Bill of Rights.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 144
Edition: National

18) Classifications based on gender have been ruled to be _________ by the decisions of the Court in the past several years.
A) reasonable
B) strictly unconstitutional
C) sexist
D) inherently suspect
E) somewhere between inherently suspect and reasonable

Answer: E
Page Ref: 144
Edition: National

19) The first African immigrants to America were
A) clergy.
B) small shopkeepers.
C) kidnap victims.
D) farmers.
E) Nigerian ivory traders.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 145
Edition: National
20) Today the equal protection clause is interpreted broadly enough to do all of the following EXCEPT

A) reapportion state legislatures.
B) prohibit job discrimination.
C) permit sexual harassment.
D) forbid racial segregation in the public schools.
E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 143-144
Edition: National

21) In the case of ________, the Supreme Court ruled that a black man, slave or free, was "chattel" and had no rights under a white man's government; it also ruled that Congress had no power to ban slavery in the western territories.

A) Plessy v. Ferguson
B) Craig v. Boren
C) Dred Scott v. Sandford
D) Brown v. Board of Education
E) Amos v. Colorado

Answer: C
Page Ref: 145
Edition: National

22) In the case of Dred Scott v. Sandford, the United States Supreme Court

A) voted unanimously to declare slavery unconstitutional and "barbaric," thus causing the southern states to secede.
B) ruled that all adult African-American men had a right to vote under the Constitution.
C) outlawed segregation laws which separated blacks and whites in all public places.
D) ruled that a black man, slave or free, was "chattel," and upheld slavery itself as constitutional.
E) for the first time placed a geographic limit on the expansion of slavery, banning it west of the Mississippi River.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 145
Edition: National
23) The *Dred Scott v. Sanford* ruling was handed down by the Supreme Court
   A) a few years after the Civil War.
   B) in 1896.
   C) during the Civil War.
   D) in the 1950s.
   E) a few years prior to the Civil War.

   Answer: E

Page Ref: 145
Edition: National

24) The _______ Amendment outlawed slavery in the United States.
   A) Thirteenth
   B) Nineteenth
   C) Tenth
   D) First
   E) Equal Rights

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 145
Edition: National

25) The Thirteenth Amendment
   A) forbade slavery and involuntary servitude.
   B) gave African Americans the right to vote.
   C) repealed the Twelfth Amendment.
   D) established the principle of separate but equal.
   E) repealed Prohibition.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 145
Edition: National

26) The Thirteenth Amendment was passed
   A) in 1920.
   B) in 1850.
   C) in the 1960s.
   D) as one of the original Bill of Rights.
   E) at the end of the Civil War.

   Answer: E

Page Ref: 145
Edition: National
27) The constitutional trail for securing equal rights for all Americans was blazed primarily by
   A) women.
   B) Hispanic Americans.
   C) Asian Americans.
   D) the American Indians.
   E) African Americans.

   Answer: E

Page Ref: 147
Edition: National

28) In *Dred Scott v. Sandford* (1857), Chief Justice Taney declared that
   A) the importation of slaves into the United States was illegal, but slavery itself was not.
   B) Congress had no authority to ban slavery in the territories.
   C) a slave who had escaped to a free state became a free man.
   D) slavery is inherently unconstitutional.
   E) slavery can be practiced in the so-called free states.

   Answer: B

Page Ref: 145
Edition: National

29) Slavery was declared unconstitutional by the
   A) Thirteenth Amendment.
   B) Fourteenth Amendment.
   C) Jim Crow laws.
   D) Bill of Rights.
   E) *Dred Scott v. Sandford* Supreme Court case.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 145
Edition: National
30) Jim Crow laws were those which
   
   A) were enacted by Southern whites in the late nineteenth century to segregate African Americans from whites.
   B) the North enforced in the South in the Reconstruction era following the Civil War, granting rights to former slaves.
   C) sought to end segregation and bring the races into closer contact with one another.
   D) justified slavery and set codes for slaves' behavior.
   E) established slavery and contract law regulating the slave trade.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 146
   Edition: National

31) The Supreme Court’s decision in the case of Plessy v. Ferguson
   
   A) for the first time established race as a suspect classification and ruled that former slaves must be granted land or otherwise compensated for their years of forced labor.
   B) outlawed slavery.
   C) stated that the principle of separate but equal public facilities for African Americans was constitutional.
   D) stated that the principle of separate but equal public facilities for African Americans was unconstitutional.
   E) ruled that slaves were chattel property and entitled to no rights under the Constitution.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 146
   Edition: National

32) In the case of ________, the Supreme Court ruled that segregation of races by law was constitutional so long as the facilities that were separate were also equal.
   
   A) Amos v. Alabama
   B) Brown v. Board of Education
   C) Plessy v. Ferguson
   D) Craig v. Boren
   E) Dred Scott v. Sandford

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 146
   Edition: National
33) Jim Crow laws
   A) imposed legal segregation on African Americans in the South after the Civil War.
   B) were an attempt to reimpose slavery in the South after the Civil War.
   C) gave African Americans the right to vote in local elections in the South.
   D) granted former slaves free land in compensation for their years of unpaid labor.
   E) allowed African Americans to hold state and federal offices in the South after the Civil War.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 146
   Edition: National

34) In the case of *Plessy v. Ferguson*,
   A) housing discrimination was forbidden.
   B) the principle of "separate but equal" was overturned.
   C) school busing was allowed to remedy racial segregation.
   D) United States citizenship and all rights that go with it were granted to former slaves.
   E) the principle of "separate but equal" was used to justify segregation.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 146
   Edition: National

35) During the first half of the twentieth century, the Supreme Court
   A) paid more attention to the "separate" than to the "equal" part of the separate but equal doctrine.
   B) allowed segregation in the armed forces.
   C) upheld the legality of all-white primaries.
   D) declared all Jim Crow laws unconstitutional.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 146
   Edition: National
36) Legal segregation of the races was declared unconstitutional in the 1954 landmark ruling known as
   A) King v. University of Kansas.
   B) Plessy v. Ferguson.
   C) Dred Scott v. Sandford.
   D) Craig v. Boren.
   E) none of the above

Answer: E
Page Ref: 147
Edition: National

37) The Brown v. Board of Education decision overturned the Supreme Court's 1896 ruling in
   A) Craig v. Boren.
   B) Dred Scott v. Sandford.
   C) Marbury v. Madison.
   D) Amos v. Alabama.
   E) Plessy v. Ferguson.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 147
Edition: National

38) In Brown v. Board of Education (1954), the Supreme Court
   A) ordered the Topeka school district to spend more money on black schools.
   B) enunciated the principle of equal but separate.
   C) ruled that the visible signs of education were substantially equal between black schools and white ones.
   D) enunciated the principle of separate but equal.
   E) ruled that school segregation was inherently unequal.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 147
Edition: National
39) The Supreme Court’s ruling in Brown v. Board of Education was based on the legal argument that segregation violated the _______ Amendment.

   A) Fourteenth
   B) First
   C) Twenty-sixth
   D) Nineteenth
   E) Equal Rights

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 147
   Edition: National

40) De facto educational segregation occurs

   A) by forced school busing to separate the races.
   B) by forced school busing to integrate the races.
   C) when segregated classrooms occur within an integrated school.
   D) by law.
   E) by the reality of neighborhood schools located in areas that happen to be racially segregated.

   Answer: E

   Page Ref: 148
   Edition: National

41) De jure educational segregation occurs

   A) by constitutional amendment.
   B) by law.
   C) by forced school busing to integrate the races.
   D) by the reality of neighborhood schools located in areas that happen to be racially segregated.
   E) from day-to-day depending on changing enrollments at a particular school.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 148
   Edition: National
42) In the case of ________, the Supreme Court upheld federal court rulings ordering busing of students to achieve racially balanced schools.

   A) Craig v. Boren
   B) Plessy v. Ferguson
   C) Brown v. Board of Education
   D) Unified Transportation Co. v Madison County
   E) Swann v. Charlotte-Mecklenberg County Schools

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 148  
Edition: National

43) The immediate reaction to Brown v. Board of Education (1954) was

   A) the busing of students to achieve racially balanced schools.
   B) the closing of schools in Topeka, Kansas.
   C) passage of the Twenty-third Amendment to overturn the Brown decision.
   D) the desegregation of public schools in the South.
   E) increased enrollment in private schools by whites in the South and a threat to close public schools.

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 147  
Edition: National

44) After Brown v. Board of Education (1954), school integration in the South

   A) was unaffected by the decision.
   B) ended abruptly.
   C) was completed within three years.
   D) never changed.
   E) proceeded very slowly.

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 147  
Edition: National
45) The case of *Swann v. Charlotte-Mecklenberg County Schools* (1971)

A) prohibited busing for school integration.

B) permitted judges to achieve racially balanced schools through busing.

C) ruled that schools must set aside a federal judge–determined number of spots for blacks before they would be considered desegregated.

D) gave state legislatures the power to determine school desegregation procedures in each state.

E) ruled that schools could not limit the number of black students enrolled in an effort to minimize desegregation.

Answer: B

*Page Ref: 148*

*Edition: National*

46) The one institution most responsible for putting civil rights goals on the nation’s policy agenda was

A) Congress.

B) the presidency.

C) the courts.

D) the political parties.

E) the state governments.

Answer: C

*Page Ref: 147*

*Edition: National*

47) All of the following were tactics of the Civil Rights Movement EXCEPT

A) marches.

B) civil disobedience.

C) sit-ins.

D) bus boycotts.

E) none of the above

Answer: E

*Page Ref: 149*

*Edition: National*
48) The Civil Rights Act of ________, the most important law since the Emancipation
Proclamation, made racial discrimination illegal in public accommodations throughout
America.
   A) 1947
   B) 1964
   C) 1984
   D) 1974
   E) 1954

Answer: B
Page Ref: 150
Edition: National

49) The ________ Amendment, adopted in 1870, guaranteed the right of African Americans to vote
—at least in principle.
   A) Nineteenth
   B) Thirteenth
   C) First
   D) Fifteenth
   E) Fifth

Answer: D
Page Ref: 152
Edition: National

50) The Civil Rights Act of 1964
   A) made racial discrimination illegal in places of public accommodation.
   B) forbade discrimination in employment on the basis of race, color, national origin,
      religion, or gender.
   C) prohibited gender discrimination in the work place.
   D) both A and B
   E) neither A nor B

Answer: D
Page Ref: 150
Edition: National
51) Suffrage refers to
   A) the practice of *de facto* slavery rather than *de jure* slavery.
   B) the legal segregation of the races or of men and women in hotels, motels, restaurants, and other public places.
   C) the hardships endured to obtain civil rights for African Americans and equal rights for women.
   D) the legal right to vote.
   E) the practice of shackling slaves working in fields so they could not run away.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 151
   Edition: National

52) The legal right to vote is referred to as
   A) civil liberties.
   B) the grandfather clause.
   C) civil rights.
   D) suffrage.
   E) coverture.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 151
   Edition: National

53) The grandfather clause was passed by Oklahoma and other southern states to
   A) exclude blacks from having the right to vote in primary elections, though they could vote in general elections.
   B) guarantee the equal rights of senior citizens in employment.
   C) deny African Americans the right to vote.
   D) deny land to anyone whose grandfathers were not white.
   E) distribute land to former slaves on the basis of how many generations they had served on a particular plantation.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 152
   Edition: National
54) The grandfather clause was ________ by the Supreme Court in the 1915 decision, *Guinn v. United States*.

   A) overlooked  
   B) established  
   C) declared age discrimination  
   D) found unconstitutional and outlawed  
   E) upheld as constitutional

Answer: D
Page Ref: 152  
Edition: National

55) The Civil Rights Act of 1964

   A) established the first affirmative action programs.  
   B) ended discrimination in the purchase or rental of housing.  
   C) ended the white primary.  
   D) guaranteed minority groups the right to vote.  
   E) guaranteed equal access to hotels, restaurants, and other public accommodations.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 150  
Edition: National

56) Blacks were first given the legal right to vote by the

   A) Civil Rights Act of 1964.  
   B) Twenty-fourth Amendment.  
   C) Fifteenth Amendment.  
   E) Emancipation Proclamation.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 152  
Edition: National
57) To render African–American votes ineffective, several southern states used the ________, a device that permitted political parties to choose their nominees in elections off limits to blacks.

A) suffrage  
B) grandfather clause  
C) poll tax  
D) hidden ballot  
E) white primary

Answer: E  
*Page Ref: 152  
Edition: National*

58) The Twenty-fourth Amendment, ratified in 1964,

A) prohibited discrimination in employment or public accommodations based on race.  
B) granted Negroes the right to vote.  
C) outlawed the use of literacy tests in order to register to vote.  
D) outlawed the grandfather clause and the white primary.  
E) prohibited the use of poll taxes in federal elections.

Answer: E  
*Page Ref: 152  
Edition: National*

59) Poll taxes for federal elections were outlawed in the

A) Voting Rights Act.  
B) Civil Rights Act of 1964.  
C) Supreme Court’s *Guinn v. United States* decision of 1915.  
D) Twenty-fourth Amendment.  

Answer: D  
*Page Ref: 152  
Edition: National*

60) One consequence of the Voting Rights Act of 1965 was

A) dramatic increase in the number of African Americans registered to vote.  
B) increased access of blacks to public accommodations.  
C) the increased use of gerrymandering.  
D) decreased involvement of federal officials in state election procedures.  
E) an increase in segregation.

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 152  
Edition: National*
61) The white primary

A) was the examination voters had to pass before being allowed to vote, designed to prevent blacks from voting because they had been denied educational opportunities.
B) denied blacks the right to run for office in primary elections in the South.
C) excluded blacks from primary elections, thus depriving them of a voice in the real electoral contests in the South.
D) denied blacks the right to vote in all southern elections.
E) allowed blacks to vote only in Republican primaries in the heavily Democratic South.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 152
Edition: National

62) Native-American Indians were made citizens of the United States in

A) 1964.
B) 1924.
C) 1789.
D) 1868.
E) They were never made citizens of the United States.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 154
Edition: National

63) Which of the following statements about Native Americans is FALSE?

A) Native Americans are the oldest minority group in the United States.
B) Native Americans are guaranteed access to the polls, housing, and to jobs.
C) Native Americans were made citizens of the United States long before African Americans received the same status.
D) The Indian Claims Act of 1946 established a means to settle financial disputes arising from lands taken from the Indians.
E) Native Americans are the poorest minority group in the United States.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 154
Edition: National
64) Hispanic Americans comprise approximately _______ percent of the United States population.
   A) 14
   B) 5
   C) 22
   D) 10
   E) 20
   Answer: A

65) The fastest growing minority group in the United States is
   A) Native Americans.
   B) African Americans.
   C) Japanese Americans.
   D) Hispanic Americans.
   E) Asian Americans.
   Answer: E

66) In the case of Korematsu v. United States, the Supreme Court
   A) ruled that the removal of Japanese Americans from the west coast and their placement in internment camps during World War II was barbaric and unconstitutional.
   B) ruled just prior to World War II that Japanese Americans living in the United States had to be repatriated to Japan.
   C) upheld the constitutionality of the United States atomic bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.
   D) upheld the constitutionality of the removal of Japanese Americans from the west coast and their placement in internment camps during World War II.
   E) ruled that restrictions on Japanese ownership of land in the United States were unconstitutional.
   Answer: D
67) The Supreme Court case of Korematsu v. United States (1944)

A) upheld the constitutionality of the internment of Japanese Americans during World War II.
B) ruled that public discrimination against Japanese Americans is unconstitutional.
C) set the stage for the extension of equal rights to Japanese Americans.
D) awarded benefits to Japanese Americans interned during World War II.
E) upheld the prohibition of the ownership of land by people of Japanese descent.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 156
Edition: National

68) The women's rights movement was launched with the signing of the

A) Feminist Manifesto.
B) Emancipation Proclamation.
C) Seneca Falls Declaration.
D) Equal Rights Amendment.
E) Declaration of Independence.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 157
Edition: National

69) "Coverture"

A) was the combination of electric shock therapy and drugs once used to "cure" homosexuals of their homosexuality.
B) was the legal doctrine that deprived married women of any identity separate from that of their husbands.
C) is a term used to describe the time when minority groups will outnumber Caucasians of European descent.
D) was the principle used to justify the internment of Japanese Americans during World War II.
E) was the legal doctrine used to discriminate against Native Americans by placing them in reservations.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 157
Edition: National
70) The Nineteenth Amendment
   A) gave women the constitutional right to vote.
   B) outlawed the poll tax in federal elections.
   C) repealed Prohibition.
   D) gave African Americans the constitutional right to vote.
   E) ended slavery.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 158
   Edition: National

71) The ______ gave women the constitutional right to vote.
   A) Bill of Rights
   B) Fifteenth Amendment
   C) Twenty-fourth Amendment
   D) Equal Rights Amendment
   E) Nineteenth Amendment

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 157
   Edition: National

72) From about 1920-1960, the feminist movement
   A) experienced great growth and activity.
   B) was in a period of hibernation.
   C) was preoccupied with winning the right to vote.
   D) concentrated on anti-war causes.
   E) first coalesced as a significant political movement in the United States.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 158
   Edition: National

73) Alice Paul authored the Equal Rights Amendment, and unsuccessfully pushed for its passage beginning in the
   A) 1960s.
   B) 1970s.
   C) 1920s.
   D) 1980s.
   E) 1940s.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 158
   Edition: National
74) Women were first given the right to vote by the
   A) Suffrage Act of 1880.
   B) Equal Rights Amendment.
   C) Fifteenth Amendment.
   D) Voting Rights Act.
   E) Nineteenth Amendment.

   Answer: E

   Page Ref: 157
   Edition: National

75) Which of the following statements about the immediate consequence of women receiving the right to vote is FALSE?
   A) Many supporters of the right to vote accepted the traditional model of the family.
   B) The feminist movement gained steam immediately after the right to vote was secured.
   C) Winning the right to vote did not automatically give women equal rights, pay, and status.
   D) Many state laws continued to enshrine the traditional view of the family in public policy.
   E) Gaining the right to vote did not eliminate many of the challenges facing women.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 158
   Edition: National

76) After passage of the Nineteenth Amendment in 1920, public policy toward women was dominated by
   A) protectionism.
   B) the principle of equality.
   C) coverture.
   D) matriarchalism.
   E) economic, but not political, advances.

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 158
   Edition: National
77) The feminist movement was reborn

A) when women became involved in the war effort during World War II.
B) when the Supreme Court made its decision in *Roe v. Wade*.
C) after the Civil War when women became inspired by the emancipation of the slaves.
D) during the Civil Rights movement of the 1950s and 1960s.
E) when the Equal Rights Amendment was first introduced in the 1920s.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 158
Edition: National

78) Betty Friedan’s book, ________, published in 1963, encouraged many women to question traditional assumptions and to assert their rights.

A) *A Handmaid’s Tale*
B) *The Second Sex*
C) *The Female Eunuch*
D) *Women and Economics*
E) *The Feminine Mystique*

Answer: E

Page Ref: 158
Edition: National

79) In ________, the Supreme Court ruled that any "arbitrary" sex-based classification violated the equal protection clause.

A) *Regents of the University of California v. Bakke*
B) *Dred Scott v. Sandford*
C) *Swann v. Charlotte-Mecklenberg County Schools*
D) *Reed v. Reed*
E) *Roe v. Wade*

Answer: D

Page Ref: 159
Edition: National
80) In the case of *Craig v. Boren*, the Supreme Court ruled that

A) sex classifications would be treated by the Court as inherently suspect.

B) racial classifications were constitutional if they have a compelling, legitimate, and rational purpose.

C) it would employ a "medium scrutiny" standard: sex discrimination would be treated as neither valid nor invalid.

D) sex classifications would be treated by the Court as valid.

E) all sex classifications were unconstitutional.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 159
Edition: National

81) In the case of *Reed v. Reed* (1971), the Supreme Court

A) struck down an Oklahoma law setting different legal drinking ages for men and women.

B) declared that a woman's place is in the home.

C) prohibited sexual discrimination in public schools.

D) held that any arbitrary sex-based classification violated the equal protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment.

E) declared that women are entitled to half the community property of a marriage when there is a divorce.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 159
Edition: National

82) The Supreme Court has voided each of the following sexual discrimination laws EXCEPT laws that

A) provided for alimony payments to women only.

B) made statutory rape a crime for men only.

C) set a higher age for drinking for men than for women.

D) closed a state's nursing school to men.

E) provided child support for women only.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 160
Edition: National
83) Which of the following is TRUE?

A) Many sex discrimination cases have involved men seeking equality with women.
B) The Supreme Court first struck down a law on the basis of sex discrimination in 1920.
C) The Supreme Court has so far struck down only a handful of laws for discriminating on the basis of gender.
D) All of these are true.
E) None of these are true.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 160
Edition: National

84) The Equal Rights Amendment failed because

A) it was vetoed by the President.
B) the Supreme Court voided it as unconstitutional.
C) it did not win the required two-thirds vote in each chamber of Congress.
D) it was rejected by the United States Senate.
E) it fell three states short of sufficient ratification.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 160
Edition: National

85) The _______ banned gender discrimination in employment by law.

A) Civil Rights Act of 1964
B) Fair Labor Standards Act
C) Supreme Court ruling in National Organization for Women v. Bank of America
D) Nineteenth Amendment
E) Gender Equity Act of 1972

Answer: A
Page Ref: 161
Edition: National
86) In considering gender discrimination in employment and business activity, the Supreme Court has ruled that any prerequisites based on gender or appearance
A) fall within the penumbra of the commerce clause, and thus enjoy its constitutional protection.
B) are unconstitutional.
C) must have a direct relationship with the duties required in a particular position, or are otherwise discriminatory.
D) can be accepted as non-discriminatory if the requirements have a longstanding tradition in the industry.
E) are matters of private business concern and therefore not under the protection of the Constitution.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 161
Edition: National

87) Which of the following statements about the Equal Rights Amendment (ERA) is FALSE?
A) The ERA was ratified in 1982.
B) The ERA battle stimulated vigorous feminist activity.
C) The ERA battle stimulated vigorous anti-feminist activity.
D) The ERA was first introduced in the 1920s.
E) Congress passed the ERA in 1972.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 160
Edition: National

88) The United States Supreme Court has handed down each of the following decisions concerning gender discrimination in employment and business activity EXCEPT
A) requiring the federal government to give women equal pay for jobs of comparable worth.
B) prohibiting gender discrimination in private business and service clubs.
C) voiding laws and rules barring women from jobs through arbitrary height and weight requirements.
D) protecting women from being required to take mandatory pregnancy leaves from their jobs.
E) None of the above; the court has handed down each of the decisions above.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 161
Edition: National
89) The issue of _______ deals with women seeking to redress the fact that jobs traditionally held by men tend to pay far greater salaries than jobs requiring similar skills but are traditionally held by women.

   A) gender equality
   B) affirmative action
   C) feminized wage scales
   D) comparable worth
   E) the lace purse

Answer: D
Page Ref: 161
Edition: National

90) "Comparable worth" refers to the issue of

   A) paying men and women equivalent salaries for jobs requiring similar skills.
   B) government subsidization of women who choose to work at home.
   C) the inherent dignity and equality of women with men.
   D) reduced work responsibilities for women workers with children.
   E) equal voting rights and access to public office for women.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 161
Edition: National

91) Which of the following is TRUE?

   A) Women are prohibited from serving as combat pilots.
   B) Women are prohibited on navy warships.
   C) Women are now allowed in ground combat units.
   D) Both men and women must register for the draft at age 18.
   E) none of the above

Answer: E
Page Ref: 162
Edition: National
92) Which of the following statements about women in the military is FALSE?
   A) Congress has opened all the service academies to women.
   B) Women, as well as men, are now required to register for the draft.
   C) Statutes and regulations prohibit women from serving in most combat situations.
   D) Women have served in every branch of the armed services since World War II.
   E) Women do not have a ceiling on the rank they can achieve.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 162
   Edition: National

93) The Persian Gulf War showed that
   A) women could serve as combat pilots.
   B) women would not volunteer for combat positions.
   C) there is no place in the military for women.
   D) women did well in the military, but should not serve in combat positions.
   E) women’s military performance was inferior to men’s.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 162
   Edition: National

94) In 1993, the Supreme Court ruled that sexual harassment is sex discrimination that violates the Civil Rights Act when
   A) the target objects a second time to touching, body language, or dirty talk.
   B) it causes severe psychological injury.
   C) the workplace environment becomes hostile or abusive.
   D) an employee can no longer perform his or her job.
   E) the target suffers a nervous breakdown.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 164
   Edition: National

95) In *Faragher v. City of Boca Raton* (1998), the Supreme Court held that
   A) school districts can be held liable for sexual harassment.
   B) the military can not be responsible for sexual harassment at conferences.
   C) employers are responsible for preventing and eliminating sexual harassment.
   D) government entities are not responsible for preventing sexual harassment.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 164
   Edition: National
96) The 1991 convention of the Tailhook Association of naval aviators experienced a celebrated case of sexual harassment when

A) the commanding officer scattered his pubic hairs upon the desks of some of his female secretaries.

B) the commander-in-chief of the armed forces asked a female aviator up to his hotel room ostensibly for business and then unzipped his pants, showed her his penis, and asked for oral sex.

C) some men secretly videotaped their sexual encounters and then showed them at the convention.

D) male aviators lined a hotel hallway and groped and kissed women trying to get to their rooms.

E) All of these; it was a really sordid affair.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 164
Edition: National

97) The 1991 convention of the Tailhook Association convention brought attention to the problem of

A) the failure of the Equal Rights Amendment.

B) homosexual activity in the armed services.

C) comparable worth.

D) sexual harassment.

E) sexual discrimination in the courts.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 164
Edition: National

98) The "gray liberation" movement refers to

A) elderly homosexuals seeking equality.

B) those seeking laws that break down racial barriers and promote harmony.

C) anti-pollution activists who seek to reduce smog.

D) those fighting for the rights of the elderly.

E) those fighting for equal rights and justice for the disabled.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 166
Edition: National
99) The fastest growing age group in the American population is
   A) Generation X.
   B) people in their 80s.
   C) infants.
   D) teenagers.
   E) baby-boomers.
Answer: B

100) Age discrimination laws have
   A) allowed children between the ages of 12 and 18 to leave their parents.
   B) lowered the minimum compulsory retirement age to 55.
   C) required employers to hire a certain percentage of people over the age of 50.
   D) denied federal funds to any institution discriminating against people over forty.
   E) all of the above
Answer: D

101) In 1990, Congress enacted the ________, a far-reaching law to protect a particular group of Americans from discrimination, ignoring those who claimed the price tag would be too high.
   A) Gay and Lesbian Civil Rights Bill
   B) Native-Americans Inclusion Act
   C) Americans with Disabilities Act
   D) Children’s Rights Act
   E) Immigrant Grant Act
Answer: C

102) The Rehabilitation Act of 1973
   A) entitles all children to a free public education appropriate to their needs.
   B) increased the amount of financial aid to disabled people.
   C) guaranteed free, lifetime medical care and physical therapy for Vietnam War veterans.
   D) added handicapped people to the list of Americans protected from discrimination.
   E) prohibits employment discrimination against the disabled.
Answer: D
103) The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990

A) required all governmental buildings to have wheelchair-accessible entrances and facilities.
B) added AIDS victims to the list of handicapped persons.
C) prohibited employment discrimination against the disabled.
D) added handicapped people to the list of Americans protected from discrimination.
E) required an affirmative action program for the disabled.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 166
Edition: National

104) Opposition to Civil Rights laws for the handicapped has been justified primarily on the basis of the

A) inability of disabled persons to handle most employment requirements.
B) fear that laws will lead to a quota system to hire disabled persons.
C) high cost of programs to help the disabled.
D) fear that the disabled will take jobs away from able-bodied persons.
E) all of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 166–167
Edition: National

105) Homophobia refers to

A) fear and hatred toward gay men and lesbian women.
B) the tendency to be sexually attracted to members of one’s own sex.
C) the development of positive stereotypes concerning gay men and lesbian women.
D) promoting the Civil Rights of gay men and lesbian women.
E) an attitude of tolerance and acceptance toward gay men and lesbian women.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 167
Edition: National
106) Affirmative action seeks to move beyond
   A) equal results to equal opportunity.
   B) equal opportunity to equal results.
   C) equal opportunity to equal rights.
   D) equal rights to equal opportunity.
   E) negativism to positivism in human relations.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 169
Edition: National

107) The public policy paths for women and minorities converged in the debate about
   A) affirmative action.
   B) the Equal Rights Amendment.
   C) military service.
   D) gay rights.
   E) comparable worth.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 169
Edition: National

108) The goal of affirmative action is to move toward
   A) equal facilities.
   B) equal opportunity.
   C) equal results.
   D) equal pay.
   E) comparable worth.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 169
Edition: National

109) The strongest and most controversial form of affirmative action is
   A) busing.
   B) comparable worth.
   C) numerical quotas.
   D) comparative worth.
   E) equal opportunity.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 169
Edition: National
110) The Supreme Court ruled against some of the basic principles of affirmative action in which of the following cases?

A) Metro Broadcasting Inc. v. Federal Communications Commission
B) Fullilove v. Klutznick
C) Regents of the University of California v. Bakke
D) United Steelworkers of America, AFL-CIO v. Weber
E) all of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 170
Edition: National

111) Which of the following statements about affirmative action is FALSE?

A) The constitutional status of affirmative action has not been very clear.
B) Affirmative action puts an emphasis on equal results and not merely equal opportunities.
C) Affirmative action has been used to establish special provisions to ensure that a portion of school admissions go to minorities and women.
D) Polling data shows that most Americans support affirmative action.
E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 169
Edition: National

112) The case of Regents of the University of California v. Bakke dealt with

A) affirmative action.
B) sexual harassment.
C) the right to establish a gay student organization.
D) comparable worth.
E) paid maternity leave.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 170
Edition: National
113) In the case of *Regents of the University of California v. Bakke*, the United States Supreme Court
   A) upheld all affirmative action programs as justified and constitutional.
   B) ruled that the University of California–Davis medical school could not discriminate against women, African Americans, or other minority groups.
   C) outlawed all affirmative action programs as unconstitutional.
   D) ruled that state–run nursing schools could not discriminate against men in admissions to their programs.
   E) upheld affirmative action programs, but limited their scope, and outlawed racial quota set-asides.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 170
   Edition: National

114) In the case of __________, the Supreme Court ruled that affirmative action programs were not unconstitutional, but they could not involve a set-aside quota of spots available only to members of particular groups.
   A) *Craig v. Boren*
   B) *Korematsu v. United States*
   C) *Regents of the University of California v. Bakke*
   D) *Reed v. Reed*
   E) *Roe v. Wade*

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 170
   Edition: National

115) In its 1995 ruling in *Adarand Constructors v. Pena*, the Supreme Court
   A) changed direction and began to curtail federal use of affirmative action programs.
   B) outlawed discrimination against women in the construction industry.
   C) mandated an expansion of federal affirmative action programs.
   D) upheld federal affirmative action programs as constitutional.
   E) broadened the scope of state and local affirmative action programs that it considers constitutional.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 170
   Edition: National
116) In the case of *Regents of the University of California v. Bakke*, the Court
A) refused to allow the admission of Bakke to University of California–Davis.
B) was united in its decision.
C) ordered that University of California–Davis could not use race as a criterion for admission.
D) ruled that nursing schools cannot discriminate against men in their admissions procedures.
E) ruled that a public university could not set aside a quota of spots for particular groups.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 170
Edition: National

117) Which of the following statements about Supreme Court rulings concerning affirmative action is FALSE?
A) The Court has approved preferential treatment of minorities in promotions.
B) The Court has ruled that affirmative action can exempt recently hired minorities from traditional work rules specifying "last hired, first fired" order of layoffs.
C) The Court has ordered quotas for minority union memberships.
D) The Court has ruled that public employers may use affirmative action promotion plans to counter the underrepresentation of women and minorities in the workplace.
E) none of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 170
Edition: National

118) Affirmative action programs are referred to by critics as
A) negative reaction.
B) reverse discrimination.
C) positive negativism.
D) comparable worth.
E) degenderizing.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 171
Edition: National
119) Supporters of affirmative action believe that
   A) affirmative action produces so important a social goal that some reverse discrimination is acceptable.
   B) merit is the only fair basis for distributing benefits.
   C) discrimination is wrong, even when its purpose is to rectify past injustices.
   D) any form of quota system is unjust.
   E) some discrimination is acceptable.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 171
Edition: National

120) When proposition 209 was passed in California in 1996, it banned
   A) affirmative action in public hiring, contracting, and educational admissions.
   B) affirmative action in federal hiring.
   C) affirmative action on behalf of homosexuals.
   D) affirmative action in the private sector.
   E) affirmative action on behalf of women.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 171
Edition: National

121) Which of the following statements is FALSE?
   A) Civil rights policies have expanded the power of government.
   B) The steady expansion of civil rights has brought more groups into the democratic process.
   C) Current civil rights policies conform to the eighteenth-century idea of limited government.
   D) The rights ensured by the First Amendment are essential to a democracy.
   E) Lyndon Johnson was president when civil rights legislation was passed in the 1960s.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 172-173
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Historically, equality in American society has tended to emphasize equal results.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 142
Edition: National
2) The word equality does not appear in the original Constitution.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National

3) The Bill of Rights does not refer to equality.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National

4) The Fourteenth Amendment forbids slavery and grants the right to vote to African Americans and other non-whites in the United States.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 143
   Edition: National

5) Scott v. Sandford was the Supreme Court's landmark decision that declared slavery was unconstitutional in all the United States.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 145
   Edition: National

6) In Plessy v. Ferguson, the Supreme Court provided a constitutional justification for segregation, establishing the separate but equal doctrine.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 146
   Edition: National

7) De jure segregation is that which is done by law.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 148
   Edition: National

8) The Civil Rights Act of 1964 made racial discrimination illegal in hotels, motels, restaurants, and other places of public accommodation, and forbade many forms of job discrimination.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 150
   Edition: National

9) The Twenty-fourth Amendment outlawed the grandfather clause, which was still being used until the 1960s to deny African Americans their constitutional right to vote.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 152
   Edition: National
10) The Indian Bill of Rights was adopted as Title II of the Civil Rights Act of 1968, applying most of the provisions of the Constitution’s Bill of Rights to tribal governments.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 154
Edition: National

11) The Mexican American Legal Districting Election Force (MALDEF) is modeled after NAACP.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 155
Edition: National

12) There are now about 1000 elected Hispanic officials in the United States.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 156
Edition: National

13) In Korematsu v. United States, the Supreme Court ruled that the public order requiring Japanese Americans to be removed from the west coast during World War II and placed in internment camps was racist and unconstitutional.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 156
Edition: National

14) In early American society, married women could have no legal identity separate from that of their husbands.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 157
Edition: National

15) With the ratification of the Nineteenth Amendment, adult women throughout the United States were allowed to vote in the presidential election of 1920.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 157
Edition: National

16) After winning the right to vote for women, the feminist movement gained momentum in the 1920s.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 158
Edition: National

17) Many of the litigants in cases raising constitutional questions about sexual discrimination have been men seeking equality with women in their treatment under the law.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 160
Edition: National
18) The Equal Rights Amendment to the Constitution, designed to guarantee women equality under the law, failed to be ratified.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 160
Edition: National

19) Title IX of the Education Act of 1972 forbids racial discrimination in federally subsidized education programs (which include almost all colleges and universities).

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 161
Edition: National

20) Women, as well as men, are now required to register for the military draft.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 162
Edition: National

21) Before the advent of the contemporary feminist movement, the Supreme Court upheld virtually any instance of gender-based discrimination.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 161
Edition: National

22) AIDS victims are considered handicapped and included under laws protecting the rights of the disabled.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 166
Edition: National

23) In the case of Regents of the University of California v. Bakke, the Supreme Court ruled that race could never be considered in admissions policies, and declared all affirmative action programs to be unconstitutional.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 170
Edition: National

24) Since 1995, the Supreme Court has consistently supported the use of affirmative action in both the public and private sector.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 170-171
Edition: National
25) The Supreme Court has been consistent over the years in supporting the principle of affirmative action, interpreted primarily as the use of quotas in hiring and promotion.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 169–171
Edition: National

26) Adarand Constructors v. Pena voided federal affirmative action programs in general.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 170
Edition: National

27) Civil rights laws increase the scope and power of government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 173
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) Americans tend to favor equality of _______ rather than equal results.

Answer: opportunity
Page Ref: 142
Edition: National

2) The phrase "equal protection of the laws" is found in the _______.

Answer: Fourteenth Amendment
Page Ref: 143
Edition: National

3) Briefly explain the primary significance of the Fourteenth Amendment.

Answer: One of three amendments passed after the Civil War, the Fourteenth Amendment is the first and only place in which the idea of equality appears in the Constitution.
Page Ref: 143
Edition: National

4) In the case of ________, the Supreme Court ruled that a black man was "chattel" who had no rights under a white man's government, and that Congress had no power to ban slavery in the western territories.

Answer: Dred Scott v. Sandford
Page Ref: 145
Edition: National

5) Compare and contrast the Supreme Court cases of Plessy v. Ferguson and Brown v. Board of Education.

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 146–147
Edition: National
6) The Supreme Court’s decision in Brown v. Board of Education overturned the separate but equal doctrine an earlier Court had established in the 1896 case of _______.

Answer: Plessy v. Ferguson
Page Ref: 147
Edition: National

7) The ______ Amendment, adopted in 1870, guaranteed African Americans the right to vote, though it proved difficult to enforce for many decades.

Answer: Fifteenth
Page Ref: 152
Edition: National

8) What were the main provisions of the Civil Rights Act of 1964?

Answer: made racial discrimination illegal in public places, forbade discrimination in employment, created the EEOC, provided for withholding federal grants from state and local governments that practiced racial discrimination, strengthened voting rights legislation, authored the Justice Department to initiate lawsuits to desegregate public schools and facilities

Page Ref: 152
Edition: National

9) What were some of the methods used by southern states to deny African Americans the right to vote after passage of the Fifteenth Amendment?

Answer: poll taxes, white primaries, grandfather clause

Page Ref: 152
Edition: National

10) Early strategies of Native Americans to secure their civil rights included _______, while more recently they have begun to use the courts.

Answer: financial claims and protest
Page Ref: 154–155
Edition: National

11) The Supreme Court upheld the constitutionality of the United States government’s decision to remove the Japanese Americans from the west coast and place them in internment camps during World War II in what famous case?

Answer: Korematsu v. United States
Page Ref: 156
Edition: National

12) The_______ was applied to San Antonio, Texas, and as a result helped Latinos elect Mayor Henry Cisneros.

Answer: Voting Rights Act of 1965
Page Ref: 152
Edition: National
13) The ______ Amendment guaranteed suffrage to women.

   Answer: Nineteenth  
   Page Ref: 157  
   Edition: National

14) The United States Constitution was changed by amendment to allow adult women throughout the country the right to vote beginning in the presidential election of _______.

   Answer: 1920  
   Page Ref: 157  
   Edition: National

15) The issue of traditional women's jobs being paid considerably less than traditional men's jobs requiring similar skills or effort is called _______.

   Answer: comparable worth  
   Page Ref: 161  
   Edition: National

16) What is meant by the principle of comparable worth?

   Answer: the issue raised when women who hold traditionally female jobs are paid less than men for working at jobs requiring comparable skill  
   Page Ref: 161  
   Edition: National

17) Sexual harassment that is so pervasive as to create a hostile or abusive work environment is a form of gender discrimination, which is forbidden by the _______.

   Answer: 1964 Civil Rights Act  
   Page Ref: 163–164  
   Edition: National

18) The blind, deaf, and mobility-impaired were given new protection against employment discrimination, and employers were required to make "reasonable accommodations" to their needs in the _______ of 1990.

   Answer: Americans with Disabilities Act  
   Page Ref: 166  
   Edition: National

19) The United States Supreme Court's decision in the Regents of the University of California v. Bakke case limited the scope of ________ programs, and severely restricted the use of set-aside quotas.

   Answer: affirmative action  
   Page Ref: 170  
   Edition: National
20) What was the significance of the Supreme Court case of Regents of the University of California v. Bakke (1978)?

Answer: the case in which the Supreme Court ruled that a state university could not admit less qualified individuals solely because of their race; eliminated the use of quotas by state governments

Page Ref: 170
Edition: National

21) In 1996, California voters passed ________, which banned state affirmative action programs based on race, ethnicity, or gender in public hiring, contracting, and educational programs.

Answer: Proposition 209
Page Ref: 171
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Compare and contrast how the issues of equality for blacks and women were treated in the Constitutional Convention and in the Constitution itself. What constitutional amendments subsequently addressed issues of equality for these two groups?

Page Ref: 143–154; 157–164
Edition: National

2) What were the views and conceptions of equality during the early years of the American republic? What does the Constitution say about equality and civil rights?

Page Ref: 142–143
Edition: National

3) How has the notion of equality changed in the United States since our founding as a republic? Have expanded rights for women, African Americans, Native Americans, and other groups made the nation more truly equal? Explain.

Page Ref: 143–172
Edition: National

4) The equal protection clause has been used extensively. Describe its significance, and how courts have used it to rule on matters related to racial and gender equality. Do you approve of this use of the clause? Explain.

Page Ref: 142; 169
Edition: National

5) Describe the Supreme Court decision in the Scott v. Sandford case and explain its significance. After the Civil War, what laws were passed to undo the Dred Scott case and provide greater rights for African Americans? Why did these prove insufficient? Explain.

Page Ref: 145–154
Edition: National
6) Describe the three eras that delineate African-Americans’ struggle for equality in America. Explain how the roles of the court and Congress changed through the three eras.

Page Ref: 143-154; 169-172
Edition: National

7) How has the struggle for equality among other racial minority groups compared to that of African Americans? Use specific examples to illustrate your answer.

Page Ref: 164-169
Edition: National

8) The history of the struggle for equality is linked with the history of individuals. Who were/are some of the individuals involved in the struggle for equality among African Americans, women, and other groups? How have they changed conditions for the group they represent?

Page Ref: 144-171
Edition: National

9) What was so dramatic about the Supreme Court’s decision in Brown v. Board of Education? How did the decision affect schools in its immediate aftermath? Should the Court have been more aggressive, or less? Explain.

Page Ref: 147
Edition: National

10) Although the Fifteenth Amendment specifically guaranteed the right to vote for African Americans, what legal devices did southern states use to get around it? How and when were these devices removed? Explain.

Page Ref: 152
Edition: National

11) Other than women and racial and ethnic minorities, what other groups have sought over the past few decades for greater recognition of their civil rights? With what success? Do you agree that these groups are entitled to similar civil rights protection? Explain.

Page Ref: 164-169
Edition: National

12) Who are the new entrants under the civil rights umbrella? Explain how their struggles have differed from those of the African-Americans and women.

Page Ref: 154-157; 164-169
Edition: National

13) Discuss recent Supreme Court decisions regarding the rights of homosexuals. To what extent have these decisions expanded equality to homosexuals? What social factors limit the likely expansion of equality to homosexuals?

Page Ref: 167
Edition: National
14) What is the purpose of affirmative action programs? Analyze arguments for and against the use of affirmative action programs in both the public and private sectors.

Page Ref: 169-172
Edition: National

15) What is meant by affirmative action? How have the courts ruled on affirmative action? Give examples.

Page Ref: 169-172
Edition: National

16) Explain the Supreme Court's ruling in *Adarand Constructors v. Pena*. How did this decision differ from earlier ones? To what extent did this decision void federal affirmative action programs?

Page Ref: 170
Edition: National

17) How has civil rights affected democratic government and the scope of government in the United States? What are the basic conflicts between civil rights and democracy?

Page Ref: 172-173
Edition: National

18) Explain how civil rights laws expand both the scope and power of government, citing specific court decisions and federal laws as evidence.

Page Ref: 172-173
Edition: National
Chapter 6  Public Opinion and Political Action

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) The science of population changes is
   A) polling.
   B) anthropology.
   C) popuology.
   D) demography.
   E) the census.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 178
   Edition: National

2) The most valuable method for understanding demographic changes in America is the
   A) Statistical Abstract of the United States.
   B) public opinion poll.
   C) census.
   D) turnout in presidential elections.
   E) Internal Revenue Service statistical tax abstracts.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 178
   Edition: National

3) ______ is the distribution of the population's beliefs about politics and policy issues.
   A) Random sampling
   B) Direct mail
   C) Political socialization
   D) Public opinion
   E) Political ideology
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 178
   Edition: National
4) Which of the following statements about the American people is FALSE?

A) There are about 295 million Americans.
B) Most Americans view cultural diversity as one of the least appealing aspects of their society.
C) America is one of the most culturally diverse countries in the world.
D) America was founded on the principle of tolerating diversity.
E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National

5) The science of population changes is called

A) public opinion.
B) demography.
C) political science.
D) census.
E) popuology.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National

6) Public opinion is defined in the text as

A) opinions which are expressible in public, as opposed to the more truthful private opinions which most individuals are reluctant to state publicly.
B) beliefs about government held by a majority of people.
C) opinions solicited from a random sample of the public.
D) the distribution of the population's beliefs about politics and policy.
E) widely held beliefs about the public's role in politics and policy.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National
7) By constitutional requirement, the government conducts the United States Census every
   A) two years.
   B) year.
   C) five years.
   D) presidential election year.
   E) ten years.
Answer: E
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National

8) The United States Constitution requires that the government conduct an "actual enumeration" of the population every
   A) ten years.
   B) 25 years.
   C) year.
   D) five years.
   E) presidential election year.
Answer: A
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National

9) The first census in the United States was conducted in
   A) 1900.
   B) 1790.
   C) 1970.
   D) 1850.
   E) 1800.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National

10) An issue that became controversial regarding the 1990 census was
    A) inclusion of immigrants.
    B) cost of the census.
    C) the undercount of minority groups.
    D) the overcount of urbanites.
    E) none of the above
Answer: C
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National
11) The 2000 census indicated that the largest minority population is comprised of
   A) illegals.
   B) African Americans.
   C) Asian Americans.
   D) Hispanics.
   E) Native Americans.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 180
   Edition: National

12) Approximately what percent of African Americans live below the poverty line?
   A) 28
   B) 42
   C) 25
   D) 6
   E) 17
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 180
   Edition: National

13) The largest racial/ethnic minority group in the United States is
   A) African Americans.
   B) Asian Americans.
   C) Native Americans.
   D) Hispanics.
   E) African Americans and Hispanics are tied in size.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 180
   Edition: National

14) Approximately what percent of Asian Americans hold a college degree?
   A) 32
   B) 49
   C) 12
   D) 22
   E) 60
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 181
   Edition: National
15) The least healthy, poorest, and least educated racial/ethnic group in the United States is

A) African Americans.
B) Native Americans.
C) Asian Americans.
D) Hispanics.
E) Caucasians.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 181
Edition: National

16) The most recent wave of immigration since World War II has consisted primarily of

A) Africans.
B) Hispanics and Asians.
C) northwestern Europeans.
D) southern and eastern Europeans.
E) refugees from communist countries.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 179
Edition: National

17) Demographic changes in the United States population could translate to political consequences through the process of

A) political socialization.
B) political acculturation.
C) reapportionment.
D) political assimilation
E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 183
Edition: National
18) The term "minority majority" refers to the fact that
   A) the majority in America has always been a collection of minority ethnic groups.
   B) minority groups have been able to impose their will upon the majority.
   C) America will soon cease to have a white majority and together the minority groups will become a majority.
   D) African Americans are the largest minority group in the United States.
   E) Hispanic Americans will soon become the largest minority group in the United States.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 179
   Edition: National

19) African Americans comprise what proportion of the American population?
   A) about 30 percent
   B) about 25 percent
   C) about 12 percent
   D) about 20 percent
   E) about 5 percent

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 180
   Edition: National

20) Hispanics comprise approximately what percent of the American population?
   A) 13 percent
   B) 5 percent
   C) 23 percent
   D) 18 percent
   E) 28 percent

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 180
   Edition: National

21) The largest component of the minority majority is the
   A) Asian population.
   B) Caucasian population.
   C) Hispanic population.
   D) Native-American population.
   E) African-American population.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 180
   Edition: National
22) Which of the following statements is FALSE?

A) Hispanics are primarily concentrated in the rural areas.

B) In the 2000 Census, the Hispanic population outnumbered the African–American population.

C) African Americans have recently been exercising a good deal of political power.

D) about 24 percent of African Americans currently live under the poverty line.

E) none of the above

Answer: A

23) Unlike Hispanics who have come to America to escape poverty, the recent influx of Asians has been driven by

A) upper-class elites who feared political persecution.

B) civil wars.

C) a new class of professionals looking for greater opportunity.

D) ethnic minorities seeking refuge from human rights violations.

E) B and C only

Answer: C

24) Native Americans tend to be

A) the poorest group in America.

B) the least educated group in America.

C) the least healthy group in America.

D) all of the above

E) none of the above

Answer: D
25) The Simpson-Mazzoli Act
   A) represented a crackdown on illegal aliens by requiring that employers document the citizenship or legitimate immigrant status of workers or pay stiff fines.
   B) requires that states keep their polls open for at least ten hours on election day in order to facilitate participation.
   C) established federal guidelines and regulations for taking public opinion polls.
   D) reformed the jury procedures in felony cases, particularly the unanimous verdict requirement.
   E) required that the homeless be counted in the 1990 census.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 180–181
   Edition: National

26) The ______ Act required that as of 1987, employers document the citizenship or legal immigrant status of their employees, or face substantial criminal penalties for failing to do so.
   A) National Origins
   B) Simpson-Mazzoli
   C) National Labor Relations
   D) Hatch
   E) Immigrant Employment

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 180–181
   Edition: National

27) The least-healthy, the poorest, and the least-educated group in the American mosaic are the
   A) Hispanic Americans.
   B) Appalachian Caucasians.
   C) Native-American Indians.
   D) Asian Americans.
   E) African Americans.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 181
   Edition: National
28) The Simpson-Mazzoli Act

A) required employers to document the citizenship of their employees.
B) granted amnesty to all illegal aliens.
C) established a National Identification Card that all Americans will have to possess by the year 2000 in order to get employment.
D) placed a limit on the number of Mexican immigrants allowed in the United States per year.
E) required all immigrants to register with the Immigration and Naturalization Service.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 180-181
Edition: National

29) The worst off of America’s minority groups are

A) Native Americans.
B) homosexuals.
C) Asian Americans.
D) African Americans.
E) Hispanic Americans.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 181
Edition: National

30) Political culture refers to

A) a set of beliefs about the role of government in society.
B) how truly "American" someone is.
C) an overall set of values widely shared within a society.
D) a high degree of homogeneity in political opinions.
E) political party affiliation.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 182
Edition: National
31) Over the last fifty years much of America's population growth has occurred
   A) on the East Coast.
   B) east of the Mississippi River.
   C) north of the Mason–Dixon line.
   D) in the West and South.
   E) in the Midwest.

   Answer: D

32) Between 1990 and 2000,
   A) states in the Southwest were losing population.
   B) the Sunbelt continued to experience rapid population growth.
   C) the Midwest became the fastest-growing region in the country.
   D) the Frostbelt had begun to gain population again.
   E) the Pacific Coast states were the fastest-growing region of the country.

   Answer: B

33) ________ occurs after every census to reallocate the 435 seats in the United States House of
    Representatives, reflecting shifts in the population of the states and, thus, how many seats
    each state is allotted.
    A) Equalization
    B) Restructuring
    C) Political socialization
    D) Reapportionment
    E) Demography

   Answer: D
34) Reapportionment occurs after every census to reallocate seats in
   A) the Senate.
   B) the president’s cabinet.
   C) the Supreme Court.
   D) the House of Representatives.
   E) both the House of Representatives and the Senate.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 183
Edition: National

35) Nationwide, the fastest growing age group is composed of
   A) those under 13 years old.
   B) one-year-olds.
   C) those between 13–21 years old.
   D) those over 65 years old.
   E) those between 21–30 years old.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 183
Edition: National

36) Which of the following states has increased its representation in the House from just seven in 1900 to 53 today?
   A) Florida
   B) Texas
   C) New York
   D) California
   E) Georgia

Answer: D
Page Ref: 183
Edition: National

37) Reapportionment
   A) can dramatically shift political power between the regions.
   B) affects how much federal aid population groups can receive.
   C) changes the states’ number of representatives in the United States Senate.
   D) has most recently increased congressional representation for New England.
   E) rarely occurs.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 183
Edition: National
38) The process through which an individual acquires his or her particular political orientations, including his or her knowledge, feelings, and evaluations regarding his or her political world, is known as

A) political orientation.
B) demography.
C) political socialization.
D) political ideology.
E) political indoctrination.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 184
Edition: National

39) One can predict how the majority of young people will vote simply by

A) knowing the political leaning of their parents.
B) knowing the political leaning of their friends.
C) knowing their race.
D) knowing the political leaning of their teachers.
E) knowing their age.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 185
Edition: National

40) Political socialization is defined as

A) the distribution of the population’s beliefs about politics and policy issues.
B) the various political roles that individuals play in society.
C) a coherent set of values and beliefs about public policy.
D) the process through which an individual acquires his or her particular political orientations.
E) the activities used by citizens to influence the selection of political leaders or the policies they pursue.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 184
Edition: National
41) The family’s role in political socialization is central because
   A) parents tend to purposively guide their children’s political orientations.
   B) of children’s tendencies to rebel against parents and their beliefs.
   C) the family puts emphasis on formal political education.
   D) of its monopoly on time and emotional commitment.
   E) all of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 185
Edition: National

42) Both authoritarian and democratic political systems seek to teach citizens, especially youth, the positive aspects of their political systems because
   A) youth are most gullible.
   B) it enhances ruling elite’s political power over the citizenry.
   C) both types of political systems rely directly on citizen support.
   D) youth will then grow up to be supportive citizens.
   E) youth think alike.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 184–185
Edition: National

43) According to many observers, "the new parent" in the socialization process has become
   A) schools.
   B) interest groups.
   C) the mass media.
   D) the mother.
   E) friends and peers.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 185
Edition: National

44) The most obvious intrusion of the government into America’s socialization is through
   A) political parties.
   B) the family.
   C) schooling.
   D) the mass media.
   E) criminal laws.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 186–187
Edition: National
45) Governments throughout the world use the schools to help with the _______ of young people.
   A) random sampling
   B) political socialization
   C) voter registration
   D) civil disobedience
   E) demography
   Answer: B

46) As one becomes more socialized with age, one's political orientations
   A) become less important.
   B) change as one's position in the aging order changes their life conditions.
   C) grow firmer.
   D) lack commitment.
   E) fluctuate more.
   Answer: C

47) One of the effects of growing older on political learning and political behavior is that
   A) political participation increases with age.
   B) people become more liberal with age.
   C) interest in politics decreases with age.
   D) the strength of one's party attachment declines with age.
   E) political ignorance increases with age.
   Answer: A

48) Public opinion polling was first begun in 1932 by
   A) George Gallup.
   B) the Democratic party.
   C) Louis Harris.
   D) the Associated Press.
   E) Henry Luce.
   Answer: A
49) Because it would be prohibitively expensive to ask every citizen his or her opinion on a whole range of issues, polls rely on what is called a(n) ________ of the population.

   A) extraction  
   B) sample  
   C) census  
   D) slice  
   E) demography

Answer: B

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

50) In public opinion polling, a sample as small as about ________ people can faithfully represent the “universe” of Americans.

   A) 10,000  
   B) 1,500  
   C) 20,000  
   D) 5,000  
   E) 50,000

Answer: B

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

51) The key to the accuracy of public opinion polls is

   A) political ideology.  
   B) polygraphs.  
   C) sampling error.  
   D) the larger the size of the sample, the better.  
   E) random sampling.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National
52) Sampling error describes
   A) how many samples a survey estimate is based on.
   B) what percentage of the sample provided answers to the questions.
   C) how close a sample estimate is to the real population value.
   D) how often a sample statistic is correct.
   E) how many samples are incorrect.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

53) Random sampling in public opinion polling operates on the principle that
   A) which answers to include in aggregate poll results must be selected by chance in order to maximize accuracy.
   B) everyone should have an equal probability of being selected.
   C) the questions to be asked of a given respondent must be selected randomly so that all respondents are asked the same question the same number of times.
   D) the larger the number of people who are polled, the greater accuracy of the poll.
   E) both B and C

Answer: B

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

54) Random sampling is considered
   A) desirable, but not necessary, for an accurate poll of public opinion.
   B) an unsophisticated way of measuring public opinion, but one that sometimes yields accurate results.
   C) highly unreliable, but the cheapest way to measure public opinion.
   D) the key to the accuracy of opinion polls.
   E) a dangerous way to measure public opinion.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National
55) The level of confidence about a public opinion poll is referred to as

   A) the confidence index.
   B) sampling error.
   C) the sample.
   D) random sampling.
   E) demographic certainty.

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 189*  
*Edition: National*

56) In 1936, the *Literary Digest* wrongly predicted the defeat of President Franklin Roosevelt, having polled over two million people. The problem was

   A) they polled too few people.
   B) it used exit polling rather than entry polling and conducted the poll too far in advance of the election.
   C) they polled too many people who were not an accurate representation of the American electorate.
   D) they polled too many people.
   E) they failed to take into account that people sometimes lie in polls, and did not take precautions to prevent this.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 189*  
*Edition: National*

57) A relatively small proportion of people who are chosen as representative of the whole is called a(n)

   A) quota sample.
   B) population.
   C) census.
   D) sample.
   E) cohort.

Answer: D  
*Page Ref: 189*  
*Edition: National*
58) Public opinion polls are only estimates because
   A) samples of fewer then one million people are too small.
   B) all surveys have a sampling error.
   C) pollsters sometimes have to make educated guesses about the results.
   D) random digit dialing has replaced person–to–person interviewing.
   E) samples are not representative.

   Answer: B

59) A pollster using a representative sample of 1,500 Americans finds that 52 percent support candidate X and 48 percent support candidate Y. The pollster’s conclusion should be that
   A) the race is too close to call because of a possible sampling error.
   B) the poll should be retaken using random digit dialing.
   C) the poll should be retaken with a larger sample.
   D) polls are unreliable predictors of political outcomes.
   E) X is likely to win.

   Answer: A

60) A random sample of 1500–2000 respondents will produce results far off the mark about _______ of the time.
   A) 10 percent
   B) 25 percent
   C) 5 percent
   D) 35 percent
   E) 1 percent

   Answer: C
61) The 1936 *Literary Digest* poll underestimated the vote for President Franklin Roosevelt by 19 percent because

A) the sample was drawn from telephone books and motor-vehicle records.
B) the literary intelligentsia as a group never did like Roosevelt.
C) the sample was too small.
D) not enough women were interviewed.
E) people did not tell the truth.

Answer: A

62) Most polling today is done

A) by mail.
B) by computer modem and fax.
C) at shopping malls.
D) in person.
E) by phone.

Answer: E

63) Samples of public opinion today are usually selected through

A) voter registration lists.
B) cities and towns throughout the country believed to be "bellwethers," which accurately represent the entire nation.
C) selective respondent profiles.
D) random digit dialing.
E) phone books.

Answer: D
64) Which of the following is NOT a criticism of modern polling?

A) Careful attention to polls is unwise, as polls only reflect the passive attitudes of voters.
B) Politicians use polls to follow the crowd rather than to assert bold leadership.
C) Polls can distort the election process by creating a bandwagon effect, where people want to follow the crowd.
D) Polls are subject to very wide margins of error, yet are treated as accurate measurements of public opinion.
E) all of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 191–192
Edition: National

65) Today, most polling is done through

A) random digit dialing.
B) entry polls.
C) door-to-door interviewing.
D) man-on-the-street interviewing.
E) exit polls.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 190
Edition: National

66) Concerns about reliance of pollsters on telephone surveys have recently been caused by

A) decreased chances of finding people at home.
B) increased use of random digit dialing.
C) increased non-listing of phone numbers.
D) increased use of cell phones.
E) a decrease in no-call lists.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 190
Edition: National
67) Which of the following statements about public opinion polling is FALSE?
   A) Public opinion polling started in 1932 with George Gallup.
   B) Sample sizes are getting smaller, not larger.
   C) The amount of public opinion polling has increased in recent years.
   D) Public opinion polling is a uniquely American phenomenon.
   E) A sample of 1,500 people is enough to relatively accurately reflect the universe of American people.

   Answer: D
   *Page Ref: 189-190*
   *Edition: National*

68) According to the text, public opinion polls are
   A) unimportant since what people say and what people do are two different things.
   B) becoming less important as more people recognize their inaccuracies.
   C) important because results can sway people to change their political preferences.
   D) largely meaningless because they tend to measure people's responses to an agenda set by the pollster and assumptions embedded in the questions by the pollster.
   E) important because policymakers can keep in touch with changing opinions on the issues.

   Answer: E
   *Page Ref: 191*
   *Edition: National*

69) Public opinion polls can weaken democracy by
   A) drowning out election issues with a steady flood of poll results.
   B) undermining the bandwagon effect and encouraging voters to support candidates without regard for the opinions of others.
   C) predicting the wrong winner in a close election.
   D) misleading politicians with delayed and outdated information about changing opinions of the public.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 191-192*
   *Edition: National*
70) Critics of polling think
   A) it gives politicians the wrong information.
   B) it makes politicians more concerned with following than leading.
   C) the public’s opinion should not be taken into account.
   D) it could lead to a tyranny of the majority.
   E) B and D only

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 191–192
   Edition: National

71) A disadvantage of telephone public opinion surveys is
   A) that they cost more than face-to-face surveys.
   B) that they have a lower response rate than face-to-face interviews.
   C) that some individuals do not own phones.
   D) that they have a lower response rate than mail interviews.
   E) both B and C

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 190
   Edition: National

72) An exit poll is taken
   A) just prior to the election, in order to get a last reading of the public’s views.
   B) to measure an officeholder’s popularity as he or she is leaving office.
   C) as people leave supermarkets, shopping malls, sporting events, or movies, and are thus available for interviews.
   D) on election day, by interviewing voters as they leave the polling place.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 191
   Edition: National
73) For ________, voting places are randomly selected around the country, and interviewers ask every tenth person how they voted.

A) absentee balloting  
B) a referendum  
C) preventing voting fraud  
D) reapportionment  
E) an exit poll

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 191  
Edition: National

74) Which of the following is NOT true about exit polls?

A) People are asked how they voted rather than how they plan to vote.  
B) Most people are contacted by the random digit dialing method.  
C) They are used by the media to project election winners before most votes have been counted except in close races.  
D) They have been criticized in presidential elections for declaring a winner before voting is completed in the West.  
E) They are being used more today than they were in the 1970s.

Answer: B  
Page Ref: 191  
Edition: National

75) Poll results can vary widely if

A) a question is altered, even slightly.  
B) based on exit polls.  
C) random sampling is used.  
D) the sample is too large.  
E) political socialization is not considered.

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 192  
Edition: National
76) In 2000, exit polls received much of the blame for the media's inaccurate call of the Florida result, but blame could also be placed on
   A) mistakes in early reporting of vote results in some counties.
   B) underestimates of the absentee vote.
   C) the incompetence of news anchorpersons.
   D) both A and B
   E) both A and C
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 192
   Edition: National

77) Public opinion analysts agree that the level of public knowledge about politics is
   A) pretty good.
   B) dismally low.
   C) constantly fluctuating.
   D) fair.
   E) surprisingly sharp and sophisticated.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 193
   Edition: National

78) If public opinion analysts agree about anything it is that
   A) the level of public knowledge about politics is dismally low.
   B) people have something to say about almost every issue.
   C) people's views on politics are coherent and consistent.
   D) people do not have opinions on most current public policy issues.
   E) people think about politics in very meaningful and abstract ways.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 193
   Edition: National
79) Public opinion polls have shown that
   A) most people can name their representatives, but do not know how they generally vote in Congress.
   B) people are more likely to recognize slogans from TV commercials than famous political figures.
   C) most people are well-informed about politics, but know little about geography.
   D) only during an international crisis are people able to locate specific countries involved in the crisis.
   E) political knowledge is higher now than it was forty years ago.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 193
   Edition: National

80) According to Russell Neuman, the paradox of mass politics is that the American political system works as well as it does given
   A) the fact that elected officials tend to ignore public opinion.
   B) the inaccuracy of public opinion polls giving politicians false information about what people want.
   C) the inability of people to express their opinion on issues and candidates.
   D) that most people do not even know what basic values they want upheld.
   E) the discomforting lack of public knowledge about politics.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 193
   Edition: National

81) Since the 1960s, Americans' trust in government has
   A) increased.
   B) decreased.
   C) stayed the same.
   D) been erratic.
   E) disappeared.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 193–194
   Edition: National
82) A _______ is a coherent set of values and beliefs about public policy.
   A) policy agenda
   B) political ideology
   C) demography
   D) public opinion
   E) political socialization
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 196
   Edition: National

83) Following the 1964 election,
   A) public interest in government dropped slightly for a brief period.
   B) public trust in government dropped significantly.
   C) public knowledge about political affairs improved significantly.
   D) public interest in campaigns increased.
   E) presidential approval increased significantly.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 193-194
   Edition: National

84) In 1980, about what percentage of the American public thought they could trust government most of the time or always?
   A) 75 percent
   B) 33 percent
   C) 50 percent
   D) 25 percent
   E) 60 percent
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 195
   Edition: National

85) According to Marc Hetherington, what is the largest impact of declining political trust?
   A) decreased respect of American politicians in the foreign pres
   B) decreased support for programs that address poverty and racial inequality
   C) higher taxes
   D) increased political ignorance
   E) the inability of the president to address pressing foreign policy concerns
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 195
   Edition: National
86) A political ideology is
   A) the process through which an individual acquires his or her political skills.
   B) a relatively small proportion of people who are chosen as representative of the whole.
   C) the distribution of the population’s beliefs about politics and policy issues.
   D) the set of courses that a political science student must complete to attain a degree.
   E) a coherent set of values and beliefs about public policy.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 196
Edition: National

87) Which of the following is TRUE about most liberals in American politics?
   A) They favor keeping taxes and government spending low.
   B) They believe we should guard carefully the rights of defendants in criminal cases.
   C) They are supportive of prayer in public schools.
   D) They oppose abortion.
   E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 196
Edition: National

88) Which of the following is TRUE of most conservatives in American politics?
   A) They favor free market solutions to problems rather than looking to the government for regulating business.
   B) They believe we should spend much less on the military budget.
   C) They are in favor of affirmative action programs.
   D) They are opposed to prayer in public schools.
   E) They oppose high levels of foreign aid.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 196
Edition: National
89) A political figure who is in favor of increased military spending, supported freedom of choice on abortion, opposed affirmative action programs, wanted to tax the rich more, and felt the courts should stop coddling criminals is a

A) socialist.
B) mixture of liberal and conservative.
C) liberal.
D) conservative.
E) populist.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 196
Edition: National

90) In general, liberal ideology supports

A) a strong central government that sets policies to promote equality.
B) individuals responding generously to each other to solve society’s problems without looking to government to do so.
C) a small, less active government that gives freer reign to the private sector.
D) public and government ownership of the means of production.
E) strong local and state governments that are closer to the people.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 196
Edition: National

91) Liberals tend to

A) support lower taxation.
B) favor maintaining peace through strength.
C) support lower government spending.
D) support school prayer.
E) none of the above

Answer: E

Page Ref: 196
Edition: National
92) Conservatives would tend to favor each of the following EXCEPT
   A) affirmative action.
   B) low taxes.
   C) increased military spending.
   D) free-market solutions.
   E) the right to life.

Answer: A

93) Historically disadvantaged groups tend to
   A) vote Republican.
   B) vote Democratic.
   C) vote for Green candidates.
   D) vote Libertarian.
   E) vote as Independents.

Answer: B

94) Compared to men, women are more likely to
   A) oppose higher levels of military spending.
   B) support spending on social services.
   C) be indifferent to issues of government spending.
   D) support military intervention around the world.
   E) both A and B

Answer: E

95) The term gender gap refers to
   A) greater success of men than women when running for office.
   B) greater poverty of women than of men.
   C) stable pattern where women tend to be more likely than men to vote Democratic.
   D) higher political contributions made by women than of men.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
96) The most liberal religious group in America are
   A) Christian Right.
   B) Jews.
   C) Catholics.
   D) Protestants.
   E) Muslims.
   Answer: B

97) According to the classic study, *The American Voter*, done in the 1950s, most Americans fell into the category of
   A) group benefits voters.
   B) ideologues.
   C) no-issue-content voters.
   D) anti-ideologues.
   E) nature-of-the-times voters.
   Answer: A

98) *The American Voter* study on ideological sophistication among voters in the 1950s showed that only a small percentage of Americans
   A) had no coherent political ideology.
   B) identified with groups reflecting their own interests.
   C) had a coherent political ideology.
   D) had ever taken a government or civics course.
   E) linked their own economic well-being with the party in power.
   Answer: C
99) *The American Voter* study on ideological sophistication among voters in the 1950s showed that a plurality of Americans were

A) group benefits voters.
B) ideologues.
C) nature-of-the-times voters.
D) authoritarian personalities.
E) no-issue-content voters.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 199
Edition: National

100) According to the categories used in the classic study, *The American Voter*, those who voted for a party out of routine, or judged candidates strictly by their personalities were classified as

A) group benefits voters.
B) nature-of-the-times voters.
C) ideologues.
D) personalistic voters.
E) no-issue-content voters.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 199
Edition: National

101) If the exact same methods are used to update the analysis of *The American Voter* study, one finds

A) there are more no-issue-content voters than group benefit voters in 1988.
B) a dramatic increase in the number of authoritarian personalities since 1956.
C) only some increase in the percentage of ideologues in 1988 compared to 1956.
D) half as many nature-of-the-times voters in 1988 than in 1956.
E) ideologues became a plurality in 1988.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 199
Edition: National
102) The authors of *The American Voter* would agree with each of the following statements EXCEPT

A) It is a misnomer to speak of election results as indicating a movement of the public either left or right.

B) For most people, the terms liberal and conservative are not as important as they are for the political elite.

C) People who think in ideological terms are most likely to switch parties from one election to the next.

D) Eisenhower’s two election victories represented a shift in the conservative direction during the 1950s.

E) none of the above

Answer: C

*Page Ref: 199*

*Edition: National*

103) When people vote according to the nature of the times,

A) partisan identification becomes an even stronger influence on aggregate voting.

B) they are not voting wisely.

C) they are more interested in results than ideology and judge presidents by results.

D) they are not making rational choices.

E) their opinions are not clearly heard.

Answer: C

*Page Ref: 199*

*Edition: National*

104) Recent presidential elections have shown

A) a sharp turn in public thinking to more conservative positions on issues.

B) that voters are less interested in ideology or issue positions than in candidate traits such as competence and integrity.

C) a sharp turn in public thinking to more liberal positions on issues.

D) a dramatic growth of ideological voters.

E) that voters are more interested in issue positions than in candidate ideology.

Answer: B

*Page Ref: 199*

*Edition: National*
105) In the presidential election of 2004, _______ of Americans voted.
   A) 69 percent
   B) 55 percent
   C) 39 percent
   D) 59 percent
   E) 45 percent

Answer: B
Page Ref: 201
Edition: National

106) Which of the following statements about political participation is FALSE?
   A) The mass protests throughout Eastern Europe in 1989 were an avalanche of political participation.
   B) Political participation can be organized or individual.
   C) Political activity is an important part of the everyday life of most Americans.
   D) Generally, the United States has a participatory political culture.
   E) Voting is one type of participation.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 201–202
Edition: National

107) The most common form of political participation in the United States is
   A) voting in presidential elections.
   B) voting in local elections.
   C) belonging to a political party.
   D) writing letters to public officials.
   E) working on a political campaign.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 201
Edition: National
108) Sidney Verba and his colleagues found that while voter turnout declined between 1967 and 1987,
   A) writing letters to the editor and contacting government officials increased.
   B) participating in non-political activities increased.
   C) protesting and giving money to candidates increased.
   D) contacting government officials and giving money to candidates increased.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 202
Edition: National

109) Protest
   A) involves consciously breaking a law thought to be unjust.
   B) usually involves the use of violence, even murder, to achieve desired results.
   C) is considered a conventional form of political participation.
   D) is designed to achieve policy change through dramatic and unconventional tactics.
   E) requires civil disobedience to be effective.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 202
Edition: National

110) Which of the following is typical of most adult Americans when it comes to political participation?
   A) A majority of Americans will participate in a protest such as a demonstration, strike, or sit-in at least once in their lives.
   B) Most will participate in all twelve major kinds of political activities at some point in their lives.
   C) Most will vote in an election, but only a minority of people do more than that politically.
   D) Most have never voted in an election.
   E) Most will vote in an election and do one or two other political activities—usually contacting local officials, joining a political club, or donating money to a candidate.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 201–202
Edition: National
111) Political protest is
   A) the use of unconventional and dramatic actions to achieve policy change.
   B) a recent phenomenon in American politics.
   C) generally ineffective in bringing about changes in public policy.
   D) against the law in the United States.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 202  
*Edition: National

112) Civil disobedience necessarily involves
   A) non-violent protests to achieve desired results.
   B) consciously breaking a law thought to be unjust.
   C) working within the laws to achieve objectives.
   D) rioting and violence to achieve desired results.
   E) A and D only

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 203  
*Edition: National

113) The most famous practitioner of civil disobedience in the United States during the twentieth century was this Nobel Peace Prize winner,

   A) Robert F. Kennedy.
   B) Mother Jones.
   C) John F. Kennedy.
   D) Jesse Jackson.
   E) Martin Luther King, Jr.

Answer: E  
*Page Ref: 203  
*Edition: National
114) Which of the following is an example of civil disobedience?
   A) accidentally failing to pay income tax on taxable income
   B) the Supreme Court throwing out a congressional statute on the grounds of its unconstitutionality
   C) cheating on this test!
   D) petitioning the government to legalize the possession of marijuana and other controlled substances
   E) consciously breaking a city’s law by purposely blocking entrance to a legally operating abortion clinic

   Answer: E

   Page Ref: 203
   Edition: National

115) ________ is consciously breaking a law that is thought to be unjust.
   A) Civil disobedience
   B) Protest
   C) Rebellion
   D) Boycotting
   E) Illegal politics

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 203
   Edition: National

116) Civil disobedience
   A) usually involves the use of violence.
   B) was first used by Dr. Martin Luther King Jr., to call attention to the injustice of segregation laws.
   C) is intentionally violating a law believed to be unjust in order to bring about change.
   D) occurs whenever a person violates a law and seeks to avoid the consequences.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: C

   Page Ref: 203
   Edition: National
117) Which of the following is TRUE in regard to the voting habits of African Americans and Hispanic Americans?
   A) They have always voted about as much as whites despite legal barriers.
   B) The gap between their voter turnout and that of whites has widened considerably over the past thirty years.
   C) Members of these groups are less likely to vote the higher their income.
   D) Members of these groups are more likely to vote than whites of the same income level.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 206
Edition: National

118) Which of the following groups would be LEAST likely to vote in a typical election?
   A) middle-class minority voters
   B) poor white voters
   C) rich white voters
   D) poor minority voters
   E) rich minority voters

Answer: B
Page Ref: 205
Edition: National

119) One of the reasons why the participation gap between minority groups and the national average is no longer enormous is because
   A) minorities are now the majority, and their average is the national average.
   B) the education and income levels of minorities are no longer significantly lower than that of whites.
   C) large numbers of minorities are now running for important political offices.
   D) education and income are no longer considered good predictors of voting behavior.
   E) minorities have a group consciousness that gives them an extra incentive to vote.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 206
Edition: National
120) There is evidence that when incomes and educational levels are equal

A) members of the majority tend to be more politically active than minorities.
B) members of minority groups tend to participate more than members of the majority.
C) Hispanics participate more than whites and African Americans participate less than whites.
D) Hispanics, African Americans, and women tend to be less politically active than white males.
E) the political participation of members of minority groups and the majority are also equal.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 206
Edition: National

121) President Ronald Reagan argued that

A) the national government should be abolished, with the states taking over in a very loose confederation system.
B) government was not the answer to the nation’s problems, government was the problem.
C) the nation’s problems required more, not less, government action.
D) the states did not have enough resources to solve their problems, therefore their role should be sharply reduced and the national government should take over many of the major functions of state governments.
E) although government had grown too fast, it should remain about the same size.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 206
Edition: National

122) Recent public opinion polls have shown that most Americans

A) favor the idea of big government in principle, but oppose it in practice.
B) oppose the idea of big government in principle, but favor it in practice.
C) oppose big government.
D) have strong opinions on the proper scope of government.
E) favor big government.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 206-207
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) In the United States, a census is taken every five years.

Answer: FALSE

Page Ref: 178
Edition: National
2) In recent years, illegal immigrants have outnumbered legal immigrants.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 179
Edition: National

3) As of the 2000 census, a majority of Americans were either African American, Hispanic, Asian, or Native American, meaning that the United States has become a “minority majority” nation.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 179
Edition: National

4) Between 1980 and 1990, minority populations grew at a much faster rate than the white population.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 180
Edition: National

5) The median family income of Asian-Americans is greater than that of non-Hispanic whites.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 181
Edition: National

6) Members of minority groups are disproportionately undercounted in the census.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National

7) In the Dakotas, over half of the Native Americans lived below the poverty line in 1990.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 182
Edition: National

8) After each census, the United States Senate is reapportioned to reallocate how many Senate seats each state has based on population changes.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 178
Edition: National

9) Most of our knowledge and opinions about politics is learned through formal, in-class learning.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 185
Edition: National
10) Average grade-school youngsters spend more time each week in school than they do watching television.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 185
Edition: National

11) For years, American children have been successfully educated in school about the virtues of capitalism and democracy.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 186
Edition: National

12) In public opinion polling in the United States, a random sampling of 1,000–1,500 people generally can faithfully represent the "universe" of potential voters, within a small margin of error.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

13) The most important feature of a public-opinion survey is the number of responses.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

14) Aging increases political participation, as well as strength of party attachment.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 188
Edition: National

15) Different wording of questions in public opinion polling can produce dramatically different results.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 192
Edition: National

16) The media’s incorrect call of the 2000 Florida vote for Gore can be blamed solely on its reliance on exit polls.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 192
Edition: National

17) Exit polls, normally taken on weekends as people leave busy supermarkets, shopping malls, sporting events, and movie theaters tend to be the most reliable and the easiest to conduct.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 191
Edition: National
18) The most criticized type of public opinion poll is the election-day exit poll.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 191
Edition: National

19) Jacobs and Shapiro’s research suggests that concerns about politicians “pandering” to poll results is well-founded.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 191
Edition: National

20) Public opinion polls routinely find that the American public has a high level of knowledge about the major political issues that candidates and government officials talk about.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 193
Edition: National

21) More people know their astrological sign than know the name of their representatives in Congress.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 193
Edition: National

22) Despite the apparent glut of information from the media, Americans do not remember much about what they are exposed to through the media.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 193
Edition: National

23) In general, liberals support freedom of choice on abortion, are opposed to school prayer, favor government regulation in the public interest, and want to spend more money to help the poor.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 196-197
Edition: National

24) More Americans call themselves liberals than moderates.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 197
Edition: National

25) Since 1964, the public’s trust in government has decreased, though there was a slight increase in the early 1980s.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 193-194
Edition: National
26) The gender gap refers to the regular pattern by which women are more likely than men to support abortion rights.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 197
Edition: National

27) Those who identify themselves as "born again" Christians are currently the most conservative demographic group.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 197
Edition: National

28) Public opinion surveys show that acceptance of homosexuals is increasing among liberals but decreasing among moderates and conservatives.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 200
Edition: National

29) Although voter turnout has declined recently, other forms of participation such as contributing money and contacting officials have actually increased.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 202
Edition: National

30) Civil disobedience involves knowingly breaking a law thought to be unjust.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 203
Edition: National

31) The poorest and least-educated Americans are those who are most likely to turn out and vote in elections.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 205
Edition: National

32) More than half of most Americans have no opinion on the scope of government, according to survey data from 2000.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 206–207
Edition: National

33) Young people are always more liberal than the elderly.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 198
Edition: National
Short Answer Questions

1) The distribution of the population's beliefs about politics and policy issues is known as ________.
   
   Answer: public opinion
   
   Page Ref: 178
   Edition: National

2) What is the census and why is it so politically important?
   
   Answer: the "actual enumeration" of the population conducted by the government every ten years; it determines the number of seats in the House of Representatives allocated to each state
   
   Page Ref: 178
   Edition: National

3) The 1980s law that required employers to document the citizenship or legal immigrant status of their employees, or suffer severe penalties for failing to do so, was the _______ Act.
   
   Answer: Simpson–Mazzoli
   
   Page Ref: 180-181
   Edition: National

4) What were the main provisions of the Simpson–Mazzoli Act?
   
   Answer: requires employers document the citizenship of their employees and allows civil and criminal penalties against employers who knowingly employ undocumented immigrants
   
   Page Ref: 180-181
   Edition: National

5) The most recent wave of immigration has consisted largely of _______ and _______.
   
   Answer: Asians; Hispanics
   
   Page Ref: 179
   Edition: National

6) What has been the "regional shift" in America, and what are its political effects?
   
   Answer: from the Northeast to the West and South; power in Congress has shifted to the West and South due to reapportionment
   
   Page Ref: 183
   Edition: National

7) The process through which an individual acquires his or her particular political orientation —his or her knowledge, feelings, and evaluations regarding his or her political world—is known as political ________.
   
   Answer: socialization
   
   Page Ref: 184
   Edition: National
8) Explain the process of reapportionment. Why is it important in American politics?

Answer: the process of allocating seats in the House of Representatives every ten years on the basis of the results of the census

Page Ref: 183
Edition: National

9) What have been the main consequences of the "graying of America"?

Answer: increased costs of the Social Security program

Page Ref: 183
Edition: National

10) What is the importance of the family to the process of political socialization?

Answer: The family has a monopoly on time and emotional commitment during childhood.

Page Ref: 185
Edition: National

11) The key to the accuracy of public opinion polls is the technique of ________, which operates on the principle that everyone should have an equal probability of being selected.

Answer: random sampling

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

12) Explain what is meant by "sampling error."

Answer: the level of confidence in the findings of a public opinion poll

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

13) What is random digit dialing, and why are most polls conducted this way?

Answer: a technique used by pollsters to place telephone calls randomly to both listed and unlisted numbers when conducting a survey; this is done to overcome the problem that a good representation will not be drawn from publicly-available numbers

Page Ref: 189
Edition: National

14) A(n) ________ is conducted on the day of the election itself, with voting places randomly selected and workers sent out to ask every tenth voter how they voted.

Answer: exit poll

Page Ref: 191
Edition: National
15) What are exit polls and why have they been so severely criticized?

Answer: public opinion surveys conducted at voting places as voters leave the polls on election day to be able to predict election winners as quickly as possible; announcing these results before the polls close may discourage citizens from voting, and the predicted results may also be incorrect.

Page Ref: 191
Edition: National

16) A political _______ is a set of coherent and consistent policy preferences.

Answer: ideology
Page Ref: 196
Edition: National

17) Religion is _______ predictive of political ideology than it used to be.

Answer: more
Page Ref: 199
Edition: National

18) What were the main findings of The American Voter study?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 199
Edition: National

19) In the 2004 presidential election, _______ percent of adult Americans cast ballots.

Answer: 55
Page Ref: 201
Edition: National

20) To follow his conscience and to draw attention to the civil rights struggle, Martin Luther King, Jr., purposely practiced nonviolent _______, consciously breaking laws that he thought unjust.

Answer: civil disobedience
Page Ref: 203
Edition: National

21) In the 2006 midterm elections, _______ percent of adult Americans cast ballots.

Answer: 40
Page Ref: 201
Edition: National
Essay Questions

1) What is public opinion, and why is so much time and effort spent on measuring it in the United States? What techniques are used to obtain an accurate reading of public opinion? Are public opinion poll results generally accurate? Explain.

Page Ref: 178, 189–195
Edition: National

2) Describe what is meant by "melting pot." What does "minority majority" mean and why is it likely to be increasingly significant in American society? How will it change America? Do you think it will have any effect on the quality of life in the United States? Explain.

Page Ref: 179–182
Edition: National

3) Compare and contrast the different agents of political socialization. What effect do they have on political learning?

Page Ref: 185–188
Edition: National

4) What is meant by the term "minority majority"? Describe the major minority groups identified in the text, including their relative size, political power and socioeconomic status.

Page Ref: 180
Edition: National

5) What effect does the census have on the makeup of Congress? What states showed the greatest gains in population in the last census? How are they rewarded? Is this a fair system? Explain the rationale behind it and your opinion.

Page Ref: 183
Edition: National

6) Describe the major influences on one's political socialization, and how this comes about. From your own perspective, which influences do you think contributed most to your political attitude today? Explain.

Page Ref: 185–188
Edition: National

7) Describe what is meant by the "graying of America."

Page Ref: 183–184
Edition: National

8) Explain why the family is central to individuals' political socialization. Describe how patterns of party identification across generations are consistent with this, using evidence from the National Election Study.

Page Ref: 185–186
Edition: National
9) Are public opinion polls a benefit or a curse to American politics? What influence do they have on campaigns? On governing? What do critics point to as the key weaknesses of public opinion polls? Do you agree? Explain.

Page Ref: 189-195
Edition: National

10) Explain how public opinion is measured. What factors affect the accuracy of public opinion polls?

Page Ref: 189–195
Edition: National

11) How much attention should political leaders pay to public opinion polls? Discuss how and why one might argue that political leaders should ignore poll results, and then defend against that argument.

Page Ref: 189–195
Edition: National

12) Present a critique of public opinion polling. What effect might public opinion polls have on the democratic process in the United States?

Page Ref: 189–195
Edition: National

13) Describe how public opinion polls make our system more democratic. What are potential problems with relying on these polls?

Page Ref: 189–195
Edition: National

14) What have public opinion polls told us about the extent of political information among the American people? Comment on the implications this holds for democracy in the United States.

Page Ref: 189–195
Edition: National

15) What is a political ideology? What are the four categories into which the The American Voter divided the American electorate? To which of the categories do you think you fit, and why? Do these categories strike you as accurate? Explain.

Page Ref: 196–200
Edition: National

16) What is the effect of ideology on public opinion in America? Do people really think in ideological terms? Does the liberal-conservative dimension adequately capture how Americans feel about political issues?

Page Ref: 196–200
Edition: National

17) Describe President Reagan’s view on the scope of government in America. To what extent are these views reflected in American public opinion?

Page Ref: 206; 196–200
Edition: National
18) To what extent does political participation reflect a bias in favor of the privileged? Should this matter? Why?
Page Ref: 205
Edition: National

19) How do the American people feel about the scope of the federal government? What does it mean to say that the Americans are ideological conservatives and operational liberals? How have public attitudes on the size of government changed over time, and how does it affect public policy?
Page Ref: 206–207
Edition: National

20) Define protest and why it is employed in the political process. What is civil disobedience? Should it be tolerated in American politics or strictly curtailed? How can civil disobedience be defended? Explain.
Page Ref: 202–203
Edition: National
Chapter 7  The Mass Media and the Political Agenda

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) High-tech politics refers to
   A) a politics in which the behavior of citizens and policymakers is shaped by technology.
   B) a proposal for direct democracy through the use of telephone voting.
   C) a futuristic society in which politics is controlled by computers, freeing people for more honorable pursuits.
   D) the use of cable television to broadcast the workings of the government.
   E) the ability of government to observe the behavior of citizens through electronic means.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National

2) A media event is
   A) a news event deemed of such importance to break into regular programming on television and radio.
   B) a gathering of people working in the media industry, often an awards ceremony.
   C) some newsworthy occurrence covered by reporters of the various media.
   D) staged primarily for the purpose of being covered by the press.
   E) a setup by the media to ambush or embarrass a prominent person.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National

3) A _______ is staged by a campaign primarily for the purpose of being covered on television and in the press.
   A) media event
   B) TV commercial
   C) political incident
   D) "Get Out the Vote" effort
   E) political play

Answer: A
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National
4) Media events are
   A) spontaneous occurrences such as train wrecks or assassinations that we normally think of as news.
   B) monopolized by political elites.
   C) purposely staged events held in front of the media.
   D) spontaneous events used to enhance image.
   E) ineffective when used by political radicals.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National

5) Purposely staged activities held in front of the media are called
   A) trial balloons.
   B) media events.
   C) political dramas.
   D) press conferences.
   E) news.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National

6) Approximately ______ of presidential campaign spending is for TV ads.
   A) 40 percent
   B) 20 percent
   C) 60 percent
   D) 80 percent
   E) 90 percent

Answer: C
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National
7) According to the text, Ronald Reagan’s presidency was characterized by

A) more concern and energy devoted to the president’s media appearances than in any other administration.

B) a number of spontaneous media appearances by the president designed to take advantage of his Hollywood experience.

C) considerable animosity between the media and the administration.

D) Reagan’s frequent false statements which were later documented by reporters to be either errors or deliberate lies.

E) attempts to avoid media appearances by the president.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 213
Edition: National

8) News management in the Reagan White House operated on each of the following principles EXCEPT

A) talk about the issues you want to talk about.

B) control the flow of information.

C) expand reporters’ access to the president.

D) revving helicopter engines so the president would not be able to hear reporters’ questions and not have to answer them.

E) stay on the offense.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 213
Edition: National

9) Up until the presidency of Franklin Roosevelt,

A) reporters did not ask presidents questions, they simply reported what presidents did.

B) presidents held daily press conferences.

C) presidents held private chats with reporters in a very informal setting rather than hold public press conferences.

D) reporters submitted their questions to presidents in writing.

E) reporters had fireside chats with presidents in the White House.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 214
Edition: National
10) The first president to manipulate media politics with many press conferences and fireside chats successfully was
   A) Ronald Reagan.
   B) Franklin Roosevelt.
   C) Lyndon Johnson.
   D) Abraham Lincoln.
   E) John F. Kennedy.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 214
   Edition: National

11) In what was a very different era, the press chose not to point out to readers or to photograph the fact that President ________ was confined to a wheelchair.
   A) Warren Harding
   B) Harry Truman
   C) Dwight Eisenhower
   D) Lyndon Johnson
   E) Franklin Roosevelt

   Answer: E

   Page Ref: 214
   Edition: National

12) Why did President Roosevelt become silent during the last minute of a radio address during a reelection campaign?
   A) Political pranksters from the Republican party disabled the power supply to the radio station.
   B) He wanted to reduce the size of his opponent’s audience.
   C) The radio station director disliked the positions Roosevelt was taking and cut him off.
   D) He talked for so long that he lost his voice.
   E) The radio station cut him off because he had exceeded his time limit.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 214
   Edition: National
13) Which president held one thousand press conferences, far more than any other?
   A) John F. Kennedy
   B) Richard Nixon
   C) Ronald Reagan
   D) Franklin Roosevelt
   E) Bill Clinton

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 214
   Edition: National

14) When the First Amendment was written guaranteeing freedom of the press,
   A) the penny press was prevalent.
   B) there was virtually no daily press in this country.
   C) only the largest cities had a daily press.
   D) the press was owned by the government.
   E) the telegraph was revolutionizing the newspaper industry and stimulating the rapid spread of daily newspapers throughout the country.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 213
   Edition: National

15) Prior to the 1930s,
   A) press conferences were held twice a week.
   B) the president was rarely directly questioned by the media.
   C) the media was dominated by a few influential newspapers.
   D) image-building was essentially built around radio broadcasting.
   E) the president catered to the local, rather than the national, press.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 213
   Edition: National

16) The first president to successfully utilize media politics was
   A) Ronald Reagan.
   B) Richard Nixon.
   C) George Washington.
   D) Abraham Lincoln.
   E) Franklin Roosevelt.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 214
   Edition: National
17) Which of the following statements about Franklin Roosevelt and the news media is FALSE?

A) Roosevelt used presidential wrath to warn reporters off material he did not want covered.
B) The press revered Roosevelt.
C) Roosevelt knew how to feed the right story to the right reporter.
D) The press often reported on Roosevelt's health and confinement to a wheelchair.
E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 214
Edition: National

18) The cozy relationship between politicians and the press in the twentieth century lasted until

A) the Iranian Hostage Crisis.
B) World War II.
C) the commercialization of television.
D) the beginning of Franklin Roosevelt’s presidency.
E) the Vietnam War and Watergate.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 215
Edition: National

19) The use of detective-like reporting methods to unearth scandals is known as

A) yellow journalism.
B) trial balloons.
C) scientific journalism.
D) investigative journalism.
E) print journalism.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 215
Edition: National
20) The cozy relationship between politicians and the press ended when

A) the Vietnam War and Watergate soured the press on government.
B) the press discovered John F. Kennedy in a compromising situation with a woman other than his wife.
C) Franklin Roosevelt chastised the news reports he deemed inaccurate.
D) Ronald Reagan began to manipulate the press to his advantage.
E) Abraham Lincoln nationalized major Union newspapers during the Civil War.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 215
Edition: National

21) Today’s news people work in an environment of _______ toward government.

A) friendship
B) cynicism
C) hostility
D) trust
E) acceptance

Answer: B
Page Ref: 216
Edition: National

22) At the turn of the century, newspaper magnates Joseph and William Randolph Hearst ushered in the era of

A) yellow journalism.
B) nickel tabloids.
C) newspaper chains.
D) penny press.
E) political advertising.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National
23) The first daily newspaper in America was
   A) the Associated Press established in 1841.
   C) printed in Philadelphia in 1783.
   D) the Colonial Gazette printed in 1607.
   E) Common Sense printed in 1776.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 217
   Edition: National

24) Since Kennedy,
   A) news coverage of presidential candidates has become increasingly less favorable.
   B) the news media have reduced their coverage of presidential candidates.
   C) the amount of news coverage of presidential candidates has increased dramatically.
   D) coverage of issues in presidential campaigns has increased dramatically.
   E) emphasis of campaign reporting has changed dramatically from "why" to a simpler, descriptive "what" format.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 215
   Edition: National

25) Thomas Patterson found that media coverage of presidential candidates changed from a descriptive framework to a(n)
   A) evaluative framework.
   B) analytical framework.
   C) empirical framework.
   D) uniform framework.
   E) normative framework

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 216
   Edition: National
26) The Associated Press is an example of a
   A) high–technology medium.
   B) newspaper chain.
   C) massive media conglomerate.
   D) wire service.
   E) trade association acting as an interest group for newspapers.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National

27) With over 2,700 reporters, photographers and editors, ________ has more news gathering ability than any other news organization.
   A) Gannett
   B) the Associated Press
   C) The New York Times
   D) Columbia Broadcasting System
   E) King Features Syndicate

Answer: B
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National

28) The nation’s most influential newspaper and its unofficial "newspaper of record" is
   A) Congressional Quarterly.
   B) USA Today.
   D) the Wall Street Journal.
   E) the Washington Post.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National
29) For most newspapers in medium-sized cities and small towns, their principal source for reporting national and world news is

A) USA Today.
C) Cable News Network.
D) The Associated Press.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National

30) Since 1960, newspaper circulation has declined from one newspaper for every two adults to slightly more than one newspaper for every ________ adults.

A) twenty
B) four
C) fifteen
D) ten

Answer: B
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National

31) The principal source of news and information for most Americans today is

A) newspapers.
B) radio talk shows.
C) magazines.
D) print media.
E) the broadcast media.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National
32) In a famous, televised speech in 1952 to save his vice-presidential candidacy, _______ denied having received illegal gifts and payments, and declared that the family dog, Checkers, though a gift, would not be returned.

   A) John Sparkman  
   B) Richard Nixon  
   C) Lyndon Johnson  
   D) Spiro Agnew  
   E) Dwight Eisenhower

Answer: B
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National

33) Following the first Nixon–Kennedy presidential debate of 1960, opinion polls showed that

   A) those who watched on television thought Nixon had won, while those who listened over the radio thought Kennedy won.
   B) those who watched on television and listened over the radio both thought Kennedy had won.
   C) those who listened over radio thought it was a draw, while those who watched television thought Kennedy did better.
   D) those who watched on television and listened over the radio both thought Nixon had won.
   E) those who watched on television thought Kennedy had won, while those who listened over the radio thought Nixon won.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National

34) Four out of five newspaper readers in America read papers owned by

   A) large corporate chains located out of town.  
   B) fearless local editors.  
   C) the Associated Press.  
   D) television stations.  
   E) their employees.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 224
Edition: National
35) Serious magazines of political news and opinion are
   A) basically reserved for the educated elite in America.
   B) almost nonexistent in the United States.
   C) a principle source of news and information for most Americans.
   D) rapidly dying out in the United States, but remain very healthy in Europe and Latin America.
   E) a more common source for national and international news than newspapers.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National

36) The principle source of news and information in the United States is
   A) the print media.
   B) magazines and radio.
   C) newspapers.
   D) radio talk shows.
   E) the broadcast media.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National

37) In general, magazines are
   A) politically conservative.
   B) basically reserved for the educated elite.
   C) not a major source of news in the United States.
   D) not read very widely in the United States.
   E) a major source of news in the United States.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National
38) Newspaper magnates Joseph Pulitzer and William Randolph Hearst tried to outdo one another in sensational reporting of wars, violence, corruption, and gossip around the turn of the twentieth century in what is now remembered as the era of

A) yellow journalism.
B) investigative journalism.
C) tabloid journalism.
D) scandalism.
E) hyperjournalism.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National

39) Television became extremely important in political campaigns beginning in

A) 1948.
B) 1952.
C) 1972.
D) 1960.
E) 1984.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National

40) Richard Nixon believed he lost the 1960 presidential election because

A) news coverage of his campaign was consistently biased against him.
B) the Cuban Missile Crisis stole media attention from his campaign.
C) of voter fraud in New York City.
D) of Kennedy’s dramatic pledge not to raise taxes.
E) he was sweating and had an ugly beard stubble during a debate with Kennedy.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National
41) The first televised ______ occurred during the 1960 presidential campaign.
   A) election returns
   B) presidential debate
   C) national political convention
   D) political commercial
   E) presidential press conference

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 218
   Edition: National

42) The 1960 presidential debate between Richard Nixon and John F. Kennedy illustrates the
   A) propagandistic nature of American presidential campaigns.
   B) role of radio broadcasting in the United States.
   C) importance of experience in presidential politics.
   D) importance of issues in presidential debates.
   E) power of television in American politics.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 218
   Edition: National

43) Television became especially important in bringing the reality of ______ home to America as
   its first heavily televised war.
   A) the Vietnam War
   B) the Korean War
   C) World War I
   D) the war in Iraq
   E) World War II

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 218
   Edition: National
44) Television coverage of the war in Vietnam had the effect of

A) generating popular support for the president and the war.
B) hiding the true horrors of the war and the number of casualties from the American people.
C) exposing governmental naiveté and lies about the progress of the war.
D) duping the public into believing the war would soon end.
E) simultaneously undermining support for the war in North Vietnam while boosting public morale in South Vietnam.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National

45) Individuals aged 29 and under are

A) more likely than older individuals to spend time getting news.
B) less likely than older individuals to use the Internet for news.
C) more likely to rely on newspapers than on television as a news source.
D) less likely than older individuals to learn about the presidential campaign from a daily newspaper.
E) more likely than older individuals to use newsmagazines as a news source.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 220
Edition: National

46) Narrowcasting refers to

A) media programming focused entirely on media events.
B) the technical ability to block access to broadcast signals.
C) media programming aimed at a particular (narrow) audience.
D) media programming delivered in brief program segments.
E) political advertising being developed for homogeneous audiences.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 221
Edition: National
47) During the military campaign in Afghanistan, President Bush and the White House frequently watched _______ to see events as they happened.

A) Nightline
B) Good Morning America
C) closed circuit, top-secret Pentagon video relays
D) CNN
E) The MacNeil/Lehrer NewsHour

Answer: D

Page Ref: 221
Edition: National

48) Cable News Network (CNN)

A) has taken the place of the three major networks as Americans' primary source for news.
B) specializes in after-the-fact news summaries and in-depth analysis.
C) has brought television into a new era of bringing the news to people and political leaders as it happens.
D) is a government-owned news agency that specializes in international news.
E) has had more effect on the mass public than it has had on political elites.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 221
Edition: National

49) Which fo the following is true about cable newscasts?

A) "Hard" news stories comprise about 22 hours of a typical day's cable newscast.
B) Only about 11% of the time was used for written and edited news stories.
C) Cable news is heavily subsidized by the federal government.
D) There are more regulations for cable news than there are for broadcast news.
E) Cable newscasts are more concerned with increasing the reputation of the news organization than with making profit.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 221
Edition: National
50) Who is the most likely to visit a candidate's web site?
   A) the candidate's supporters
   B) the candidate's detractors
   C) undecided voters
   D) unregistered citizens
   E) retired Americans

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 222
   Edition: National

51) To a large extent, television networks define news as what is ________ to viewers.
   A) informative
   B) vital information
   C) entertaining
   D) thought-provoking
   E) yet unknown

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 226
   Edition: National

52) Most news organizations assign their best reporters to particular ________, which are specific locations where news frequently emanates.
   A) beats
   B) digs
   C) "theaters"
   D) "lighthouses"
   E) chains

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 226
   Edition: National
53) Today’s massive media conglomerates control newspapers with over _______ of the nation’s daily circulation.
   A) 53 percent  
   B) 30 percent  
   C) 50 percent  
   D) 80 percent  
   E) 33 percent

Answer: D
Page Ref: 224
Edition: National

54) The bottom line that shapes how journalists define the news, where they get the news, and how they present it is
   A) their personal ideology.  
   B) the First Amendment right to freedom of the press.  
   C) government regulations.  
   D) profits.  
   E) their professional values.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 226
Edition: National

55) News is what
   A) the public believes are the most important political issues facing the country.  
   B) government officials want it to be.  
   C) is timely and different.  
   D) has the greatest impact on the most people.  
   E) journalism professors say it is.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 226
Edition: National
56) Television news programs are tailored to
   A) a highly educated audience.
   B) a fairly low level of audience sophistication.
   C) male audiences in their twenties and thirties with high disposable incomes.
   D) white middle-class America.
   E) an urban population.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 226
   Edition: National

57) Reporters and their official sources usually have a(n) _______ relationship.
   A) hostile
   B) disinterested
   C) adversarial
   D) conspiratorial
   E) symbiotic
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 226
   Edition: National

58) A trial balloon is a
   A) method used by the media to force a politician or public official to admit to lying to a reporter.
   B) piece of information leaked to politicians from a reporter in order to confirm another source.
   C) sensational criminal trial that attracts inflated media coverage.
   D) directive by judges to deny access to reporters in certain sensitive cases.
   E) method used by public figures of leaking certain stories to reporters to see what the political reaction will be.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 226
   Edition: National
59) Public officials often leak _______ to reporters to see what the political reaction will be.

A) trial balloons
B) sound bites
C) beats
D) "oiled news"
E) talking heads

Answer: A

Page Ref: 226
Edition: National

60) Trial balloons refer to

A) marketing surveys conducted to determine audience preferences in media coverage and programming.
B) media experiments with different types of news coverage to see what the public reaction will be.
C) impromptu presidential news conferences.
D) information leaked to the media to see what the political reaction will be.
E) the media’s tendency to define news as information that is entertaining to the average viewer.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 226
Edition: National

61) During the first Persian Gulf War, reporters

A) had very free movement but only limited access to accurate military information on a timely basis.
B) were barred from covering the war or speculating about it from the time the air strikes began until the entire war was over.
C) were denied freedom of movement and had only limited access to accurate military information on a timely basis.
D) were frequently captured by Iraqi troops and sentenced to long jail sentences for reporting information unfavorable to the Iraqi government.
E) had very free movement, and access to accurate military information almost immediately.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 226-227
Edition: National
62) Most news coverage is perhaps best described as
   A) superficial.
   B) thorough.
   C) complex.
   D) superlative.
   E) metacognitive.
   Answer: A
Page Ref: 228–229
Edition: National

63) After the Persian Gulf War, fifteen major news organizations sent a letter
   A) condemning President Bush for killing tens of thousands of retreating Iraqi troops.
   B) citing a dozen instances of blatant, false propaganda that had been given them by Iraqi officials during the war.
   C) complaining that the Pentagon’s rules for reporting the war were designed to control the news.
   D) congratulating the Pentagon for its brilliant war effort.
   E) complaining that they had been barred by the Pentagon from filming United States planes killing tens of thousands of retreating Iraqi troops waving white flags of surrender.
   Answer: C
Page Ref: 226–227
Edition: National

64) A new approach to reporting introduced during the 2003 Iraq war was to
   A) use more satellite coverage.
   B) embed reporters with troops.
   C) distribute detailed military plans to journalists in advance.
   D) allow reporters to move around on their own.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: B
Page Ref: 227
Edition: National
65) Most television news analysis reports
   A) run over ten minutes.
   B) run about five minutes.
   C) run about seven minutes.
   D) last less than a minute.
   E) run about two minutes.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 228
Edition: National

66) News coverage by the print and broadcast media is generally
   A) very ideologically biased.
   B) comprehensive.
   C) detailed.
   D) controversial.
   E) superficial.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 228
Edition: National

67) Television news coverage characteristically
   A) has little impact on shaping political opinions.
   B) lacks in-depth analysis.
   C) emphasizes policy issues.
   D) focuses on Congressional politics more than presidential politics.
   E) focuses on what elites think is important.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 228-229
Edition: National

68) As technology has enabled the media to pass along information with greater speed, news coverage has become
   A) less biased.
   B) less complete.
   C) randomized.
   D) more biased.
   E) more complete.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 228
Edition: National
69) Sound bites are
   A) short clips of a political speech lasting fifteen seconds or less.
   B) leaks by official sources used to test the political waters.
   C) negative news coverage received by a public figure. They hurt!
   D) a form of censorship widely used in Great Britain.
   E) negative political advertisements that offer quick attacks on one’s opponent.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 228
   Edition: National

70) A catchy line is what is most important for a
   A) beat.
   B) sound bite.
   C) leak.
   D) trial balloon.
   E) presidential press conference.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 228
   Edition: National

71) During the 1992 election campaign, CBS News promised to ________, but then changed its policy when it proved to be unworkable.
   A) follow campaign ads with factual analysis
   B) reform the sound bite process
   C) ban coverage of polls
   D) float no trial balloons
   E) give equal time to each candidate on each news broadcast

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 228–229
   Edition: National
72) Rather than cover entire speeches by political figures, television news typically provides ________ of fifteen seconds or less.
   A) trial balloons
   B) beats
   C) sound bites
   D) leaks
   E) news snacks

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 228
Edition: National

73) In 2004, the average sound bite of a presidential candidate shown talking on the nightly news averaged
   A) less than ten seconds.
   B) about thirty seconds.
   C) about two minutes.
   D) about ninety seconds.
   E) about a minute.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 228–229
Edition: National

74) The average amount of air time that a presidential candidate has been given to talk uninterrupted on the TV news
   A) has increased dramatically since 1960.
   B) has increased dramatically since 1980.
   C) has declined dramatically since the 1960s.
   D) has been remarkably consistent over the years.
   E) has increased slightly since 1970.

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 229
Edition: National
75) Which of the following statements about television news is FALSE?

A) The only highly regarded in-depth news shows on television are watched by very few viewers.

B) Studies have shown that television gives only skimpy attention to the issues during a presidential campaign.

C) The complex issues of today are difficult to treat in a short news clip.

D) Television analysis of news events has been rapidly increasing.

E) Television news is less detailed than that presented in newspapers.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 228–229
Edition: National

76) A 2002 survey of 1,149 journalists found that, compared to the general public, journalists were twice as likely to consider themselves

A) Democrats.

B) radicals.

C) Republicans.

D) conservatives.

E) policy entrepreneurs.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 231
Edition: National

77) In a 2002 survey of 1,149 journalists,

A) more were found to identify themselves as Democrats than as Republicans.

B) a majority expressed no party preference whatsoever.

C) they were about evenly split in their party preferences between Republicans and Democrats.

D) more were found to identify themselves as Republicans than as Democrats.

E) a large majority were found to be both ideologically neutral and have no preference for one party over the other.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 231
Edition: National
78) One survey of journalists in 2002 found that ________ were Republican.
   A) 19 percent
   B) 60 percent
   C) 54 percent
   D) 30 percent
   E) 44 percent
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 231
   Edition: National

79) One survey of journalists in 2002 found that ________ were Democrats.
   A) 37 percent
   B) 29 percent
   C) 60 percent
   D) 45 percent
   E) 85 percent
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 231
   Edition: National

80) A study by the Los Angeles Times in the mid-1980s found that reporters were ________ as likely to call themselves liberal as the general public.
   A) twice
   B) half
   C) one-third
   D) just
   E) not
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 231
   Edition: National

81) The overriding bias in the news is toward stories that
   A) include talking heads.
   B) are triangular.
   C) are liberal.
   D) draw large audiences.
   E) target-specific audiences.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 231
   Edition: National
82) A talking head is a
   A) nickname for a political journalist.
   B) shot of a person speaking directly into the television camera.
   C) secret source for news leaks.
   D) public relations expert.
   E) member of the seminal punk band of the 1980s that had a major political influence on youth.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 233
Edition: National

83) A shot of a person’s face speaking directly into the television camera is known as a
   A) superfacial.
   B) talking head.
   C) head shot.
   D) sound bite.
   E) mug shot.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 233
Edition: National

84) Which of the following is LEAST likely to fascinate television news viewers?
   A) violence
   B) scandal
   C) disaster
   D) a talking head
   E) a breaking crime story

Answer: D
Page Ref: 233
Edition: National

85) The news does not mirror reality because
   A) journalists are more liberal than most people.
   B) the number of potential news stories is limited.
   C) journalists must select stories that will draw the largest audience.
   D) journalists are more conservative than most people.
   E) the news media are biased toward the coverage of political events.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 232
Edition: National
86) When journalists select stories to cover, the overriding bias is toward
   A) stories about the personality quirks of political celebrities.
   B) international and foreign policy stories.
   C) stories that will draw the largest audience.
   D) stories involving the most important policy issues of the day.
   E) stories that target specific audiences.

   Answer: C

87) A talking head is a reference to
   A) a television talk show host.
   B) a shot of a person’s face talking directly to the camera.
   C) a news leak that is discretely passed to a reporter in a public washroom.
   D) a television news anchor.
   E) a television talk show.

   Answer: B

88) The earliest survey studies of the effect of the media on public opinion, which evaluated its impact on voting behavior, offered
   A) much evidence that media action influenced political campaign outcomes.
   B) a policy agenda interpretation.
   C) the observation that Democratic control of Congress was partly due to media bias in news coverage.
   D) the minimal effects hypothesis.
   E) the hypodermic needle model.

   Answer: D
89) Critics of the “minimal effects hypothesis” about the media’s effect on public opinion point to the media’s role in

A) how voters cast their ballots.
B) concealing problems that exist by ignoring them.
C) shaping what priority Americans attach to problems.
D) whether people choose to vote.
E) mobilizing voter turnout.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 233
Edition: National

90) A study by Shanto Iyengar and Donald Kinder suggested that television news can

A) conceal problems that actually exist.
B) make something out of nothing.
C) influence the criteria by which the public evaluates political leaders.
D) affect how people vote.
E) produce a hypnotic effect that makes viewers vulnerable to subtle, subconscious messages.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National

91) The media seem to have the least effect in terms of

A) how people vote.
B) how people evaluate political leaders.
C) what Americans think about.
D) the importance people attach to problems.
E) who votes.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National
92) The _______ is the list of subjects or problems to which government officials, and people outside of government closely associated with those officials, are paying some serious attention to at any given time.

   A) A-List
   B) plum book
   C) prioritization schedule
   D) catalog of current issues
   E) policy agenda

Answer: E
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National

93) Agenda-setting effects on public opinion are an example of how

   A) the media influence individual’s vote choices.
   B) the media have a bias in favor of the status quo.
   C) the media cue individuals about what political issues are important to think about.
   D) the media have a liberal bias.
   E) the media have no bias.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National

94) Agenda setting effects are especially strong for the

   A) younger generation who distrust the media.
   B) politically knowledgeable who trust the media.
   C) politically ignorant who trust the media.
   D) television audience who trusts the media.
   E) older, more politically experienced individuals.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 234-235
Edition: National
95) The impact of TV news is that it
   A) familiarizes the public with issues through its emphasis on headline reading.
   B) alters the priorities Americans attach to a circumscribed set of problems.
   C) influences the governmental agenda because policymakers and policy entrepreneurs depend on it.
   D) has little influence on the public agenda because most viewers are less educated.
   E) all of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National

96) The policy agenda is
   A) a set of issues or problems that the public considers important.
   B) a schedule of bills before Congress.
   C) a list of priorities to which government officials address their time and energies.
   D) a linkage institution between people and government.
   E) all of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National

97) People who invest their political "capital" in a particular issue are often called
   A) talking heads.
   B) policy wonks.
   C) policy entrepreneurs.
   D) political investors.
   E) policy specialists.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National

98) Which of the following are NOT normally policy entrepreneurs?
   A) mass media
   B) appointed government officials
   C) interest groups
   D) elected government officials
   E) political parties

Answer: A
Page Ref: 234
Edition: National
99) Which of the following statements about policy agendas is FALSE?

A) Interest groups, political parties, and the president are all examples of those who push for their priorities to take precedence.
B) Scores of issues compete for attention from the government.
C) The policy agenda receives some serious attention at any given time.
D) Only government officials develop policy priorities.
E) none of the above

Answer: D

100) A policy entrepreneur is

A) an elected or appointed public official.
B) a candidate seeking a career in elective office.
C) someone who works to get ideas on the government’s policy agenda.
D) a knowledge specialist in a policy area.
E) someone who uses politics for self-gain.

Answer: C

101) The media usually report on America’s social problems in a manner that

A) encourages government to take on more and more tasks.
B) suggests government can really not be trusted to take on more tasks.
C) is neither critical nor positive.
D) displays a lack of real sensitivity.
E) has often been described as benign neglect.

Answer: A
102) Which of the following is NOT true about the media in America?

A) The media argue that if their news is superficial, it is because that is what people want.
B) The media do a better job covering the "horse race" aspect of politics than of covering substantive issues.
C) Reporters often see themselves in a reformism role, crusading against foul play and unfairness.
D) Their skepticism about governmental honesty and efficiency leads them to oppose giving government greater responsibilities.
E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 235-237
Edition: National

103) More than any other development in the twentieth century, the rise of television broadcasting has reinforced _______ in the American political process.

A) interest
B) individualism
C) behavioralism
D) participation
E) democratization

Answer: B

Page Ref: 236
Edition: National

104) The watchdog orientation of the press helps to

A) increase confidence in government.
B) restrict politicians.
C) de-emphasize individualism.
D) educate the mass public.
E) assist politicians in leading the mass public.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 235-236
Edition: National
105) The watchdog orientation of the press can be characterized as
   A) reformist.
   B) liberal.
   C) libertarian.
   D) conservative.
   E) partisan.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 235–236
   Edition: National

106) The media inevitably encourage the growth of government when they
   A) focus on policy issues.
   B) reapply for their broadcast licenses.
   C) uncover government waste.
   D) act as a watchdog.
   E) focus on injustice in society.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 235–236
   Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) A media event is staged primarily for the purpose of being covered by reporters, cameras, etc.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 212
   Edition: National

2) Ronald Reagan’s presidency often appeared as a performance with well-choreographed appearances.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 213
   Edition: National

3) Ronald Reagan was the first president to hold frequent press conferences and give fireside chats to reassure the public.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 214
   Edition: National

4) Franklin Roosevelt was the first president who was closely scrutinized by the media.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 214
   Edition: National
5) Lyndon Johnson and Richard Nixon felt they were hounded out of office by the press.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 215
Edition: National

6) The relatively cozy relationship that existed between politicians and the press during the twentieth century lasted until the Vietnam War and Watergate.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 215
Edition: National

7) Investigative journalism has contributed to greater public cynicism and negativism about politics.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 215
Edition: National

8) Thomas Patterson found that since 1960, the focus of the press’s coverage of campaign issues has shifted from policy statements to campaign controversies.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 216
Edition: National

9) The results of a poll taken after the first televised presidential debate in 1960 showed that most who listened to the debate on radio thought Kennedy had won, while those who watched on television thought Nixon had won.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National

10) Television had very little impact on Richard Nixon’s early political career during the 1950s and 1960s.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 218
Edition: National

11) Media technology has helped to widely disseminate information to produce a more informed society in America.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 223–224
Edition: National
12) As the number of cable channels, political junkies will find more political information readily available than ever before.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 221
   Edition: National

13) Narrowcasting refers to politicians’ exclusive use of television in communicating with constituents.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 221
   Edition: National

14) In Canada and most of Europe, the major networks are government owned.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 224
   Edition: National

15) To a large extent, television networks define news as what is entertaining to the average viewer.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 226
   Edition: National

16) In many other countries, major television outlets are owned by the government.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 224
   Edition: National

17) Over 90% of Americans receive most of their news from cable television.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 221
   Edition: National

18) Through the use of blogs, American citizens are able to challenge media interpretations of political events.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 222-223
   Edition: National

19) As television news audiences declined, network executives decreed that news had to become more profitable. News divisions sharply reduced their costs, and tried to raise the entertainment value of their broadcasts.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 224-226
   Edition: National
20) Numerous studies show that journalists rely almost exclusively on established sources to get their stories.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 226
Edition: National

21) During the Gulf War, reporters' freedom of movement and observation was severely restricted by the United States government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 226-227
Edition: National

22) "Embedded" reporters were a key feature of news coverage in the Persian Gulf War in the early 1990s.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 227
Edition: National

23) In 2000 the average sound bite lasted ten seconds or less.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 228-229
Edition: National

24) There are many good examples of investigative reporting making a difference in politics and government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 215
Edition: National

25) Most journalists identify themselves as Republicans, but strive to report the news objectively.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 231
Edition: National

26) The majority of studies have shown that the media, especially newspapers, tend to have a liberal bias.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 227-228
Edition: National

27) According to John Kingdon, policy entrepreneurs are always in government.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 235
Edition: National
28) Political elites tend to dominate the media such that the poor and minority groups are unable to use it for their benefit.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 235
Edition: National

29) In order to convey a long-term positive image via the media, policy entrepreneurs often make campaign contributions.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 234-235
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) A(n) ________ is staged by political campaigns or officeholders, among others, primarily for the purpose of being covered by reporters and thereby gaining exposure.

Answer: media event
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National

2) What are media events and how are they used?

Answer: events purposely staged for the media that look spontaneous; used by politicians to get free media coverage
Page Ref: 212
Edition: National

3) The first president really to master media politics, using frequent press conferences and reassuring fireside chats, was ________.

Answer: Franklin D. Roosevelt
Page Ref: 214
Edition: National

4) There are two major categories of media: the ________ media, which includes newspapers and magazines, and the ________ media, which consist of radio and television.

Answer: print; broadcast
Page Ref: 216
Edition: National

5) The ________ is considered the unofficial "newspaper of record" for the United States.

Answer: New York Times
Page Ref: 217
Edition: National
6) ________ is the use of detective-like methods to unearth scandals, scams, and schemes, putting reporters in adversarial relationships with political leaders.

   Answer: Investigative journalism
   Page Ref: 215
   Edition: National

7) In 1960, Richard Nixon and John Kennedy appeared together in the first televised _______.

   Answer: presidential debate
   Page Ref: 218
   Edition: National

8) Explain the importance of the 1960 presidential debate.

   Answer: signaled that the visual power of television was key to campaigns and elections: individuals who heard the debate on radio thought that Nixon had won, those who watched it on television thought that Kennedy had won
   Page Ref: 218
   Edition: National

9) Media outlets that do NOT appeal to a relatively broad audience but instead focus on a specifically defined audience’s interest are said to be engaged in _______.

   Answer: narrowcasting
   Page Ref: 221
   Edition: National

10) What effect did the Vietnam War have on the news media?

    Answer: They were less likely to believe government officials in reporting about foreign affairs.
    Page Ref: 218
    Edition: National

11) How has the Cable News Network (CNN) changed television news reporting?

    Answer: It now brings the news live to people and leaders.
    Page Ref: 221
    Edition: National

12) Most news organizations assign their best reporters to particular ________, which are specific locations where news frequently emanates, such as the White House.

    Answer: beats
    Page Ref: 226
    Edition: National

13) Information leaked to reporters to see what the political reaction will be is known as a(n) ________.

    Answer: trial balloon
    Page Ref: 226
    Edition: National
14) What is a trial balloon, and what purpose does it serve?

Answer: an intentional news lead for the purpose of assessing the political reaction
Page Ref: 226
Edition: National

15) Rather than cover entire political speeches, networks tend to provide mostly ______ of fifteen seconds or less on the evening news.

Answer: sound bites
Page Ref: 228
Edition: National

16) What are sound bites? How does their use influence the nature of the news?

Answer: short video clips of approximately 15 seconds or less; results in candidates being less able to control their messages, more likely to produce messages that can be covered in short clips
Page Ref: 228
Edition: National

17) Seeing a(n) ______, which is slang for a shot of a person speaking directly to the television camera, is not stimulating enough for most viewers.

Answer: talking head
Page Ref: 233
Edition: National

18) What are policy entrepreneurs, and how do they try to get their issues on the government’s agenda?

Answer: people who invest their political “capital” in an issue; they depend heavily on the media to get their message out, issuing press releases, holding press conferences, writing letters, convincing reporters and columnists to tell their side, trading on personal contacts and sometimes staging dramatic events
Page Ref: 234-235
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Describe the relationship between the mass media and the president, and how it has changed over the last several decades. Include examples of how various presidents such as George Bush, Ronald Reagan, Richard Nixon, and Franklin Roosevelt have interacted with the media, i.e., how much and under what circumstances.
Page Ref: 212-224
Edition: National

2) Compare and contrast the roles of the different types of media in American politics. In particular, examine the different types of media in terms of where people get their news, the level of trust in each type, and how each media type reports the news.
Page Ref: 217-224
Edition: National
3) Has the increase in information technologies in society created a more informed citizenry? Why or why not? What claims do the commercial media make regarding why citizens are or are not informed? 

Page Ref: 216–231; 236–237
Edition: National

4) Most describe government and election news coverage as superficial, narrow, and limited. Explain what factors contribute to these tendencies in news coverage in the United States. Who do government officials and candidates blame for the nature of news coverage? Who do journalists blame? 

Page Ref: 216–231; 236–237
Edition: National

5) What events helped to make television the most important news medium in the country? Are people getting the news they need from this source? Is the widely held belief that “seeing is believing” appropriate? Explain. 

Page Ref: 218–221
Edition: National

6) How do news organizations get most of their news? What role do beats, trial balloons, and leaks play? Is the process of news-gathering fair and logical? Explain. 

Page Ref: 226–228
Edition: National

7) How have the Internet and cable television impacted American politics? 

Page Ref: 220–224
Edition: National

8) Explain how the media determine what is news, and how it is presented to the public. 

Page Ref: 225–231
Edition: National

9) How do the news media shape what people believe about the American political system? Give examples from research in this area. 

Page Ref: 233–235
Edition: National

10) What role do the media play in defining the policy agenda? How can the media be used by policy entrepreneurs to achieve their objectives? Is such use a problem or a virtue in America’s democratic system? Explain. 

Page Ref: 234–235
Edition: National
Chapter 8  Political Parties

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) A political party is
   A) less interested in winning elections than in particular public policy.
   B) a group of people who agree on everything and organize annually to win elections.
   C) a narrow interest group seeking advantage through elections.
   D) a team of men and women with similar beliefs seeking legitimate control of the government by through elections.
   E) an organization devoted to implementing policy in the public interest.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 242
Edition: National

2) The largest segment of an American political party is described as
   A) the party-out-of-power.
   B) the party-in-the-electorate.
   C) the party-in-government.
   D) the party volunteers.
   E) the party organization.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 242
Edition: National

3) In the description of political parties as "three-headed political giants," which of the following is NOT considered one of those three heads?
   A) the party-in-government
   B) the party-out-of-power
   C) the party-in-the-electorate
   D) the party as an organization
   E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 242
Edition: National
4) Which of the following is TRUE of political parties in the United States?
   A) To be a member of a party, all you have to do is claim to be one.
   B) Parties require dues.
   C) They are more powerful than their European counterparts.
   D) Parties issue membership cards to all members.
   E) Party members agree on all major issues or they will be expelled from the party.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 245
   Edition: National

5) The key spokespersons for political parties come from which of its major components?
   A) the party-in-the-electorate
   B) the party as an organization
   C) the party-out-of-power
   D) the leaders-of-the-party-organization
   E) the party-in-government

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 243
   Edition: National

6) A political party is best defined as
   A) a group of men and women organized for the sole purpose of influencing public policy.
   B) an organized team of men and women with a political agenda.
   C) any group of men and women with a formal membership and a political or social purpose stated in their by-laws.
   D) a team of men and women seeking control of the governing apparatus by gaining office in a duly constituted election.
   E) a coalition of interests trying to influence government policies for their benefit.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 242
   Edition: National
7) According to the "three-headed political giant" model of political parties, the largest component of an American party is the
   A) party as an organization.
   B) party-in-the-states.
   C) party Congress.
   D) party-in-the-electorate.
   E) party-in-government.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 242
Edition: National

8) In the United States, to become a member of a political party you need to
   A) pay annual dues.
   B) officially join that party by attending a party meeting.
   C) hold a membership card.
   D) register with that party at your precinct office.
   E) claim to be a member.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 245
Edition: National

9) The people who keep the party running between elections and make its rules are members of which "head" of the party?
   A) party-in-the-electorate
   B) permanent party
   C) party as an organization
   D) party-in-government
   E) party-in-the-states

Answer: C
Page Ref: 243
Edition: National
10) The "party-in-government" refers to
   A) registered party voters who hold civil service jobs in the government and are influencing policy.
   B) winning candidates who become the main spokespersons for the party that nominated them.
   C) coalitions of interests and ideologies that support a party’s candidates.
   D) party workers who hold patronage jobs in the government and can influence policy.
   E) party members who perpetuate the party, make its rules, and keep it running.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 243
   Edition: National

11) The political "party-in-the-electorate" is defined as people who
   A) vote for the candidates from one party.
   B) register as members of a party.
   C) work for a party’s candidates.
   D) identify with a party.
   E) walk door-to-door to meet the voters and personally campaign for their party’s candidates.

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 242
   Edition: National

12) Almost all definitions of political parties have which of the following in common?
   A) Parties have formal organizations.
   B) Parties have a mass following.
   C) Parties try to win elections.
   D) Parties are run by elites.
   E) Parties have limited policy agendas.

   Answer: C

   Page Ref: 242
   Edition: National
13) Which is a linkage institution?

A) Supreme Court
B) Executive Office of the President
C) Congress
D) all of the above
E) none of the above

Answer: E
Page Ref: 243
Edition: National

14) A party’s endorsement to officially run for office as the candidate of that party is called

A) a ballot.
B) a ticket.
C) a nomination.
D) a confirmation.
E) an appointment.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 243
Edition: National

15) Political parties perform all of the following tasks EXCEPT

A) pick policymakers and run campaigns.
B) enforce rigid adherence to their policy positions.
C) advocate public policies.
D) coordinate policymaking.
E) give cues to voters.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 243-244
Edition: National

16) As ________, political parties serve the role of translating inputs from the public into outputs from policymakers.

A) coalitions
B) superdelegates
C) political converters
D) machines
E) linkage institutions

Answer: E
Page Ref: 243
Edition: National
17) Linkage institutions
   A) help link the three branches of government together to achieve coherent policies.
   B) are used to implement public policies.
   C) link political parties to the government.
   D) translate inputs from the public into outputs from the policymakers.
   E) link the president to members of his/her party in Congress, so they can coordinate their policies in government.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 243
Edition: National

18) American political parties tend to take middle-of-the-road stands on major issues
   A) only because the party’s candidates are so afraid of alienating those on different sides of issues.
   B) while the public tends to have stronger opinions
   C) in spite of evidence that more extreme positions generate more excitement and likelihood for electoral victory.
   D) because most of the American electorate are centrist.
   E) because most of the American electorate do not have political opinions.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 244
Edition: National

19) Rational-choice theory asserts that
   A) the parties should not be expected to differentiate themselves in any way.
   B) more extremist party positions give the public a sense that things can really be changed, and usually win elections.
   C) the wise party selects policies in which it truly believes, and gives the voters a chance to vote them up or down on principle.
   D) the wise party selects policies that are widely favored.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 244
Edition: National


20) The theory that seeks to explain political processes and outcomes as consequences of purposive behavior is called the
   A) rational-choice theory.
   B) behaviorism.
   C) means–ends theory.
   D) cognitive theory.
   E) goals theory.
   Answer: A

21) Compared to 1952, recent polls on party identification have shown that
   A) more people today identify themselves as Democrats.
   B) there are more independents than there are Democrats or Republicans.
   C) the percentage of Democrats has increased only slightly, while the percentage of Republicans has declined.
   D) both the percentages of both Democrats and Republicans in the country have increased.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: B

22) Ticket-splitting is best understood as
   A) voting with one party for one office and another for other offices.
   B) voting for Democratic candidates for president and Republican candidates for Congress.
   C) a tactic used to commit voter fraud, which enables a voter to cast multiple ballots.
   D) staying with the same party in an election, voting down the party’s line for every race.
   E) voting for Republican candidates for president and Democratic candidates for Congress.
   Answer: A
23) The upsurge of partisan independence among Americans since 1952
   A) has come mostly at the expense of the Republicans.
   B) has not harmed either party.
   C) has come mostly at the expense of the Democrats.
   D) has occurred mostly among minor party identifiers.
   E) has harmed both parties equally.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 247
   Edition: National

24) In 2004, Americans were most likely to consider themselves ________, and least likely to
   consider themselves ________.
   A) Independents; Democrats
   B) Republicans; Democrats
   C) Independents; Republicans
   D) Democrats; Independents
   E) Democrats; Republicans

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 247
   Edition: National

25) Most Americans are
   A) liberal.
   B) moderate–liberals.
   C) moderate.
   D) conservative.
   E) non-ideological.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 244
   Edition: National
26) In recent elections, the trends in party identification in the United States have been
   A) an increase in the percentage of Democrats and a decline in the percentage of Independents.
   B) an increase in the percentages of Democrats and Republicans and a decline in the percentage of Independents.
   C) an increase in the percentage of Democrats and a decline in the percentage of Republicans.
   D) a decrease in the percentage of Democrats and an increase in the percentage of Independents.
   E) a fairly constant percentage of Democrats, Republicans, and Independents.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 247
   Edition: National

27) Ticket-splitting refers to
   A) switching membership in political parties.
   B) the procedure used to conduct computerized, automated vote counting.
   C) voting with one party in one presidential election, and another party in the next presidential election.
   D) voting for one party for one office, and another party for other offices.
   E) voting for a party other than the one you identify with.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 247
   Edition: National

28) In terms of organizational structure, American political parties are
   A) organized more by regions of the country than at the state or national level.
   B) decentralized and fragmented.
   C) tightly controlled organisms that exert tremendous control over candidates.
   D) operated on the principle of democratic centralism: Local and state organizations control the national organizations.
   E) centralized and hierarchical.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 247
   Edition: National
29) Power in the major United States political parties is

A) fragmented among local, state, and national party organizations.
B) concentrated in the state parties, with national and local organizations playing only minor roles.
C) hierarchically distributed from the national to local levels.
D) centralized in national party organizations.
E) concentrated in party machines at the local level.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 247
Edition: National

30) From the late-nineteenth century through the New Deal years, many of America’s largest cities were dominated by

A) corrupt but popular party machines.
B) the Socialist party.
C) the Communist party.
D) mayors who refused to allow elections.
E) super delegates who controlled everything.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 247-248
Edition: National

31) Party machines in large cities relied primarily on _______ to reward friends and punish enemies.

A) local judges
B) patronage
C) city police departments
D) the civil service merit system
E) third parties

Answer: B
Page Ref: 248
Edition: National
32) A party machine is a kind of local party organization that
   A) threatens the efficiency of state and national party organizations.
   B) specializes in computerized mass mailings both to raise funds and influence voters on behalf of their candidates.
   C) uses specific and material inducements to win party loyalty and power.
   D) remains strong in most large American cities.
   E) has recently come to depend heavily on ethnic group support.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 247-248
   Edition: National

33) Patronage
   A) is commonly used by political parties today.
   B) is an incentive given by national party offices.
   C) is the deference that elected officials give to their campaign contributors in making policy decisions.
   D) is based on merit and competence.
   E) was an inducement of jobs and financial rewards given for political reasons by party machines.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 248
   Edition: National

34) _______ has some of the strongest parties in America.
   A) Hawaii
   B) Pennsylvania
   C) New York
   D) Texas
   E) California

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 249
   Edition: National
35) Since 1960, state party organizations
   A) have begun selecting candidates for state offices.
   B) have been established for the first time as the national organizations have weakened.
   C) have virtually disappeared as the national units have taken on their functions.
   D) have begun selecting candidates for Congress.
   E) have become much more powerful and organized.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 250-251
   Edition: National

36) About which state has it been said that the political parties are so weak as to be almost nonexistent?
   A) Pennsylvania
   B) New York
   C) Texas
   D) Alaska
   E) California

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 249
   Edition: National

37) In closed primaries,
   A) voters may vote for candidates from either party.
   B) voters may choose on election day which party primary they want to participate in.
   C) only voters who have registered in advance with the party can vote.
   D) voters may vote for multiple candidates.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 249
   Edition: National

38) In open primaries,
   A) voters may choose on election day which party primary they want to participate in.
   B) voters may vote for candidates from either party.
   C) only voters who have registered in advance with the party can vote.
   D) voters may vote for multiple candidates.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 249
   Edition: National
39) In blanket primaries,
   A) voters may choose on election day which party primary they want to participate in.
   B) only voters who have registered in advance with the party can vote.
   C) voters may vote for candidates from either party.
   D) voters may vote for multiple candidates.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 249
Edition: National

40) Closed primaries
   A) depress voter turnout.
   B) encourage party loyalty.
   C) discourage party loyalty.
   D) cost less than open primaries.
   E) have fewer undercounts.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 249
Edition: National

41) Blanket primaries
   A) cost less than open primaries.
   B) discourage party loyalty.
   C) depress voter turnout.
   D) encourage party loyalty.
   E) have fewer undercounts.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 249
Edition: National

42) American national parties are best described as
   A) controlled from the bottom (local level) up.
   B) loose aggregations of state parties.
   C) bicameral in nature.
   D) centralized organizations based in Congress.
   E) powerful, centralized organizations based in Washington, D.C.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 251
Edition: National
43) Each party holds a national convention every
   A) six years.
   B) year.
   C) four years.
   D) five years.
   E) two years.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 251
Edition: National

44) The supreme power within each of the parties is
   A) the state party organizations.
   B) the president.
   C) the Supreme Party Court.
   D) the national convention.
   E) the national committee.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 251
Edition: National

45) Keeping the party operating between conventions is the job of the
   A) national committee.
   B) regional offices.
   C) elected officials.
   D) congressional leadership.
   E) majority or minority whip.
Answer: A
Page Ref: 251
Edition: National

46) The chairperson of the party that controls the White House is normally selected by
   A) members of the party in Congress.
   B) a committee of state chairpersons.
   C) the president.
   D) closed primary.
   E) none of the above
Answer: C
Page Ref: 251
Edition: National
47) Every political party depends upon what the text calls a ________, meaning a set of individuals or groups supporting it.
   A) system of patronage  
   B) coalition  
   C) set of super delegates  
   D) power base  
   E) linkage institution  
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 251  
   Edition: National

48) The party national committees
   A) select the party’s presidential candidate.  
   B) are composed of each party’s members of Congress.  
   C) meet once every four years.  
   D) write and approve the party’s platform.  
   E) keep the party operating between conventions.  
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 251  
   Edition: National

49) The day-to-day activities of the national party are the responsibility of the
   A) congressional party leaders.  
   B) national chairperson.  
   C) president.  
   D) national committee.  
   E) national convention.  
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 251  
   Edition: National

50) Voters and coalitions of voters are attracted to different parties largely by
   A) selective perception.  
   B) their performance and policies.  
   C) the charisma of their candidates.  
   D) tradition.  
   E) their socio-economic status.  
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 251  
   Edition: National
51) Political candidates make many promises when running for office. In electing one, the public can expect

   A) specific implementation of the promise to differ from the general promise made during the campaign.
   B) few to be carried out because political promises are made to be broken.
   C) that for every broken promise, many more will be kept.
   D) a significant gap between party platform and political performance.
   E) both A and D.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 251–252
Edition: National

52) The American political parties fall far short of the responsible party model for all of the following reasons EXCEPT

   A) they are too decentralized.
   B) there is no mechanism for the parties to discipline officeholders.
   C) their presidential candidates ignore the party platform.
   D) their candidates are usually self-selected.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 263
Edition: National

53) A study of major party platforms by Gerald Pomper found that the parties broke their promises

   A) ten percent of the time.
   B) half the time.
   C) two-thirds of the time.
   D) over ninety percent of the time.
   E) a third of the time.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 252
Edition: National
54) A party era refers to

A) a period of history in which there is one dominant majority party that wins most elections.
B) the period between two elections, during which the two parties are assessed as to how powerful they are relative to each other.
C) a period of years during which a party is born and begins to run candidates for office.
D) the life span of a party from its beginning to end (e.g., the Whigs).
E) a period of time during which there is one dominant majority party that wins all elections.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

55) A party era begins, or is made more certain, with

A) the defeat of an incumbent president.
B) a critical election.
C) the founding of a new major party.
D) party competition.
E) a congressional election.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

56) A critical election involves and accelerates a process called

A) partisan transformation.
B) electoral examination.
C) proportional representation.
D) party realignment.
E) democratic rejuvenation.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National
57) Party realignments in the United States

A) occur when a party makes dramatic changes in its positions on issues.
B) involve the death of one party and the birth of a brand new one.
C) are slight adjustments of political allegiance among voters in at least one region of the country.
D) happen after most presidential elections, and occasionally in-between.
E) are rare events in the United States, usually associated with a major national crisis or trauma, in which one party’s majority domination is replaced with another’s.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

58) Realignments are typically associated with

A) a major reorganization of the executive branch.
B) the creation of new states.
C) one party winning the presidency while the other controls Congress.
D) a major crisis or trauma in the nation.
E) changes in election laws.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

59) The first party system in the United States consisted of the

A) Democrats and Whigs.
B) Federalists and Whigs.
C) Democrats and Republicans.
D) Federalists and Democratic–Republicans.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National
60) The dominant political party in America's first party system was the
   A) Democratic-Republicans.
   B) Whigs.
   C) Republicans.
   D) Democrats.
   E) Federalists.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 254
   Edition: National

61) The Democratic-Republicans were also known as the
   A) Jeffersonians.
   B) Madisonians.
   C) Whigs.
   D) Federalists.
   E) Hamiltonians.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 254
   Edition: National

62) The last Federalist president was
   A) Alexander Hamilton.
   B) John Adams.
   C) Andrew Jackson.
   D) Abraham Lincoln.
   E) Thomas Jefferson.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 254
   Edition: National

63) At the beginning of party development in the United States,
   A) parties tried to defeat each other in elections.
   B) there were many small parties, each representing a narrow interest.
   C) we had a one-party system where one powerful party dominated the government and blocked the creation of new parties.
   D) parties sought to destroy each other.
   E) parties were merely the personal following of certain charismatic individuals.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 254
   Edition: National
64) The first American political party evolved
A) from the supporters of George Washington’s first campaign for president.
B) out of Thomas Jefferson’s efforts to get the Declaration of Independence adopted.
C) out of public disgust over the duel between Aaron Burr and Alexander Hamilton, leading to calls to solve conflicts through peaceful party competition.
D) during the Constitutional Convention.
E) out of Alexander Hamilton’s efforts to get Congress to establish a national bank.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

65) The policy positions stated in party platforms are
A) of some importance because they are unambiguous statements of where a party stands.
B) intended to get a candidate elected, not to be implemented.
C) of little importance because only 10 to 25 percent of the positions are acted upon by government.
D) very important because nearly three-fourths of them result in policy action when the party is in power.
E) never important because less than one-third of them result in policy action when the party is in power.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 252
Edition: National

66) Party eras in American politics are periods of time in which
A) partisan identification is at high levels and political party nominees win most elections rather than independent candidates who are unaffiliated with a party.
B) party organizations grow very strong, are able to control the policy positions of their candidates, and win votes by providing jobs and government services to loyal party supporters.
C) political dominance frequently shifts from one party to the other.
D) one party dominates.
E) one party wins every presidential election.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 254
Edition: National
67) "Critical elections" always result in the
A) widespread public questioning of the American election process accompanied by calls for its reform.
B) displacement of the minority party by the majority party.
C) formation of new political parties.
D) successful bid by a third political party.
E) formation of new coalitions for each political party.
Answer: E
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

68) Which of the following statements about party realignment is FALSE?
A) Party realignments are typically associated with a major crisis or trauma.
B) Party realignments were associated with the Civil War and with the Great Depression.
C) Party realignments transform the party system.
D) Party realignment involves a reconfiguration of the demographic groups supporting the parties.
E) Party realignments occur often in American political life.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

69) America's first and shortest-lived major political party was the
A) Anti-Federalist party.
B) Whig party.
C) Democratic-Republican party.
D) Federalist party.
E) Independence party.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National
70) The first party system (1796–1824) was characterized by
   A) professional politicians running for office.
   B) the dominance of the presidency by the Federalist party.
   C) the dominance of the Republican party.
   D) the dominance of the northern capitalist states.
   E) the dominance of the Democratic-Republican party.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

71) Andrew Jackson was the first president identified as a(n)
   A) Independent.
   B) Democrat.
   C) Republican.
   D) Democratic-Republican.
   E) Whig.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 254–255
Edition: National

72) In the second party system in United States history, the election contests were between which two major parties?
   A) Democrats and Whigs
   B) Democrats and Republicans
   C) Federalists and Whigs
   D) Republicans and Whigs
   E) Federalists and Anti-Federalists

Answer: A
Page Ref: 254–255
Edition: National
73) During the second party system in United States history, Martin Van Buren argued that

A) political parties were harming the country because they promoted factionalism, petty bickering, and disunity.
B) the Whigs should be the sole party, as they were the only legitimate representatives of the people.
C) the Democrats should be the sole party, as they were the only legitimate representatives of the people.
D) the Republicans should be the sole party, as they were the only legitimate representatives of the people.
E) a governing party needed a loyal opposition party to represent parts of society that it could not.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 255
Edition: National

74) The election of 1828 that brought Andrew Jackson to the presidency was significant because it

A) began the ascendancy of the New Deal coalition around the Democratic party.
B) marked the rise of the Whigs.
C) was the first time the Republican party controlled Congress.
D) forged a new political coalition.
E) marked the beginning of the dominance of northern industrialists.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 255
Edition: National

75) The Whig party

A) was named after the wigs that the early aristocrats such as George Washington wore.
B) dominated the second American party era between 1828 and 1856.
C) forged a coalition of westerners, southerners, and new immigrants.
D) believed in broadening political opportunity, eliminating vestiges of elitism, and mobilizing the masses.
E) was only able to win the presidency when it nominated aging, but popular, military heroes.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 255
Edition: National
76) The Republicans emerged as a powerful political party in the
   A) 1890s.
   B) 1790s.
   C) 1930s.
   D) 1850s.
   E) 1820s.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 255
   Edition: National

77) The Republican party began as the
   A) party of big business interests.
   B) principal anti-slavery party.
   C) principal pro-slavery party.
   D) party of states’ rights and silver money.
   E) party of the New Deal.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 255
   Edition: National

78) The Republicans had a long period as the country’s dominant majority party, which ended
   B) in 1980.
   C) with the Civil War.
   D) in 1932.
   E) in 1896.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 256
   Edition: National

79) The Depression of the 1930s gave rise to what is called
   A) econo-politics.
   B) party competition.
   C) the Era of Divided Government.
   D) the New Deal coalition.
   E) the Republican resurgence.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 256
   Edition: National
80) The New Deal coalition was responsible for electing and reelecting
   A) Socialist party candidates.
   B) Democrats.
   C) Republicans.
   D) Whigs.
   E) Democratic-Republicans.
   Answer: B

81) Who was the president who brought together the original New Deal coalition in support of his candidacy?
   A) Woodrow Wilson
   B) Lyndon Johnson
   C) John F. Kennedy
   D) Franklin D. Roosevelt
   E) Herbert Hoover
   Answer: D

82) The Republican party rose to prominence in the late 1850s as the
   A) Free Silver party.
   B) Party Of The Wealthy Elite.
   C) Gold Standard party.
   D) Anti-slavery party.
   E) Party of Rural Farmers.
   Answer: D
83) The election of 1896 is considered a watershed because it
   A) entrenched western farmers and silverites in the Republican party.
   B) shifted the party coalitions and entrenched the Republicans in power for another
generation.
   C) gave Republicans control of the South.
   D) marked the rise of the Populist party, which dominated American politics until the
Depression.
   E) brought the industrial working classes and Wall Street interests together into the
Democratic fold.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 256
Edition: National

84) The Republicans lost the election of 1932 primarily due to
   A) the nomination of a popular war hero by the Democrats.
   B) Hitler's election as chancellor of Germany and the Republicans' failure to prevent it.
   C) rising political and economic instability in Europe.
   D) the failure of the Republicans to hold onto the support of urban industrialists.
   E) President Herbert Hoover's handling of the Depression.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 256
Edition: National

85) Which of the following groups was NOT part of the New Deal coalition?
   A) African Americans
   B) Southerners
   C) members of labor unions
   D) wealthy New Englanders
   E) Catholics and Jews

Answer: D
Page Ref: 256
Edition: National
86) Between the 1930s and the 1960s, people attracted to the Democratic party included
   A) Protestants and Jews.
   B) urban working classes and intellectuals.
   C) northerners and the rich.
   D) farmers and rural dwellers.
   E) the college-educated and business owners.
Answer: B

Page Ref: 256
Edition: National

87) The New Deal coalition made the _______ party the minority party for decades.
   A) Socialist
   B) Federalist
   C) Whig
   D) Republican
   E) Democratic
Answer: D

Page Ref: 256
Edition: National

88) Since 1968, American politics has been characterized by
   A) divided government.
   B) the New Deal coalition.
   C) Republican control of both the Congress and presidency.
   D) Democratic control of the presidency and Republican control of Congress.
   E) Democratic control of both the Congress and presidency.
Answer: A

Page Ref: 257
Edition: National
89) In elections since 1968,
   A) the Democrats have dominated both the presidency and the Congress.
   B) the Republicans have dominated both the presidency and the Congress.
   C) party control of both Congress and the presidency has shifted from one party to the other at least every other election.
   D) the Democrats have dominated the presidency, while the Republicans have dominated Congress.
   E) the Republicans have dominated the presidency, while the Democrats have dominated the Congress.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 257
Edition: National

90) People gradually moving away from both parties is referred to as
   A) partisan drift.
   B) coalition politics.
   C) realignment.
   D) dealignment.
   E) alignment.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 259
Edition: National

91) Party dealignment is symbolized by
   A) the 1992 election of a president and Congress of the same party.
   B) the recent pattern of one-party control.
   C) a renewed commitment to America’s two major political parties.
   D) the recent pattern of divided government.
   E) the Republican takeover of Congress in 1994.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 259
Edition: National
92) Loyalty to a political party has _______ over the past thirty years.
   A) increased slightly
   B) increased significantly
   C) decreased
   D) remained about the same
   E) virtually disappeared

   Answer: C
Page Ref: 259
Edition: National

93) Over the past thirty years, there has been a marked rise in
   A) support for both the major and minor parties.
   B) support for the Democratic party.
   C) support for both the Democratic and Republican parties.
   D) support for minor parties.
   E) party neutrality.

   Answer: E
Page Ref: 259
Edition: National

94) What sort of realignment has occurred in the current party era?
   A) a Southern realignment
   B) a rural/urban realignment
   C) a cultural realignment
   D) an entire realignment
   E) an age-based realignment

   Answer: A
Page Ref: 257-259
Edition: National

95) In 1968 the Democratic party was torn apart, leaving the door to the presidency open for
   Republican Richard Nixon primarily due to
   A) the failure of President Johnson’s War on Poverty.
   B) the sudden evaporation of the New Deal coalition.
   C) the abandonment of the Democratic party by African Americans.
   D) President Johnson’s Vietnam War policies.
   E) the severity of the mid-60’s recession.

   Answer: D
Page Ref: 257
Edition: National
96) From 1968 to 1992,
   A) the Republicans dominated the presidency while the Democrats dominated Congress.
   B) a realignment occurred that destroyed the New Deal coalition.
   C) the Republicans became the majority party.
   D) the Republicans dominated the federal government while the Democrats dominated state governments.
   E) the Democrats experienced a slow, “creeping ascendance” that culminated in their gaining control of the entire government with the election of Bill Clinton.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 257-258
   Edition: National

97) Party dealignment means the
   A) the inability of the parties to deal with the nation’s problems.
   B) lack of party cohesion in Congress.
   C) realignment of party coalitions.
   D) increasing inability of minority parties to win elections.
   E) decreasing influence of both parties on voters and government.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 259
   Edition: National

98) Which of the following statements about third parties in the United States is FALSE?
   A) Third parties often bring new issues to the political agenda.
   B) Third parties are a rare phenomena in American history.
   C) Third parties have brought new groups into the electorate.
   D) Third-party candidates almost never win office in the United States.
   E) Third parties have had important effects on American politics.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 260-261
   Edition: National
99) Ross Perot's candidacies for president in 1992 and 1996 were an example of what type of third-party campaign?
   A) a split-level party
   B) a party espousing an extreme ideological position
   C) a splinter party
   D) a party serving as an extension of one individual’s candidacy
   E) none of the above

   Answer: D

Page Ref: 260
Edition: National

100) In 2000, Green party candidate Ralph Nader forced more attention on _______ issues and drew away a small percentage of votes from Al Gore.
   A) budgetary
   B) environmental
   C) health
   D) national security
   E) welfare

   Answer: B

Page Ref: 260–261
Edition: National

101) Which of the following is TRUE about most third-party campaigns in American history?
   A) They almost never win office.
   B) They occasionally succeed.
   C) They usually become major political parties over time.
   D) They have been most successful at promoting party dealignment.
   E) They frequently are successful.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 260
Edition: National
102) An example of a splinter party would be
   A) the Prohibitionist party.
   B) the Poor Man’s party of 1952.
   C) the Libertarian party.
   D) Ross Perot’s United We Stand.
   E) George Wallace’s American Independents.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 260
Edition: National

103) Critically affecting the electoral college vote, bringing new issues to the public agenda, and venting popular discontent are important roles played by
   A) intra–party factions.
   B) splinter groups in a multiparty system.
   C) the two–party system in thwarting extreme or unconventional views.
   D) third parties in a two–party system.
   E) parties based on a single issue in a multiple–issue society.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 260–261
Edition: National

104) The first true anti-slavery party was the
   A) Free Soil party.
   B) Anti–slavery party.
   C) Populist party.
   D) Progressive party.
   E) Republican party.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 255
Edition: National
105) In many other democracies, the system of awarding seats in the national legislature, unlike in the United States, is one of
   A) single-member districts.
   B) intellectual merit alone.
   C) winner-take-all.
   D) virtual representation.
   E) proportional representation.

Answer: E  
*Page Ref: 262*  
*Edition: National*

106) A proportional representation system for electing members to a nation’s legislature is more likely to lead to a
   A) situation like that of the United States, with only two major parties as rivals.
   B) centralization and unification of political forces within the nation.
   C) single party holding all the seats.
   D) moderating of political conflict.
   E) greater number of political parties holding seats.

Answer: E  
*Page Ref: 262*  
*Edition: National*

107) If the United States had a multiparty system,
   A) third parties would come to dominate politics.
   B) the necessity for coalitions would be eliminated.
   C) each party would have more distinct policy positions.
   D) people would have to pay dues to belong to a party.
   E) each party would move to the ideological center.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 260–261*  
*Edition: National*
108) In a winner-take-all system,

A) coalition governments are common.
B) unless a party wins, there is no reward for the votes it gets.
C) if no single party gets a majority vote, a runoff election is held between the top two parties.
D) legislative seats are allocated according to each party's percentage of the nationwide vote.
E) the party winning the majority of the votes wins all the seats up for election in the legislature.

Answer: B

109) In proportional representation systems,

A) whoever gets the most votes wins the election.
B) each demographic group is allocated a certain number of positions in the government, in proportion to that group's percentage of the population.
C) coalition governments usually last for many years.
D) legislative seats are allocated according to each party's percentage of the nationwide vote.
E) every party gets represented in the legislature.

Answer: D

110) The American two-party system promotes

A) the organization of political parties around special interests.
B) the weakness of centrist positions on policy issues.
C) moderation in conflict and ambiguous policy positions.
D) greater conflict, but clear policy choices.
E) competitive elections.

Answer: C
111) Advocates of the _______ believe that parties should present distinct, comprehensive programs for governing the nation and carry them out.
   A) differentiation approach
   B) McGovern–Fraser Commission
   C) responsible party model
   D) rational-choice theory
   E) party realignment

Answer: C
Page Ref: 262–263
Edition: National

112) The "responsible party" model holds that parties should
   A) not use wedge issues that cause the other party’s supporters to fight with each other during the campaign.
   B) avoid making promises.
   C) keep to middle-of-the-road positions.
   D) present clear alternatives to voters.
   E) avoid ideological stands.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 262–263
Edition: National

113) In what way do weak political parties affect the scope of government?
   A) They make it difficult for politicians to help their constituents.
   B) They allow presidents to expand the scope of foreign policy, while they decrease the domestic scope of government.
   C) Being weak, they are unable to counteract the power of government so the scope of government grows.
   D) Since it is harder for them to enact legislation, it is hard for them to either expand or decrease the scope of government.
   E) They have had no real effect on the size and power of government.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 264
Edition: National
114) The weakening of party control over American politics
   A) is in part due to the increasing influence of the media.
   B) is leading to a multiparty system in this country.
   C) threatens democracy.
   D) threatens the very existence of political parties.
   E) leads to fewer differences between party platforms.
   Answer: A

True/False Questions

1) According to rational-choice theory, voters want to maximize the chance that policies they favor will be adopted by government, and parties want to win office; thus, in order to win office, the wise party selects policies that are widely favored.
   Answer: TRUE

2) Each party holds a national convention every two years to bring delegates together, hear speeches, pass the party platform, attempt to project a certain image, and, during presidential election years, to nominate candidates for president and vice president.
   Answer: FALSE

3) Critical elections occur only rarely, but dramatically shake up the American political system and involve a major realignment of the coalitions making up the major political parties.
   Answer: TRUE

4) Third parties almost never win office in the United States, but they sometimes have an effect on the electoral college vote and have served as "safety valves" for expressing popular discontent.
   Answer: TRUE

5) Day-to-day activities of the national party are the responsibility of the party’s national committee.
   Answer: FALSE
6) Organizationally, state parties are on the upswing throughout the country.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 250
Edition: National

7) Starting about 1968, a gradual realignment occurred in the South, noted primarily for moderate Republicans switching over to the Democratic Party.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 257-259
Edition: National

8) Third parties in the United States have historically had no impact on American politics.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 260-261
Edition: National

9) The winner–take–all system in the United States discourages small parties.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 262
Edition: National

10) Since 1968, neither party has been completely and consistently dominant, and the United States has been in an era of divided government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 259
Edition: National

11) America's weak political party structure makes it almost impossible for politicians to focus their efforts on getting more from the government for their own constituents.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 264
Edition: National

12) One of the biggest rivals of American political parties is the media.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 264-265
Edition: National

13) Party realignment is a rare event in American politics.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National
14) The control that parties have over who is selected as their nominee is less now than it was in the 1960s.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 250-251
   Edition: National

15) Coalition governments are relatively rare in European democracies.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 262
   Edition: National

16) Individual members of Congress receive great pressure to follow party policy, which leads to coherent party programs being passed by Congress.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 262-263
   Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) A party’s endorsement of a candidate is called a(n) _______.

   Answer: nomination
   Page Ref: 243
   Edition: National

2) _______ theory seeks to explain political processes and outcomes as consequences of purposeful behavior: Voters seek out candidates who support their policies, and the wise party selects policies that are widely favored.

   Answer: Rational-choice
   Page Ref: 244
   Edition: National

3) Voting for candidates of different parties for different offices is known as _______.

   Answer: ticket-splitting
   Page Ref: 247
   Edition: National

4) What is meant by "ticket-splitting" and what is its impact?

   Answer: voting with one party for one office and with another party for other offices; often results in divided government
   Page Ref: 247
   Edition: National
5) The patronage system of hiring government workers was a key inducement offered by ________.

Answer: party machines
Page Ref: 247
Edition: National

6) What is patronage, and how was it used?

Answer: a key inducement used by party machines, where jobs, promotions or contracts are given for political reasons rather than for merit or competence alone
Page Ref: 248
Edition: National

7) In ________, only people who have registered in advance with the party can vote for that party's candidates, thus encouraging greater party loyalty.

Answer: closed primaries
Page Ref: 249
Edition: National

8) In ________, voters are presented with a list of candidates from all the parties. Voters can then select some Democrats and some Republicans if they like.

Answer: blanket primaries
Page Ref: 249
Edition: National

9) In ________, voters can decide on election day whether they want to participate in the Democratic or Republican contests.

Answer: open primaries
Page Ref: 249
Edition: National

10) In a critical election, party ________ takes place, with new coalitions formed with new issues, and a new dominant party era made clear.

Answer: realignment
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

11) What is meant by the process of party realignment, and how does it occur in the United States?

Answer: the displacement of the majority party by the minority party, usually during a critical election period; answers will vary
Page Ref: 254
Edition: National

12) From 1932 to 1964, the Democrats dominated with what was known as the ________ coalition.

Answer: New Deal
Page Ref: 256
Edition: National
13) What was the importance of the election of 1896?

Answer: a realigning election that entrenched the Republicans as the majority party for another generation

*Page Ref: 256*
*Edition: National*

14) Since 1968, the Democrats have tended to dominate in Congress and the Republicans have tended to dominate in the presidency; the result is that this party era is known as one of ________.

Answer: divided government

*Page Ref: 258–259*
*Edition: National*

15) Compare and contrast the phenomena of party dealignment and party neutrality.

Answer: Answers will vary.

*Page Ref: 259*
*Edition: National*

16) Although ________ almost never win office in the United States, they sometimes tip the balance in the electoral college, and serve on occasion as "safety valves" for popular discontent.

Answer: third parties

*Page Ref: 260*
*Edition: National*

17) Most European countries do not use the winner-take-all system of electing members to their national legislatures, but instead use a system of ________ which allows even small parties to frequently have some members elected.

Answer: proportional representation

*Page Ref: 262*
*Edition: National*

18) What is the difference between a winner-take-all system and a proportional representation system?

Answer: Winner-take-all systems award legislative seats only to the candidates who come in first in their constituencies. Proportional representation systems that award legislative seats to political parties in proportion to the number of votes won in an election.

*Page Ref: 262*
*Edition: National*

19) Advocates of the ________ model believe that parties should be more disciplined, committed, and specific; the majority party should implement its programs as promised; the minority party should state specifically what it would do if in power; and the majority party would accept responsibility for the performance of the government.

Answer: responsible party

*Page Ref: 263*
*Edition: National*
20) What two major effects do weak political parties in the United States have on the scope of government?

Answer: Weak parties are associated with a more limited scope of government than in Western European democracies, which have strong and disciplined parties because they cannot amass the majorities they need to pass major (government expanding) legislation. On the other hand, weak parties also make it difficult to say no to various demands on government.

Page Ref: 264
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Present evidence to support the argument that political parties have waning influence on American politics.

Page Ref: 240-267
Edition: National

2) Describe the three major components of an American political party, and what the major tasks of a party are. Why is our political system so reliant on parties to organize public opinion? Explain.

Page Ref: 242-243
Edition: National

3) Describe the nature and functions of political parties in America. What major tasks do the parties perform?

Page Ref: 243-244
Edition: National

4) According to Schattschneider, "democracy is unthinkable save in terms of the parties." Expand on this comment, explaining what it is that parties do, and why these things are so important to democracy. Provide specific examples, as needed.

Page Ref: 240-244
Edition: National

5) What is rational-choice theory? Evaluate the Downs model for a rational political party and present a graph that depicts the model.

Page Ref: 244-245
Edition: National

6) Evaluate the claim that in a democracy candidates should say what they mean to do if elected and be able to do what they promised once they are elected. To what extent do party promises result in public policy? What changes do the advocates of the "responsible party model" suggest in order to ensure that party promises be turned into public policy?

Page Ref: 251-252; 262-264
Edition: National
7) Explain the role of the party in the electorate. What recent trends are occurring in party identification, and what effect does this have on party politics and elections?

Page Ref: 245-247  
Edition: National

8) Describe and evaluate party organization at the local, state, and national levels. What have been the recent trends in the distribution of party power?

Page Ref: 247-251  
Edition: National

9) Compare and contrast the two major party platforms on the following issues: abortion, the environment, health care, taxes, defense spending and education.

Page Ref: 253  
Edition: National

10) Do parties keep their campaign promises? For what purpose is a party platform, and how well does it predict the policies the party attempts to carry out when its candidates win office? In your opinion, are America's two political parties sufficiently different, or too much the same? Explain.

Page Ref: 251-252  
Edition: National

11) Describe the significance of a critical election, party realignment, and what is meant by a "party era." Do you think 1992 was a critical election? Why, or why not?

Page Ref: 254  
Edition: National

12) Briefly describe the five major "party eras" in United States history, which party was dominant and which was secondary in each, and explain the reasons for the dominant party's success. Be specific.

Page Ref: 254-259  
Edition: National

13) Using examples from the history of party eras in the United States, explain the pattern and process of shifting party dominance.

Page Ref: 254-259  
Edition: National

14) Some political scientists talk about a party dealignment in process today. What is meant by this, and what evidence do they give for it? How does party neutrality fit into this argument? Explain.

Page Ref: 259  
Edition: National
15) Describe the impact of third parties in American elections. What are the different types of third parties. How successful have they been? What role do they serve in the system? Would you prefer to see more parties to choose from on the ballot? Why, or why not?

Page Ref: 260-261
Edition: National

16) Explain the role of third parties in American politics. Give examples to illustrate your answer.

Page Ref: 260-261
Edition: National

17) Some have argued that America’s winner-take-all system fails to adequately represent differences of opinion in government. Would you prefer to see proportional representation? What are its strengths and weaknesses? Explain.

Page Ref: 262
Edition: National

18) Describe the responsible party model, and explain why its advocates believe it would make for a more democratic government in the United States. Do you agree? What do you think are its strengths and weaknesses? Explain.

Page Ref: 262-263
Edition: National

19) Explain the advantages and disadvantages of a two-party system compared to a multiparty system. What would the United States be like if it had a multiparty system?

Page Ref: 262-264
Edition: National

20) What is the role of linkage institutions? What are the main linkage institutions in the United States? How do political parties perform a linkage function?

Page Ref: 243; 240-267
Edition: National
Chapter 9  Nominations and Campaigns

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) A(n) ________ is a party’s official selection of a candidate to run for office.
   A) appointment
   B) nomination
   C) conversion
   D) imprimatur
   E) endorsement

Answer: B
Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

2) In most advanced industrialized countries, election campaigns are
   A) endless affairs, sometimes lasting a year or more.
   B) not limited by law.
   C) limited by law to two weeks.
   D) limited by law to no more than two months.
   E) limited by law to three months.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

3) Nomination for public office is
   A) a party’s selection of a candidate.
   B) being appointed to a government post.
   C) a win in key state primaries.
   D) a victory in the general election.
   E) the incumbent’s selection of a candidate.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 270
Edition: National
4) The way in which candidates attempt to manipulate money, the media, and momentum to achieve the nomination is through

A) campaign strategy.
B) primaries.
C) charisma.
D) propaganda.
E) party support.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

5) In most advanced industrialized countries, national campaigns

A) are even less dignified than in the United States.
B) occur once every four years.
C) are limited by law to no more than two months.
D) are longer than American elections.
E) occur only once every seven years.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

6) The specific goal of the presidential nomination game is to

A) win the majority of votes cast in presidential primaries.
B) win the majority of votes cast in presidential caucuses.
C) win the majority of delegate votes in order to win the party nomination.
D) win a majority of votes in the electoral college.
E) beat the other party’s candidate in the general election.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

7) The Democratic and Republican candidates for president are formally nominated by the

A) presidential caucuses.
B) presidential primaries.
C) electoral college.
D) national party conventions.
E) national committees.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 270
Edition: National
8) To be the presidential candidate of a major political party, a person must
   A) win a majority of party primaries in the states.
   B) first be nominated by the electoral college.
   C) win a majority of the delegates at the party’s national convention.
   D) win a majority of the delegates elected from state caucuses.
   E) have the endorsement of incumbent party leaders.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 270
   Edition: National

9) The first presidential caucus of the campaign season is traditionally held in
   A) Delaware.
   B) California.
   C) Minnesota.
   D) New Hampshire.
   E) Iowa.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 271
   Edition: National

10) Caucuses are usually organized like
   A) bi-legislatures.
   B) the original Constitutional Convention.
   C) winner-take-all election systems.
   D) pyramids.
   E) the electoral college.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 271
   Edition: National
11) Which of the following is TRUE about the presidential nomination process?

A) In most states, it is the party leadership that chooses the delegates, and ordinary party voters have no say.

B) In most states, presidential primaries are held with the national convention delegates allocated to each candidate in rough proximity to their percentage of popular vote.

C) In most states, caucuses of interested party voters are held to begin the delegate selection process; only a small percentage of party voters attend, but it is open.

D) Presidential candidates are chosen by their party’s senators and representatives in Congress.

E) Although caucuses or presidential primaries are held in all states, these are mere beauty contests; convention delegates are chosen earlier by party officials who are uninterested in the opinions of party voters.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

12) Today, state presidential caucuses are

A) open only to party activists who have spent a designated amount of time on behalf of the party or its candidates.

B) small meetings of the party’s county leaders held to select national convention delegates with no other input.

C) special meetings of state party leaders who elect their state’s delegates to the national convention.

D) open to all registered party voters, or those who claim party allegiance in states with no party registration.

E) held in most states in order to select national convention delegates.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 271
Edition: National

13) Precinct-level presidential caucuses

A) directly choose national convention delegates.

B) determine how many votes that state will cast for each of the presidential candidates at the national convention.

C) have absolutely nothing to do with choosing delegates to the major parties’ national nominating conventions.

D) choose delegates to state conventions where delegates to the national convention are selected.

E) choose delegates to county caucuses/conventions where delegates to the state convention are selected, then the state convention chooses national convention delegates.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 271
Edition: National
14) Today, most delegates to each major party's national convention are chosen by
   A) state party chairpersons prior to any caucus or presidential primary.
   B) state presidential primaries.
   C) the previous national convention.
   D) state presidential caucuses.
   E) a lottery system.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 272
   Edition: National

15) The presidential primary was begun in the early twentieth century, most strongly pushed by
   A) Democratic party leaders in Congress.
   B) Republican party leaders in Congress.
   C) political reformers who wanted to take nominations out of the hands of party bosses.
   D) party bosses who wanted to take nominations out of the hands of political reformers.
   E) the members of the electoral college.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 272
   Edition: National

16) The Democratic National Convention in ________ led to serious reforms in the methods it used
    to choose its convention delegates.

   A) 1936
   B) 1968
   C) 1952
   D) 1984
   E) 1992

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 272
   Edition: National
17) Following the Democratic National Convention in Chicago in 1968, the party chose to

A) limit attendance at future conventions to the elected officers of the party’s organizations nationwide.

B) limit attendance at future conventions to the party’s nationwide elected government officeholders.

C) tighten up its convention delegate selection to keep it from being overrun by women, minorities, youth, and single-issue groups.

D) allow party officers and Democratic officeholders, many of whom had not been seated at recent conventions, to serve as “super delegates.”

E) open up its process of choosing delegates to the national convention in order to respond to demands for greater inclusion from women, minorities, youth, and other groups.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

18) The first presidential caucus is held in

A) Iowa.

B) Michigan.

C) New Hampshire.

D) Nebraska.

E) New York.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 271
Edition: National

19) In states with caucuses,

A) supporters of candidates try to get elected as delegates through a pyramid of meetings.

B) the state legislature selects the state’s delegates to the national conventions.

C) party leaders select delegates according to their own candidate preferences.

D) candidates appoint supporters to serve as delegates.

E) delegates are chosen through general election of a candidate.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 271
Edition: National
20) Today, a majority of the delegates to the national convention are selected through
   A) state party conventions.
   B) party caucuses.
   C) presidential primaries.
   D) local party conventions.
   E) state legislatures.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

21) The McGovern–Fraser Commission
   A) chose presidential candidates for the Democratic party.
   B) investigated violations of campaign finance law in 1968.
   C) established the dates of presidential primaries.
   D) had a mandate to make the Democratic party conventions more democratic.
   E) strengthened the role of the party’s national committee.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

22) The McGovern–Fraser Commission was set up to reform
   A) the financing of federal election campaigns.
   B) the rules for selecting delegates to the Democratic National Convention.
   C) the rules for selecting delegates to both the Democratic and Republican National
      Conventions.
   D) party fund-raising.
   E) the rules for selecting delegates to the Republican National Convention.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National
23) The McGovern–Fraser Commission made the delegate selection process of the Democratic party more democratic by
   A) giving the power of selecting delegates to party officials.
   B) increasing the number of delegates chosen.
   C) weakening the power of party leaders to choose convention delegates.
   D) encouraging the use of presidential caucuses rather than primaries.
   E) none of the above
Answer: C

Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

24) The opening up of the process to choose delegates to the Democratic National Convention in the immediate aftermath of 1968 was spearheaded by
   A) the McGovern–Fraser Commission.
   B) the Kerner Commission.
   C) an act of Congress.
   D) President Johnson.
   E) the Warren Commission.
Answer: A

Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

25) The addition of superdelegates to the Democratic national conventions was spearheaded by
   A) those who felt the Warren Commission had led to unrepresentative delegate selection.
   B) President Jimmy Carter.
   C) the McGovern–Fraser Commission.
   D) those who felt the McGovern–Fraser Commission had opened up the delegate selection process too much.
   E) the Warren Commission.
Answer: D

Page Ref: 273
Edition: National
26) Few developments have changed American politics as much as

A) campaign finance reforms in the 1970s.
B) the proliferation of presidential primaries.
C) the creation of PACs.
D) expanded number of TV news shows.
E) talk radio.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 272-273
Edition: National

27) Which of the following was NOT a reason for the Democratic party adding superdelegates to its national nominating conventions?

A) the sense that party insiders and elected officials would be more likely to support the most electable candidate
B) the need for establishing a "peer review" to the process, with input from politicians who often know the candidates best
C) the insistence of the McGovern-Fraser Commission to have superdelegates play a major veto-like role
D) the feeling that earlier reforms had given too little say to the party's state and national leaders, with disastrous election results
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 273
Edition: National

28) The work of the McGovern-Fraser Commission appointed during the turbulent Chicago Convention of 1968 was a reflection of concern over

A) the catastrophic defeat of Goldwater in 1964.
B) the Republicans' image as a party of efficiency.
C) the declining strength of Democratic power in Congress and state governorships.
D) elite control of the party.
E) Richard Nixon's growing popularity and the fear that he could defeat the Democratic nominee in the fall.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 272
Edition: National
29) Superdelegates
   A) are special delegates chosen by popular election.
   B) are each able to cast three votes at their national convention rather than the standard one vote.
   C) are delegates uncommitted to a specific candidate.
   D) have helped make the delegation more representative of the population.
   E) have helped restore an element of peer review to the process of choosing a presidential candidate.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 273
Edition: National

30) The dates of the different presidential primaries and delegate allocations are established by
   A) the national parties.
   B) the Constitution.
   C) federal law.
   D) a joint agreement made by the major candidates in both parties, usually following a great deal of rancor.
   E) state laws.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

31) For a candidate, the most important and desirable result of the early nomination contests is
   A) doing well in a state highly representative of the entire United States population.
   B) doing better than expected, thus winning an image as the party’s frontrunner and holder of momentum.
   C) winning the highest number of national convention delegates.
   D) winning all of its electoral votes.
   E) winning the highest number of votes.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 273
Edition: National
32) Running for the Republican presidential nomination in 1980, George Bush, announced in the early going that he had the "big MO"—a reference to the fact that

A) he had won more delegates in Missouri.
B) he had the momentum having won in Iowa.
C) financial contributors were heavily on his side.
D) he had been endorsed by Moe Shepp, traditionally one of the Republican party’s biggest campaign contributors.
E) he had won more votes in New Hampshire.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 274
Edition: National

33) In 2004 almost three-fourths of the Republican and Democrat delegates were chosen within ________ of the New Hampshire primary.

A) six months
B) two weeks
C) two months
D) six weeks
E) four weeks

Answer: D
Page Ref: 273
Edition: National

34) The New Hampshire primary is important because

A) New Hampshire has a very large number of delegates.
B) New Hampshire is a particularly typical state.
C) it is the primary held closest to the time of the convention.
D) it is the first primary.
E) it involves the first caucuses.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 273
Edition: National
35) The rules determining the way in which the primaries are set up and the delegates are allocated are made by
   A) the electoral college.
   B) the Constitution.
   C) Congress.
   D) the Federal Election Commission.
   E) state legislatures and state parties.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 273
Edition: National

36) Which of the following statements about the New Hampshire presidential primary is FALSE?
   A) Considerable amount of money and time is spent on politicking in New Hampshire prior to the primary.
   B) There is tremendous media coverage of the New Hampshire primary.
   C) New Hampshire holds the first presidential primary of the year.
   D) All the presidential candidates spend considerable time in New Hampshire prior to primary day.
   E) none of the above

Answer: E
Page Ref: 273
Edition: National

37) The state that has disproportionate power because it holds the first presidential primary each election year is
   A) New York.
   B) California.
   C) Iowa.
   D) New Hampshire.
   E) Rhode Island.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 273
Edition: National
38) The "Big Mo" refers to
   A) achieving momentum in the nomination campaign.
   B) the path-breaking presidential campaign of Morris "Mo" Udall.
   C) the overwhelming need for money in a presidential campaign.
   D) the importance of the Missouri primary in the presidential nomination campaign.
   E) the moment in which a candidate receives enough delegates to receive the nomination.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 274
Edition: National

39) In achieving "momentum," nothing helps a candidate more than
   A) early unexpected primary and caucus victories.
   B) winning where a win was expected.
   C) a unanimous vote at the national nominating convention.
   D) closing the gap in the last stages of the campaign.
   E) strong competition.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 274
Edition: National

40) Which of the following is NOT a criticism of the current system of presidential primaries and caucuses?
   A) Prominent officeholders find it difficult to take time out from their current duties to run.
   B) The media do not have enough of a role in this process.
   C) Too much attention is paid to the early ones.
   D) Money plays too big a role.
   E) Many candidates drop out early before most states have held their primary or caucus.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 274-276
Edition: National
41) Iowa and New Hampshire have been especially important in the nomination process over the past several decades because they help candidates to

A) build momentum.
B) generate media attention.
C) generate money.
D) all of the above
E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 273
Edition: National

42) Approximately _______ of eligible voters cast ballots in presidential primaries.

A) 75 percent
B) 65 percent
C) 35 percent
D) 50 percent
E) 20 percent

Answer: E
Page Ref: 275
Edition: National

43) Voters in presidential primaries and caucuses tend to be

A) very similar to the rest of the United States population in terms of education and income.
B) older and more affluent than the United States population as a whole.
C) minorities and notably younger than the general population.
D) somewhat less educated and somewhat poorer on average than the United States population as a whole.
E) far less educated and much poorer on average than the United States population as a whole.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 276
Edition: National
44) In most caucus states, about _______ of the registered voters typically show up for party presidential caucuses.

   A) 60 percent
   B) 20 percent
   C) 35 percent
   D) 5 percent
   E) 50 percent

   Answer: D

Page Ref: 275-276
Edition: National

45) Critics of the primary and caucus system point to the fact that

   A) disproportionate attention goes to the later caucuses and primaries.
   B) no precedent for them is written into the Constitution.
   C) only the best known candidates have a chance of winning the primaries and caucuses.
   D) participation in primaries and caucuses is unrepresentative of the public at large.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: D

Page Ref: 275-276
Edition: National

46) Which of the following statements is FALSE?

   A) About 5 percent of registered voters typically show up for caucuses.
   B) About 50 percent of the population votes in the November presidential election.
   C) Voters in primaries and caucuses tend to be representative of voters at large.
   D) About 20 percent of the population votes in presidential primaries.
   E) More people vote in primaries than attend caucuses.

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 275-276
Edition: National

47) Critics of primaries and caucuses contend that the presidential "kingmakers" are now

   A) party bosses.
   B) the few who vote in the caucuses and primaries.
   C) the media.
   D) interest groups.
   E) state party organizations.

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 276
Edition: National
48) Proponents of a national primary argue that it would do each of the following EXCEPT

A) bring directness and simplicity to the nomination process.
B) no longer allow votes in one state to have more political impact than votes in another.
C) lengthen the time of the campaign.
D) concentrate media coverage and increase interest and understanding.
E) increase interest in more states.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 276
Edition: National

49) Critics of a national primary argue that

A) the campaign would be lengthened.
B) obscure candidates would receive too much of an advantage.
C) the media would have little impact.
D) no candidate would receive a majority, thus a run-off election would be needed.
E) All of these could happen.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 276
Edition: National

50) Presidential nominating conventions have not required more than one ballot to choose the party’s official nominee since 1952, largely due to the

A) rule change that a candidate need only win a plurality of votes at the convention rather than a majority to gain the nomination.
B) changes in party rules requiring a nomination on the first ballot.
C) end of the boss-dominated caucus system.
D) role of television, and the desire of both parties to unite behind one candidate in advance in order to present a show of harmony, rather than bickering, to those who tune in.
E) changes in federal law requiring parties to have their nominations virtually assured before the conventions begin.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 277
Edition: National
51) With the advent of television,
   A) presidential caucuses were replaced by primaries.
   B) television coverage of conventions increased steadily.
   C) multiballot conventions died.
   D) conventions became shorter.
   E) All of these occurred.
   Answer: C

Page Ref: 277
Edition: National

52) Conventions are not as important as they once were in that
   A) we know who is going to win the presidential nomination before the convention meets.
   B) there is less drama and fanfare.
   C) rousing credentials fights and keynote speeches are a thing of the past.
   D) they have not taken more than one ballot to nominate a president since 1952.
   E) they no longer adopt party platforms.
   Answer: A

Page Ref: 277
Edition: National

53) Over the years, television coverage of national party conventions has
   A) received increasingly high Nielsen ratings.
   B) become more dramatic.
   C) shifted to local affiliate reporters focusing on their state delegations and away from the national network anchors.
   D) been scaled back.
   E) steadily increased.
   Answer: D

Page Ref: 277
Edition: National
54) One way in which conventions are more important than they once were is that they
   A) place limits on political representation.
   B) choose the party’s organizational leadership for the next four years.
   C) now decide during the week of the convention, and through much political bickering, who their presidential nominee will be.
   D) develop the party’s policy positions.
   E) involve more money and greater numbers of people.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 278
Edition: National

55) The party’s platform is drafted
   A) after the convention, by a committee made up exclusively of supporters of the winning nominee.
   B) before the convention, by a committee whose members are chosen in rough proportion to each candidate’s strength.
   C) after the convention, by a committee of party members chosen in rough proportion to each candidate’s strength.
   D) during the convention, usually in the morning hours when cameras are not rolling.
   E) by the party’s presidential nominee in the days after the convention is over.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 278
Edition: National

56) The vice-presidential nominee is usually
   A) selected by the presidential nominee in the weeks after the convention.
   B) a close friend from the same state as the presidential nominee.
   C) the runner-up for the presidential nomination, and often someone whom the presidential nominee does not like.
   D) selected by the delegates without a recommendation from the presidential nominee.
   E) selected by the delegates as something of a formality, as the vast majority always vote for whomever the presidential nominee picks.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 279
Edition: National
57) The final major event of each party's national convention, during the last hour or so on the fourth and final night, is the
   A) adoption of the party platform.
   B) acceptance speech by the presidential candidate.
   C) roll-call vote for the presidential nomination.
   D) keynote speech.
   E) inaugural ball and champagne party to honor the new nominee.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 279
Edition: National

58) By custom, the vice-presidential nominee is chosen
   A) through a competitive wide open roll-call vote on the final day.
   B) on the basis of the second largest number of delegates.
   C) on the basis of the presidential nominee's recommendation.
   D) by the electoral college.
   E) by the platform committee.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 279
Edition: National

59) Providing select information and a request for money to lists of people who have supported candidates of similar views in the past is a frequently used political technique known as
   A) soft money.
   B) conversion.
   C) direct mail.
   D) fundraising.
   E) caucusing.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 280
Edition: National
60) One of the most effective methods of raising money for an election campaign has been the use of
A) 1-800 numbers.
B) mass meetings.
C) door-to-door solicitation.
D) direct mail.
E) television advertising.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 280
Edition: National

61) The largest expenditure in a campaign budget for the presidency or a statewide office today would almost certainly be
A) travel, hotels, and food for the candidate and campaign staff.
B) television advertising.
C) the salaries of the campaign manager, pollster, counsel, and other staff.
D) direct mail.
E) buttons, signs, car bumper stickers, billboards, and brochures.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 280
Edition: National

62) Most political coverage by the media during a presidential campaign
A) is the result of successful manipulation by the campaigns.
B) focuses on the substance of the key issues voters care about, and how the candidates stand on them.
C) deals with the campaign game: who's ahead in the polls, what candidate X's new strategy will be, and speculation.
D) is analysis of the interest groups and campaign contributors who are backing each candidate, and why they are backing them.
E) deals with the candidates' personal character flaws and family.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 281
Edition: National
63) Most of the money spent on presidential campaigns these days is spent on
   A) computer services.
   B) air travel, hotels, and meals.
   C) direct mail.
   D) printing.
   E) the media.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 280–281
Edition: National

64) News coverage of presidential campaigns tends to emphasize
   A) campaign strategies and poll results.
   B) the candidates’ positions on the issues.
   C) the voting and performance records of the candidates in their current offices.
   D) fair coverage of all the candidates.
   E) debates between the candidates.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 281
Edition: National

65) Media coverage of a candidate’s campaign is a function of
   A) how candidates spend their advertising budget.
   B) the “free” attention they get as newsmakers.
   C) the nature of their policy agenda
   D) both A and B
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 280
Edition: National

66) One of the major functions of policy advisors in a campaign is to
   A) manage the campaign finances.
   B) keep the candidate informed on the issues.
   C) plan ad campaigns.
   D) handle the details of candidate scheduling.
   E) all of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 282
Edition: National
67) The member of a presidential campaign who helps reporters make their deadlines with stories that the campaign would like to see reported is the

A) press secretary.
B) media liaison.
C) propagandist.
D) director of public relations.
E) media consultant.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 282–283
Edition: National

68) The Federal Election Campaign Act

A) provided public financing for Senate and House races.
B) required broadcasters to provide free air time to each major candidate for federal office.
C) ended public financing for presidential campaigns.
D) required all candidates for federal office to disclose all contributions made to their campaigns.
E) removed spending limits from presidential campaigns.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National

69) Which of the following did the Federal Election Campaign Act NOT do?

A) require disclosure of campaign contributions by all candidates for federal offices
B) provide public financing for the presidential nominees of both major parties
C) provide public financing of House and Senate races
D) limit presidential campaign spending
E) provide public financing of Senate races

Answer: C
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National
70) The Federal Election Commission
   A) administers all elections in the United States from school board to president with a staff of 160,000.
   B) tabulates and certifies the votes in all federal elections.
   C) is a bipartisan body responsible for administering campaign finance laws and enforcing compliance with those laws.
   D) is a non-partisan political organization which has sought for over fifty years to reform campaign financing.
   E) is the Republican party’s watchdog organization which monitors fund-raising and spending by Democratic candidates.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National

71) The administration of the campaign finance laws and the enforcement of compliance with their requirements is handled by the
   A) Fair Political Practices Commission.
   B) Campaign Finance Bureau of the Department of the Treasury.
   C) Department of Justice.
   D) Federal Election Commission.
   E) Government Accounting Office.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National

72) The group responsible for administering and enforcing the Federal Election Campaign Act is the
   A) Federal Election Commission (FEC).
   B) National Committee for an Effective Congress.
   C) Political Action Committee (PAC).
   D) Federal Unethical Campaign Kommisars.
   E) electoral college.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National
73) According to the Federal Election Campaign Act, candidates must
   A) disclose who contributed to their campaigns, and how the money was spent.
   B) reject any contributions of Political Action Committees that exceed $1,000.
   C) apply for federal funds if they are running in a presidential election.
   D) raise their own campaign funds.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National

74) The 1974 Federal Election Campaign Act
   A) placed legal limits on total campaign contributions.
   B) placed legal limits on presidential campaign spending.
   C) required private rather than public financing of primaries and elections.
   D) prohibited disclosure of campaign fund sources.
   E) all of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National

75) In the 1976 case of Buckley v. Valeo, the Supreme Court ruled that
   A) the limitation on the amount of money persons could contribute to their own election
       campaigns violated free speech, and was unconstitutional.
   B) presidential election campaigns could not be paid for by tax dollars.
   C) the forced disclosure of contributions to federal elections violated freedom of association,
       and was therefore unconstitutional.
   D) the limitation on the amount of money people could contribute to their own election
       campaigns was not a violation of free speech, and was constitutional.
   E) congressional and state legislative districts must be of equal population and
       reapportioned every ten years.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National
76) The funds allocated to public financing of presidential campaigns based on income tax check-offs have

A) stayed at about the same level.
B) been ruled unconstitutional.
C) increased substantially.
D) decreased substantially.
E) been eliminated by Congress.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 285
Edition: National

77) Soft money is

A) money donated by a person to his or her own campaign.
B) cash contributions that are not traceable and in some situations illegal.
C) small donations that, while important to a campaign, are not as important as larger contributions.
D) money loaned to a campaign, but expected to be paid back.
E) money donated to parties rather than candidates, thus not subject to contribution or spending limits.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National

78) _______ resulted from an amendment in 1979 to the original Campaign Reform Act, which allows parties to raise and spend money on voter registration and other campaign materials without limits on spending or the size of contributions that they can accept.

A) Party discretionary funding
B) The party expenditure exemption
C) Soft money
D) The expenditure waiver
E) Institutional assistance

Answer: C
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National
79) Donating $200,000 to a political party to help its presidential nominee in somewhat indirect ways is
   A) legal, and known as soft money.
   B) illegal under the McCain–Feingold Act.
   C) of unclear legality and the subject of a controversial and vague Supreme Court ruling.
   D) legal, and known as a PAC contribution.
   E) illegal under the Federal Election Campaign Act (FECA).

Answer: B
Page Ref: 287
Edition: National

80) One of the provisions of the McCain–Feingold Act of 2002 was to
   A) increase the limit on individual contributions to $5,000.
   B) increase the amount of federal money presidential candidates can spend.
   C) increase the limit on "soft money" contributions.
   D) increase the limit on individual contributions from $1,000 to $2,000.
   E) increase the limit on individual contributions to $10,000.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 287
Edition: National

81) In Buckley v. Valeo (1976), the Supreme Court
   A) ruled that the wildly unequal campaign expenditures of candidates for government office were a violation of the Equal Protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment and ordered Congress and the states to develop mechanisms to assure equal funding of all major candidates.
   B) limited the activities of Political Action Committees.
   C) struck down the part of the Federal Election Campaign Act that restricted the amount individuals could contribute to their own campaign.
   D) stated that the Federal Election Commission had no power to enforce compliance with their requirements.
   E) declared the Federal Election Campaign Act unconstitutional.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National
82) Soft money consists of money
   A) provided through public financing.
   B) for voter registration drives and campaign material at the grass-roots level.
   C) that is illegally given to a campaign.
   D) that individuals contribute to their own campaign.
   E) given directly to a candidate.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 286
   Edition: National

83) The hydraulic theory says that money always finds a way to get around legal obstacles. Thus, when the soft money loophole was closed, how did money continue to find its way into political campaigns?
   A) through the McCain-Feingold loophole
   B) through dense money
   C) through 527 Groups
   D) through the garden hose loophole
   E) through buying bulk purchases of books to avoid limits on campaign contributions

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 287
   Edition: National

84) PAC is an acronym for
   A) the Partisan Activities Commission.
   B) political access conveyance.
   C) political action committee.
   D) power-as-cash.
   E) positive action campaign.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 288
   Edition: National
85) The McCain–Feingold Act of 2002 did all of the following EXCEPT

A) barred groups from running "issue ad" within 60 days of a general election if they refer to a federal candidate and are not funded through a PAC.

B) banned soft money contributions.

C) increased the amount that individuals could give to candidates from $1,000 to $2,000.

D) indexed the limit on individual contributions to inflation in future years.

E) none of the above

Answer: E

Page Ref: 287
Edition: National

86) Which of the following is TRUE about PACs?

A) They must report their contributions to the Federal Election Commission.

B) They are not required, but encouraged, to report their contributions to the Federal Election Commission.

C) Their numbers have declined precipitously in recent years.

D) Most exist for about the length of a campaign, then die out to be replaced with new ones in the next election cycle.

E) They can contribute an unlimited amount of money to any campaign, so long as the contribution is made publicly.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

87) PACs are

A) committees formed to lobby government officials in behalf of their interests.

B) state commissions organized to reform campaign financing practices.

C) committees organized by interest groups to channel money to parties and candidates.

D) subcommittees of the FEC.

E) groups organized by political activists to increase voter participation.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 288
Edition: National
88) A very important ground rule concerning the behavior of political action committees is
   A) they are not allowed to contribute to presidential campaigns.
   B) there are strict limits on the number of candidates each PAC can contribute to.
   C) all expenditures must be meticulously accounted for to the FEC.
   D) they can only contribute to political parties or general funds, not to specific candidates.
   E) both A and D

Answer: C
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

89) Critics of the PAC system are concerned that
   A) PACs are not regulated.
   B) they tend to support only Republican candidates.
   C) PACs are too weak and ineffective to contribute to a strong democracy.
   D) only the largest and most powerful interest groups can afford to form PACs.
   E) PACs may control what the electoral winners do once in office.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

90) Defenders of PACs point out that they
   A) are limited to contributing only $1,000 per candidate.
   B) can potentially buy votes.
   C) have been very effective at enforcing campaign reform laws and reducing unethical campaign practices.
   D) tend to support those who agree with them in the first place.
   E) give most of their money to challengers.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

91) Most PACs give money to
   A) candidates who disagree with them, but who are likely to be "bought."
   B) candidates of only one political party.
   C) candidates who already agree with them in the first place.
   D) the parties and let them distribute money among their candidates as they see fit.
   E) challengers trying to unseat incumbents.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National
92) According to political scientist Gary Jacobson's research, a Congressional incumbent who spends a tremendous amount of money to get reelected

A) is more likely to lose.
B) is more likely to win.
C) is likely to win by a landslide of over 70 percent of the vote.
D) is likely to get a higher percentage of the vote.
E) is no more or less likely to win than a candidate spending little money.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

93) Which of the following statements about Political Action Committees (PACs) is FALSE?

A) All PAC expenditures must be meticulously accounted for to the FEC.
B) PACs have proliferated in recent years.
C) The influence of PACs is particularly important in presidential campaigns.
D) Candidates need PACs because high-tech campaigning is expensive.
E) PACs contribute money before and after elections.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

94) The use of PAC money in presidential campaigns is

A) particularly influential.
B) less important than in Congressional campaigns.
C) able to "throw" the victory in the New Hampshire primary to the candidate favored by the most PACs.
D) unregulated.
E) illegal.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National
95) Research has shown that the cost of American election campaigns is
   A) high compared to other countries.
   B) decreasing when the rising cost of living is taken into account.
   C) per person, about the same as a DVD movie.
   D) only about 25 cents per voter.
   E) a national scandal.
   Answer: C

96) What bothers politicians most about the rising costs of high-tech campaigning is
   A) that fund-raising has come to take up so much of their precious time, distracting them from legislation.
   B) that so many good people can not afford to run for reelection.
   C) they feel like whores who will do anything for a campaign contribution.
   D) the increasing influence of PACs.
   E) the declining number of PACs that they relied on for large campaign contributions.
   Answer: A

97) The relationship between campaign spending and electoral success is that
   A) spending more than your opponent does not assure victory.
   B) the candidate who spends the most is sure to win.
   C) the more incumbents spend, the more likely they are to be reelected.
   D) the amount of money spent and winning are entirely unrelated.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: A

98) Who opposes public financing of campaigns the most?
   A) liberals
   B) conservatives
   C) challengers
   D) incumbents
   E) independents
   Answer: D
99) According to Herbert Alexander's "doctrine of sufficiency,"

A) there is a minimum amount of money that candidates must spend to have a chance at winning.
B) candidates with large personal fortunes are almost guaranteed victory, unless their opponent is of roughly equal net worth.
C) in order to win a candidate must have more money than his or her opponent.
D) the wealthier candidate always wins.
E) a candidate’s sense of self-worth, not money, is most important to a successful campaign.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

100) Many political scientists believe that

A) the size of a campaign war chest is the sole determinant of who wins elections.
B) most voters are immune to reinforcement or activation in a campaign, but are susceptible to conversion.
C) politicians overestimate the power of how important a good campaign is to victory.
D) incumbents have no greater advantage in name recognition than most challengers.
E) politicians underestimate the power of how important a good campaign is to victory.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

101) Campaigns strengthen voter commitment to the usual party or the candidate they previously supported by emphasizing ______ as part of their campaign strategy.

A) conversion
B) reinforcement
C) activation
D) persuasion
E) direct mail

Answer: B
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National
102) Which of the following have been found to be most successfully affected by campaigns?

A) conversion
B) reinforcement and activation
C) reinforcement, activation, and conversion
D) reinforcement and conversion
E) activation and conversion

Answer: B

Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

103) Campaigns are most effective in

A) getting people to contribute time and money.
B) converting voters from one candidate to another.
C) reinforcing existing preferences toward candidates.
D) educating people on the issues.
E) shaping how the media will portray a candidate to the public.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

104) Most people pay little attention to campaigns,

A) and are as unfamiliar with the names of incumbents, as with the names of challengers.
B) and do not care about party identification of candidates.
C) and have a selective perception about events and candidates.
D) but are quite subject to having their minds changed by a strong campaign.
E) All of these are true.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

105) Which of the following factors weaken political campaigns' effects on voters?

A) selective perception, party identification, and incumbent name recognition
B) negative advertising, party identification, and incumbent name recognition
C) campaign expenditures, party identification, and incumbent name recognition
D) selective mobilization, party identification, and incumbent name recognition
E) selective mobilization, negative advertising and incumbent name recognition

Answer: A

Page Ref: 291
Edition: National
106) The selective perception of most voters means that they

A) are susceptible to having their minds changed fairly easily by effective campaigns.

B) make rational choices about the purposive benefits to themselves of voting for a particular candidate.

C) keep a fairly open mind regarding the candidates during the election campaign, and choose based on rational analysis.

D) pay most attention to things they already agree with, and interpret events according to their own predispositions.

E) are skeptical of all candidates and view all campaigning as suspect.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

107) America’s party nomination system could best be described as

A) open and entrepreneurial.

B) rational and bureaucratized.

C) informal, but rational.

D) a meritocracy.

E) an apprenticeship system.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 292-293
Edition: National

108) The process of selecting America’s leaders has almost no downtime before it revs up all over again. This is referred to as

A) the permanent campaign.

B) the revolving door.

C) revolving elections.

D) election mania.

E) accountability.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 292
Edition: National
109) Throughout American history, presidential campaigns have become
   A) dirtier and dirtier.
   B) shorter and shorter.
   C) more and more secretive.
   D) more and more democratic.
   E) all of the above
Answer: D
Page Ref: 292
Edition: National

110) Compared to most other democratic systems, nominations and campaigns in the United States
   A) require less commitment of time on the part of the candidate.
   B) are decided more by party bosses than the general public.
   C) tend to be more open.
   D) tend to be shorter.
   E) involve less money.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 292
Edition: National

111) Party outsiders have _______ getting elected in the United States than in other countries.
   A) about the same chance of
   B) no chance of
   C) a much easier time
   D) a somewhat more difficult time
   E) a much less likely chance of
Answer: C
Page Ref: 292
Edition: National
112) In what major way do presidential campaigns serve to stimulate big government?

A) Public financing of presidential campaigns is a tremendous drain on the federal budget.
B) Secret service protection for the candidates involves a great deal of expense and personnel.
C) Candidates make promises to particular groups and states so much on different campaign stops, and many of the promises involve more government spending and new or bigger programs.
D) The administration of elections and campaign finance laws contribute in a large way to increased government size.
E) all of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 293
Edition: National

113) The fact that candidates must tailor their appeals to the particular interest of each major state tends to result in

A) numerous campaign promises adding up to new government programs.
B) increased public interest in the campaign.
C) limiting the scope of government.
D) a more open and democratic process.
E) a tilt toward states' rights at the expense of the national government.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 293
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) In most industrialized countries, political campaigns are shorter but cost nearly as much as campaigns in the United States.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 270; 290
Edition: National

2) Traditionally, Iowa holds the first presidential primary to choose delegates to each party's national conventions.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 271
Edition: National

3) Most national convention delegates are selected by party leaders in each state, with only a small number really coming from either presidential primaries or caucuses.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 271–272
Edition: National
4) At one time, all state parties selected their delegates to the national convention in a meeting of state party leaders.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 271
Edition: National

5) Unlike party convention delegates prior to 1968, most of today’s delegates to Democratic conventions have few ties to experienced politicians or the party organization.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

6) The Democratic party has been more preoccupied since 1968 with party efficiency and winning elections rather than with broadening representation in the party and opening up its process.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

7) The McGovern–Fraser Commission resulted in a more high-tech and efficient Democratic party.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

8) More people cast ballots in presidential primaries early in the process than in the general election in November.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 275
Edition: National

9) The extended length of the nomination process advantages individuals who already hold prominent political positions.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 275
Edition: National

10) Candidates’ policy positions receive more media attention than does their campaign strategy.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 281
Edition: National
11) A major problem with the regional primary proposal is the advantage gained by the region that goes last.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 276
Edition: National

12) The national political conventions have been removed of most of their drama in the past few decades, partly as a result of television coverage.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 277
Edition: National

13) Political scientists generally agree that we have entered a political era where candidates' slick images and slogans dominate electoral politics and determine the outcome of elections.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 277
Edition: National

14) Political party conventions are usually filled with high drama.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 277
Edition: National

15) Any time over twenty percent of the delegates to the platform committee disagree with the majority, they can bring an alternative minority plank to the convention floor for debate.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 278
Edition: National

16) The Federal Election Commission administers campaign finance laws and enforces compliance with their requirements.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 287
Edition: National

17) Presidential nominees of each party get a fixed amount of money from the federal treasury to cover all their official campaign expenses for the general election.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 285
Edition: National

18) Money someone contributes to his or her own campaign is not subject to limits, and is known as "soft money."

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National
19) The amount of money an individual can contribute to their own campaign is limited to $1,000.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National

20) The most important goal of any media campaign is simply to get attention.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 280
Edition: National

21) 527 groups can not explicitly urge citizens to vote for or against a candidate.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 287
Edition: National

22) PACs are created by business associations; labor unions are prohibited from forming them.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

23) The Republican party is a form of a PAC.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

24) Political action committees can spend unlimited amounts of money if such activities are not coordinated with the campaign.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

25) As of 2003, the Federal Election Commission reported that there were 10,000 PACs.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

26) Research on the effectiveness of political campaigns indicates that campaigns mostly convert; only rarely do they activate.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National
27) Most people pay relatively little attention to political campaigns.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

28) In most races, a good campaign can make a big difference to who wins and loses.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

29) The chance to win high office in the United States is open to almost any highly skilled politician with even a small electoral base.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 292
Edition: National

30) The high cost of campaigns often discourages good candidates from competing for higher political offices.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 292-293
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) The way in which candidates attempt to manipulate money, media attention and momentum to win an election is called _______.

Answer: campaign strategy
Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

2) A(n) _______ is a party’s official endorsement of a candidate for office.

Answer: nomination
Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

3) The quadrennial meeting of political party delegates from all fifty states is the _______.

Answer: national party convention
Page Ref: 270
Edition: National

4) Iowa and a number of other states hold a presidential _______, rather than a primary, in order to begin the process of choosing delegates to the national convention.

Answer: caucus
Page Ref: 271
Edition: National
5) Today, most delegates to the Democratic and Republican national conventions are selected in _______.

Answer: presidential primaries
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

6) An election in which voters in a state go to the polls and vote for a presidential candidate or delegates pledged to one is a(n) _______.

Answer: presidential primary
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

7) _______ are Democratic party leaders who are assigned about ten percent of the delegate slots at the national convention.

Answer: Superdelegates
Page Ref: 273
Edition: National

8) The Democratic party reforms to open up its process of choosing delegates to the national convention to be more representative of the American people was put in place by the ________ Commission.

Answer: McGovern-Fraser
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

9) The first state to hold a presidential primary in every presidential election year is _______.

Answer: New Hampshire
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

10) Why is the New Hampshire presidential primary so important?

Answer: It is the first primary of the presidential election season and thus key to establishing positive candidate images.
Page Ref: 272
Edition: National

11) The impact of PAC contributions on presidential campaigns is likely to be _______ than their impact on congressional races.

Answer: less
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

12) Explain the pros and cons for having a national primary to select presidential candidates.

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 276
Edition: National

402
13) What are the main functions of political party conventions today?

Answer: They are a rallying-point for party members, they develop the party’s policy positions, and they promote political representation.

Page Ref: 276-279
Edition: National

14) At the party nominating conventions, the delegates listen to speeches, nominate candidates, and pass the party ________, its official statement of its goals and policies for the next four years.

Answer: platform
Page Ref: 278
Edition: National

15) The federal agency that regulates PACs is the ________.

Answer: Federal Election Commission
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National

16) “Soft money” contributions were made illegal by ________.

Answer: the McCain-Feingold Act of 2002
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National

17) The mailing of information and a request for money using lists of people who have supported candidates of similar views in the past is called ________.

Answer: direct mail
Page Ref: 280
Edition: National

18) Explain the technique of direct mail. Why is it important to a political campaign?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 280
Edition: National

19) The ________, a bipartisan body of six members, administers the nation’s campaign finance laws and enforces compliance with their requirements.

Answer: Federal Election Commission
Page Ref: 284
Edition: National
20) What are the main provisions of the Federal Election Campaign Act?

Answer: created the FEC, created the Presidential Election Campaign Fund, provided partial public financing for presidential primaries, provided full public financing for major party candidates in the general election, required full disclosure of campaign contributions, limited contributions.

Page Ref: 284
Edition: National

21) An amendment to FECA (1974) made it easier for political parties to accept huge donations known as _______ money to finance voter registration and the distribution of campaign material (buttons, yard signs, pamphlets, etc.).

Answer: soft
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National

22) _______ extended the right of free speech to PACs, enabling them to spend unlimited amounts of money if such expenditures are not coordinated with a candidate's campaign organization.

Answer: Buckley v. Valeo
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National

23) What is the significance of the Supreme Court's decision in Buckley v. Valeo (1976)?

Answer: extended the right of free speech to PACs
Page Ref: 286
Edition: National

24) Tightly contested races for Congress can sometimes cost as much as $______ million.

Answer: $1 million
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

25) What is meant by "soft money" in a political campaign, and why is it important?

Answer: political contributions earmarked for party-building expenses at the grass-roots level or for generic party advertising; answers will vary
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National

26) Many business groups, labor organizations, and other major interest groups have formed ________, in which they collectively contribute money to candidates who favor or are likely to favor their interests or positions.

Answer: political action committees
Page Ref: 288
Edition: National
27) One of the factors that weakens the impact campaigns can have on voters is that people have a remarkable capacity for ________, paying most attention to things they already agree with and interpreting events according to their own predispositions.

Answer: selective perception
Page Ref: 291
Edition: National

28) The ________ is argued to depress citizens' interest and involvement in campaigns because its length simply overwhelms them.

Answer: permanent campaign
Page Ref: 292
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) What gave rise to the McGovern-Fraser Commission, and what changes did it make in delegate selection? Was the later addition of superdelegates meant to strengthen or weaken what the commission had done?

Page Ref: 272–273
Edition: National

2) Describe how the caucus and presidential primary differ from one another in selecting delegates to the national party nominating conventions. Which do you think is a better method? Why?

Page Ref: 271–272
Edition: National

3) Evaluate the strengths and weaknesses of the present primary and caucus system of selecting national convention delegates. Would you favor a move to a different system, or prefer to keep the process as is? Be specific, and explain.

Page Ref: 274–276
Edition: National

4) Why are Iowa and New Hampshire especially important to each party in the process of selecting national convention delegates? Should they have this sort of power? Explain.

Page Ref: 271–272
Edition: National

5) For what purpose do America's major parties hold national conventions? How have they changed over the last few decades, and why? Are they still worth holding? Why, or why not? Explain.

Page Ref: 277–279
Edition: National

6) How have national party conventions changed over time? What happens at the convention and what are the major functions of the convention today?

Page Ref: 277–279
Edition: National
7) How has campaigning changed in the modern high–tech society? Evaluate how technology has changed campaigning. Are these changes good or bad for American society?

8) Describe the various staff members necessary for a modern presidential campaign. What do many of these tasks say about the importance of issues as opposed to the importance of image?

9) Why is organization important to a political campaign? How are most political campaigns organized? What factors are essential for a well–organized campaign?


11) Describe and evaluate the role of money in political campaigns, and its impact on the distribution of political power in America.

12) Describe the current funding system for federal elections in the United States. Assess the advantages and disadvantages of “full” public financing of federal elections. Who would benefit from such a policy? Why?

13) Explain how a political action committee works. How are political action committees regulated? Evaluate the influence of political action committees.

14) Describe what a PAC is, and why it is significant. What role do PACs play in major election campaigns in the United States? Are PACs a reflection of democracy in action, a threat to democracy, or something in between? Explain.

15) Why do political campaigns rarely affect an individual’s voting intention?
16) Evaluate political campaigns in America in terms of their role in the democratic process. How do they make our system more democratic? What limits campaigns from making our system more democratic?

Page Ref: 292–293
Edition: National

17) Describe the three key effects campaigns can have on voters, and note which two of the three are most significant, and why. If you were running a campaign, what would be your emphasis? Why?

Page Ref: 291
Edition: National
Chapter 10  Elections and Voting Behavior

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Legitimacy in terms of American elections means
   A) the public is satisfied with the qualifications and the policy positions of the candidates.
   B) the public is nearly unanimously happy with the results.
   C) the election is nearly unanimously accepted as a fair and free method to select political leaders.
   D) the public is generally not satisfied with the candidates, the results, or the methods by which elections are held.
   E) the best candidate is selected.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 298*  
*Edition: National*

2) Elections in the United States perform which of the following functions?
   A) make or ratify legislation
   B) select party nominees
   C) select officeholders from among party nominees
   D) both B and C
   E) all of the above

Answer: E  
*Page Ref: 298*  
*Edition: National*

3) Which of the following functions do elections LEAST serve?
   A) selecting public officials
   B) making and coordinating public policy
   C) providing regular access to political power
   D) providing legitimacy to the political system
   E) connecting citizens to government officials

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 298*  
*Edition: National*
4) California’s famous Proposition 13, in which voters frustrated by a lack of action by their legislature forced an issue on the ballot and voted to limit the rise in property taxes, was an example of
   A) a direct primary.
   B) an indirect primary.
   C) an initiative.
   D) a referendum.
   E) a voter override.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

5) California’s Proposition 209, which intended to end affirmative action programs in the state, is an example of
   A) a direct primary.
   B) an indirect primary.
   C) an initiative.
   D) a referendum.
   E) a voter override.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

6) Daniel Smith argues that initiatives typically stem from
   A) broad public demand for the policy.
   B) the actions of a dedicated policy entrepreneur.
   C) the natural emergence of policy issues.
   D) responsive elected officials, working in coalition.
   E) none of the above
Answer: B
Page Ref: 298-299
Edition: National
7) The initiative is put on the ballot as a result of
   A) the governor’s order.
   B) a Supreme Court ruling.
   C) a petition signed by a certain percentage of the voters in the previous election.
   D) public opinion polls showing strong support for a certain measure not acted upon by the legislature.
   E) a special, legally constituted convention voting to place it there.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

8) Of the following, which is the most direct form of democracy?
   A) initiative
   B) referendum
   C) direct primary
   D) presidential election
   E) recall

Answer: A
Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

9) The initiative petition
   A) is used to select party nominees for congressional and state offices.
   B) enables voters to put proposed legislation on the ballot.
   C) is an election in which voters approve or disapprove a legislative act.
   D) is needed for a candidate to get his or her name on the ballot.
   E) is a petition that initiates a recall election to determine whether an elected official shall be removed from office.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 298
Edition: National
10) Examples of issues addressed in recent initiatives include all of the following EXCEPT

A) ending affirmative action.
B) setting maximum claim sizes.
C) paying college graduates to reside in a state for a number of years.
D) election day registration.
E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

11) An election whereby voters are given the chance to approve or disapprove some legislative act or constitutional amendment is called

A) a referendum.
B) an initiative petition.
C) a direct primary.
D) a direct election.
E) a ratification election.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

12) A referendum is an election

A) in which citizens can propose their own legislation.
B) for judicial offices.
C) for choosing party nominees for state offices.
D) whereby voters are given the chance to approve or disapprove some legislative act or constitutional amendment.
E) to determine whether to remove an elected official from office before the end of their term.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 298
Edition: National
13) Which of the following is NOT true about elections in American society?

A) They socialize and institutionalize political activity.
B) They provide regular access to political power.
C) They are accepted as legitimate, fair, and free methods to select political leaders.
D) The vast majority of eligible citizens cast ballots, even for local races.
E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

14) In the 1800 election presidential candidates were nominated by

A) their parties’ elected representatives in Congress.
B) their parties’ nominating convention.
C) their parties’ voters in primary elections.
D) the electoral college.
E) the president.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 299-300
Edition: National

15) Which of the following does NOT characterize presidential elections around 1800?

A) The candidates barnstormed the country campaigning and giving speeches.
B) Most of the campaigning was done by state and local party organizations.
C) Campaigns were directed at state legislators, not the voters.
D) Newspaper coverage of the campaign was extremely biased and dishonest.
E) All of these describe the pathetic, sordid, sorry state of early American elections—we’ve come a long way baby!

Answer: A

Page Ref: 299-300
Edition: National
16) Which of the following statements about the 1800 presidential election is TRUE?

A) The 1800 election was ultimately decided in the House of Representatives.
B) The 1800 election was the first one in which the candidates were chosen by party conventions.
C) For the first time the focus of the 1800 election was on the citizen voters.
D) The candidates in the 1800 election vigorously campaigned in each of the states.
E) all of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 299–300
Edition: National

17) The election of 1800 was

A) decided by the direct vote of the people.
B) decided by the electoral college.
C) decided by the House of Representatives.
D) overturned by the Supreme Court.
E) decided by the full Congress.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 300
Edition: National

18) The presidential election of 1800 was

A) the first use of direct primaries in the United States.
B) decided by the House of Representatives after a tie in the electoral college.
C) notable for the importance of key convention speeches to swing the votes in the electoral college.
D) the first transition of power between parties accomplished by voters' ballots in the history of the world.
E) influenced by media intent on forcing incumbent out of office.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 300
Edition: National
19) The presidential election of 1800 represents the first
   A) use of party nominating conventions.
   B) time the Senate elected the president.
   C) use of the electoral college.
   D) peaceful transfer of power in the world between parties via the electoral process.
   E) time the voters directly elected the presidential electors.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 300
   Edition: National

20) In the original constitutional system,
   A) each presidential elector cast two ballots and the top vote-getter was named president
      and the runner-up became vice president.
   B) the Senate elected the president and the House of Representatives elected the vice
      president.
   C) each presidential elector cast one ballot for one of the president/vice president teams
      running.
   D) the state legislatures elected the president and vice president, with the candidate getting
      the second most votes becoming vice president.
   E) the president, once elected by the electoral college, chose the vice president.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 300
   Edition: National

21) Which of the following is TRUE of the presidential election of 1800?
   A) The candidates traveled throughout the smaller number of United States at the time to
      campaign for votes.
   B) It was a gentlemanly contest in which partisans on both sides showed respect for the
      opposition.
   C) It was carefully and objectively covered in the newspapers of the day, with logical
      reasoning and respect for both candidates in articles and editorials.
   D) It was the first peaceful transfer of power between parties via the electoral process in the
      history of the world.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 300
   Edition: National
22) In the electoral college vote in the election of 1800, there was a tie between
   A) Thomas Jefferson and John Adams.
   B) John Adams and James Madison.
   C) John Adams and Aaron Burr.
   D) Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 300
Edition: National

23) The issue of free silver (to increase the amount of currency in circulation) was championed in the election of 1896 by ________, whose most famous oration was his “Cross of Gold” speech at the Democratic national convention.
   A) Grover Cleveland
   B) William McKinley
   C) William Jennings Bryan
   D) Theodore Roosevelt
   E) Woodrow Wilson
Answer: C
Page Ref: 300
Edition: National

24) In 1896, who liked silver money?
   A) debtors
   B) bankers
   C) exporters
   D) Eastern manufacturers
   E) coin collectors and dealers
Answer: A
Page Ref: 301
Edition: National
25) The first peaceful transfer of power between parties via the electoral process in the history of the world occurred as a result of the presidential election of
   A) 1796.
   B) 1800.
   C) 1860.
   D) 1896.
   E) 1789.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 300
Edition: National

26) The election of 1896 was largely fought over the issue of
   A) war.
   B) economics.
   C) race relations.
   D) government corruption.
   E) the ownership of land in the west.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 300
Edition: National

27) Which of the following statements about the election of 1896 is FALSE?
   A) The main issue in the election of 1896 was the gold standard and tariffs.
   B) William Jennings Bryan broke with tradition and campaigned extensively in person.
   C) The election resulted in the Democrats becoming firmly entrenched as the majority party in the Northeast and Midwest.
   D) Nearly 80 percent of the eligible electorate voted in 1896.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 300–301
Edition: National
28) The winner of the presidential election of 1896 was
   A) Theodore Roosevelt.
   B) William McKinley.
   C) Grover Cleveland.
   D) William Jennings Bryan.
   E) Ulysses Grant.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 301
   Edition: National

29) The election of 1896 left a legacy of a political alignment that endured for several decades, wherein
   A) the Democrats won the more populous Northeast and Midwest, and the Republicans won in the South and West.
   B) the Democrats won the South and West, while the Republicans won in the more populous Northeast and Midwest.
   C) the Democrats won the Midwest and the South, while the Republicans won in the Northeast and West.
   D) the Democrats won in the Northeast and West, while the Republicans won in the Northeast and South.
   E) the Republicans swept the South, and the Democrats won in all other regions.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 301
   Edition: National

30) Because Bush's lead over Gore in the initial count was less than one-tenth of one percent, Florida law mandated
   A) that the Florida state legislature vote to declare Bush the winner.
   B) the outcome of the election be determined by the Florida Supreme Court.
   C) the Secretary of State to certify the results.
   D) an automatic recount.
   E) a thirty-day extension for absentee ballots.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 301
   Edition: National
31) In *Bush v. Gore* (2000), the United States Supreme Court ruled that
   A) the Florida Supreme Court did not have jurisdiction over the presidential election legal issues.
   B) although a recount was legal, the same (or more precise) standards for evaluating ballots would have to be applied in all counties.
   C) the butterfly ballot was unconstitutional.
   D) the time used to recount ballots could extend past December 12, when the Florida electors would meet.
   E) punch card ballots were illegal if not used in all counties.

Answer: B

32) According to exit polls, ______ was a major reason voters selected Bush in 2004.
   A) welfare reform
   B) health care reform
   C) the war on terrorism
   D) freedom of speech
   E) strategic voting

Answer: C

33) In the 2004 election, John Kerry won votes among those most concerned with
   A) the economy, health care, and education.
   B) the fairness of the tax system.
   C) the environment, the economy, and transportation issues.
   D) the environment and urban affairs.
   E) civil rights, the environment, and the economy.

Answer: A
34) Suffrage means

A) the right to vote.
B) turning out to vote.
C) voting for the winner.
D) voting for the loser.
E) the struggle for equal rights for women.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 304
Edition: National

35) Which of the following is TRUE about American elections over the past 100 years?

A) The suffrage has broadened, and the turnout has increased.
B) The suffrage has broadened, and the turnout has decreased.
C) The suffrage has narrowed, and the turnout has increased.
D) The suffrage has narrowed, and the turnout has decreased.
E) Suffrage has broadened, but there has been no change in turnout.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 304
Edition: National

36) Suffrage refers to

A) a type of election unique to the United States.
B) the right to vote.
C) a voter registration system.
D) voter turnout rates.
E) voting procedures in the electoral college.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 304
Edition: National

37) As the right to vote has been extended,

A) voter turnout has increased proportionately.
B) proportionately fewer of those eligible have chosen to vote.
C) the number of candidates running for office has increased.
D) voter turnout has actually remained about the same.
E) the scope of American government has shrunk.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 304
Edition: National
38) The nearly two centuries of American electoral history has been characterized by
   A) consistently close elections.
   B) increasing voter turnouts.
   C) expansion of the right to vote.
   D) a proliferation of presidential candidates.
   E) all of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 304
Edition: National

39) The high point of voter turnout in the United States was in
   A) 1896.
   B) 1932.
   C) 1972.
   D) 1968.
   E) 1960.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 304
Edition: National

40) People are more likely to vote for all of the following reasons EXCEPT if they
   A) have a high sense of civic duty.
   B) have a high sense of political efficacy.
   C) are able to see policy differences that affect their interests.
   D) believe that some policies of one party are balanced by other policies of the other party.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 305–306
Edition: National

41) Anthony Downs' theory of rational voting behavior predicts that people will vote if they
   A) can afford the time and energy to do so.
   B) think one party will give them more policy benefits than the other.
   C) think their vote will make the difference for a particular candidate.
   D) identify with a particular candidate, even though they doubt that one vote can make a difference.
   E) feel obligated to do so.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 305–306
Edition: National
42) Those largely indifferent to the results of an election, but who decide to vote anyway to show support for democratic government are called ______ voters.

A) guilt-driven
B) civic-duty
C) regime-maintenance
D) patriotic disaffected
E) disaffected

Answer: B
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

43) The greater one's sense of political efficacy, the

A) less likely one is to vote.
B) more likely one is to vote.
C) greater one's chance of being defeated in an election.
D) less likely one is to view the election process in the United States as legitimate.
E) more likely one is to see differences between the parties.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

44) Political efficacy refers to the belief that

A) the costs of voting outweigh the benefits.
B) significant policy differences exist between the parties.
C) one should always support democratic government.
D) ordinary people can influence the government.
E) government is very inefficient and needs to be streamlined.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National
45) Largely to prevent corruption associated with stuffing ballot boxes, states adopted ______ around the turn of the twentieth century.
   A) the electoral college
   B) primary elections
   C) voting machines
   D) voter registration
   E) the secret ballot

Answer: D
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

46) Voter registration was begun around the turn of the twentieth century
   A) to encourage voting through advance notice.
   B) by party bosses to discourage people from voting.
   C) to make elections more ethical.
   D) to allow for the secret ballot.
   E) to discourage patronage.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

47) Voter registration procedures were adopted around the turn of the century as a means to
   A) prevent African Americans from voting.
   B) increase voter participation.
   C) prevent corruption associated with stuffing ballot boxes.
   D) increase the number of potential voters.
   E) establish minimum voting qualifications, such as passing the Political Literacy Test or a civic education course.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National
48) Compared to other countries, the United States holds _______ elections for various offices.
   A) far fewer
   B) somewhat fewer
   C) about the same number of
   D) more
   E) twice as many
Answer: D
Page Ref: 307
Edition: National

49) A major reason cited for America’s level of voter turnout compared to other industrialized
    countries is
   A) bad weather in certain parts of the United States on election day.
   B) greater interest in democracy in the United States.
   C) registration is more cumbersome in the United States.
   D) registration is more cumbersome in other nations.
   E) Americans’ high sense of political efficacy.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 307
Edition: National

50) Compared to other industrialized democracies, the United States has a _______ voter turnout.
   A) much higher
   B) slightly higher
   C) slightly lower
   D) much lower
   E) rising
Answer: D
Page Ref: 307
Edition: National

51) Which of the following countries has a lower voter turnout rate than the United States?
   A) Australia
   B) Great Britain
   C) Switzerland
   D) Italy
   E) France
Answer: C
Page Ref: 307
Edition: National
52) Which of the following countries has the lowest voter turnout rate?

A) Australia  
B) United States  
C) Italy  
D) France  
E) Bulgaria  

Answer: B  

Page Ref: 307  
Edition: National

53) Voter turnout in the United States is much lower than in other countries in part because

A) of the unique American requirement of voter registration.  
B) Americans are asked to vote less often and do not sustain interest in the electoral process.  
C) Americans vote for fewer political offices and lack a sense of political efficacy.  
D) the choice offered Americans is greater than in other countries, which confuses potential voters.  
E) of the strident positions taken by the parties, which alienate middle-of-the-road voters.

Answer: A  

Page Ref: 307  
Edition: National

54) Which of the following statements is FALSE?

A) Unlike the United States, the governments of most democracies take the responsibility of seeing to it that all of their eligible citizens are on the voting lists.  
B) American government asks citizens to vote far more often than most democracies.  
C) Americans are expected to vote for a much narrower range of political offices than most democracies.  
D) The choice offered Americans at elections is not as great as in other democracies.  
E) none of the above

Answer: C  

Page Ref: 307  
Edition: National
55) Which of these would be most likely to vote?

A) a well-educated, middle-aged government worker
B) a young southerner without a high school diploma
C) a well-educated senior citizen who used to work for a big corporation
D) a young southern high school teacher
E) a middle-aged professor at a private university

Answer: A
Page Ref: 306-308
Edition: National

56) Which of the following is INCORRECT?

A) Congress requires voter registration nationwide.
B) The Motor Voter Act allows eligible voters to register by checking a box on their driver’s license application.
C) In North Dakota, you don’t have to register to vote.
D) In a few states, you can register to vote on election day.
E) Some states let you register at supermarkets.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

57) Among the states that allow voter registration at the polls on election day, voter turnout rates are

A) higher than in other states.
B) impossible to compute.
C) no different than in other states.
D) lower than the national average.
E) declining over time and at a higher rate than in other states.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National
58) Approximately how many states allow voters to register at the polls on election day?

A) 6  
B) 14  
C) 34  
D) 44  
E) 49

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 306*  
*Edition: National*

59) The Motor Voter Act of 1993

A) requires states to provide transportation for citizens who are unable to get to the polls on their own efforts.  
B) requires states to mail voter registration forms to all individuals holding driver's licenses.  
C) requires states to register individuals to vote when they apply for, or renew, their driver's license.  
D) established drive-in polling places to make voting more convenient and increase voter turnout.  
E) requires the federal government to register individuals to vote when they apply for or renew their driver's license.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 306*  
*Edition: National*

60) The impact of the Motor Voter Act of 1993 was evidenced in

A) higher registration and higher turnout in 1996 and 2000.  
B) higher registration and lower turnout in 1996 and 2000.  
C) no changes in either registration or turnout in 1996 and 2000.  
D) lower registration and higher turnout in 1996 and 2000.  
E) none of the above

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 306*  
*Edition: National*
61) The group of people with the lowest voter turnout rate is
   A) college graduates.
   B) young people.
   C) women.
   D) senior citizens over 70.
   E) union members.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 309
   Edition: National

62) According to the text, the most important factor affecting voter turnout is
   A) education.
   B) gender.
   C) ideology.
   D) race.
   E) geography.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 309
   Edition: National

63) Highly educated individuals are more likely to vote because
   A) they are smarter.
   B) they see more policy differences between candidates.
   C) they have a lower sense of political efficacy.
   D) most of them are white males.
   E) they have more influence.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 306-307
   Edition: National
64) Which of the following statements about voter participation is FALSE?

A) As people age, their likelihood of voting increases.
B) Minority groups with high levels of income and education have a higher turnout rate than whites with comparable status.
C) Men are more likely to vote than women.
D) Individuals who have lived at the same address longer are more likely to vote than those who have moved.
E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 306-310
Edition: National

65) Which of the following characteristics would make one more likely to vote in an election?

A) having a college degree
B) being a young adult
C) having a low income
D) being a college student
E) bring a welfare recipient

Answer: A
Page Ref: 306-310
Edition: National

66) People with higher than average education

A) are no more and no less likely to vote than people of lower educational levels.
B) are more likely to vote than people of lower educational levels.
C) are somewhat less likely to vote than people of lower educational levels.
D) are much less likely to vote than people of lower educational levels because they know it won't do any good.
E) are more likely to vote than high school dropouts, but less likely to vote than those with high school diplomas.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 309
Edition: National
67) The mandate theory of elections

A) is based on the economic theory of rational decision making.
B) explains voters' decisions according to an evaluation of the candidates' personality.
C) says that people vote for candidates because they want them to carry out certain policies.
D) explains voters' decisions according to party identification.
E) is based on the sociological theory of irrational behaviorism.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 310
Edition: National

68) The mandate theory of elections is most often cited as the proper way to view elections by

A) the defeated candidate.
B) the winning candidate.
C) political scientists.
D) everybody.
E) the media.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 310
Edition: National

69) The mandate theory of elections is the idea that

A) a candidate must get at least sixty percent of the vote to win.
B) a candidate must get a majority of the votes cast (fifty percent plus one) in order to take office.
C) the election winner has authorization from the voters to carry out his or her promised policies.
D) in order to improve turnout rates in the United States, voting must be made a legal requirement of all citizens, with the failure to vote resulting in a small fine.
E) a candidate must get at least seventy-five percent of the vote to win.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 310
Edition: National
70) _______ are crucial for many voters because they provide a regular perspective through which voters can view the political world.

A) Party identifications
B) Civic duties
C) Direct primary elections
D) Initiative petitions
E) Party platforms

Answer: A
Page Ref: 311–312
Edition: National

71) Political scientists tend to focus on each of the following major elements of voters’ decisions EXCEPT

A) voters’ party identification.
B) voters’ ideology and world view.
C) voters’ evaluation of the candidates.
D) the match between voters’ policy positions and those of the candidates and parties.
E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 311–313
Edition: National

72) Studies have shown that during the 1960s and 1970s,

A) voting according to political party identification increased.
B) Democrats voted along party lines more than Republicans.
C) the hold of the parties on voters eroded substantially.
D) political party identification no longer affected voting behavior.
E) large numbers of people who had been eligible to vote but never voted surged into the electorate.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 312
Edition: National
73) Over the last five decades, voting based primarily on party identification has
   A) completely disappeared.
   B) declined sharply.
   C) stayed almost exactly the same.
   D) increased.
   E) increased sharply.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 312
   Edition: National

74) Many voters have come to feel that they no longer need the parties to guide their electoral choices because
   A) the parties have become so much alike that it makes little difference.
   B) modern technology makes it possible for them to evaluate and make their own decisions about the candidates.
   C) the parties tend to rely on groups that lean heavily in their favor.
   D) once in office, candidates rarely follow the party line anyway.
   E) parties have become the captives of powerful interest groups that control the candidates, and the candidates don't look out for the interests of ordinary people.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 312–313
   Edition: National

75) Research by Rosenberg and McCafferty discovered that
   A) a candidate’s image and appearance is the most important factor in how a person votes.
   B) less educated voters are more likely to view candidates in terms of their personal attributes.
   C) it is possible to manipulate a candidate's appearance in a way that affects voters' choices.
   D) a candidate’s image and appearance has no real impact on voting behavior.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 313
   Edition: National
76) Which of these is the least important dimension of a candidate's image?

A) intelligence
B) integrity
C) reliability
D) competence
E) experience

Answer: A
Page Ref: 313
Edition: National

77) _______ occurs when people base their choices in an election on their own issue preferences.

A) Civic duty
B) Suffrage
C) Retrospective voting
D) Policy voting
E) Agenda setting

Answer: D
Page Ref: 313
Edition: National

78) A voter supporting a candidate based specifically on comparing the candidate's stances on the issues of abortion rights, health care, and government aid to education to the voter's own preferences on such issues is an example of

A) retrospective voting.
B) policy voting.
C) civic duty.
D) initiative.
E) agenda setting.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 313-314
Edition: National
79) Research has found that those most likely to view the candidates in terms of their personal attributes are

A) minority voters.
B) college-educated voters.
C) low-income voters.
D) women voters.
E) non-voters.

Answer: B

80) Which of the following is TRUE about the electoral college?

A) On very rare occasions, an elector has voted differently from the popular vote winner of his state.
B) It is scheduled to be phased out in 2006, though some still argue its usefulness and want to rescind the phase-out.
C) It is used in nearly half of the democratic nations around the world.
D) An elector has never voted differently from the popular vote winner of his state.
E) none of the above

Answer: A

81) The "electors" in the electoral college are

A) the members of Congress from each state, who vote strictly according to who won the majority of their state's votes.
B) the members of the House from each state, who vote strictly according to who won the majority of their district's votes.
C) selected by state parties, usually as a reward for faithful service to the party over the years.
D) a bipartisan group of political scientists, public officials, jurists, and other respected individuals chosen by the governor of each state.
E) selected by state legislatures well in advance of the presidential election, and each elector votes his or her own conscience as to who would be the best president.

Answer: C
82) The electoral college was originally established in order to
A) provide direct election of the president by the people, although its operation has had the opposite effect.
B) merely certify the results of the people's choice for president and vice president.
C) give the nation's elite the power to choose the president and vice president rather than the people directly.
D) insure high voter turnouts in elections throughout the country.
E) give legitimacy to the presidency, which was regarded suspiciously by most people as another potential monarchy.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 316
Edition: National

83) As provided in the Constitution, how are electoral votes allocated for each state?
A) Each state has as many electoral votes as it has members in the House of Representatives.
B) Each state has as many electoral votes as it has members in both the House and the Senate.
C) Each state has as many electoral votes as it has members in the Senate.
D) Each state is proportioned to their population, with all states having at least one vote.
E) Each state casts two electoral votes.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 316
Edition: National

84) Electors in the electoral college meet in their states in December (following the November general election) to officially cast their ballots, then mail their votes to
A) the House of Representatives.
B) the president.
C) the vice president.
D) the Supreme Court.
E) the Federal Election Commission.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 316
Edition: National
85) If no candidate receives an electoral college majority,

A) a runoff election is held nationwide between the top two vote-getters.
B) the candidate with the plurality of electoral votes is automatically elected.
C) the House of Representatives chooses among the top three electoral vote winners.
D) the electoral college takes a second ballot between the top two vote-getters, and the candidate who wins the majority is elected.
E) Congress is free to elect the president.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 316
Edition: National

86) If the presidential election is thrown into the House of Representatives,

A) each state’s House delegation may cast only one vote, regardless of its number of representatives.
B) each state’s House delegation casts as many votes as it has electoral votes.
C) each House member has one vote and majority rules.
D) the House vote is subject to veto by the president.
E) each House member has one vote but a sixty percent majority is required to win the presidency.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 316
Edition: National

87) Except in Maine and Nebraska, the electoral college system operates in each state on the principle of allocating electoral votes on the basis of

A) winner-take-all.
B) proportional representation.
C) allocating electoral votes based on the winner in each congressional district.
D) a mixture of winner-take-all and proportional representation.
E) majority rule.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 316
Edition: National
88) Which of the following statements about the electoral college is FALSE? 

A) Each state has as many electoral votes as it has United States senators and representatives.
B) Every state has a winner-take-all system where electors vote as a bloc for the winner.
C) Electors meet in their states in December and mail their votes to the vice president.
D) If no candidate receives an electoral majority, then the election is thrown into the House of Representatives.
E) Some states have a winner-take-all system where electors vote as a bloc for the winner.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 316
Edition: National

89) If a presidential candidate does not receive a majority of electoral college votes, then the president is chosen

A) by popular vote.
B) by the Justices of the Supreme Court.
C) by the House with one vote for each state.
D) by the Senate with two votes for each state.
E) by majority vote of the entire Congress in a joint session.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 316
Edition: National

90) Research on voting behavior has shown that

A) policy voting has become somewhat easier than in the past.
B) a candidate’s image is not as important today as it was in the past.
C) Americans tend to identify with the underdog.
D) party identification has become more important in voting decisions.
E) policy voting has become harder than in the past.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 314
Edition: National
91) Policy voting has increased in recent years primarily because

A) the media is paying closer attention to the issues rather than the horse race.
B) candidates are regularly forced to take some clear stands in order to appeal to their own party’s primary voters.
C) voters in general have become more sophisticated and educated about the issues.
D) policy issues are of greater consequence than they were in the past.
E) voters frustrated by the inaction of Congress have turned to the initiative process to enact specific policies placed right on the ballot.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 314–315
Edition: National

92) Which is FALSE regarding the electoral college?

A) Whoever wins the most votes in the electoral college wins, even if that isn’t a majority.
B) Maine and Nebraska do not use the “winner-take-all” system.
C) Electors can vote for whomever they want, regardless of how their state’s voters voted.
D) In most states ALL the electors vote for whomever won the most votes in their state, even if that wasn’t a majority.
E) The electors themselves are selected by state parties.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 316
Edition: National

93) The greater the policy differences between the candidates,

A) the closer the election.
B) the more likely voters will be able to steer government policies by their choices.
C) the lower the turnout in the general election.
D) the more likely voters will make choices based on personality traits.
E) the higher the voter turnout in the election.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 314
Edition: National
94) In ________, incumbents who provide desired results are rewarded; those who fail to do so are punished.
   A) indirect primaries
   B) initiatives
   C) referendums
   D) retrospective voting
   E) incentive voting

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 318
   Edition: National

95) If engaged in retrospective voting, an individual would ask:
   A) What have you done for me lately?
   B) Who will do more for me next year?
   C) Who is the more attractive candidate?
   D) Why should I vote at all?
   E) Who will be lowering taxes?

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 318
   Edition: National

96) When President Herbert Hoover and the Republicans were crushed in the election of 1932, voters were responding to the severity of the Great Depression under Hoover's presidency by
   A) retrospective voting.
   B) indirect primary voting.
   C) direct primary voting.
   D) initiative.
   E) irrational choice voting.

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 318
   Edition: National
97) Retrospective voting refers to voting for
   A) a candidate who promises to continue policies that have made you feel better off.
   B) a candidate because of his or her past stands on the issues.
   C) the same party and candidates election after election.
   D) different parties and candidates election after election.
   E) candidates for nostalgic reasons because they promise to return the country to some golden age in its past.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 318
   Edition: National

98) The type of public policy that seems to have the greatest effect on elections today is
   A) foreign policy.
   B) social policy.
   C) economic policy.
   D) military policy.
   E) racial policies.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 319
   Edition: National

99) Elections have a tendency to expand the scope of government because
   A) so many people become involved in the process.
   B) voters like to feel that they are sending a message to government to accomplish something.
   C) so much money is involved in campaigns.
   D) elections open opportunities for more government employment.
   E) because they are so expensive to conduct.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 319
   Edition: National
100) While the threat of electoral punishment constrains policymakers, it also helps to increase generalized support for

A) the private sector.
B) individualistic, rather than, collective policy solutions.
C) government and its powers.
D) incumbents who have done a good job.
E) unelected government officials in the bureaucracy.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 319
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Most Americans accept the legitimacy of the election process and results, whatever their own biases or apathy.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

2) Initiative petitions typically require forty percent of the number of votes in the previous election to be placed on the ballot.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 298
Edition: National

3) The presidential election of 1800 marks the first time in which the candidates personally campaigned for the office.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 299–300
Edition: National

4) In 1800, after a bitter election contest fought mostly in the partisan press, Thomas Jefferson lost the presidency to John Adams, thus creating the first peaceful transfer of power in America from one party to another.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 299–300
Edition: National

5) Following the Bryan–McKinley contest of 1896, the most enduring political alignment in American history took hold: the industrial East and Midwest strongly Republican; the less populous, agrarian South and West strongly Democratic.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 300–301
Edition: National
6) In 2004 George W. Bush became the first Republican president since William McKinley to win a second term.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 301
   Edition: National

7) The United States Supreme Court ultimately determined that George W. Bush was the winner of the 2000 presidential election.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 302
   Edition: National

8) Because Bush had won the 2000 election by such a narrow margin, he governed in a highly congenial, bipartisan manner, which strengthened his candidacy among Democrats in the 2004 election.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 302
   Edition: National

9) The 2004 election had surprisingly little to do with the war on terrorism and the war in Iraq.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 302–303
   Edition: National

10) There were no notable regional differences in the 2004 presidential vote.

    Answer: FALSE
    Page Ref: 303
    Edition: National

11) According to Anthony Downs, if you are truly indifferent between the parties it is rational to abstain.

    Answer: FALSE
    Page Ref: 305–306
    Edition: National

12) Not only does your vote probably not make much difference to the outcome, but voting is somewhat costly.

    Answer: TRUE
    Page Ref: 305
    Edition: National
13) Voter registration was begun around the turn of the twentieth century in order to handle the growing voting population and to know how many ballots to print and how many poll watchers would be needed.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

14) Voter turnout in the United States is not the highest in the world, but it is substantially higher than participation rates in Great Britain, France, Germany, and Italy.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 307
Edition: National

15) North Dakota has no voter registration, and several states allow voters to register on election day itself.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

16) Voter turnout in state and national elections increased significantly after Congress passed the Motor Voter Act of 1993.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 306
Edition: National

17) Young adults are much less likely to vote than senior citizens in the United States.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 307–310
Edition: National

18) The scholarly consensus is that politicians listen more to groups with higher turnout rates, as they know their fate may be in their hands.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 309–310
Edition: National

19) Most political scientists subscribe to the mandate theory of elections which accepts that citizens vote for the candidate whose policy promises they favor, thus the winner has a policy mandate from the people to carry out his or her promised policies.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 310
Edition: National
20) The most widely accepted theory of voting behavior among political scientists is the mandate theory of elections.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 310
   Edition: National

21) Research has shown that during the 1950s, voters rarely relied on issues to decide their votes.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 312
   Edition: National

22) Candidate ambiguity about policy positions makes policy voting easier.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 314
   Edition: National

23) Policy voting is easier today because of the role of the media in articulating the issues.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 314
   Edition: National

24) Because George W. Bush has taken strong and clear stands on tax cuts, the war on terror, and other issues, many consider him to be a particularly polarizing figure.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 315
   Edition: National

25) In retrospective voting, voters reward or punish the incumbent based on an evaluation of the incumbent’s past performance of importance to the voters.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 318
   Edition: National

26) Elections make people more likely to see government as their servant instead of their master.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 319
   Edition: National

27) The 2000 presidential election was decided by the U.S. Supreme Court.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 302
   Edition: National
Short Answer Questions

1) Many states give voters the chance to approve or disapprove some legislative act or constitutional amendment in an election known as a(n) ________.

   Answer: referendum
   Page Ref: 298
   Edition: National

2) What is the difference between an initiative petition and a referendum?

   Answer: The referendum is a state-level method of direct legislation that gives voters a chance to approve or disapprove proposed legislation or a proposed constitutional amendment. An initiative is a process whereby voters may put proposed changes in the state constitution to a vote if sufficient signatures are obtained on petitions calling for such a referendum.
   Page Ref: 298
   Edition: National

3) ________ states currently allow the use of initiatives.

   Answer: Twenty-four
   Page Ref: 298
   Edition: National

4) Why was the presidential election of 1800 particularly important?

   Answer: the first peaceful transfer of power between parties via the electoral process in world history (Adams v. Jefferson; Adams won)
   Page Ref: 299–300
   Edition: National

5) Although he gave the memorable "Cross of Gold" speech at the Democratic national convention in 1896 and broke tradition that year by taking to the campaign stump in person as the Democratic nominee, ________ lost to William McKinley.

   Answer: William Jennings Bryan
   Page Ref: 300–301
   Edition: National

6) Regionally, Bush ran strong in the ________ and Mountain West, whereas Gore was strong in the ________ and the ________.

   Answer: South; Northeast; Pacific Coast states
   Page Ref: 303
   Edition: National

7) The electoral college outcome in 2004 hinged on one battleground state: ________.

   Answer: Ohio
   Page Ref: 304
   Edition: National
8) Bush won the popular vote in 2004 by about _______ percent.

   Answer: 3
   Page Ref: 304
   Edition: National

9) Why, according to Anthony Downs, would an individual decide that it was rational to vote?

   Answer: Answers will vary.
   Page Ref: 305-306
   Edition: National

10) Those who vote strictly out of a sense of _______ are often indifferent about who wins, but want to show their support for democratic government.

    Answer: civic duty
    Page Ref: 306
    Edition: National

11) Those with higher incomes score higher on political _______, or the belief that ordinary people can influence the government.

    Answer: efficacy
    Page Ref: 306
    Edition: National

12) What are political efficacy and civic duty, and how do they affect individuals’ decisions about whether or not to vote?

    Answer: Political efficacy is the belief that one's political participation really matters, that one's vote can actually make a difference. Civic duty is the belief that in order to support democratic government, a citizen should always vote. Both help to explain why people vote.
    Page Ref: 306
    Edition: National

13) Describe the major features of the Motor Voter Act of 1993. What effect has it had on voter registration? Voter turnout?

    Answer: made voter registration easier by permitting people to register to vote at the same time they apply for their driver’s license; increased registration but minimal effects on turnout
    Page Ref: 306
    Edition: National

14) The _______ of elections is the idea that the winner of an election won because the voters chose that candidate's policy promises over another, and thus the will of the people is to enact those policy promises into law.

    Answer: mandate theory
    Page Ref: 310
    Edition: National
15) Explain and evaluate the mandate theory of elections.
   Answer: Answers will vary.
   Page Ref: 310
   Edition: National

16) What criteria do Americans usually use to evaluate political candidates?
   Answer: party identification, candidate evaluations and policy voting
   Page Ref: 313
   Edition: National

17) How has the nature of policy voting changed in the United States?
   Answer: It is easier to engage in policy voting today than it was in the 1950s and 1960s.
   Page Ref: 313-315
   Edition: National

18) It is the ________, not the popular vote, that actually determines the president of the United States.
   Answer: electoral college
   Page Ref: 315
   Edition: National

19) What happens if no candidate receives an electoral college majority?
   Answer: The election is thrown into the House of Representatives, which must choose from among the top three electoral vote winners.
   Page Ref: 316
   Edition: National

20) ________ is casting a ballot in an election based on rewarding incumbents who provide desired results and punishing those who fail to do so.
   Answer: Retrospective voting
   Page Ref: 318
   Edition: National

21) Explain the theory of retrospective voting.
   Answer: a theory of voting in which voters essentially ask this simple question: "What have you done for me lately?"
   Page Ref: 318–319
   Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Why is electoral legitimacy such an important aspect of America's political system? Is this sense of legitimacy deserved, in your opinion? If our elections are accepted as legitimate, why don't more people vote? Explain.
   Page Ref: 298
   Edition: National
2) Describe what initiatives and referendums are and what purpose they serve. Would you like to see more legislation subject to direct votes of the people or do you prefer to have the legislatures and Congress represent the people’s interests more indirectly? Explain.

Page Ref: 298–299
Edition: National

3) Briefly describe the major issues and events of the elections of 1800, 1896, and 2000. How engaged was the American public in each of these elections?

Page Ref: 299–302
Edition: National

4) Why does the text refer to George W. Bush’s first term as polarizing, and how was this reflected in the 2004 election results?

Page Ref: 301–304
Edition: National

5) Comment on some of the many ways in which elections have changed throughout American history. Give examples to illustrate your answer.

Page Ref: 299–304
Edition: National

6) Compare and contrast the presidential elections of 1800, 1896, and 2004. What factors made each election unique and important? What were some of the major changes between these elections?

Page Ref: 299–304
Edition: National

7) Describe who votes in United States elections and who stays home. Which groups have the highest turnout rates? Which have the lowest? Explain why you think some groups are more, and some less, likely to vote.

Page Ref: 306–310
Edition: National

8) How does the voter turnout rate in the United States compare to the other industrialized nations of the world? Why is this so? What evidence is there that easing voter registration would increase turnout? Would you take any specific steps to raise voter turnout? Explain.

Page Ref: 307
Edition: National

9) Describe how the composition of the electorate is biased. What types of individuals vote? Does it matter? In what sense is voter turnout of these groups rational?

Page Ref: 306–310
Edition: National
10) What is the mandate theory of elections, and who believes in it? According to political scientists, what are the three major elements to a voter's decision? From what you observed during the 2004 election, which element(s) do you think was most important to most voters? Explain.

*Page Ref: 310-315; 301-304
Edition: National*

11) Describe and evaluate the factors that influence a voter's decision to choose a particular candidate.

*Page Ref: 310-315
Edition: National*

12) How does the electoral college system work? Do you prefer it to direct popular election? Who serves in this college? Describe the outcome of the 2000 presidential campaign. Who objected? Did it threaten the legitimacy of our political system?

*Page Ref: 315-316; 301-302
Edition: National*

13) Explain how the electoral college system works. Evaluate the system. Is it completely antiquated or does it still serve a purpose?

*Page Ref: 315-316
Edition: National*

14) Describe what is meant by retrospective voting, including examples of how it has affected presidential elections. Is retrospective voting an appropriate way to choose a President and other public officials? Is retrospective voting adequate, or would you prefer other criteria? Explain.

*Page Ref: 318-319
Edition: National*

15) What are the two major tasks accomplished by elections according to democratic theory? Why is it often difficult for voters to vote based on a candidate's public policy preferences? Does this weaken democracy? Explain.

*Page Ref: 298, 314-315
Edition: National*

16) Describe the major differences in voter behavior between 1960 and 2004?

*Page Ref: 311-313
Edition: National*

17) Evaluate elections in America in terms of their role in the democratic process and their effect on the scope of government. How do elections affect, and how are they affected by, public policy?

*Page Ref: 298; 317-319
Edition: National*
18) In what sense is the relationship between elections and public policy a two-way street? That is, how do elections affect public policy? And how does public policy affect elections?

Page Ref: 317–319
Edition: National
Chapter 11  Interest Groups

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) The case involving Eli Lilly and Company illustrates how
   A) little influence special interests actually have on Congress.
   B) special interests can still bribe members of Congress.
   C) special interests’ campaign contributions can influence congressional action.
   D) Congress can regulate the activities of special interests.
   E) the increasing importance of multinational corporations.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 323
Edition: National

2) According to James Madison in Federalist Paper No. 1, the way to prevent any one group from
   having too much power is to
   A) eliminate most groups.
   B) increase the scope and number of groups.
   C) strictly regulate them.
   D) make them unconstitutional.
   E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 323
Edition: National

3) Since the 1960s, the number of interest groups has
   A) remained constant.
   B) risen rapidly.
   C) declined slightly.
   D) declined sharply.
   E) fluctuated up and down as new issues developed and others faded away.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 324
Edition: National
4) The right of interest groups to organize is
   A) protected by the Constitution.
   B) protected by the Federal Election Campaign Act.
   C) protected by state laws.
   D) protected by the Bill of Rights.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 324–325
Edition: National

5) The term interest group can be generally defined as
   A) an organization that seeks a collective good, the achievement of which will not specifically or materially benefit the membership or activists of the organization.
   B) a group that has a narrow interest, dislikes compromise, and single-mindedly pursues its goal.
   C) all people who share some common interest regardless of whether they join an organization promoting that interest.
   D) an organization of people with similar policy goals entering the political process to try to achieve those aims.
   E) an organization of people who share a common interest who run candidates in elections sympathetic to that interest.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 325
Edition: National

6) An organization of people with similar policy goals entering the political process to try to achieve those aims is called
   A) a political party.
   B) a political action committee.
   C) an interest group.
   D) a collective.
   E) a political corporation.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 325
Edition: National
7) Which of the following is NOT typical of American interest groups?

A) They frequently look to the bureaucracy or the judicial process to achieve their policy goals.
B) They run their own slate of candidates for office in many parts of the country.
C) Most have a handful of key policies to push, and are policy experts in those areas.
D) Unlike political parties, they are not faced with the constraint of trying to appeal to everyone.
E) They mostly represent diffuse, non-economic interests.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 325
Edition: National

8) American political parties differ from interest groups in that parties

A) are policy specialists.
B) are policy generalists.
C) are policy-driven.
D) do not take positions on policy issues.
E) have a narrower scope than interest groups.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 325-326
Edition: National

9) One of the main differences between American political parties and interest groups is that

A) interest groups are concerned with more issues.
B) interest groups concentrate on only one policy arena.
C) political parties run candidates for office.
D) interest groups limit their membership.
E) political parties are policy specialists.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 325-326
Edition: National
10) In Europe, interest groups
   A) do not exist.
   B) often form political parties.
   C) exist but are not as powerful as in the United States.
   D) have the same role and power as in the United States.
   E) do not have the same constitutional protection that they have in the United States and are frequently persecuted.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 326
   Edition: National

11) In many countries with multiparty systems and proportional representation, interest groups
   A) frequently win a majority of seats in the national legislature.
   B) frequently win some seats in the national legislature.
   C) frequently run candidates for seats in the national legislature, but these candidates almost never win.
   D) are barred from running candidates for office.
   E) are guaranteed by law seats in the national parliament in proportion to their percentage of the general population.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 325
   Edition: National

12) An interest group is more likely to form its own political party where
   A) voters choose their legislators in single-member districts.
   B) voters choose their legislators in dual-member districts.
   C) voters choose their legislators using proportional representation.
   D) the government has a bicameral legislature.
   E) there is a strong two-party system, and the major parties ignore their demands.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 325
   Edition: National
13) According to _______ theorists, interest groups compete and counterbalance one another in the political marketplace.

A) elitist  
B) hyperelitist  
C) pluralist  
D) hyperpluralist  
E) free market

Answer: C

Page Ref: 326  
Edition: National

14) Which of the following statements is FALSE?

A) With proportional representation systems, all it takes is between one and five percent of the vote for a party to win seats in the national legislature.  
B) In many Scandinavian countries, farmers’ parties have long been in existence.  
C) Many new interest groups in Europe have formed parties on the basis of shared values.  
D) Green parties in Europe have never been able to win enough votes to enter the national legislature.  
E) Parties are more like interest groups in Europe than in the U.S.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 325  
Edition: National

15) The successes of civil rights and women's rights groups in redirecting the course of public policy, once they were organized, is pointed to as evidence to support the _______ theory that American politics is open and not a problem.

A) pluralist  
B) hyperpluralist  
C) elite  
D) hyperelitist  
E) free market

Answer: A

Page Ref: 326  
Edition: National
16) The group theory of politics offered by pluralist theorists argues all of the following EXCEPT

A) groups provide a key link between people and government.
B) no one group is likely to become too dominant.
C) groups are all of equal strength.
D) groups usually play by the rules of the game.
E) different groups win at different times.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 326
Edition: National

17) The idea that just a few groups have all the power is associated with

A) elite theory.
B) pluralist theory.
C) hyperpluralist theory.
D) democratic theory.
E) syndicalism.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 326
Edition: National

18) A pluralistic interpretation of interest group politics would maintain that

A) all groups are subject to corrupt practices and tactics involving violence.
B) the degree of organization of a group has no effect on its ability to influence policy.
C) all legitimate groups can affect public policy by means of one political resource or another.
D) when groups compete the public interest is not served.
E) the overemphasis on groups in America has submerged the value of the individual and lead to government policies that suppress individual interests.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 326
Edition: National
19) According to the group theory of politics,
   A) all groups are equal.
   B) groups do not compete.
   C) groups do not play by the rules of the game.
   D) groups weak in one resource can use another.
   E) most political influence comes from individuals speaking in the name of groups but actually acting on their own personal agenda.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 326
Edition: National

20) The idea that interest group activity brings representation to all is associated with
   A) elite theory.
   B) pluralist theory.
   C) hyperpluralist theory.
   D) democratic theory.
   E) republicanism.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 326
Edition: National

21) Which of the following theories offers the most positive interpretation of the effect of interest groups on American democracy?
   A) pluralist
   B) hyperpluralist
   C) elite
   D) hyperelitist
   E) free market

Answer: A
Page Ref: 326
Edition: National
22) Pluralists argue that lobbying

A) is dominated by wealthy corporations and the wealthiest individuals and is a danger to the democratic system.
B) is open to all and is therefore not to be regarded as a problem.
C) by so many interest groups who get what they want indicates that the relation between groups and government has grown too cozy.
D) must be suspended until tighter regulations can be put into place to protect the public interest.
E) has no effect on policymaking.

Answer: B

23) _______ theorists are impressed by how insignificant most organized interest groups are.

A) Pluralist
B) Hyperpluralist
C) Elitist
D) Pluralist and hyperpluralist
E) Deconstruction

Answer: C

24) Elitist theorists argue that

A) groups weak in one resource can use another, and all legitimate groups are able to affect public policy by one means or another.
B) the fact that there are numerous groups proves nothing, because most groups are extremely unequal in power.
C) the government has treated all interest group demands as legitimate, and unwisely chosen to advance them all.
D) the larger the group, the further it will fall short of providing an optimal amount of a collective good.
E) governments should be controlled by a select group of well-educated, cultured, wealthy persons who understand the laws of economics and can run the most efficient government.

Answer: B
25) The ______ theorists argue that the power of the few is fortified by an extensive system of interlocking directorates, and that wealthy corporations prevail when it comes to major decisions by government.
   A) pluralist  
   B) hyperpluralist  
   C) elitist  
   D) hyperelitist  
   E) pyramid  
Answer: C  
Page Ref: 328  
Edition: National

26) The pluralist theory of American politics maintains that
   A) the extensive organization of competing groups is evidence that influence is widely dispersed among them.  
   B) the proliferation of interest groups results in political stagnation.  
   C) the largest interest groups will come to dominate policymaking.  
   D) although groups often do not play by the rules of the game, they do represent the American public at large.  
   E) the slogan on our money, e pluribus unum, is accurate in the sense that out of the many competing groups in America, a single unified American purpose has been forged.
Answer: A  
Page Ref: 326  
Edition: National

27) The presence and power of multinational corporations illustrates
   A) elite theory.  
   B) pluralist theory.  
   C) hyperpluralist theory.  
   D) democratic theory.  
   E) global unity theory.  
Answer: C  
Page Ref: 328  
Edition: National
28) Elite theorists emphasize the power of
   A) subgovernments.
   B) business leaders.
   C) congressional staff members.
   D) public interest lobbies.
   E) presidents.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 327
Edition: National

29) Elitist views of interest groups emphasize that
   A) groups are essentially equal in their power and thus cancel each others' influence on policymakers.
   B) a system of interlocking directorates reinforces the power of the few dominant groups.
   C) group competition weakens the ability of any one group to dominate.
   D) because there are so many groups, their effect on policy is insignificant.
   E) the leaders of powerful interest groups tend to think they are superior to the average citizen and thus they demand special privileges from government not accorded the rest of society in order to maintain themselves as a privileged elite.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

30) Interest group liberalism is criticized especially by ________ theorists.
   A) pluralist
   B) hyperpluralist
   C) elitist
   D) hyperelitist
   E) social-conservative

Answer: B

Page Ref: 328–329
Edition: National
31) Interest group liberalism holds that

A) the fact that there are numerous interest groups proves nothing, because groups are extremely unequal in power.

B) interest groups win some and lose some, but no group wins or loses all the time.

C) when one interest group throws its weight around too much, its opponents are likely to intensify their organization and thus restore balance to the system.

D) virtually all pressure group demands are legitimate, and the job of government is to advance them all.

E) the role of government is to leaven the natural inequalities of the free market system and that entails paying more attention to the needs of economically weak interest groups and less attention to economically powerful groups.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

32) Interest group liberalism is associated with which of the following criticisms?

A) In an effort to please and appease every interest, agencies proliferate, conflicting regulations expand, programs multiply, and the budgets skyrocket.

B) Real power is held by relatively few people, key groups, and institutions that get nearly all they want from government.

C) Interest groups win some and lose some, but no group wins or loses all the time, and democratic government is well served by their competition.

D) The framers of the Constitution intended that groups serve to bargain for various interests in American society, and this has proven a wise and relatively fair, open system.

E) The interest group system is dominated by liberal interest groups who have been successfully pushing an agenda that has made it hard for the police to fight crime, contributed to declining moral values and bankrupted the government with giveaways to welfare freeloaders.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

33) Interest group liberalism is promoted by

A) ideologically liberal interest groups and not conservative groups.

B) one group winning and another losing in the competition for government action or funding.

C) subgovernments.

D) hyperpluralists.

E) all of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 328
Edition: National
34) The criticism that government refuses to make tough choices between X or Y, instead pretending there is no need to choose and trying to favor both is most often made by _______ theorists.

   A) pluralist
   B) hyperpluralist
   C) elitist
   D) hyperelitist
   E) rational choice

Answer: B
Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

35) The idea that too many groups are getting too much of what they want is associated with

   A) elite theory.
   B) pluralist theory.
   C) hyperpluralist theory.
   D) democratic theory.
   E) proliferation theory.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

36) Interest group liberalism refers to

   A) government freedom to favor some interest groups over others.
   B) government's excessive deference to interest groups.
   C) the liberal political ideology of most interest groups.
   D) the proliferation of the number of interest groups.
   E) the strong tendency of interest groups to back the Democratic party and not the Republican party and that keeps the Democratic party in power.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 328
Edition: National
37) All subgovernments have the same goal
   A) protecting the public interest.
   B) attacking the government head-on.
   C) protecting their self-interest.
   D) electing the most qualified people to office.
   E) to join the main government.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 328
   Edition: National

38) Subgovernments are composed of key interest group leaders interested in policy X, the government agency in charge of administering policy X, and the _______ handling policy X.
   A) congressional committees and subcommittees
   B) federal courts
   C) public relations officers
   D) political candidates
   E) local governments

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 328
   Edition: National

39) Which of the following is NOT one of the major elements of the subgovernment system at the national level?
   A) interest group
   B) congressional committee
   C) federal court
   D) federal agency
   E) bureaucrats

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 328
   Edition: National
40) The hyperpluralist complaint that interest group politics creates subgovernments refers to
   A) the cooperative efforts of group leaders, government agencies, and members of congressional committees and subcommittees to promote special interests.
   B) the power of interest groups in determining government policies.
   C) the conflict of interest created when government agencies promote group interests.
   D) the use of paid lobbyists on congressional committees and subcommittees.
   E) the proliferation of specialized local governments over the last thirty years, many of which are designed to service some special interest.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 328
   Edition: National

41) A hyperpluralist interpretation of group politics would maintain that
   A) groups weak in one resource can substitute other resources to influence policy decisions.
   B) groups have become so powerful that government ends up aiding every possible interest.
   C) the fact that there are numerous groups proves nothing, because groups are unequal in power.
   D) groups provide a key linkage between people and government.
   E) All of these are true.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 328
   Edition: National

42) Which of the following ideas is NOT associated with hyperpluralism?
   A) Groups have become too powerful in the political process.
   B) Interest group liberalism is aggravated by numerous subgovernments.
   C) Trying to please every group results in contradictory and confusing policy.
   D) Political power is highly concentrated.
   E) The dominance of an economic elite.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 328
   Edition: National
43) A(n) _______ group is composed of all people who might be group members because they share some common interest.

A) potential
B) interest
C) actual
D) single-issue
E) latent

Answer: A
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

44) The free-rider problem refers to

A) unrelated amendments being added to a piece of legislation in order to bypass usual procedures.
B) potential members of a group failing to join the actual group, as they know they will receive the same benefits whether they are active members or not.
C) legislators who face no election opponents, and thus are automatically reelected.
D) mass transit scofflaws who endanger government aid to subways, buses, and commuter trains by not being officially counted.
E) welfare fraud and the costs it imposes on government and taxpayers.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

45) Part of Olson’s Law of Large Groups is the argument that

A) the larger the potential group, the less likely potential members are to contribute.
B) the larger the potential group, the more likely potential members are to contribute.
C) potential group size does not have any measurable affect on the willingness of potential members to contribute.
D) an actual group and a potential group are virtually the same when it comes to effectiveness.
E) the smaller the group the less likely the potential members are to contribute.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National
46) According to Olson's Law of Large Groups,

A) the larger the group, the further it will fall short of providing an optimal amount of a collective good.

B) the smaller the group, the further it will fall short of providing an optimal amount of a collective good.

C) the more levels of authority within a group, the more faith its members will have in it.

D) the more levels of authority within a group, the less faith its members will have in it.

E) the larger the group, the more likely it is to win.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

47) _______ helps to explain why public interest lobbies have relatively small proportions of actual members.

A) The free-rider problem

B) Special interest liberalism

C) The rise of political action committees

D) Tougher regulation of all lobbyists

E) Olson's Law of Large Groups

Answer: A

Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

48) According to Olson's Law of Large Groups,

A) the larger the group, the more effective it will be.

B) the smaller the group, the more effective it will be.

C) the size of a group does not determine its effectiveness, the leadership structure is the key.

D) all groups have a life cycle of birth, growth, maintenance, and decline, although many never decline completely.

E) large groups are more democratic.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 330
Edition: National
49) Consumer organizations suffer from
   A) *amicus curiae* briefs.
   B) class action suits.
   C) Olson’s Law of Large Groups.
   D) right-to-work laws.
   E) hyperpluralism.

Answer: C
*Page Ref: 330*
*Edition: National*

50) The biggest obstacle to the effectiveness of large groups is the
   A) difficulty of finding effective leadership.
   B) problem of raising funds and attracting government support.
   C) formation of counter-groups to oppose them.
   D) discrepancy between potential and actual membership.
   E) government regulations on lobbying activities.

Answer: B
*Page Ref: 330*
*Edition: National*

51) All people who might be group members because they share some common interest make up
   A) an actual group.
   B) a potential group.
   C) a collective group.
   D) an interest group.
   E) a probable group.

Answer: B
*Page Ref: 330*
*Edition: National*

52) Which of the following groups has the largest potential membership?
   A) National Association for the Advancement of Colored People
   B) National Organization for Women
   C) American Medical Association
   D) Air Transport Association of America
   E) American Political Science Association

Answer: B
*Page Ref: 330*
*Edition: National*
53) Which of the following groups claims the smallest share of its potential members?

A) National Consumers League  
B) United States Savings and Loan League  
C) Tobacco Institute  
D) Air Transport Association  
E) American Medical Association  

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 330*  
*Edition: National*

54) A "collective good" refers to

A) goods and services that are publicly owned.  
B) benefits that accrue to the group that sought them.  
C) something of value that benefits both the actual and potential members of a group.  
D) a public policy that is in the public interest.  
E) goods and services collected for the needy.  

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 330*  
*Edition: National*

55) An example of a collective good is

A) food.  
B) employment.  
C) clean air.  
D) housing.  
E) all of the above  

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 330*  
*Edition: National*

56) The free-rider problem refers to the difficulty of

A) small groups in raising enough money to influence policy.  
B) groups in organizing all their potential members.  
C) actual groups in collecting dues from members.  
D) potential groups in receiving their share in collective goods.  
E) all taxpayers having to pay for public services and payments that go only to the poor.  

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 330*  
*Edition: National*
57) According to Mancur Olson,

A) large groups are the most effective groups
B) the bigger the group, the smaller the free-rider problem.
C) the larger the group, the further it will fall short of providing an optimal amount of a collective good.
D) the larger the group, the more effective it is in influencing public policies.
E) the key to group power is to form broad coalitions with other groups, making themselves nearly invincible.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

58) An advantage for small groups is that

A) free-riders can be forced out of the organization, creating more unity.
B) it is easier to reconcile divergent interests in small groups.
C) there is more at stake for each member, making it easier to organize and activate all members.
D) collective goods do not have to share with the big interests.
E) they are able to "hide" in the political process so that opposing groups are not able to organize against them.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

59) According to Mancur Olson, small interest groups generally are ________ compared to all other groups.

A) insignificant
B) incoherent
C) less focused
D) more effective
E) more democratic

Answer: C

Page Ref: 330
Edition: National
60) An advantage of single-issue groups is their
   A) financial resources.
   B) pool of potential members.
   C) pool of actual members.
   D) intensity.
   E) diversity.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 332
   Edition: National

61) A single-issue group is one that is all of the following EXCEPT
   A) focused on narrow interest.
   B) unable to compromise.
   C) organizes on the national level only.
   D) single-mindedly in pursuing its goal.
   E) intensely committed to a policy goal.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 332
   Edition: National

62) Single-issue groups
   A) include members with narrow, uncompromising interests.
   B) have had little effect on the outcomes of elections.
   C) mainly focus on the issue of abortion.
   D) are not taken seriously because they lack a large constituency.
   E) tend to focus on their specific economic interest rather than on collective social issues.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 332
   Edition: National

63) Single-issue group politics has been especially emotional over the issue of
   A) consumerism.
   B) equality.
   C) abortion.
   D) foreign policy.
   E) affirmative action.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 332
   Edition: National
64) One of the major inducements of the American interest group system is that it
   A) provides too much representation.
   B) distracts government officials.
   C) is biased toward the wealthy.
   D) stifles the expression of new interests.
   E) is dominated by single-issue groups.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 333
Edition: National

65) By 2000, the number of groups listed in the Encyclopedia of Associations was over
   A) 5,000.
   B) 1,000.
   C) 10,000.
   D) 20,000.
   E) 50,000.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 333-334
Edition: National

66) Which of the following statements about interest groups is FALSE?
   A) The majority of groups now have their headquarters in Washington, D.C.
   B) There are an enormous number of highly specialized and seemingly trivial groups.
   C) Almost every group has a staff and publications.
   D) The growth rate of interest groups has slowed in recent years.
   E) Groups are more diverse today than in past decades.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 333-334
Edition: National

67) Technological improvements in communication have caused interest groups to
   A) consolidate.
   B) sharply increase in number.
   C) sharply decline in number.
   D) move out of Washington, D.C.
   E) form broad coalitions to expand their clout.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 334
Edition: National
68) _______ is a communication by someone other than a citizen acting on his or her own behalf, directed to a government decision maker, particularly in the legislative and executive branch, with the hope of influencing his or her decision.

   A) Electioneering
   B) An *amicus curiae* brief
   C) Lobbying
   D) Litigation
   E) Campaigning

Answer: C

Page Ref: 335
Edition: National

69) Three basic strategies employed by interest groups are all of the following EXCEPT

   A) lobbying.
   B) implementation.
   C) electioneering.
   D) litigation.
   E) going public.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 335–340
Edition: National

70) Which of the following is NOT one of the basic interest group strategies in America?

   A) lobbying
   B) running candidates for office
   C) litigation
   D) electioneering
   E) implementation

Answer: B

Page Ref: 335–340
Edition: National
71) A "communication by someone other than a citizen acting on his or her own behalf, directed to a governmental decision maker with the hope of influencing his or her decision" is a definition of

A) campaigning.
B) lobbying.
C) electioneering.
D) litigation.
E) a policy output.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 335
Edition: National

72) Which of the following is NOT a way in which a lobbyist can help a member of Congress?

A) obtaining group support for the politician's re-election
B) introducing legislation in Congress
C) providing valuable information on specialized policy areas
D) helping with political strategy
E) assisting with the cost of traveling between their home district and Washington, D.C.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 335
Edition: National

73) According to the text, one of the most common function of lobbyists is to

A) provide information and ideas to members of Congress.
B) recruit former officeholders to help with public relations.
C) convert members of Congress to the point of view the lobbyists represent.
D) actually introduce new legislation.
E) raise funds for preferred political candidates.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 335
Edition: National
74) The text identifies two types of lobbyists,
   A) full-time employees and consultants.
   B) policy experts and legal specialists.
   C) attorneys and non-attorneys.
   D) those based in Washington, D.C., and those based elsewhere.
   E) "old school" and "modern style" lobbyists.

Answer: A

75) Many interest groups involve themselves in _______ to help get those they consider to be the right people into office or to keep them there.
   A) lobbying
   B) electioneering
   C) litigation
   D) policymaking
   E) recruitment

Answer: B

76) Lobbyists provide members of Congress all of the following EXCEPT
   A) help with accomplishing their legislative goals.
   B) information.
   C) campaign strategy and organizational help.
   D) ideas and innovations.
   E) None of the above; lobbyists provide all of the above to members of Congress.

Answer: E

77) According to the text, the least effective activity of lobbyists in Congress is
   A) contributing to campaigns.
   B) providing information.
   C) activating members of Congress to vote on legislation.
   D) converting members of Congress to the lobbyists’ positions.
   E) both A and B

Answer: D
78) According to the text, lobbying works best
   A) with people who are undecided about a policy.
   B) when large amounts of money are involved.
   C) on people already committed to the lobbyist’s policy position.
   D) when the lobbyist uses pressure tactics.
   E) when the lobbyist starts crying and pleading.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 336
   Edition: National

79) Political action committee (PAC) money goes overwhelmingly to
   A) Independents.
   B) challengers.
   C) incumbents.
   D) Democrats.
   E) Republicans.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 335
   Edition: National

80) Political Action Committees are primarily a means used by interest groups for
   A) lobbying.
   B) electioneering.
   C) litigation.
   D) policymaking.
   E) political action.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 337
   Edition: National

81) Interest groups seeking to exert influence on the electoral process can honestly and openly funnel money into the campaign coffers of their supporters through
   A) lobbying.
   B) electioneering.
   C) Political Action Committees.
   D) subgovernments.
   E) electronic banking.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 337
   Edition: National
82) Most PAC money goes overwhelmingly to incumbents because incumbents
   A) need more money due to the restraints of being in office.
   B) have already been "bought off" by interest groups.
   C) have already become friends and supporters of lobbyists.
   D) are the most likely to be able to return the investment.
   E) have the need for large amounts of money to maintain themselves in power.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 337
   Edition: National

83) Which of the following is NOT true about Political Action Committees?
   A) There are far more PACs now than there were in 1974.
   B) Most PAC money goes to challengers rather than incumbents.
   C) Some PACs contribute to both challenger and incumbent, playing it safe.
   D) Only a handful of candidates have completely resisted the lure of PAC money.
   E) PACs contribute before and after elections.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 337
   Edition: National

84) Steve Sovern's LASTPAC and Common Cause
   A) agree that all candidates and officeholders should not accept money from political action
      groups.
   B) disagree on the issue of whether PACs engage in influence peddling.
   C) disagree on the issue of whether electioneering is an appropriate policy arena for interest
      groups.
   D) agree that the $5,000 limit on PAC contributions makes such contributions meaningless
      in multimillion-dollar presidential campaigns and should be rescinded.
   E) agree that the income tax check-off to support public financing of presidential campaign
      should be eliminated.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 338
   Edition: National
85) The most successful tactic that civil rights and environmental groups have used to influence policy is
   A) litigation.
   B) electioneering.
   C) lobbying.
   D) media advertising.
   E) protest demonstrations.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 338
Edition: National

86) ________ are written arguments submitted to the courts in support of one side of a case.
   A) Class action lawsuits
   B) Litigations
   C) *Amicus curiae* briefs
   D) Public interest lobbies
   E) Opening arguments

Answer: C
Page Ref: 338
Edition: National

87) An *amicus curiae* brief is
   A) one which enables a group of similarly situated plaintiffs to combine similar grievances into a single suit to pursue a remedy for past wrongs.
   B) an oral or written appeal of a court decision made by an interest group which is party to the particular case.
   C) an oral or written appeal of a court decision made by an interest group not party to a particular case.
   D) a written argument submitted to the courts in support of one side of a case.
   E) the written statement of a court's decision in a case explaining the reasons for the decision.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 338
Edition: National
88) Literally, *amicus curiae* means

A) legal opinion.
B) legal argument.
C) friend of the court.
D) curious observer.
E) let the decision stand.

Answer: C
*Page Ref: 338*
*Edition: National*

89) *Amicus curiae* briefs

A) are written explanations of a court decision.
B) are lawsuits submitted by interest groups.
C) consist of written arguments submitted to the courts in support of one side of a case.
D) enable groups of similarly situated plaintiffs to combine similar grievances into a single suit.
E) are legal arguments submitted by the president's attorneys advocating the United States government's position in an important federal court case.

Answer: C
*Page Ref: 338*
*Edition: National*

90) _______ enables a group of similarly situated plaintiffs to combine similar grievances into a single suit.

A) An *amicus curiae* brief
B) A public interest suit
C) Olson's Law of Large Groups
D) A class action lawsuit
E) A collective civil suit

Answer: D
*Page Ref: 339*
*Edition: National*
91) Flight attendants won a(n) _______ against the airline industry’s regulation that all stewardesses had to be unmarried.

   A) amicus curiae brief
   B) writ of habeas corpus
   C) bill of attainder
   D) class action lawsuit
   E) administrative appeal

Answer: D
Page Ref: 339
Edition: National

92) Class action lawsuits

   A) consist of written arguments submitted to the courts in support of one side of a case.
   B) consist of lawsuits brought to the courts by one particular social class in society.
   C) enable a group of similarly situated plaintiffs to combine similar grievances into a single suit.
   D) enable organized interests groups to sue the federal government over a particular issue.
   E) ask a court to take action against a particular group to stop them from injuring another group financially.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 339
Edition: National

93) In "going public" interest groups

   A) extend membership to a broader range of people.
   B) use advertising and public relations to enhance their image.
   C) bring class action suits against their opponents.
   D) issue stock.
   E) open their decision-making meetings to the general public.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 339–340
Edition: National
94) Which of the following statements about interest groups going public is FALSE?
   A) Interest groups carefully cultivate their public images.
   B) Interest groups market not only their stand on issues but their reputations as well.
   C) More and more organizations have launched expensive public relations efforts.
   D) The public relations of most groups tend to be characterized by hard sell and bias.
   E) A and C only

Answer: D
Page Ref: 339-340
Edition: National

95) Which of the following statements is FALSE?
   A) In the American economy, government directly determines wages, prices, and profits.
   B) Public policy in America has economic effects through regulations, tax advantages, subsidies and contracts, and international trade.
   C) Even a minor change in government regulatory policy can cost industries a great deal or bring increased profits.
   D) How the tax code is written determines whether people and producers pay a lot or a little of their incomes to the government.
   E) B and D only

Answer: A
Page Ref: 341-342
Edition: National

96) Economic groups
   A) are those which require individuals to pay dues to be members.
   B) consist only of corporations, rather than individuals, as members.
   C) are those groups interested in wages, prices, and profits.
   D) lobby on behalf of all consumers.
   E) are those groups that provide information to Congress.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 341
Edition: National
97) Right-to-work laws are most strongly supported by
   A) unemployed citizens.
   B) business groups.
   C) union officials.
   D) the feminist and civil rights movements.
   E) illegal immigrants.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

98) The union shop
   A) serves as the headquarters of an organized labor group.
   B) sells only goods made by laborers affiliated with a union.
   C) requires that all employees in a unionized business join the union.
   D) is a retail store whose employees are unionized.
   E) both B and D

Answer: C
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

99) Right-to-work laws _______ the union shop.
   A) take a neutral stance toward
   B) require
   C) legalize
   D) outlaw
   E) regulate

Answer: D
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

100) The union shop
   A) outlaws union membership as a condition of employment.
   B) offers low-cost consumer goods to union members.
   C) requires new employees to join the union representing them.
   D) is supported by business groups.
   E) is a business owned by a union, has a tax-exempt status, and is not allowed to collect profits.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National
101) Right-to-work laws

A) guarantee full employment.

B) outlaw union membership as a condition of employment.

C) require employees to join the union representing them.

D) offer government jobs to unemployed workers.

E) require welfare recipients to work for their welfare checks.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

102) Business PACs

A) have so far been associated only with multinational corporations.

B) are the most visible of Washington lobbies.

C) have increased more dramatically than any other category of PACs.

D) have not been as effective as labor and consumer PACs.

E) contribute more to Democrats than to Republicans.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 343
Edition: National

103) Environmental groups

A) are an example of an economic interest group.

B) grew dramatically after the first Earth Day in 1970.

C) support nuclear power as a clean alternative to coal mining.

D) have had very little influence on Congress and state legislatures.

E) tend to avoid energy issues, while concentrating on the preservation of wilderness.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 343
Edition: National

104) One of the reasons that "business" does not always get what it wants is

A) business groups often have different interests and want different things.

B) it has limited resources to spend on influencing government policy.

C) it has often used ineffective lobbying techniques.

D) it is a relatively "weak" cluster of interest groups.

E) none of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 343
Edition: National
105) The first _______ in April 1970 helped to spur on a number of environmental groups.

A) Earth Day
B) smog alert
C) serious oil spill
D) nuclear power plant accident
E) nuclear plant explosion

Answer: A

106) Public interest lobbies are those organizations that

A) emphasize equal rights and equality of opportunity in America.
B) eschew the subgovernment system and operate within view of the public, often through town meetings.
C) have large memberships, usually a million or more.
D) seek a collective good, the achievement of which will not selectively and materially benefit members or activists.
E) focus exclusively on public expenditures directed toward Social Security.

Answer: D

107) Environmental groups have been most successful at

A) stopping strip mining.
B) halting the trans-Alaskan pipeline.
C) thwarting the expansion of the nuclear power industry.
D) stopping the development of commercial supersonic aircraft.
E) protecting the reefer toad and other endangered species.

Answer: C
108) That successful lobbying efforts by consumer groups benefits all consumers, and not just group members, is an example of

A) interest group liberalism.
B) electioneering.
C) lobbying.
D) a free-rider problem.
E) Olson's Law of Large Groups.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 330; 346–347
Edition: National

109) Organizations seeking a collective good that may not benefit them directly are called

A) commodity associations.
B) protest groups.
C) public interest lobbies.
D) single-issue groups.
E) altruistic lobbies.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 346
Edition: National

110) The ______ is the oldest and largest of the African-American groups which have fought for equality at the polls, in housing, on the job, in education, and in all other facets of American life.

A) Urban League
B) Congress of Racial Equality
C) National Association for the Advancement of Colored People
D) Rainbow Coalition
E) National African-American Organization

Answer: C
Page Ref: 345
Edition: National
111) The Fair Share program is an effort by the

A) National Organization of Women to renew the fight for the Equal Rights Amendment.
B) National Association for the Advancement of Colored People to negotiate agreements with businesses to increase minority hiring and the use of minority contractors.
C) National Organization of Women to get equal pay for comparable work.
D) National Association for the Advancement of Colored People to desegregate private clubs.
E) American Taxpayers’ Union to raise the wages and cut the taxes of lower- and middle-income people.

Answer: B

112) The National Organization for Women

A) was first formed in the nineteenth century to help women gain the right to vote.
B) was primarily responsible for ratification of the Equal Rights Amendment.
C) is no longer a formidable force for women’s rights.
D) now works for the enactment of individual statutes (laws) to protect women’s rights rather than a constitutional amendment.
E) is a counter-interest group formed by Phyllis Schlafly to oppose the Women’s Liberation Movement and the Equal Rights Amendment.

Answer: D

113) In addition to fighting segregation and discrimination, civil rights interest groups have also focused on

A) broader economic problems.
B) the environment.
C) transportation.
D) housing quality.
E) gender equality.

Answer: A
114) The ______ movement was spurred by a single person: Ralph Nader.
   A) American labor
   B) modern civil rights movement
   C) consumer
   D) anti-Vietnam War
   E) gay rights

Answer: C
Page Ref: 346
Edition: National

115) Common Cause is an example of
   A) a public interest lobby.
   B) a subgovernment.
   C) interest group liberalism.
   D) a single-issue group.
   E) a for-profit lobby.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 347
Edition: National

116) An example of a public interest group is
   A) Common Cause.
   B) American Medical Association.
   C) National Organization for Women.
   D) National Association of Manufacturers.
   E) National Rifle Association

Answer: A
Page Ref: 347
Edition: National

117) According to Robert Salisbury, the increase in lobbying activity has resulted in
   A) greater clout for business and industry groups.
   B) less democracy.
   C) less clout overall for interest groups.
   D) government by minority interests.
   E) elitist policymaking.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 348
Edition: National
118) The growth of both interest groups and the scope of government over the past several decades represents

A) the former increasing the latter.
B) the latter increasing the former.
C) both A and B
D) the latter decreasing the former.
E) Neither A nor B; there is no relationship between the two.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 348–349  
Edition: National*

**True/False Questions**

1) A key difference between interest groups and political parties is that interest groups are policy generalists.

Answer: FALSE  
*Page Ref: 325  
Edition: National*

2) The hyperpluralist theory argues that interest group activity brings representation to all, groups compete and counterbalance one another in the political marketplace, and lobbying is not a problem.

Answer: FALSE  
*Page Ref: 328  
Edition: National*

3) Since the 1960s, the proportion of the American public believing that big interests dominate the government has declined somewhat.

Answer: FALSE  
*Page Ref: 327  
Edition: National*

4) Elite theory argues that a few groups (primarily the wealthy) have most of the power.

Answer: TRUE  
*Page Ref: 327  
Edition: National*

5) Hyperpluralists' major criticism of the interest groups and the government have become too conflictual.

Answer: FALSE  
*Page Ref: 328  
Edition: National*
6) Smaller groups are generally more effective than larger groups.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

7) The free-rider problem is less serious when what the actual group is seeking is a collective good.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

8) Olson's Law of Large Groups helps explain the distinct advantage of small groups in lobbying for their goals.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

9) The development of sophisticated technology has resulted in the consolidation and decrease in the number of interest groups.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 334
Edition: National

10) As the number of interest groups has increased over the past several decades, the diversity of the groups has remained the same.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 334
Edition: National

11) Most lobbying is directed toward activating and reinforcing one's supporters.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 336
Edition: National

12) When going public, most interest groups emphasize a soft sell and reasoned analysis.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 340
Edition: National

13) Interest groups occasionally file *amicus curiae* briefs which enable a group of similarly situated plaintiffs to combine similar grievances into a single suit.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 339
Edition: National
14) Most of the states with right-to-work laws are in the South, which traditionally has had the lowest percentage of unionized workers.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

15) The peak of the American labor movement occurred in the 1970s, when 33 percent of the nonagricultural work force belonged to a union.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

16) Most environmental groups trace their origins to Earth Day, April 22, 1970, or sometime soon thereafter.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 343
Edition: National

17) "Equality interests" refer to the cluster of groups seeking equal protection under the law.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 345
Edition: National

18) The Consumer Products Safety Commission is an example of a public interest lobby.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 347
Edition: National

19) The recent increase in the number of interest groups is evidence that the power of subgovernments is increasing.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 348
Edition: National

20) Interest group liberalism is promoted by the network of subgovernments in the American political system.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) What are the key differences between interest groups and political parties?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 325
Edition: National
2) ______ theory argues that just a few groups, primarily the very wealthy, have most of the power in the United States.

Answer: Elite
Page Ref: 327
Edition: National

3) What did Theodore Lowi mean by interest group liberalism?

Answer: the government's excessive deference to interest groups
Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

4) ______ are composed of key interest group leaders interested in policy X, the government agency in charge of administering policy X, and the members of congressional committees and subcommittees which handle policy X.

Answer: Subgovernments (or Iron triangles)
Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

5) What are subgovernments? Why are they important?

Answer: a network of groups within the American political system that exercise a great deal of control over specific policy areas, composed of interest group leaders interested in a policy, government agencies responsible for administering that policy and the members of congressional committees and subcommittees responsible for the policy; also known as iron triangles
Page Ref: 328
Edition: National

6) A potential group consists of ______.

Answer: all the people who might be interest group members because they share some common interest
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

7) A(n) ______ is something of value, such as clean air, that cannot be withheld from a potential group member, thus causing the free rider problem.

Answer: collective good
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

8) According to Olson's Law of Large Groups, the ______ the group, the further it will fall short of providing an optimal amount of a collective good.

Answer: larger
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National
9) What is meant by a collective good, and how does this concept suggest a problem for interest groups?

Answer: something of value that cannot be withheld from a group member
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

10) One of the major factors associated with the increase in interest groups over the past several decades is _______.

Answer: new technology
Page Ref: 334
Edition: National

11) What is the importance of *amicus curiae* briefs and class action lawsuits to the efforts of interest groups to influence policy?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 338
Edition: National

12) Interest groups contribute money to election campaigns through what are called _______.

Answer: Political Action Committees (PACs)
Page Ref: 337
Edition: National

13) A tactic used by lawyers to make the views of interest groups heard before the judiciary is the filing of _______, which consist of written arguments submitted to the courts in support of one side of a case and outline how the group’s welfare will be affected by the case’s outcome.

Answer: *amicus curiae* briefs
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

14) _______ laws outlaw the union shop in many states.

Answer: Right-to-work
Page Ref: 342
Edition: National

15) The oldest and largest of groups seeking political equality for African Americans is the _______.

Answer: National Association for the Advancement of Colored People (NAACP)
Page Ref: 345
Edition: National

16) The National Organization for Women was unsuccessful in securing passage of the _______, but remains active in the fight against sexual discrimination.

Answer: Equal Rights Amendment
Page Ref: 345-346
Edition: National
17) _______ are organizations that seek a collective good, the achievement of which will not selectively and materially benefit the membership or activities of the organization.

Answer: Public interest lobbies
Page Ref: 346
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Define interest groups. What do Americans generally feel about interest groups? What are some of the common characteristics of groups today? How do interest groups in the United States differ from groups in other democracies?
Page Ref: 325; 327;
Edition: National

2) Describe the differences between the pluralist, hyperpluralist, and elite theories in regard to the role played by interest groups in American society.
Page Ref: 326–329
Edition: National

3) Compare and contrast how a pluralist, elitist and hyperpluralist would describe the most significant features of the interest group system today.
Page Ref: 326–329
Edition: National

4) Compare and contrast how pluralist, elite, and hyperpluralist theories explain the role of interest groups in the United States. Specifically, are groups good or bad influences on public policy? How powerful are they? Whose interests do they serve?
Page Ref: 326–329; 348–349
Edition: National

5) What is Olson’s Law of Large Groups, and how does it pertain to the power of various interest groups in American politics? How does the free-rider problem fit into Olson’s scheme? Does Olson’s law seem correct to you? Explain.
Page Ref: 330
Edition: National

6) Discuss how size, intensity, and resources determine the likely effectiveness of an interest group. Provide examples where appropriate.
Page Ref: 330–333
Edition: National

7) Explain what factors work to make an interest group successful.
Page Ref: 330–333
Edition: National
8) What is a single-issue group? What power does a single-issue group often have regardless of its size? What issue over the past twenty years or more has given rise to many single-issue groups on each side? What effect do you think such groups have on American politics? Explain.

Page Ref: 332
Edition: National

9) Explain and evaluate the role of money in interest groups in the United States. What has been the impact of Political Action Committees (PACs) on U.S politics?

Page Ref: 337-338
Edition: National

10) Describe and evaluate the methods interest groups use in pursuing their policy goals.

Page Ref: 335-340
Edition: National

11) Describe what lobbyists do, and how effective they are. Toward whom is most lobbying directed, and why? Explain.

Page Ref: 335-337
Edition: National

12) Explain what methods groups use to influence public policy, and why they sometimes win and sometimes lose.

Page Ref: 335-340
Edition: National


Page Ref: 335-337
Edition: National

14) How can interest groups use litigation to achieve their goals? Why has litigation been a particularly powerful tool for environmental groups? Is this an outlet that ought to be encouraged within our system? Explain.

Page Ref: 338-339
Edition: National

15) Compare and contrast the different types of economic interest groups in the United States. What type of economic interest group has been most successful and why?

Page Ref: 341-343
Edition: National

16) Explain what Salisbury means when he claims that many groups have "come to Washington out of need and dependence rather than because they have influence." Do you agree or disagree? Why?

Page Ref: 348
Edition: National
17) Discuss the positive and negative contributions interest groups make to our democracy.

Page Ref: 348–349
Edition: National
Chapter 12  Congress

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Which of the following did the framers of the Constitution conceive of as the center of policymaking in America?
   A) the president
   B) the people
   C) Congress
   D) the courts
   E) the Supreme Court
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 353
   Edition: National

2) The foremost attraction for the job of serving in Congress is
   A) a salary four times the income of the typical American family.
   B) generous retirement benefits.
   C) the power to make key public policy decisions.
   D) travel benefits.
   E) employment opportunities after leaving office.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 354
   Edition: National

3) Which of the following is NOT one of the perquisites which go with the job of being a member of Congress?
   A) a salary of over $150,000
   B) subsidized housing in the Virginia or Maryland suburbs of D.C.
   C) free use of the mails to communicate with constituents
   D) free office space in Washington, D.C., and in the constituency from which elected
   E) a budget to support office staff
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 354
   Edition: National
4) ______ privileges refer to the free use of the mails enjoyed by Congress.

   A) Franking
   B) Conmail
   C) Junket
   D) Procurement
   E) E-mail

Answer: A
Page Ref: 354
Edition: National

5) The most prominent characteristic of a Congressperson’s job is

   A) prestige.
   B) hard work.
   C) high pay.
   D) travel.
   E) the 30-hour work week.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 354
Edition: National

6) A myth about members of Congress is that they

   A) generally are educated and come from high-status occupations.
   B) tend to develop policy specialties.
   C) are especially effective in carrying out their constituent service.
   D) are overpaid, underworked, corrupt, and ineffective.
   E) are overwhelmingly male.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 354
Edition: National

7) The United States House of Representatives has ______ members.

   A) 638
   B) 100
   C) 435
   D) 80
   E) 535

Answer: C
Page Ref: 355
Edition: National
8) The United States Senate has _______ members.
   A) 50
   B) 100
   C) 435
   D) 438
   E) 535
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 355
   Edition: National

9) How many senators are elected from each state?
   A) one
   B) two
   C) four
   D) it depends on a state’s population
   E) the same number as it has electors in the electoral college
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 355
   Edition: National

10) Which of the following is TRUE about the minimum age requirements for members of Congress set forth in the Constitution?
    A) One must be at least 21 years of age to serve in the House of Representatives.
    B) One must be at least 30 years of age to serve in the Senate.
    C) One must be at least 35 years of age to serve in either the House or the Senate.
    D) There are no age requirements for members of Congress.
    E) The age requirements are the same for the House and the Senate.
    Answer: B
    Page Ref: 355
    Edition: National

11) The members of the Senate closely reflect the nation in terms of
    A) race.
    B) gender.
    C) economic status.
    D) prior occupation.
    E) none of the above
    Answer: E
    Page Ref: 355-356
    Edition: National
12) The income and occupations of members of Congress
   A) typically reflect the pluralistic nature of American society.
   B) are very close to the average found among their constituency.
   C) would, for the most part, make them members of the elite in American society.
   D) have no real impact on public policymaking.
   E) places over 90 percent of them in the millionaire businessperson class.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 355-356
Edition: National

13) African Americans constitute _______ of the United States Senate.
   A) less than 10 percent
   B) approximately 35 percent
   C) roughly half
   D) well over half
   E) about 20 percent

Answer: A
Page Ref: 356
Edition: National

14) In terms of religion, most members of Congress are
   A) Catholic.
   B) Jewish.
   C) Protestant.
   D) born-again Christians.
   E) atheists.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 356
Edition: National

15) The most common prior occupation for members of Congress is
   A) business.
   B) law.
   C) education.
   D) public service.
   E) state legislator.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 356
Edition: National
16) Relative to the total population, the most underrepresented group in Congress is
   A) African Americans.
   B) Hispanics.
   C) women.
   D) Jews.
   E) homosexuals.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 356
   Edition: National

17) Overall, members of Congress can _______ of the American people.
   A) possibly claim substantive representation, but not descriptive representation
   B) possibly claim descriptive representation, but not substantive representation
   C) claim both substantive and descriptive representation
   D) claim neither substantive nor descriptive representation
   E) possibly claim both substantive and descriptive representation
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 357
   Edition: National

18) Millionaire Senator Edward Kennedy sponsoring a bill to help the poor and disadvantaged
    would be an example of
    A) descriptive representation.
    B) substantive representation.
    C) elite representation.
    D) constituent representation.
    E) franking privileges.
    Answer: B
    Page Ref: 357
    Edition: National

19) Incumbents are those
    A) already holding office.
    B) running for office for the first time.
    C) who have been defeated in an election.
    D) retired members of Congress.
    E) running for an office.
    Answer: A
    Page Ref: 358
    Edition: National
20) In most congressional elections, challengers
A) outspend an incumbent.
B) win.
C) are better known than incumbents.
D) lose.
E) spend roughly as much money as incumbents.

Answer: D
Page Ref. 358
Edition: National

21) The single most important advantage to someone trying to get elected to Congress is
A) being an incumbent.
B) having more money to spend on campaigning.
C) being charismatic and photogenic.
D) having a clean record.
E) winning the endorsement of the top leaders of their party.

Answer: A
Page Ref. 358
Edition: National

22) Comparison between members of the House and Senate concerning the impact of incumbency on their reelection chances shows that one of the reasons that senators have a smaller advantage is because they
A) have become over-specialized as policymakers.
B) are more likely to be held accountable on controversial issues.
C) are less visible.
D) have longer terms that increase the chance of scandal.
E) represent more homogenous constituencies.

Answer: B
Page Ref. 358–359
Edition: National
23) Reasons that incumbent senators have greater competition than incumbent members of the House include all of the following EXCEPT

A) an entire state is more diverse than a congressional district, providing more of a base for opposition.
B) senators have less personal contact with their constituencies.
C) voters are less likely to know the issue positions of their senators than their representatives.
D) senators tend to draw more visible challengers.
E) senate challengers are better funded than House challengers.

Answer: C

24) Which of these candidates would most likely get elected?

A) a representative running for reelection
B) a senator running for reelection
C) an incumbent representative challenging a senator
D) a challenger
E) an incumbent

Answer: A

25) Compared to members of the House, senators are

A) more likely to have personal contact with their constituents.
B) more likely to face difficult reelection opponents.
C) less likely to face difficult reelection opponents.
D) less likely to use television in their reelection campaigns.
E) none of the above

Answer: B
26) Studies have shown that presidential _______ in an election have little effect on the success of the party’s candidates for the House and Senate.

A) coattails  
B) junkets  
C) vetoes  
D) headwinds  
E) scandals

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 359  
Edition: National

27) Which of the following is NOT one of the three primary activities that members of Congress engage in to increase the probability of their reelection?

A) advertising  
B) credit-claiming  
C) position-taking  
D) oversight  
E) None of the above; oversight is a form of position-taking.

Answer: D  
Page Ref: 360-362  
Edition: National

28) An example of casework by a member of Congress is

A) writing a newsletter to send out to constituents.  
B) helping a constituent gain citizenship.  
C) voting for a bill desired by constituents.  
D) working with a caucus on a public policy that affects his or her constituents.  
E) all of the above

Answer: B  
Page Ref: 361  
Edition: National
29) The pork barrel and casework are examples of
   A) opportunities for credit-claiming by members of Congress.
   B) advertising techniques.
   C) descriptive representation.
   D) position-taking.
   E) congressional continuity.

   Answer: A

30) An especially important asset for incumbents running for reelection is their
   A) service to constituents.
   B) voting records.
   C) support by party leaders in Congress.
   D) presidential support.
   E) invisibility.

   Answer: A

31) The ________ is the list of federal projects, grants, and contracts available to cities, businesses, colleges, and institutions which members of Congress seek to locate in their district to promote the interests of their constituency.
   A) casework
   B) pork barrel
   C) frank
   D) junket
   E) Treasurer’s register

   Answer: B
32) Federal grants and contracts that members of Congress try to obtain for their constituents are collectively referred to as

A) the pork barrel.
B) casework.
C) public service.
D) perquisites.
E) affirmative action.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 361
Edition: National

33) Members of Congress engage in each of the following activities that increase the probability of their re-elections EXCEPT

A) advertising.
B) party voting.
C) credit-claiming.
D) position taking.
E) spend much of their time away from Congress and in their home districts.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 360–362
Edition: National

34) What accounts for the success of congressional candidates?

A) their highly representative policy positions
B) presidential coattails
C) economic forces
D) advertising, credit-claiming, and position-taking.
E) good looks

Answer: D

Page Ref: 360–361
Edition: National
35) Which of the following is NOT true about incumbents?

A) They usually win elections.
B) They usually have more money than their challengers.
C) They usually have higher name recognition and visibility than their opponents.
D) They usually face very tough challengers, especially in races for the House.
E) They usually have their party's endorsement.

Answer: D

36) Which of the following statements about those who challenge incumbent members of the House is TRUE?

A) They are usually not well-known.
B) They are usually experienced legislators.
C) They usually have a well-established organizational backing.
D) They tend to be well-financed.
E) They usually conduct public opinion polls and only run if they have a good chance of winning.

Answer: A

37) In the House races of 2004, the typical incumbent outspent the typical challenger by

A) 2 to 1.
B) 4 to 1.
C) 6 to 1.
D) 15 to 1.
E) 20 to 1.

Answer: D
38) Which of the following statements about money in Congressional elections is FALSE?

A) It costs more money to elect a president than to elect a member of Congress.
B) Most of the money spent in congressional elections comes from individuals.
C) About a quarter of the funds raised in general election contests come from PACs.
D) Political Action Committees often make contributions after the election.
E) PACs often switch sides and give money to the candidate they originally opposed.

Answer: A

39) The role of party identification in voters' choices in congressional campaigns is

A) extremely important, and increasingly so.
B) moderately important, even though party identification is not as strong as it used to be.
C) slightly important in a few districts, not important in most others.
D) not important at all, and never really has been.
E) much less significant than in presidential campaigns.

Answer: B

40) Party loyalty at the voting booth is

A) stronger than it was a generation ago.
B) no longer a good indication of voting behavior.
C) still a good predictor of voting behavior.
D) almost nonexistent today.
E) greater among Democrats than among Republicans.

Answer: C

41) House incumbents typically receive

A) about the same amount of contributions from PACs as challengers.
B) less from PACs than challengers.
C) much more from PACs as challengers.
D) generous support from their party campaign committees.
E) none of the above.

Answer: D
42) On average, most of the money raised by a candidate for Congress comes from

A) political parties.
B) individual contributions.
C) the candidate's own savings.
D) Political Action Committees.
E) loans.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 362
Edition: National

43) A single Political Action Committee

A) has no limit on the amount of money it can spend on a candidate.
B) can at most account for only a small percentage of a winner's total spending.
C) usually puts all its efforts into one candidate.
D) can gain the most influence by giving money to candidates who disagree with them.
E) can make or break a candidate in a particularly close congressional election.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 362
Edition: National

44) When Political Action Committees contribute money to members of Congress they are usually seeking

A) access to policymakers.
B) votes on specific legislation.
C) to install a preferred challenger in office.
D) to create a more pluralistic Congress.
E) to literally buy opposing legislators' votes.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 362
Edition: National
45) Which of the following statements about the role of money in congressional elections is FALSE?

A) Outspending your opponent by a large margin is no guarantee of success.
B) The more challengers spend, the more votes they receive.
C) Challengers usually outspend incumbents.
D) In open seats, the candidate who spends the most usually wins.
E) Incumbents benefit less from campaign spending than challengers.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 362
Edition: National

46) All of the following may increase the likelihood that an incumbent is defeated EXCEPT

A) national political "tidal waves."
B) redistricting.
C) campaign funding.
D) scandals.
E) a strong challenger.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 363–364
Edition: National

47) After each federal census,

A) the office of the Speaker of the House changes hands.
B) the size of Congress increases.
C) the membership of the House is reapportioned
D) the Senate reapportions its membership.
E) all of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 363
Edition: National
48) Occasionally, a major political tidal wave rolls across the country and throws large numbers of incumbents of a given party out of office. When did this last occur?

A) 1994  
B) 1980  
C) 1974  
D) 1964  
E) 1954  

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 364  
Edition: National

49) Which of the following statements about Congress is FALSE?

A) Congress is a collection of generalists trying to make policy on specialized topics.  
B) Members of Congress are surrounded by people who know (or claim to know) more than they do.  
C) Members of Congress are often unsure of what is being voted on when a roll-call vote is called.  
D) Members frequently ask their colleagues how to vote.  
E) none of the above  

Answer: E  
Page Ref: 363-364  
Edition: National

50) Nebraska’s legislature is the only one in the United States that is NOT

A) elected by the voters.  
B) unicameral.  
C) bicameral.  
D) tricameral.  
E) under term limits.  

Answer: C  
Page Ref: 364  
Edition: National
51) Bicameralism means that a legislative body is one
   A) with two houses, providing checks and balances on policymaking.
   B) in which each state has two senators, providing equal representation of the states.
   C) in which incumbents have a better chance of being reelected, providing continuity in policymaking.
   D) that must share power with a president, providing more efficient policymaking.
   E) in which there are only two political parties.

Answer: A

52) To be sent to the president, a bill must be passed by
   A) the House.
   B) the Senate.
   C) either the House or the Senate.
   D) both the House and the Senate.
   E) a majority vote of Congress, regardless of which house the votes come from.

Answer: D

53) The House ________ Committee reviews most bills coming from other committees before they go on to the full House, thus performing a traffic cop function.

   A) Appropriations
   B) Ways and Means
   C) Rules
   D) Authorization
   E) Review

Answer: C
54) Articles of impeachment must be passed by
   A) either the House or the Senate.
   B) both the House and the Senate.
   C) the Senate.
   D) the House.
   E) the Supreme Court.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

55) House seats are up for election every
   A) two years.
   B) four years.
   C) six years.
   D) eight years.
   E) five years.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

56) A Senate seat is up for election every
   A) two years.
   B) four years.
   C) six years.
   D) eight years.
   E) five years.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

57) Which of the following is TRUE about the Senate as compared to the House?
   A) more centralized with stronger leadership
   B) seniority more important in determining power
   C) more influential on the budget
   D) more influential in foreign affairs
   E) smaller in number, less powerful and less prestigious

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National
58) According to the Constitution, revenue bills must originate in the
   A) Internal Revenue Service.
   B) Federal Reserve System.
   C) House.
   D) Senate.
   E) Treasury Department.

   Answer: C
   *Page Ref: 366
   *Edition: National*

59) Nominees to the United States Supreme Court must be confirmed by
   A) the Senate.
   B) the House.
   C) either the House or the Senate.
   D) both the House and the Senate.
   E) the president.

   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 366
   *Edition: National*

60) According to the Constitution, once impeached, federal officials are then tried in the
   A) Supreme Court.
   B) House.
   C) Senate.
   D) Department of Justice.
   E) United States District Court for the District of Columbia.

   Answer: C
   *Page Ref: 366
   *Edition: National*

61) The House Rules Committee
   A) has its members appointed by the House majority leader.
   B) is similar to the Senate Rules Committee.
   C) usually retains independence from the House leadership.
   D) reviews most bills coming from committee before they go to the full House.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
   *Page Ref: 365
   *Edition: National*
62) The Constitution gives the House of Representatives the power to
   A) initiate all revenue bills.
   B) ratify all treaties.
   C) confirm presidential nominations.
   D) try impeached officials.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

63) One of the key differences between the House and Senate is that the House
   A) has weaker leadership.
   B) is more influential on foreign affairs.
   C) has more policy specialization.
   D) is less centralized.
   E) is less institutionalized.

   Answer: C

   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

64) One of the key differences between the House and Senate is that the Senate
   A) is more centralized.
   B) is less dependent on seniority for determining power.
   C) has a lower turnover rate.
   D) has stronger leadership.
   E) has more anarchy.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

65) The real differences between the House and the Senate lie in their
   A) ideology.
   B) members’ characteristics.
   C) organization and centralization of power.
   D) role in policy.
   E) power relative to each other.

   Answer: C

   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National
66) The filibuster
   A) is unique to the Senate.
   B) is unique to the House.
   C) is allowed in both the House and the Senate.
   D) has been ruled unconstitutional.
   E) has been prohibited in both the House and Senate.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 366
Edition: National

67) ______ members present and voting can halt a filibuster by voting for cloture.
   A) Sixty
   B) Seventy
   C) Eighty
   D) Fifty-one
   E) Seventy-five

Answer: A

Page Ref: 366-367
Edition: National

68) The filibuster is a technique used in the
   A) House to delay legislation until a full House can convene.
   B) Senate to prolong debate in order to kill a bill.
   C) Senate to bypass committees in voting on controversial issues.
   D) House to allow more time to debate controversial policies.
   E) House and Senate to prevent a vote on a bill.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 366
Edition: National

69) To cut off debate and end a filibuster is known as
   A) franking.
   B) coattails.
   C) cloture.
   D) overriding.
   E) hushing.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 366-367
Edition: National
70) To end a filibuster requires _______ members present and voting to cut off debate.
   A) 50
   B) 60
   C) 75
   D) 99
   E) 218
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

71) Which of the following congressional offices is mandated by the Constitution?
   A) Speaker of the House
   B) House and Senate Majority Leader
   C) President of the House
   D) President of the United States
   E) all of the above
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 367
   Edition: National

72) Which of the following does the Speaker NOT play a role in?
   A) making committee assignments
   B) presiding over the House when it is in session
   C) recommending which members should be expelled from the House for failure to support
      the party’s positions on bills
   D) assigning most bills to committees
   E) appointing the party’s legislative leaders
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 367
   Edition: National
73) The _______ is next in line after the vice president to succeed a president who resigns, dies in office, or is impeached.
   A) Senate majority leader
   B) Senate minority leader
   C) House majority leader
   D) Speaker of the House
   E) Chair of the Joint Chiefs of Staff

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 367
   Edition: National

74) The minority whip
   A) assists the majority leader in party-line votes.
   B) becomes the Speaker automatically if the Speaker resigns.
   C) represents African Americans, Hispanic Americans, and Asian Americans in each chamber of Congress.
   D) keeps a close head count on key votes, and attempts to keep party members in line.
   E) is used to punish members who do not vote with the rest of their party.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 368
   Edition: National

75) Which of the following statements about the majority leader of the House of Representatives is FALSE?
   A) The majority leader exercises substantial control over which bills get assigned to which committees.
   B) The majority leader is the main steppingstone to the job of Speaker of the House.
   C) The majority leader is responsible for scheduling bills in the House.
   D) The majority leader is responsible for rounding up votes on behalf of the party’s position on legislation.
   E) He or she is the principal ally of the Speaker.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 368
   Edition: National
76) The _______ has the job of presiding over the Senate, breaking ties when necessary.

   A) majority leader
   B) majority whip
   C) minority leader
   D) vice president
   E) Speaker

Answer: D
Page Ref: 368
Edition: National

77) The most powerful person in the Senate is the

   A) majority leader.
   B) vice president of the United States, who serves as president of the Senate.
   C) chair of the Rules Committee.
   D) Speaker.
   E) president of the United States.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 368
Edition: National

78) Most important congressional activity is done

   A) on legislators' visits to their home districts.
   B) in meetings of standing committees and their subcommittees.
   C) on the House floor.
   D) on the Senate floor.
   E) in the White House.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 369
Edition: National

79) Most of the business of Congress takes place

   A) in congressional districts.
   B) on the floor of the House and Senate.
   C) in committees and subcommittees.
   D) during evening social functions.
   E) in the Rules committees.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 369
Edition: National
80) A _______ committee is one appointed for a limited, specific purpose, such as that set up to investigate the Watergate scandal.
   A) standing  
   B) select  
   C) conference  
   D) joint  
   E) special  
   Answer: B  
   Page Ref: 369  
   Edition: National

81) Appropriations, Judiciary, and Armed Forces are all examples of _______ committees.
   A) standing  
   B) select  
   C) conference  
   D) joint  
   E) rule  
   Answer: A  
   Page Ref: 369  
   Edition: National

82) When the House and the Senate pass different versions of the same bill
   A) the House bill is changed to conform with the Senate bill.  
   B) the Senate bill is changed to conform with the House bill.  
   C) a conference committee is appointed to resolve differences.  
   D) a joint committee is appointed to resolve differences.  
   E) the president may select which bill to enact into law.  
   Answer: C  
   Page Ref: 369  
   Edition: National
83) Legislative _______ is the process of monitoring the bureaucracy and its administration of policy.

   A) franking
   B) stonewalling
   C) overview
   D) oversight
   E) supremacy

Answer: D
Page Ref: 371
Edition: National

84) When members of Congress hold a hearing to question a cabinet member on how a law is being carried out, they are engaging in

   A) agenda-setting.
   B) filibustering.
   C) legislative oversight.
   D) casework.
   E) congressional administration.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 371
Edition: National

85) Which of the following statements about congressional committees is FALSE?

   A) Unless a committee gives a bill a favorable report it almost never can be considered by the full House or Senate.
   B) The most important output of the committee is the marked up bill.
   C) Members of the committee usually serve as floor managers of the bill.
   D) Members of the committee act as cue-givers to whom other members turn for advice.
   E) none of the above

Answer: E
Page Ref: 369-372
Edition: National
86) The seniority system gave a decisive edge to House members from ________ districts.

A) Republican  
B) suburban  
C) older  
D) safe  
E) competitive  

Answer: D

Page Ref: 373
Edition: National

87) House and Senate committees

A) all have an equal number of Republicans and Democrats.  
B) all have a majority of members from the majority party in that chamber.  
C) must have their membership approved by the president.  
D) are non-partisan, and thus some committees are nearly all Democrats and others nearly all Republicans.  
E) are populated by the hired staff members of Congress, freeing the elected members for more important work.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 373
Edition: National

88) Members of Congress seek committees that will help them achieve each of the following goals EXCEPT

A) reelection.  
B) influence in Congress.  
C) a salary increase.  
D) opportunity to make policy in areas they think are important.  
E) opportunity to make policy in areas important to their constituents.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 373
Edition: National
89) Traditionally, Congressional committee chairpersons have been chosen through
   A) the seniority system.
   B) party rank.
   C) popularity with majority leaders.
   D) a majority vote by committee members.
   E) the merit system.

   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 373
   *Edition: National

90) Members of Congress who informally band together in groups to promote and protect mutual interests (e.g., mushroom growers) form what are called
   A) subcommittees.
   B) committees.
   C) caucuses.
   D) junkets.
   E) interest groups.

   Answer: C
   *Page Ref: 374
   *Edition: National

91) Caucuses in Congress
   A) press committees to hold hearings.
   B) push their preferred legislation.
   C) mobilize votes for favored legislation.
   D) all of the above
   E) none of the above

   Answer: D
   *Page Ref: 374
   *Edition: National

92) Congressional reforms of the 1970s
   A) professionalized the operation of Congress and made it much more efficient.
   B) decentralized power and democratized Congress.
   C) were aimed at rooting out scandal and corruption.
   D) ended the two–party monopoly of Congress and brought new parties into Congress.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: B
   *Page Ref: 373
   *Edition: National
93) Republican congressional reforms in the 1990s included all of the following EXCEPT

A) committee chairs were allowed to choose the chairs of subcommittees on their committees.

B) both committee and subcommittee chairs were limited to three consecutive two-year terms as chair.

C) some subcommittees were eliminated.

D) committee chairs were given complete control over the timing of bills under consideration.

E) none of the above

Answer: D

94) Which of the following is responsible for responding to congressional requests for information and providing non-partisan studies?

A) Congressional Research Service

B) Congressional Budget Office

C) General Accounting Office

D) Ways and Means Committee

E) Office of the Majority Leader

Answer: A

95) Committee staff is responsible for all of the following EXCEPT

A) providing services to constituents.

B) organizing hearings.

C) writing legislation.

D) monitoring the executive branch.

E) coordinating with congressional offices.

Answer: A
96) Which of the following offices is responsible for making economic projections about the performance of the economy, the costs of proposed policies, and the economic effects of taxing and spending alternatives?
   A) Congressional Research Service
   B) Congressional Budget Office
   C) General Accounting Office
   D) Ways and Means Committee
   E) Federal Reserve
   Answer: B

97) Only _______ can formally submit a bill for congressional consideration.
   A) members of the House
   B) senators
   C) members of the House or senators
   D) the president
   E) the Speaker of the House
   Answer: C

98) Most bills formally submitted for consideration in Congress
   A) are passed and signed into law.
   B) are passed, but vetoed by the president.
   C) are defeated in close final votes on the floors of one chamber.
   D) are quietly killed off early in the process.
   E) pass one house, but are killed in the other house.
   Answer: D
99) Basically, Congress is a(n) ________ decision-making body.
   A) reactive and cumbersome
   B) active and smooth
   C) unified and consistent
   D) radical and hasty
   E) retroactive

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 378
   Edition: National

100) The president's most common method of attempting to influence Congress is to
   A) call up wavering members.
   B) offer to campaign for members.
   C) hold regular meetings with the party's leaders in Congress.
   D) invite members of Congress to the White House.
   E) use the veto power.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 379
   Edition: National

101) Presidential leadership of Congress in promoting the chief executive's programs is
   A) dominant, with a heavy hand usually convincing wavering members.
   B) a smooth, generally successful enterprise.
   C) at the margins, as a facilitator.
   D) nonexistent.
   E) proactive, substantive, and adversarial.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 379
   Edition: National

102) The parties in Congress are most cohesive
   A) on foreign policy issues.
   B) when electing their official leaders.
   C) on economic policy.
   D) military matters.
   E) during floor votes.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 380
   Edition: National
103) The English politician and philosopher Edmund Burke favored the concept of legislators as ________, using their best judgment to make policy in the interests of the people.

   A) constituent robots
   B) trustees
   C) instructed delegates
   D) politicos
   E) judges

Answer: B

Page Ref: 380
Edition: National

104) Some prefer the concept of legislators as ________, mirroring the preferences of their constituents.

   A) trustees
   B) politicos
   C) instructed delegates
   D) uninstructed delegates
   E) pollsters

Answer: C

Page Ref: 380
Edition: National

105) The best way constituents can influence congressional voting on legislation is to

   A) sign petitions.
   B) write letters or send telegrams.
   C) fax or call in their opinions.
   D) elect a representative or senator who agrees with their views.
   E) demonstrate on the steps of the capitol.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 380
Edition: National
106) On a typical issue, the primary determinant of a congressional member’s vote is
A) constituent preferences as indicated by extensive polling.
B) the position of the president.
C) personal ideology.
D) the toss of a coin.
E) the position of their party leaders.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 382
Edition: National

107) Legislators who use their best judgment to make policy in the interests of the people are called
A) trustees.
B) instructed delegates.
C) politicos.
D) attentive leaders.
E) opinion leaders.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 380
Edition: National

108) Most members of Congress would be considered
A) trustees.
B) instructed delegates.
C) politicos.
D) ambassadors.
E) attentive leaders.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 380
Edition: National

109) Constituencies influence policy mostly by
A) the initial choice of the representative.
B) influencing congressional leaders.
C) empowering the president in his negotiations with Congress.
D) buying votes through election contributions.
E) lobbying Senators.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 380
Edition: National
110) Which of the following statements about constituency influence is FALSE?

A) It is difficult even for well-intentioned legislators to know what people want.
B) Legislators whose votes on routine issues are out of step with their constituents are rarely reelected.
C) On some controversial issues, legislators ignore constituent opinion at great peril.
D) On obscure issues legislators can safely ignore constituency opinion.
E) Letters received by legislators are more likely to convey extremist rather than moderate opinions.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 380; 382
Edition: National

111) In the relationship between lobbyists and members of Congress,

A) members of Congress can ignore and embarrass lobbyists.
B) lobbyists hold the greater power.
C) members of Congress depend on lobbyists for reelection.
D) lobbyists pay members of Congress to pass or defeat bills.
E) lobbyists spend most of their efforts on converting opponents to their cause.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 382-383
Edition: National

112) If Congress has increased the scope of government it is because

A) members typically suffer from Potomac fever.
B) members are by-spending liberals.
C) that is what constituencies want.
D) that is what Congressional staffers want.
E) it is responding to the policy expertise provided by the bureaucracy.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 384-385
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) The typical member of the House of Representatives serves on six committees and subcommittees, the typical senator is a member of ten committees.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 354
Edition: National
2) It is difficult for Congress to get anything done.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 354
Edition: National

3) To serve in the United States Senate one must be at least thirty years old.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 355
Edition: National

4) Most members of Congress are Protestants.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 356
Edition: National

5) House incumbents tend to be more vulnerable in election contests than Senate incumbents.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 358
Edition: National

6) More than 90 percent of the incumbents in the House of Representatives seeking reelection win.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 358
Edition: National

7) Only about 20 percent of Americans can accurately guess how their representative voted on an issue in Congress.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 359
Edition: National

8) Members of Congress are not substantially affected in their reelection bids by the ups and downs of the economy.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 360
Edition: National

9) Most congressional advertising takes place between elections and takes the form of contact with constituents.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 360
Edition: National
10) In congressional elections, challengers receive more PAC money than incumbents.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 362
   Edition: National

11) PACs often make contributions AFTER elections

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 362
   Edition: National

12) Most PACs give less than the $5,000 limit to candidates.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 362
   Edition: National

13) In open races, candidates who spend the most usually win.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 362
   Edition: National

14) The Congress is a unicameral legislature.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 365
   Edition: National

15) The House of Representatives is more institutionalized, centralized, and hierarchical than the Senate.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 365
   Edition: National

16) Filibusters occur in the Senate, but not the House.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National

17) Sixty senators present and voting can halt a filibuster by voting for cloture on debate.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 366
   Edition: National
18) If a bill passes both the House and the Senate, but in different forms, it goes to a joint committee.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 369
Edition: National

19) Select committees have membership drawn from both houses of Congress.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 369
Edition: National

20) The House still strictly follows the seniority system, wherein the majority party member of the committee who has served the longest automatically serves as chair.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 373
Edition: National

21) Congress is less likely to exercise its oversight powers when it is controlled by the president's party.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 371
Edition: National

22) The explosion of caucuses in Congress has made the representation of interest groups in Congress a more direct process.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 375
Edition: National

23) As part of the congressional reforms of the 1970s, Congress substantially decreased its oversight activities.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 372
Edition: National

24) In voting on bills in Congress, differences between the parties are sharpest on questions of social welfare and economic policy.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 380
Edition: National

25) The strongest influence on how a member of the House of Representatives will vote is his or her party leadership.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 381;382
Edition: National
26) Because most issues are controversial to their constituents back home, legislators seldom cast votes based on their own ideology as the prime determinant.

Answer: FALSE

Page Ref: 382
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) What are franking privileges, and why are they sometimes controversial?

Answer: the free use of the mail system to communicate with constituents

Page Ref: 354
Edition: National

2) A senator must be at least _______ years of age, a member of the House at least _______.

Answer: 30: 25

Page Ref: 355
Edition: National

3) What is the dominant prior occupation for members of Congress?

Answer: law

Page Ref: 356
Edition: National

4) The single most important fact about congressional elections is that _______.

Answer: incumbents usually win

Page Ref: 358
Edition: National

5) Members of Congress helping constituents as individuals by cutting through some bureaucratic red tape is known as _______.

Answer: casework

Page Ref: 361
Edition: National

6) Compare and contrast casework and pork barrel.

Answer: Casework includes activities of members of Congress that help constituents as individuals, such as cutting through bureaucratic red tape. Pork barrel includes the list of federal projects, grants and contracts available to cities, businesses, colleges and institutions available in a congressional district.

Page Ref: 361
Edition: National
7) Why, according to Fiorina, is credit-claiming more effective than position-taking for incumbents?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 360  
Edition: National

8) What is the role of party identification in congressional elections?

Answer: Although party loyalty at the voting booth is not as strong as it was a generation ago, it is still a good predictor of voting behavior, with nearly 90 percent of voters who identify with a party voting for the House candidate of their party.

Page Ref: 363  
Edition: National

9) To increase change in the membership of Congress, several states enacted ________ in the 1980s.

Answer: term limitations

Page Ref: 365  
Edition: National

10) What are the arguments for and against congressional term limitations?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 365  
Edition: National

11) What are the functions of the House Rules Committee?

Answer: gives each bill a rule that determines when the bill gets on the calendar, allows time for debate and sometimes specifies the kind of amendments that may be offered

Page Ref: 365  
Edition: National

12) A(n) ________ consists of tying up the legislative agenda with continuous speeches on the floor so a bill you oppose cannot come to a vote.

Answer: filibuster

Page Ref: 366  
Edition: National

13) What is a filibuster, and how is it used?

Answer: a strategy unique to the Senate whereby opponents of a piece of legislation try to talk it to death, based on the tradition of unlimited debate

Page Ref: 366  
Edition: National
14) Compare and contrast the roles of majority leader, minority leader, and party whips.

   Answer: The majority leader is the principal partisan ally of the Speaker of the House or the party’s manager in the Senate. The minority leader is the principal leader of the minority party in the House of Representatives or in the Senate. Whips are party leaders who work with the majority leader or minority leader to count votes beforehand and lean on waverers whose votes are crucial to a bill favored by the party.

   Page Ref: 368
   Edition: National

15) ______ are formed when the Senate and the House pass a particular bill in different forms.

   Answer: Conference committees

   Page Ref: 369
   Edition: National

16) ______ gives Congress the power to pressure executive branch agencies and secure compliance with congressional wishes.

   Answer: Oversight

   Page Ref: 371
   Edition: National

17) How does Congress perform its oversight function?

   Answer: Answers will vary.

   Page Ref: 371
   Edition: National

18) What is the seniority system, and how has it changed over the years?

   Answer: Answers will vary.

   Page Ref: 373–374
   Edition: National

19) An informal grouping of members of Congress who band together sharing some interest or characteristic is called a(n) ______, and there are over 100 such groups.

   Answer: caucus

   Page Ref: 374
   Edition: National

20) Describe the relative size of personal staff, as opposed to committee staff and staff agencies. What does personal staff generally devote their time to?

   Answer: Answers will vary.

   Page Ref: 375–376; 378
   Edition: National
21) The ______ responds to congressional requests for information, and provides members with nonpartisan research.

Answer: Congressional Research Service
Page Ref: 376
Edition: National

22) The ______ reviews the activities of the executive branch to see if it is following the congressional intent of laws, and investigates the efficiency and effectiveness of policy implementation.

Answer: General Accountability Office
Page Ref: 375
Edition: National

23) What is the difference between the role of legislators as trustees, instructed delegates, and politicos?

Answer: Trustees use their best judgment to make policy in the interests of the people, while instructed delegates mirror the preferences of their constituents and politicos adopt both trustee and instructed delegate roles as they strive to be both representatives and policymakers.
Page Ref: 380
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Describe the general characteristics of the members of Congress and their average daily activities. What are the attractions and benefits of being a member of Congress?

Page Ref: 354-356
Edition: National

2) Describe how Congress is demographically atypical of the United States population. Does this present a problem for legitimate democratic government? Why, or why not?

Page Ref: 355-357
Edition: National

3) Comment on the representativeness of Congress. Are the members of Congress truly representative of the American people and the overall needs of the nation? What effect do PACs and interest groups have on the representativeness of Congress?

Page Ref: 355-357; 362
Edition: National

4) Describe the advantages of incumbents in congressional elections. What reforms have been suggested to limit the effects of incumbency? Would you support such reform?

Page Ref: 358-362; 365
Edition: National
5) Explain and evaluate the role of money in congressional elections. Give examples to illustrate your answer.
   Page Ref: 362
   Edition: National

6) Describe the structure of power and decision making in the Congress and evaluate the impact of that structure on policymaking.
   Page Ref: 367–374
   Edition: National

7) Describe the powers of the Speaker of the House, the majority and minority leaders, and the whips. What limits to their leadership powers exist in their respective parties?
   Page Ref: 368
   Edition: National

8) List and briefly describe the different types of committees in Congress. What role do the committees play in the Congressional process?
   Page Ref: 369–374
   Edition: National

9) Explain how the system of committees and subcommittees works in Congress. Give examples to illustrate your answer.
   Page Ref: 368–372
   Edition: National

10) What are congressional caucuses? What role do they play, and how much influence do they have? Give examples to illustrate your answer.
    Page Ref: 374
    Edition: National

11) Compare and contrast the different types of staff that work to support Congress. How large are these staffs? What services do they provide?
    Page Ref: 375–376; 378
    Edition: National

12) Explain the legislative process and the relative importance of key individuals and groups in that process. What happens to most bills? Describe the procedure by which a bill becomes law.
    Page Ref: 378–382
    Edition: National

13) How can the President influence congressional action? Do you think the President is too powerful or not powerful enough in dealing with Congress? Explain.
    Page Ref: 379
    Edition: National
14) Identify the sources of influence on members of Congress and evaluate their impact on policymaking.

Page Ref: 379-383
Edition: National

15) How important is party membership to a senator or member of the House in casting a vote? Are votes on some issues more or less likely to follow party lines? What other factors influence how an individual legislator casts a vote?

Page Ref: 380-383
Edition: National

16) Explain how members of Congress reconcile the conflicting jobs of representing constituents and making effective public policy. In your answer, be sure to discuss the committee system, congressional elections, and the role of political parties and interest groups in Congress.

Page Ref: 369-383
Edition: National

17) Describe the conflicting concepts of members of Congress serving as trustees versus as instructed delegates. Which role does a legislator most frequently play? Which concept most appeals to you? Explain.

Page Ref: 380
Edition: National

18) Evaluate Congress as a democratic institution. What reforms democratized Congress? Evaluate whether there is a trade off between representativeness and effectiveness.

Page Ref: 384-385
Edition: National

19) The authors note that "some argue that Congress is too responsive to constituents, and, especially, to organized interests...(while others) argue that Congress is too insulated from ordinary citizens. Evaluate the evidence for each view from throughout the chapter.

Page Ref: 352-389
Edition: National

20) Discuss aspects of congressional membership, elections, organization and decision making that might lead the public to be critical of Congress as an institution. To what extent is such criticism well-founded?

Page Ref: 352-389
Edition: National
Chapter 13  The Presidency

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) The principal reason that presidents have trouble getting things done is that
   A) most are weak and indecisive and do not try to do much.
   B) they are often upstaged or undermined by their own vice presidents.
   C) other policymakers with whom they deal have their own agendas, interests, and sources of power.
   D) they are frequently overruled by the Supreme Court.
   E) the presidency is mostly a ceremonial job and the president is not expected to do much.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 392
Edition: National

2) As Richard Neustadt has argued, presidential power is probably best understood as the power to
   A) persuade.
   B) command.
   C) control.
   D) harass.
   E) veto.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 392
Edition: National

3) Richard Neustadt has argued that presidential power is the power to
   A) instruct.
   B) command.
   C) educate.
   D) control.
   E) persuade.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 392
Edition: National
4) Americans want a strong president,
   A) but do not like a concentration of power.
   B) and do not care whether the strength is used for good or for ill.
   C) and would like to abolish all checks on presidential power.
   D) but do not expect much from any president.
   E) but want an even stronger Congress.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 392
Edition: National

5) Americans tend to
   A) have low expectations for the president.
   B) prefer a concentration of power in the presidency.
   C) have a high degree of trust in strong leadership and political authority.
   D) look back longingly on the great, powerful presidents.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 392
Edition: National

6) According to the Constitution, a president must be at least _______ years of age.
   A) 35
   B) 30
   C) 40
   D) 25
   E) 21

Answer: A

Page Ref: 392
Edition: National

7) All presidents but one have been
   A) Protestant.
   B) Catholic.
   C) Hare Krishna.
   D) atheist.
   E) Evangelical Christian.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 392
Edition: National
8) According to the original Constitution, the president must be
   A) at least 35 years old.
   B) a resident of the United States for at least five years.
   C) a citizen of the United States for at least ten years.
   D) a white man.
   E) all of the above except D
   Answer: A

9) How many presidents were political scientists?
   A) about half of them
   B) one
   C) all but one of them
   D) two
   E) all of them
   Answer: B

10) Which president was a political scientist?
    A) Ronald Reagan
    B) James Madison
    C) Richard Nixon
    D) Bill Clinton
    E) Woodrow Wilson
    Answer: E

11) ________ was widely regarded to be the worst and most ineffective president.
    A) Warren Harding
    B) Richard Nixon
    C) Ronald Reagan
    D) Bill Clinton
    E) Andrew Johnson
    Answer: A
12) Since World War II, United States presidents have
   A) except for Bill Clinton, first served as vice president.
   B) had very similar career backgrounds.
   C) all previously served as governors.
   D) come from a diversity of career experiences.
   E) all served as United States senators.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 392–393
   Edition: National

13) The Twenty-second Amendment, passed in 1951,
   A) provided for the presidential and vice presidential candidates to run as a team.
   B) gave impeachment powers to Congress.
   C) limited presidents to two terms of office.
   D) provided for the direct election of the president by the people.
   E) granted 18-year-olds the right to vote.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 393
   Edition: National

14) The two-term limit was placed on the presidency by
   A) an act of Congress passed after Franklin D. Roosevelt’s death.
   B) the Twenty-second Amendment.
   C) the Presidential Powers Act of 1951.
   D) the Twenty-fifth Amendment.
   E) Article II of the original Constitution.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 393
   Edition: National

15) ______ took over as president upon the death of Franklin Roosevelt in 1945, and eventually ordered the dropping of the atomic bombs on Japanese cities.
   A) Theodore Roosevelt
   B) Dwight Eisenhower
   C) Harry Truman
   D) Lyndon Johnson
   E) John F. Kennedy

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 394
   Edition: National
16) As president, _______ launched the "Great Society" at home while escalating the Vietnam War abroad.

A) Lyndon Johnson  
B) Harry Truman  
C) Richard Nixon  
D) Gerald Ford  
E) Dwight Eisenhower

Answer: A

Page Ref: 394
Edition: National

17) Appointed to the vice presidency in 1973 due to a vacancy, he was the only one to become president having run for neither the presidency or vice presidency in the preceding election.

A) Lyndon Johnson  
B) Nelson Rockefeller  
C) Ronald Reagan  
D) Gerald Ford  
E) Jimmy Carter

Answer: D

Page Ref: 394
Edition: National

18) Which of the following presidents was a Republican?

A) Harry Truman  
B) John Kennedy  
C) Lyndon Johnson  
D) Jimmy Carter  
E) Richard Nixon

Answer: E

Page Ref: 394
Edition: National
19) The only president to resign his office was
   A) Warren Harding.
   B) Jimmy Carter.
   C) Lyndon Johnson.
   D) Spiro Agnew.
   E) Richard Nixon.

Answer: E

20) Which of the following statements is FALSE?
   A) For over 10 percent of American history, the presidency has been occupied by an individual not elected to the office.
   B) In the twentieth century, almost one-third of our presidents were "accidental Presidents."
   C) About one in five presidents got the job because they were vice president when the incumbent president died or resigned.
   D) Most presidents have served two or more full terms.
   E) Most presidential elections are decided by Congress.

Answer: D

21) Prior to his election as president, ________ had been a well-known actor and served for two terms as governor of California.

   A) George Bush
   B) Ronald Reagan
   C) Jimmy Carter
   D) Richard Nixon
   E) Earl Warren

Answer: B
22) Impeachment is roughly the political equivalent of a(n)
   A) exoneration.
   B) admission of guilt.
   C) indictment in criminal law.
   D) guilty verdict.
   E) firing.
   Answer: C
   *Page Ref. 395
   *Edition: National*

23) In order to impeach a president, it takes
   A) a unanimous vote of the Supreme Court.
   B) a two-thirds vote in the Senate.
   C) a majority vote in the House of Representatives.
   D) a two-thirds vote in the House of Representatives.
   E) a majority vote in the Senate.
   Answer: C
   *Page Ref. 395
   *Edition: National*

24) Impeachment of a president means that the president is
   A) convicted of a crime.
   B) indicted by the House.
   C) removed from office.
   D) tried by the Senate.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: B
   *Page Ref. 395
   *Edition: National*

25) In order to convict and remove an impeached president, it takes
   A) a two-thirds vote in the Senate.
   B) a majority vote in the Senate.
   C) a majority vote in the House of Representatives.
   D) a two-thirds vote in the House of Representatives.
   E) both B and D
   Answer: A
   *Page Ref. 395
   *Edition: National*
26) Once the House votes for impeachment, the president
   A) must leave office.
   B) is fined or sentenced to prison.
   C) is tried by the Supreme Court.
   D) is tried by the Senate.
   E) must be indicted by a Grand Jury before being removed from office.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 395
   Edition: National

27) The scandal surrounding Richard Nixon’s administration that led to impeachment hearings was known as
   A) Iran-Contra.
   B) the Camp David Affair.
   C) Watergate.
   D) Checkers.
   E) Teapot Dome.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 395
   Edition: National

28) The order of succession to the presidency, should the president be unable to fulfill his or her duties is
   A) Vice President, President Pro Tem of the Senate, Speaker of the House, cabinet members in order that their department was created.
   B) Vice President, Speaker of the House, President Pro Tem of the Senate, Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, Cabinet members in order that their department was created.
   C) Vice President, Speaker of the House, President Pro Tem of the Senate, Cabinet members in the order that their department was created.
   D) Vice President, Chief Justice of Supreme Court, President Pro tem of the Senate, Speaker of the House.
   E) Vice President, Speaker of the House, President Pro Tem, Cabinet members in the order that their department was created.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 395; 397
   Edition: National
29) The Twenty-fifth Amendment, ratified in 1967,
   A) created a means for selecting a new vice president when the office became vacant.
   B) granted 18-year-olds the right to vote.
   C) limited the president to two terms in office.
   D) specifically forced Richard Nixon from office.
   E) provided for the direct election of the president by the people.
   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 397
   Edition: National

30) Under the terms of the Twenty-fifth Amendment, while the vice president is serving as acting president,
   A) a new election must be held within six months.
   B) the electoral college determines when the incapacitated president can reclaim the presidency.
   C) the recuperated president can not reclaim his former job.
   D) the recuperated president can reclaim the Oval Office through a set procedure.
   E) the Senate and the House must vote in a secret ballot on whether or not to reinstate the recuperated president.
   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 397
   Edition: National

31) According to the Twenty-fifth Amendment, in the event of a vacancy in the vice presidency,
   A) the electoral college elects a new vice president.
   B) the Speaker of the House is automatically the new vice president.
   C) the office remains vacant until a subsequent national election takes place.
   D) the Congress picks a new vice president from a list of five names submitted by the president.
   E) the president nominates a replacement, who must be confirmed by both houses of Congress.
   Answer: E

   Page Ref: 397
   Edition: National
32) The Constitution framers
   A) were unanimous in wanting a single president to lead the country.
   B) were united in wanting a strong chief executive.
   C) were united in wanting a chief executive similar to the prime minister of Great Britain.
   D) generally wanted a president with limited authority and responsibilities.
   E) hoped to create a monarchy in the United States.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 397
   Edition: National

33) The president's power can best be understood as
   A) very limited and largely ceremonial.
   B) always the dominant figure in the American political system.
   C) shared with other branches of government as part of the Madisonian system of checks and balances.
   D) unlimited and absolute.
   E) originally intended to be unlimited and absolute, but gradually weakened over time.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 398
   Edition: National

34) The Constitution
   A) provides a list of specific powers and implied powers reserved for the president.
   B) places the power of the presidency above the other branches of government.
   C) requires Congress to delegate specific areas of presidential power.
   D) says remarkably little about presidential power.
   E) B, C, and D are all correct.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 397
   Edition: National
35) In order to preserve the balance of power in government without jeopardizing the independence of the presidency, the framers

A) refused to give the president powers in the area of national security.
B) created a weak executive.
C) checked those powers that they believed to be most dangerous.
D) limited the president to administrative powers.
E) limited presidents to two terms of office so they could not become "elected monarchs."

Answer: C

Page Ref: 398
Edition: National

36) Which of the following is NOT a constitutional power of the president?

A) serve as Commander in Chief of the armed forces
B) sign or veto legislation passed by Congress
C) appoint federal judges with the advice and consent of a majority of the Senate
D) enact legislation by issuing decrees
E) All of these are the president’s constitutional powers.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 398
Edition: National

37) The president has the constitutional authority to make treaties with other nations, subject to the agreement of

A) a majority of both the House and the Senate.
B) a majority of the Senate.
C) two-thirds of the Senate.
D) two-thirds of the House.
E) a majority of the House.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 398
Edition: National
38) The founding fathers envisioned a presidency that would
   A) be better organized than today’s presidency.
   B) have fewer responsibilities than today’s presidency.
   C) have greater control over the Congress than today’s presidency.
   D) have greater powers than today’s presidency.
   E) clearly be the dominant branch of government.

   Answer: B

39) Theodore Roosevelt and Woodrow Wilson
   A) were the first presidents to exercise power beyond the specific powers granted to the president in the Constitution.
   B) developed the role of the president as manager of the economy.
   C) set a precedent for presidents to serve as world leaders.
   D) were the only two presidents to ever have their actions declared unconstitutional by the Supreme Court.
   E) were among the least effective presidents.

   Answer: C

40) A primary resource available to presidents for controlling the bureaucracy is
   A) control of the federal budget.
   B) their unlimited power to offer patronage positions in the bureaucracy.
   C) the power to appoint top-level administrators.
   D) their ability to dismiss or fire most members of the bureaucracy.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: C
41) In recent years,
   A) presidents have been less concerned about their appointment power.
   B) presidents have paid closer attention to appointing officials who will be responsive to the president’s policies.
   C) presidents have paid less attention to agency rules and regulations.
   D) there has been a trend toward decentralized decision making in the White House.
   E) there has been a trend toward centralized decision making in the White House.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 400
   Edition: National

42) A constitutional duty of the vice president is to
   A) preside over the Senate and cast the deciding vote in the event of a tie.
   B) attend the funerals of foreign leaders on behalf of the president.
   C) preside over the House and cast the deciding vote in the event of a tie.
   D) raise funds for party candidates.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 401
   Edition: National

43) Traditionally, a vice president
   A) has no formal constitutional powers.
   B) later becomes president.
   C) is an important advisor to the president.
   D) has little responsibility.
   E) both C and D

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 401
   Edition: National
44) The president's cabinet
   A) was provided for and elaborated upon by the Constitution.
   B) has changed very little since 1960.
   C) tends to serve as a collective board of directors.
   D) consists of executive branch leaders who advise the president on policy and administer government departments.
   E) all of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 401–402
Edition: National

45) The presidential cabinet
   A) is the electronically locked vault where the president keeps his top secret papers.
   B) is given tremendous power under the Constitution.
   C) includes, by law, a minimum of two sitting members of Congress at all times.
   D) consists of the head of each executive department, plus any additional government officials the president designates.
   E) can veto actions by the president.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 401–402
Edition: National

46) Which of the following is a member of the cabinet?
   A) director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation
   B) Speaker of the House
   C) secretary of the navy
   D) White House Chief of Staff
   E) none of the above

Answer: E

Page Ref: 402
Edition: National
47) Cabinet-level executive departments are created by
   A) Congress.
   B) the Constitution.
   C) the president.
   D) rarely held national referendums.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 402
Edition: National

48) The head of each cabinet-level executive department is appointed by the president and
   A) must be confirmed by a majority of the House.
   B) is not subject to House or Senate approval.
   C) must be confirmed by a majority of the Senate.
   D) must be confirmed by a majority of both the House and the Senate.
   E) must be confirmed by two-thirds of the Senate.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 398; 402
Edition: National

49) The cabinet department responsible for making foreign policy and handling treaty negotiations is
   A) interior.
   B) justice.
   C) foreign affairs.
   D) defense.
   E) state.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 403
Edition: National

50) The two oldest cabinet departments are
   A) state and defense.
   B) interior and justice.
   C) treasury and justice.
   D) state and treasury.
   E) education and state.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 403
Edition: National
51) The newest cabinet department is
   A) commerce.
   B) agriculture.
   C) interior.
   D) homeland security.
   E) transportation.
   Answer: D
   
52) The National Security Council
   A) links the president’s key foreign and military policy advisors.
   B) is composed of the heads of the three branches of the armed services and makes recommendations to the president on combat strategy.
   C) was established by President Roosevelt to manage foreign and domestic intelligence operations.
   D) was created by legislation to keep the president informed on foreign affairs.
   E) helps the president make policy on such matters as inflation and unemployment.
   Answer: A
   
53) The Office of Management and Budget is comprised of
   A) political appointees and career officials.
   B) political appointees, career officials, and congressional staffers.
   C) all political appointees.
   D) all career officials.
   E) economists.
   Answer: A
54) The Office of Management and Budget, the National Security Council, and the Council of Economic Advisors are
   A) members of the White House staff.
   B) advisory bodies of the Department of State.
   C) policymaking bodies of the Executive Office of the President.
   D) part of the president's cabinet.
   E) the key liaison agencies between the president and Congress.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 403
Edition: National

55) The budgetary implications of the president's budget are provided to the president by
   A) Executive Budget Office.
   B) Department of the Treasury.
   C) Council of Economic Advisors.
   D) Internal Revenue Service.
   E) Office of Management and Budget.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 403
Edition: National

56) The agency that reviews legislative proposals for the president is the
   A) Council of Economic Advisors.
   B) National Security Council.
   C) Office of Management and Budget.
   D) Legislative Executive Agency.
   E) Executive Legislative Agency.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 404
Edition: National
57) The part of the executive branch of government that the president sees daily and relies heavily on for information, policy options, and analysis is the
   A) vice president.
   B) president’s cabinet.
   C) White House staff.
   D) Executive Office of the President.
   E) Council of Economic Advisors.
   Answer: C

58) The system of White House management employed by President John Kennedy was
   A) to disperse his authority to numerous aides, each of who had powerful decision-making power.
   B) unusually closed, with only the president and his two closest aides involved in most major decisions.
   C) to personally take charge of even the minor details of decision making.
   D) a chain of command with a chief of staff who controlled almost all access to the president.
   E) such that many aides equally participated in the decision-making process.
   Answer: E

59) John F. Kennedy’s "wheel-and-spokes" system of management was characterized by
   A) a hierarchical organization with a chief of staff at the top.
   B) many aides with equal status balanced against one another in the decision-making process.
   C) the president’s involvement in every administrative detail.
   D) a closed, small network of computers that directly linked the president to his closest advisors through e-mail messages.
   E) a streamlined, fast-paced, and efficient decision-making style.
   Answer: B
60) The organization and importance of the White House staff depend on
   A) the president’s Chief of Staff.
   B) agenda schedules and formal rules of debate.
   C) the personal style of the president in office.
   D) the legal authority granted it by Congress.
   E) a hierarchy of access to the president.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 405
Edition: National

61) President Clinton’s decision making style was
   A) to immerse himself in the details of policy and run an open White House, soliciting the advice of a large number of aides.
   B) to set up a chain of command in which all advice was sent upward to his Chief of Staff who then presented Clinton with the decision-making options.
   C) highly organized and decisive, with the president actually flipping a coin to decide issues where his advisors are evenly divided.
   D) to delegate so much decision making authority to his aides that the media often call them his "handlers."
   E) to remain highly isolated and make most decisions in consultation only with his two closest advisors.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 406
Edition: National

62) The president who was known as the "consummate delegator" because he dispersed authority to his advisors was
   A) John F. Kennedy.
   B) George Bush.
   C) Ronald Reagan.
   D) Jimmy Carter.
   E) Lyndon Johnson.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 406
Edition: National

554
63) George W. Bush’s management style is
   A) wheel and spokes.
   B) chaotic.
   C) hierarchical.
   D) transitional.
   E) to delegate.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 406
   Edition: National

64) A presidential veto of legislation passed by Congress
   A) can be overturned only by majority vote of the Supreme Court.
   B) cannot be overturned.
   C) can be overturned by a majority vote of both the House and the Senate to override the veto.
   D) can be overturned by a two-thirds vote of either the House or the Senate to override the veto.
   E) can be overturned by a two-thirds vote of both the House and the Senate to override the veto.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 408
   Edition: National

65) The pocket veto can only be used
   A) when a new president is about to take office.
   B) during a presidential election year.
   C) when Congress is in session.
   D) on appropriations bills.
   E) when Congress is adjourned.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 408–409
   Edition: National
66) The Constitution gives the president the power to influence the legislative process through his responsibility to

A) make laws by decree without the consent of Congress in some situations.
B) direct the business of Congress and initiate impeachment.
C) report on the state of the union and veto acts of Congress.
D) recommend legislation and make appointments.
E) manage the economy, lead the party, and deal with national crises.

Answer: C

67) When a president vetoes congressional legislation,

A) Congress must form a joint committee to address the president’s complaints.
B) the Supreme Court determines whether the law will take effect.
C) Congress can override the veto by a two-thirds vote in both houses.
D) there is nothing Congress can do about it.
E) one house of Congress can override the veto if it votes to do so with a two-thirds vote.

Answer: C

68) A pocket veto is the situation in which the president

A) vetoes particular items in a spending bill.
B) lets a bill die by neither signing nor vetoing it after Congress has adjourned.
C) rejects a Congressional override.
D) lets a bill become law by neither vetoing nor signing it.
E) sends a law back to Congress with the reasons for rejecting it.

Answer: B
69) Which of the following statements about the presidential veto is FALSE?

A) Almost half of all vetoed bills have been overridden by Congress.
B) Presidents can not veto only parts of a bill.
C) Even the threat of a presidential veto can be an effective tool for persuading Congress to give more weight to presidents’ views.
D) The presidential veto is an inherently negative resource.
E) The president, unlike most governors, cannot use a line-item veto.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 408-409
Edition: National

70) In 1998, the Supreme Court ruled in *Clinton v. City of New York* that

A) a 1996 law granting the president the authority to propose rescinding funds in appropriation bills was unconstitutional.
B) the pocket veto was unconstitutional.
C) that the Clinton impeachment vote was unconstitutional.
D) that the president could not line-item veto grant monies to urban areas.
E) none of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 409
Edition: National

71) In 1996, Congress passed a law giving the president the authority to propose rescinding funds in appropriations bills. Later,

A) Congress overturned the law.
B) President Clinton chose not to use such authority.
C) President Clinton used it successfully.
D) the Supreme Court voided the decision.
E) President Bush voided the decision.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 409
Edition: National
72) The primary obstacle to party unity in Congress is the
   A) multiplicity of parties represented.
   B) lack of presidential leadership.
   C) separation of powers.
   D) bicameral legislature.
   E) lack of consensus on policy issues among party members.

Answer: E

73) When constituency opinion and the president's proposals conflict, members of Congress are more likely to
   A) vote with the president.
   B) vote with their constituents.
   C) seek an electronic vote rather than a voice vote.
   D) not vote.
   E) vote according to their own ideology.

Answer: B

74) Presidential coattails refers to
   A) presidential favors to those who support the president's policies.
   B) the formal constitutional powers of the president.
   C) the ability of members of Congress to hide behind the president on tough issues.
   D) voters casting their ballots for congressional candidates of the president's party who will support the president.
   E) withholding of presidential favors from those who oppose the president's policies.

Answer: D
75) Presidential coattails refers to

A) voters who support the president casting their ballots for congressional candidates of the president’s party.
B) the tendency for the president’s party to lose congressional seats in midterm elections.
C) fund-raising parties the president hosts to raise money for congressional candidates.
D) the president’s power to appoint members of his own political party to cabinet posts and as personal advisors.
E) members of Congress voting according to the wishes of the president.

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 411  
Edition: National

76) Recent election studies show

A) the president’s party usually gains seats in Congress in mid-term elections.
B) a diminishing connection between voters’ presidential and congressional voting.
C) that the party of the winning presidential candidate has been gaining an increasing number of seats in Congress.
D) that presidential coattails no longer exist.
E) that many congressional races are determined by presidential coattails.

Answer: B  
Page Ref: 412  
Edition: National

77) A mid-term election is

A) one in which the incumbent is running for reelection.
B) a congressional election that is not accompanied by a presidential election.
C) held every two years.
D) a special election that may remove an official from office in the middle of the term.
E) a presidential election that occurs during a session of Congress.

Answer: B  
Page Ref: 412  
Edition: National
78) In mid-term elections, the
   A) president’s coattails are the strongest.
   B) president’s party typically gains seats.
   C) president almost always wins reelection; a president who does not is the exception.
   D) president usually does not become involved.
   E) president’s party typically loses seats.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 412
Edition: National

79) Most studies show that
   A) presidential coattails are increasing in certain regions.
   B) presidential coattails rarely affect elections.
   C) presidential coattails are stronger in midterm elections.
   D) presidential coattails are stronger than ever.
   E) presidential coattails affect Republicans more than Democrats.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 411
Edition: National

80) The impact of public approval or disapproval of the president on the support that the president receives in Congress is
   A) irrelevant.
   B) not too important, though it occasionally has a minor effect.
   C) represented in the text by the equation $s \cdot 3D px \cdot 2D1$.
   D) extremely important, and sways nearly all members of Congress on every vote.
   E) important, but usually at the margins on most policies.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 412
Edition: National
81) The political resource that has the most potential to turn a situation of stalemate between the president and Congress into one supportive of the president’s legislative proposals is

A) presidential leadership.
B) the president’s party leadership.
C) presidential rewards and sanctions.
D) public approval.
E) the threat of veto.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 412-413
Edition: National

82) High public approval of the president

A) has no effect on congressional elections.
B) gives the president less control over Congress.
C) once achieved is usually sustained for the remainder of his/her presidency.
D) provides a cover for members of Congress to cast votes to which their constituents might otherwise object.
E) allows members of Congress the freedom to vote according to their ideology rather than party.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 413
Edition: National

83) An electoral mandate ______ the president's level of support in Congress.

A) does severe harm to
B) usually has a positive effect on
C) increases by a factor of 2.5
D) has no effect on
E) guarantees a sharp increase in

Answer: B

Page Ref: 413
Edition: National
84) Electoral mandates

A) are the procedures used by the electoral college to tally the presidential electoral votes.
B) occur most often in mid-term elections.
C) consist of the perception that the voters strongly support the winner’s positions.
D) are the constitutional requirements that federal elections be held on the second Tuesday of November of even numbered years.
E) have no real effect on how Congress supports the president.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 413-414
Edition: National

85) Which of the following statements about presidential bargaining is FALSE?

A) The presidential bargaining takes a variety of forms.
B) The president needs to bargain only with enough people to provide a majority.
C) Bargaining in the form of providing specific benefits for members of Congress is critical to creating presidential coalitions.
D) The president does not have to bargain with every member of Congress to receive support.
E) Presidents’ bargaining ability is enhanced by strong public approval.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 414
Edition: National

86) According to the text, two strategies used successfully by President Reagan in achieving his objectives were

A) moving slowly and letting Congress set the priorities.
B) moving slowly and setting priorities.
C) lying and forgetting.
D) moving fast and setting priorities.
E) moving fast and letting Congress set the priorities.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 414-415
Edition: National
87) The primary goal of the president's legislative strategy is usually
   A) to win on all final votes.
   B) to set the agenda.
   C) to win the support of all fellow partisans.
   D) block legislation he opposes.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: B

Page Ref: 414
Edition: National

88) The president's role in the legislative process
   A) is especially important in influencing Congress's agenda.
   B) usually puts her/him in conflict with Congress.
   C) is usually minor because Congress operates independently from the president.
   D) is most effective in domestic policy.
   E) at least until 1995, has been to react to and modify congressional initiatives.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 414
Edition: National

89) Studies have shown that once one takes into account the status of their party in Congress and
    their standing with the public, presidents renowned for their legislative skills are
    A) twice as successful in winning congressional support than other presidents.
    B) most likely to reshape the contours of the political landscape.
    C) most likely to be able to create opportunities for political change.
    D) no more successful in obtaining congressional support than those considered less adept
       at dealing with Congress.
    E) much more successful in gaining support for their domestic policies than for their
       foreign policies.

   Answer: D

Page Ref: 416
Edition: National
90) The president’s legislative skills compete with other factors influencing congressional voting, including all of the following EXCEPT
   A) ideology.
   B) constituency news.
   C) PAC spending.
   D) partisanship.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 416
Edition: National

91) Among the president’s constitutional powers as a maker of foreign policy is the power to
   A) ratify peace treaties.
   B) appropriate foreign-aid funds.
   C) extend diplomatic recognition to foreign governments.
   D) declare war.
   E) all of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 417
Edition: National

92) Which of the following is NOT one of the president’s powers as the nation’s chief diplomat?
   A) negotiating executive agreements which do not require congressional approval
   B) mediating disputes between nations other than the United States
   C) declaring war against an adversary
   D) extending diplomatic recognition to a nation
   E) negotiating treaties with other nations

Answer: C
Page Ref: 418
Edition: National
93) Which of the following statements about the role of the president as chief diplomat is FALSE?

A) Presidential diplomacy can involve negotiating conflicts between other nations and not the United States.

B) Senate approval of treaties negotiated by the president is almost automatic.

C) The president has the sole power to negotiate treaties with other nations.

D) In domestic policymaking, as chief diplomat, the president must rely principally on persuasion to lead.

E) All of these are false.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 417–418
Edition: National

94) Some believe the War Powers Resolution could be successfully overturned by the Supreme Court because it

A) was vetoed by President Nixon.

B) was not ratified within the constitutionally mandated seven-year period.

C) uses a legislative veto, which may violate the separation of powers.

D) interferes with the president’s power to declare war.

E) was really aimed at the Vietnam War only.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 419
Edition: National

95) The War Powers Resolution

A) prohibited the president power from committing American troops without congressional approval.

B) established the chain of command of the armed forces in the event the president is incapacitated.

C) gave the president the formal power to declare war in the case of nuclear attack.

D) mandated the withdrawal of forces after sixty days unless Congress declared war or granted an extension.

E) established the code protocols that launch nuclear missiles in order to prevent accidental or unauthorized missile launches.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 419
Edition: National
96) The War Powers Resolution may be considered unconstitutional because

A) its use of the legislative veto may be considered a violation of the doctrine of separation of powers.
B) it violates the president's power to declare war.
C) it violates the president's power as Commander in Chief.
D) it was struck down by the Supreme Court.
E) it violates the congressional power to appropriate funds for the military.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 419
Edition: National

97) During the 1991 Gulf War,

A) the War Powers Resolution was ignored.
B) Congress cut off funding after sixty days.
C) President Bush did not seek congressional support for the operation.
D) Congress passed a resolution authorizing the president to use force against Iraq.
E) Congress adopted a formal declaration of war against Iraq.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 419
Edition: National

98) In the United States showdown with Saddam Hussein in January 1991,

A) Congress declared war on Iraq.
B) Congress voted against using force against Iraq, but President Bush used force anyway.
C) Congress passed a resolution authorizing the president to use military force against Iraq.
D) after granting President Bush a thirty-day extension, Congress invoked the War Powers Resolution and effectively placed a ninety-day limit on combat.
E) Congress did not vote on declaring war or authorizing military force, preferring to let the president act alone.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 419
Edition: National
99) Which of the following statements about crises is FALSE?

A) There were more immediate crises early in American history than there are today.
B) Most crises occur in the realm of foreign policy.
C) Crises are rarely the president’s doing.
D) The president has become more prominent in handling crises than other branches of government.
E) It is easier for an individual president to manage crises than it is for congressional leaders to do so.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 420–421
Edition: National

100) Congress’s role in national security policy has typically included all of the following EXCEPT

A) support or criticism of the president.
B) initiation of policy.
C) oversight of the executive branch.
D) to pass authorizations and appropriations for presidential actions.
E) monitoring constituent opinions on national security.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 416–421
Edition: National

101) The typical member of Congress supports the president on national security roll–call votes

A) very rarely.
B) about 75 percent of the time.
C) almost always.
D) only 38 percent of the time.
E) slightly more than half the time.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 421
Edition: National
102) References by commentators on the presidency to there being "two presidencies" refer to
   A) the president as candidate and the president as elected leader.
   B) the first term and the second term of a president.
   C) what the president originally proposes to accomplish and what the president actually does accomplish.
   D) the differences between public and private presidential actions.
   E) national security and domestic policy.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 421
Edition: National

103) Which of the following statements about presidents going public is FALSE?
   A) Presidents are not passive followers of public opinion.
   B) Presidents’ appearances are often staged purely to obtain the public's attention.
   C) In recent years, presidents have averaged more than one public appearance every weekday of the year.
   D) Dwight Eisenhower was the first president to use presidential speeches to gain policy support.
   E) John F. Kennedy was the first "television president."

Answer: D
Page Ref: 422-423
Edition: National

104) How did the White House Communications Office choreograph George W. Bush’s address from the Abraham Lincoln announcing the end of major combat operations in Iraq?
   A) They placed a "Mission Accomplished" banner over the president’s head.
   B) They positioned the Abraham Lincoln so that the shoreline was not visible.
   C) They timed the even so that the sun would cast a favorable light on the president.
   D) The coordinated the shirts of the crewmembers.
   E) all of the above

Answer: E
Page Ref: 422-423
Edition: National
105) The higher the president stands in the polls,
   A) the less support he needs in Congress.
   B) the shorter the president’s coattails.
   C) the less need there is for presidential public appearances.
   D) the easier it is to persuade others to support presidential initiatives.
   E) the less likely he will initiate new policy ventures.

   Answer: D

Page Ref: 423
Edition: National

106) Among recent presidents, the average approval ratings in the public opinion polls have been
   A) higher at the end of the president’s term than at the beginning.
   B) over 75 percent.
   C) higher at the beginning of the president’s term than at the end.
   D) below 40 percent.
   E) slowly rising over the course of a president’s term(s).

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 423–424
Edition: National

107) On average, those who identify with the president’s party give approval more than ________ percentage points higher than those who identify with the opposition party.

   A) 10
   B) 20
   C) 40
   D) 30
   E) 50

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 424
Edition: National
108) The primary factor influencing whether or not a person approves or disapproves of a president's job performance is

A) age.
B) geographic location.
C) gender.
D) political party identification.
E) presidential personality.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 424
Edition: National

109) At the base of presidential evaluations is the

A) public's longstanding suspicion of excessive presidential power.
B) lack of well-defined opinions among most people.
C) predisposition of many people to be critical of government and politics in general.
D) public's indifference to the president.
E) predisposition of many people to support the president.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 424
Edition: National

110) The basic underpinning of approval or disapproval of a president is

A) the president's ability to get her/his program passed by Congress.
B) personality characteristics.
C) political party identification.
D) the state of the economy.
E) the behavior of the media.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 424
Edition: National

111) According to public opinion polls, presidents seem to be most popular

A) just before they leave office.
B) after they have introduced their first legislative package to Congress.
C) when they first enter office.
D) after they leave office.
E) during mid-term elections.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 423-424
Edition: National
112) Changes in presidential approval levels appear to be due primarily to

A) the president’s personality.
B) how the media treat the president.
C) the financial elites’ responses to presidential policies.
D) the public's evaluation of how the president is handling policy areas.
E) how the president's policies affect people individually.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 424
Edition: National

113) "Rally events"

A) are specific and dramatic events that relate to international relations, directly involving the United States and the president.
B) have an enduring impact on a president's public approval.
C) involve economic upsurges that dramatically increase presidential popularity.
D) have no effect on presidential popularity even though presidents use them for that purpose.
E) occur frequently during a president's administration.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 424
Edition: National

114) The surge in President George Bush's approval ratings during and immediately following the Gulf War in 1991 was an example of

A) the bandwagon effect.
B) a rally event.
C) the bully pulpit.
D) presidential coattails.
E) a pocket veto.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 424
Edition: National
115) The ultimate weapon in the president’s arsenal of resources to influence Congress is probably
   A) media support.
   B) interest group support.
   C) her/his fundraising ability.
   D) mobilization of the public.
   E) the support of Wall Street and the Federal Reserve Board.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 425
   Edition: National

116) Presidential press conferences
   A) give the president a chance to be spontaneous.
   B) have not been used since the Nixon administration.
   C) are not very useful means of eliciting information.
   D) are required by the Constitution without saying how often.
   E) are small, intimate meetings with the president.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 428
   Edition: National

117) The president’s _______ serves as the principal conduit of information from the White House to the press on a daily basis.
   A) press secretary
   B) vice president
   C) Chief of Staff
   D) Secretary of Information
   E) Domestic Policy Advisor
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 428
   Edition: National
118) The individual who conducts daily press briefings and serves as a conduit of information from the White House is the

A) National Security Advisor.
B) Minister of Information.
C) president's secretary.
D) Chief of Staff.
E) press secretary.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 428
Edition: National

119) Most of the news coverage of the White House

A) is class analysis that seeks to explain which socio-economic groups are benefiting from or being injured by the latest policies.
B) focuses on the most visible layer of presidents' personal and official activities.
C) focuses on the fundamental processes operating in the executive branch.
D) is concerned with the substance of policies.
E) is concerned with foreign policy issues.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 427
Edition: National

120) A large number of studies have concluded that the news media are

A) moderately biased toward liberal ideology.
B) not biased on any systematic basis, and the news is typically characterized by neutrality.
C) slightly biased toward the Democrats.
D) strongly biased toward the Democrats.
E) slightly biased toward the Republicans.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 429
Edition: National
121) News coverage of presidents and their activities

A) usually focuses on the personality of the president.
B) is not systematically biased in any direction.
C) tends to focus on the substance of presidential policies.
D) has a heavy liberal bias.
E) is typically unfavorable toward the White House.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 429
Edition: National

122) Which of the following statements about the presidency and democracy is FALSE?

A) There is little prospect of the presidency being a threat to democracy.
B) From the time the Constitution was written there has been a fear that the presidency would degenerate into a monarchy.
C) Concerns over presidential power are generally closely related to policy views.
D) Concerns about a tyrannical presidency were prevalent in the Reagan administration due to his ability to impose his will on Congress.
E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 430–431
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) The Twenty-second Amendment set 80 as the mandatory retirement age for United States presidents.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 393
Edition: National

2) Most presidents have served two full terms in office.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 393–394
Edition: National

3) It takes a majority vote in the House to impeach the president.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 395
Edition: National
4) The Twenty-fifth Amendment permits the vice president to become acting president if the vice president and the president's cabinet determine that the president is disabled or if the president declares his own disability.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 397
Edition: National

5) The Founders readily agreed to the form that the office of the president should take, as well as the powers it should exercise.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 397
Edition: National

6) The responsibilities of the president's cabinet are described in the Constitution.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 401
Edition: National

7) The main job of the vice president is to serve as the president's Chief of Staff.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 401
Edition: National

8) The Council of Economic Advisors reviews legislative proposals from the cabinet and other executive agencies so they can determine whether they want an agency to propose these initiatives to Congress.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 404
Edition: National

9) The National Security Council is formally composed of the president, the vice president and the secretaries of state and defense.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 404
Edition: National

10) The White House staff has approximately 100 members.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 405
Edition: National

11) The First Lady has no official governmental position.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 407
Edition: National
12) Most presidential vetoes are overridden by Congress.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 408
   Edition: National

13) When constituency opinion and the president’s proposals conflict, members of Congress—even if of the same party as the president—are more likely to vote with their constituency.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 410
   Edition: National

14) Presidents frequently withhold favors from members of Congress in order to get their support.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 410–411
   Edition: National

15) Like treaties, executive agreements require senatorial approval.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 417
   Edition: National

16) The War Powers Resolution of 1973 was aimed at giving the president greater power to send United States troops and wage war without having to seek approval or continued authorization from Congress.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 419
   Edition: National

17) Congress tends to accord the president overwhelming support on national security policy.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 416–420
   Edition: National

18) The president’s “honeymoon” period of high approval ratings is increasingly fleeting, but it is also true that declines in approval are not inevitable.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 424
   Edition: National

19) Citizens seem to focus on the president’s efforts and stands on issues rather than on personality (“popularity”) or simply how presidential policies affect them (the “pocketbook”).

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 424
   Edition: National
20) Despite the fact that Ronald Reagan and Bill Clinton were skilled in communications, they generally saw public opinion moving against them.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 426–427
Edition: National

21) The president is often portrayed by the press in a negative light, even though it is presented in a neutral manner.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 429
Edition: National

22) The press often portrays the president with an aura of dignity and treats him with deference, despite a tendency to focus on negative themes.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 429
Edition: National

23) All seven of the presidents since Lyndon Johnson have championed constraints on government and limits on spending.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 431
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) The ______ limits presidents to two terms.

Answer: Twenty-second Amendment
Page Ref: 393
Edition: National

2) Describe and explain the significance of the Watergate scandal.

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 395
Edition: National

3) ______ developed the role of the president as manager of the economy.

Answer: Franklin D. Roosevelt
Page Ref: 399
Edition: National
4) What role does the vice president play? Give examples.

Answer: Constitutionally, the vice president presides over the Senate and votes in the case of ties among the senators. He or she is sometimes involved in policy discussions and important diplomacy. But mostly he or she just waits.

Page Ref: 401
Edition: National

5) The ______ is the unit that links the president's key foreign and military policy advisors.

Answer: National Security Council

Page Ref: 404
Edition: National

6) The ______ help the president make policy on inflation, unemployment and other economic matters, and is considered part of the Executive Office of the President.

Answer: Council of Economic Advisors

Page Ref: 404
Edition: National

7) What is the role and importance of the Office of Management and Budget?

Answer: One of the three agencies within the Executive Office of the President, the OMB performs both managerial and budgetary functions, with its main responsibility to prepare the president's budget.

Page Ref: 404
Edition: National

8) Describe what is meant by the president being the "chief legislator"?

Answer: emphasizes the president's importance in the legislative process, including giving the State of the Union address, trying to shape the Congressional budget and having the ability to veto legislation

Page Ref: 408
Edition: National

9) If Congress adjourns within ten days after submitting a bill, the president can simply let it die without either signing it or officially vetoing it. This is known as the ______.

Answer: pocket veto

Page Ref: 408
Edition: National
10) Compare and contrast the veto, pocket veto, and the line-item veto.

Answer: A veto is the constitutional power of the president to send a bill back to Congress with the reasons for rejecting it. A pocket veto is a veto that takes place when Congress adjourns within 10 days of submitting a bill to the president, who simply lets it die by neither signing nor vetoing it. A line item veto would allow the president to veto selected portions of a bill, as in the case of Congress' 1996 law that granted the president the authority to propose rescinding funds in appropriations bills and tax provisions that apply to only a few people.

Page Ref: 408–409
Edition: National

11) What is meant by presidential coattails, and how effective are they?

Answer: occur when voters cast their ballots for congressional candidates of the president's party because they support the president; coattails seem to have weakened recently, and few races are determined by them.

Page Ref: 408
Edition: National

12) In the Congressional mid-term elections, the president's party tends to _______ seats.

Answer: lose
Page Ref: 412
Edition: National

13) When can a president claim a mandate? What is the importance of a mandate?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 413–414
Edition: National

14) In the role of the nation’s _______, the president has the sole power to negotiate treaties with other nations.

Answer: Chief Diplomat
Page Ref: 417–418
Edition: National

15) A president frequently has to deal with a(n) _______, often in foreign policy, which is a sudden, unpredictable, and potentially dangerous event.

Answer: crisis
Page Ref: 420–421
Edition: National

16) Explain what is meant by a crisis. What is the president's role in a crisis, and why is a crisis situation important to a president?

Answer: a sudden, unpredictable and potentially dangerous event requiring the president to play the role of crisis manager; answers will vary
Page Ref: 420–421
Edition: National
17) Changes in presidential approval levels reflect the public's evaluation of how the president is handling _______.

Answer: policies such as economy, war and foreign affairs  
Page Ref: 422–427  
Edition: National

18) What did the banner hung by the Bush administration on the aircraft carrier the Abraham Lincoln say?

Answer: "Mission Accomplished"  
Page Ref: 422–423  
Edition: National

19) An unusual example of the president successfully mobilizing public opinion in support of pressuring Congress to act was Ronald Reagan's successful push for a _______ in 1981.

Answer: tax cut  
Page Ref: 427  
Edition: National

20) The president's _______ serves as the conduit of information from the White House to the media, conducting daily briefings, reading prepared announcements, and answering questions.

Answer: press secretary  
Page Ref: 428  
Edition: National

21) What duties does the president's press secretary have?

Answer: conduct daily press briefings, arrange private interviews and photo opportunities with White House officials and make travel arrangements for reporters when the president leaves Washington  
Page Ref: 428  
Edition: National

22) Most news coverage of the president can be described as a(n) _______.

Answer: body watch.  
Page Ref: 428  
Edition: National

23) To what extent does the office of the presidency enlarge the scope of government? Why or why not? Provide specific examples from various presidencies to support your answer.

Answer: Answers will vary.  
Page Ref: 431  
Edition: National
Essay Questions

1) Explain why, as Richard Neustadt argued, presidential power is the power to persuade, rather than to command.
   Page Ref: 392; 408–427
   Edition: National

2) Describe the constitutional process of removing a president from office. How often has this process been seriously attempted? With what results? Is this process appropriate or would you recommend changes? Explain.
   Page Ref: 395–397
   Edition: National

3) Describe the circumstances surrounding President Clinton’s impeachment. What specific charges were brought against him? Of what charges was he convicted?
   Page Ref: 396
   Edition: National

4) Compare and contrast the Constitutional powers of the president with the informal expansion of presidential power.
   Page Ref: 397–400
   Edition: National

5) List and briefly describe the Constitutional powers of the president. Which are the most important, and why?
   Page Ref: 397–398
   Edition: National

6) Identify and describe the individuals and organizations that make up the executive branch of government.
   Page Ref: 400–407
   Edition: National

7) Describe the process by which a president can veto a bill. What recourse does Congress have to respond to a veto, and how often is this recourse successful? Would you favor a line-item veto for the president? Why, or why not?
   Page Ref: 408–409
   Edition: National

8) Describe the major strengths and weaknesses of the president in his role as chief legislator. What factors strengthen his ability to pass legislation he prefers? What factors weaken his ability to pass legislation?
   Page Ref: 408–409
   Edition: National

9) Explain the power relationship between the president and Congress. How does the president’s political party and public support affect this relationship?
   Page Ref: 409–427
   Edition: National
10) How important is public support for the president in achieving legislative priorities? How does the president go about soliciting public support? Do you think the president should avoid such solicitations or not? Explain.

Page Ref: 422-427
Edition: National

11) Describe the relative importance of public approval and legislative skills as resources presidents use to work with Congress. Does one depend on the other? Give examples.

Page Ref: 414-416; 422-427
Edition: National

12) Why is the president given the power as the nation’s Chief Diplomat and the Commander in Chief of the armed forces? What checks does Congress have on the president’s national security prerogatives? Are these sufficient? Explain.

Page Ref: 416-421
Edition: National

13) Explain the role of the president in national security policy. In particular, what powers does the president have in times of war and national crisis?

Page Ref: 416-421
Edition: National

14) Describe the nature of the "public presidency." How does public opinion affect the power of the president, and how can presidents gain and use public support to their advantage?

Page Ref: 422-427
Edition: National

15) Why is public approval possibly the greatest resource a president has? How do presidents seek to increase, or sustain, their level of public approval?

Page Ref: 422-427
Edition: National

16) Why is the press important to the president? How can presidents use the press to their advantage, and what advantages might the press have over the president?

Page Ref: 427-430
Edition: National

17) Some founding fathers feared that the president might become a monarch if given too many powers. Comment on the argument that the presidency can be a threat to democracy. What implications might a powerful president have for the size of government in America?

Page Ref: 430-431
Edition: National
Chapter 14  The Congress, The President, and the Budget: The Politics of Taxing and Spending

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) A budget deficit occurs when expenditures exceed
   A) revenues.
   B) borrowing.
   C) appropriations.
   D) authorizations.
   E) inflation.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 436
   Edition: National

2) Most of today’s federal debt was run up by government borrowing during
   A) World War II.
   B) the 1980s.
   C) the Vietnam War.
   D) the Great Depression.
   E) the Cold War (1947–1989).

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 436
   Edition: National

3) Approximately what percentage of the annual federal budget pays interest on the national debt?
   A) 13
   B) 15
   C) 21
   D) 9
   E) 6

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 436
   Edition: National
4) Which of the following is NOT currently one of the major sources of federal revenue?
   A) personal income taxes
   B) social insurance taxes
   C) borrowing
   D) excise taxes
   E) corporate income taxes

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 437
   Edition: National

5) In Pollock v. Farmer’s Loan and Trust Co. (1895), the United States Supreme Court ruled that
   A) the income tax was constitutional.
   B) the national sales tax was unconstitutional.
   C) banks and corporations must pay higher taxes.
   D) the income tax was unconstitutional.
   E) business income taxes were unconstitutional but individual income taxes were constitutional.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

6) The Sixteenth Amendment, ratified in 1913,
   A) explicitly permitted Congress to levy an income tax.
   B) limited the total income tax Congress could levy on an individual.
   C) set up the Social Security system.
   D) forbade Congress from levying an income tax, but was later repealed.
   E) required the federal government to balance its budget each year but it was repealed during the Great Depression.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National
7) A(n) ______ is a policy document allocating taxes and expenditures, or a series of goals with price tags attached.
   A) balance sheet
   B) procurement
   C) fiscal register
   D) apportionment
   E) budget

Answer: E
Page Ref: 436
Edition: National

8) A budget is
   A) a blueprint for what the government should do.
   B) a policy determination of how much to spend.
   C) a policy document allocating burdens (taxes) and benefits (expenditures).
   D) passed by the president's cabinet.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 436
Edition: National

9) Congress was officially given the power to levy an income tax through the
   A) Sixteenth Amendment.
   B) Supreme Court case of Pollock v. Farmer's Loan and Trust Co. (1895).
   C) revenue clause of the original Constitution.
   D) Internal Revenue Act.
   E) Balanced Budget Amendment.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 438
Edition: National
10) The federal government’s budget is mainly

A) a technical document intended to ensure that tax revenues will be sufficient to meet expenditures.

B) a line by line accounting of tax expenditures that is required annually by the Constitution.

C) an accounting tool that permits the government to keep track of its assets and liabilities.

D) a list of the ways in which the government has spent its money.

E) a policy statement that allocates burdens and benefits by attaching price tags to policy goals.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 436
Edition: National

11) According to Aaron Wildavsky, budgeting is a process most concerned with

A) making sure every citizen receives a fair amount of government benefits.

B) translating financial resources into human purposes.

C) keeping the government running on a day-to-day basis.

D) keeping expenditures balanced with taxes.

E) redistributing the natural distribution of wealth in a capitalist economy in a fairer more civilized way than the push and shove of free enterprise.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 436
Edition: National

12) Which of the following is NOT the responsibility of the Internal Revenue Service?

A) investigating and prosecuting thousands of errant taxpayers or nonpayers of federal taxes

B) establishing the annual tax rates that Americans of different incomes must pay

C) auditing more than one million taxpayers annually

D) collecting the federal income tax

E) All of these are the IRS’s responsibilities.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 438
Edition: National
13) Income taxes
   A) provide the largest source of federal revenue.
   B) were first used in 1915 after the Sixteenth Amendment was passed.
   C) were declared constitutional in Pollock v. Farmer’s Loan and Trust Co.
   D) yield about 11 cents of every federal revenue dollar.
   E) All of these are true.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 437
Edition: National

14) In order of decreasing amounts, the sources of federal revenue include
   A) individual income tax, excise tax, corporate income tax, and social insurance receipts.
   B) individual income tax, social insurance receipts, borrowing and corporate income tax.
   C) social insurance receipts, corporate income tax, individual income tax, and borrowing.
   D) corporate income taxes, personal income taxes, borrowing and social insurance taxes.
   E) borrowing, individual income tax, social insurance receipts, and corporate income tax.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 437-440
Edition: National

15) Corporations today pay
   A) income taxes which account for most federal revenue.
   B) income taxes which account for more federal revenue than individual income taxes.
   C) income taxes which account for much less federal revenue than individual income taxes.
   D) no income taxes.
   E) capital gains taxes and property taxes instead of income taxes.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 438
Edition: National

16) The income tax is generally progressive, meaning that
   A) it increases incrementally on an annual basis.
   B) those with more income pay higher rates of tax on their income.
   C) those with more income pay more in taxes than those with less income.
   D) it is a newer form of taxation than excise and sales taxes.
   E) it is better than a flat tax.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 438
Edition: National
17) Social Security taxes are
   A) paid for by employees and employers.
   B) paid for by employees only.
   C) paid for by employers only.
   D) taxes paid on Social Security benefits.
   E) levied and collected by state governments.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

18) Social insurance taxes
   A) are earmarked for a specific purpose.
   B) have grown very little in recent years.
   C) go into the government's general money fund.
   D) are paid only by employers.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

19) The fastest growing source of federal revenue has been
   A) fees for services.
   B) Social Security taxes.
   C) personal income taxes.
   D) borrowing.
   E) corporate income taxes.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

20) The government borrows money principally by
   A) selling bonds.
   B) maintaining numerous departmental credit card accounts.
   C) printing more currency.
   D) obtaining loans from foreign governments.
   E) obtaining loans from the Federal Reserve.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National
21) Who can purchase United States government bonds?
   A) financial institutions
   B) citizens
   C) corporations
   D) mutual funds
   E) all of the above

   Answer: E

   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

22) The federal debt
   A) consists of all the money borrowed over the years by the national government and still outstanding.
   B) is money owed to foreign nations by the United States government when it imports more goods than it exports.
   C) is all money borrowed over the years by the federal government and owed to state governments.
   D) is the difference between the amount of annual tax receipts and government expenditures.
   E) is money owed by taxpayers to the United States government, but never paid.

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 439
   Edition: National

23) The federal debt in the United States
   A) is the difference between federal government revenues and expenditures in a given year.
   B) has increased due to the budget deficit caused by the difference between revenues and expenditures.
   C) was eliminated due to George W. Bush's efforts to balance the budget.
   D) consists of the interest that government must pay on the budget deficit.
   E) is just under $1,000,000,000.

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 439
   Edition: National
24) Unlike state and local governments, the federal government is borrowing primarily for
   A) its day-to-day expenses.
   B) future development needs.
   C) military defense.
   D) printing money.
   E) its capital needs.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 439
Edition: National

25) _______ are revenue losses attributable to provisions of the federal tax laws which allow a special exemption, exclusion, or deduction.
   A) Tax dividends
   B) Fiscal seepages
   C) Treasury bills
   D) Tax reductions
   E) Tax expenditures

Answer: E

Page Ref: 441
Edition: National

26) Tax expenditures consist of
   A) the way taxes are spent by the federal government.
   B) tax exemptions, deductions, and exclusions.
   C) taxes paid by employers for social insurance programs.
   D) direct grants-in-aid to individuals by the government.
   E) the amount of deficit caused by revenue shortfalls.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 441
Edition: National
27) The federal income tax deduction for mortgage interest on an owner-occupied home is an example of a
   A) tax rebate.
   B) negative income tax.
   C) federally guaranteed loan.
   D) tax expenditure.
   E) tax refund.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 441
   Edition: National

28) An example of a tax expenditure is
   A) a lower tax rate for lower income families.
   B) direct government support of a charity.
   C) the social security system.
   D) a tax deduction for the mortgage interest paid by homeowners.
   E) the purchase of a Stealth Bomber by the Pentagon.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 441
   Edition: National

29) The Office of Management and Budget estimates that the total tax expenditures is more than ________ of the federal government’s total receipts.
   A) 30 percent
   B) 10 percent
   C) 25 percent
   D) 40 percent
   E) 50 percent
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 441
   Edition: National
30) Tax expenditures tend to most benefit
   A) lower-income people and the poor.
   B) lower-middle class people and small businesses.
   C) the government.
   D) middle- and upper-income people and corporations.
   E) state and local governments and school districts.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 441
Edition: National

31) Which of the following statements about President Reagan's 1981 tax cut is FALSE?
   A) Taxes were indexed to the cost of living.
   B) Corporate taxes were increased.
   C) Federal taxes were reduced by 25 percent.
   D) It provided new tax incentives for personal saving and investment.
   E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 441
Edition: National

32) Which of the following statements about President Reagan's 1981 tax cut is TRUE?
   A) It reduced the federal government's tax expenditures.
   B) It provided new tax incentives for personal saving and investment.
   C) It spread the tax burden more fairly among taxpayers.
   D) It led to a major reduction in the federal deficits.
   E) It helped curb inflation.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 441
Edition: National

33) Which of the following was NOT a provision of President Reagan's 1985 tax simplification program?
   A) It removed several million low-income individuals from the tax rolls.
   B) It eliminated or reduced the value of many tax deductions.
   C) It increased the number of tax expenditures available to businesses.
   D) It reduced the number of tax brackets to two.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 443-444
Edition: National
34) Beginning in 1985, federal income taxes were ________ to the cost of living, so that government no longer got a larger percentage when inflation pushed incomes into higher brackets while the tax rates stayed the same.

A) raised  
B) added  
C) indexed  
D) lowered  
E) flat-rated

Answer: C

Page Ref: 442
Edition: National

35) President Reagan’s 1981 tax cuts were most beneficial to

A) low-income families.  
B) the middle class.  
C) the government.  
D) high-income families.  
E) the states

Answer: D

Page Ref: 443-444
Edition: National

36) In 1993, Congress agreed to President Clinton’s proposal to

A) cut Social Security expenditures.  
B) decrease the top corporate income tax rate.  
C) raise the income tax rate for families in the highest income brackets.  
D) eliminate all energy taxes.  
E) establish national health insurance

Answer: C

Page Ref: 442
Edition: National
37) The United States government’s annual budget is now approximately
   A) $2.75 trillion.
   B) $15 trillion.
   C) $775 billion.
   D) $12 trillion.
   E) $11.3 trillion.

   Answer: A  
   Page Ref: 447  
   Edition: National

38) Compared to most other countries with developed economies, the national, state, and local
governments in the United States tax
   A) about twice as heavily.
   B) about one and a half times as much per capita.
   C) about four times as heavily.
   D) less.
   E) at about the same rate.

   Answer: D  
   Page Ref: 444  
   Edition: National

39) Compared to other Western nations, America’s total government expenditure as a percentage
of the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) is
   A) one of the largest, but dropping.
   B) about average.
   C) the highest and increasing.
   D) one of the largest.
   E) one of the smallest.

   Answer: E  
   Page Ref: 446  
   Edition: National
40) Which of the following countries have the smallest total tax revenues as a percentage of their gross domestic product?
   A) Sweden
   B) Canada
   C) Germany
   D) United States
   E) United Kingdom

Answer: D

Page Ref: 444
Edition: National

41) The federal budget consumes _______ of America’s gross domestic product.
   A) 20 percent
   B) 30 percent
   C) 50 percent
   D) 25 percent
   E) 12 percent

Answer: C

Page Ref: 446
Edition: National

42) In order of decreasing amounts, federal expenditures include
   A) national defense, interest on the national debt, and direct payments to individuals.
   B) interest on the national debt, national defense, and direct payments to individuals.
   C) national defense, direct payments to individuals, and state and local grants.
   D) direct payments to individuals, national defense, and interest on the national debt.
   E) none of the above

Answer: E

Page Ref: 445
Edition: National
43) America’s national, state and local governments spend an amount equal to ________ of the GDP.

   A) 20 percent.
   B) 30 percent.
   C) 50 percent.
   D) 25 percent.
   E) 12 percent.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 448
   Edition: National

44) During the 1950s and early 1960s, over half the federal budget was spent every year on

   A) agricultural subsidies and programs.
   B) Medicare.
   C) the interstate highway program.
   D) the Department of Defense.
   E) Social Security.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 447
   Edition: National

45) From the mid-1960s to the early 1980s, the biggest change in government spending was the

   A) ratification and implementation of the Twenty-eighth Amendment, the Balanced Budget Amendment.
   B) abandonment of the gold standard and the creation of the Federal Reserve System.
   C) growth of new budgeting techniques such as zero-based budgeting.
   D) increase in social service expenditures and decline in defense spending.
   E) elimination of tax expenditures.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 447
   Edition: National
46) The military industrial complex refers to
A) the global network of bases that the Department of Defense maintains.
B) the close relationship between defense officials and the corporations that supply their hardware needs.
C) the competition between the military and civilian industries for government dollars.
D) the government-owned industries that manufacture military weapons and large equipment.
E) the Pentagon and the buildings that surround it.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 447
Edition: National

47) The budget of the Department of Defense
A) decreased in the 1990s.
B) constitutes the bulk of the "uncontrollable" expenditures of the United States budget.
C) constitutes over half of all federal expenditures.
D) is the driving force in the expansion of the federal budget.
E) has increased despite the end of the Cold War.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 447
Edition: National

48) The purchasing of military hardware is known as
A) regalia.
B) procurement.
C) requisitioning.
D) appropriations.
E) mobilization.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 447
Edition: National
49) The biggest expenditure in the federal budget today is
   A) foreign aid programs.
   B) welfare programs for the poor.
   C) interest on the debt.
   D) income security programs.
   E) defense.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 447
Edition: National

50) The Social Security Act, which set up the Social Security system, was passed in
   A) 1935.
   B) 1913.
   C) 1865.
   D) 1962.
   E) 1929.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 448
Edition: National

51) The Social Security Act was passed under the administration of President
   A) Franklin D. Roosevelt.
   B) Dwight D. Eisenhower.
   C) Herbert Hoover.
   D) Lyndon Johnson.
   E) Abraham Lincoln.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 448
Edition: National

52) In 1965, _______ was added to the Social Security program to provide hospital and physician coverage to the elderly.
   A) Medplan
   B) Healthmark
   C) Medicare
   D) Medicaid
   E) disability

Answer: C
Page Ref: 449
Edition: National
53) Medicare

A) is given only to those who do not have private insurance.
B) is administered separately from the social security system.
C) provides only hospital coverage to the poor.
D) is the most expensive of all the welfare programs, providing basic medical care for the poor.
E) provides both hospital and physician coverage to the elderly.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 449
Edition: National

54) The biggest slice of the federal budget pie belongs to

A) law enforcement.
B) national defense.
C) education aid.
D) income security expenditures.
E) health expenditures.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 447
Edition: National

55) By 1990, the Social Security system was financed by a payroll tax of

A) 2 percent.
B) 5 percent.
C) 7.5 percent.
D) over 15 percent.
E) 10 percent.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 449
Edition: National

56) A major feature of incremental budgeting is that it

A) provides small increases in the current budget over the previous year’s budget.
B) greatly inflates government spending each year.
C) fragments the budget into many small items, making it hard to plan a unified budget.
D) reduces current budgets by small amounts over successive years.
E) reevaluates the budgetary base on which past budgets were built.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 451
Edition: National
57) An example of incremental budgeting is
   A) reviewing an agency’s budget to establish a lower base.
   B) Carter’s zero-based budgeting.
   C) reducing an agency’s budget a little each year.
   D) giving an agency a little more than it had last year.
   E) breaking a budget into its component parts and reviewing each part individually.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 451
Edition: National

58) Which of the following is not a feature of incremental budgeting?
   A) Most of the debate and attention are focused on the proposed increment.
   B) Agencies must justify their entire budget request.
   C) Very little attention is focused on the budgetary base.
   D) The budget for any given agency tends to grow by a little bit every year.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 451
Edition: National

59) _______ refers to the concept that in the spending appropriations process, the best predictor of this year’s budget is last year’s budget plus a little bit more.

   A) Inflation-plus budgeting
   B) Indexing
   C) Program Planning-Budgeting Systems
   D) Incrementalism
   E) Minimalist Budgeting

Answer: D
Page Ref: 451
Edition: National

60) The most prevalent model of budgetary decision making in practice is
   A) program-planning budgeting.
   B) incrementalism.
   C) zero-based budgeting.
   D) line-item budgeting.
   E) rational party bargaining.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 451
Edition: National
61) Which of the following is NOT associated with incremental budgeting?
   A) An agency or program must prove it still merits its very existence every year.
   B) Most of the budget debate and attention is over an increase in the agency’s funding.
   C) Agencies and programs tend to safely assume they will receive at least what they had
      last year.
   D) The budget for any given agency tends to grow a bit every year.
   E) Agencies often pad their budgets a little bit.

   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 451*
   *Edition: National*

62) Budget items mandated by law or by a previous obligation are known as
   A) uncontrollable expenditures.
   B) increments.
   C) fiscal mandates.
   D) bearer bonds.
   E) procurements.

   Answer: A
   *Page Ref: 451*
   *Edition: National*

63) Social Security payments are an example of a(n)
   A) increment.
   B) indexing.
   C) apportionment.
   D) controllable expenditure.
   E) entitlement.

   Answer: E
   *Page Ref: 452*
   *Edition: National*
64) An "uncontrollable" expenditure in the federal budget is defined as
   A) expenditures exceeding revenues so as to require borrowing to cover the difference.
   B) an expenditure that is required by current law or a previous government obligation to
      people automatically eligible for some benefit.
   C) an annual incremental increase in the cost of a program.
   D) one in which more money must be appropriated to handle a national crisis.
   E) the government’s allowance for meeting budget requests.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 451
   Edition: National

65) Social Security programs, interest on the national debt, and military pensions are examples of
   A) tax expenditures.
   B) uncontrollable expenditures.
   C) revenue sources.
   D) tax loopholes.
   E) incremental expenditures.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 452
   Edition: National

66) The biggest uncontrollable expenditure in the federal budget is
   A) government retirement benefits.
   B) interest on the national debt.
   C) veterans aid.
   D) national defense spending.
   E) the Social Security system.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 452
   Edition: National
67) An estimated _______ of the federal budget is considered uncontrollable, unless Congress changes a law or existing benefit levels.

   A) two-thirds
   B) 80 percent
   C) one-half
   D) one-third
   E) one-fifth

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 451
   Edition: National

68) Approximately what percentage of the federal budget is uncontrollable?

   A) one-fourth
   B) two-thirds
   C) almost all of it
   D) one-half
   E) one-third

   Answer: B

   Page Ref: 451
   Edition: National

69) The ultimate power to determine how much the government will tax and spend, and what it will spend taxes for, lies with

   A) the Treasury Department.
   B) the courts.
   C) the president.
   D) Congress.
   E) the bureaucracy.

   Answer: D

   Page Ref: 452
   Edition: National
70) In the House of Representatives, it is the ______ Committee that writes tax codes, subject to the approval of Congress as a whole.

   A) Ways and Means
   B) Appropriations
   C) Budget
   D) Revenue
   E) Finance

Answer: A
Page Ref: 453
Edition: National

71) Agencies invariably pad their budget requests because

   A) they want the almost inevitable budget cuts to be bearable.
   B) Congress would view a lower request as a sign of weakness.
   C) it is an accepted part of zero-based budgeting.
   D) their constituencies expect more benefits.
   E) cost overruns almost always put them over budget.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 452
Edition: National

72) In the Senate, the ______ Committee is responsible for writing tax codes, subject to the approval of Congress as a whole.

   A) Revenue
   B) Budget
   C) Appropriations
   D) Ways and Means
   E) Finance

Answer: E
Page Ref: 453
Edition: National
73) The budget cycle begins in the executive branch _______ months before the fiscal year begins.
   A) 11
   B) 19
   C) three
   D) seven
   E) 24 or more
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 454
   Edition: National

74) The Director of the Office of Management and Budget
   A) is a career official.
   B) is elected by the Council of Economic Advisors.
   C) is a congressional appointee.
   D) is a presidential appointee requiring approval of the Senate.
   E) is appointed by the Senate Finance Committee.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 453
   Edition: National

75) The _______ is responsible for supervising preparation of the federal budget and advising the president on budgetary matters.
   A) Treasury Department
   B) Office of Management and Budget
   C) Senate Finance Committee
   D) General Accounting Office
   E) Bureau of the Budget
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 454
   Edition: National
76) Until Congress passed the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921,

A) agencies of the executive branch sent their budget requests directly to the president, who alone had the authority to approve and fund the bureaucracy.

B) agencies of the executive branch sent their budget requests to the secretary of the treasury, who forwarded them on to Congress, with the president playing little or no role in the entire process.

C) there was no federal income tax in the United States.

D) the United States had no formalized budget process.

E) the federal budget had to be balanced, by law.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National

77) Before the president submits her budget to Congress, the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) coordinates the requests of

A) the governors.

B) individual legislators.

C) the subject matter committees of Congress.

D) executive agencies.

E) interest groups.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National

78) The heads of executive agencies send their budget requests to the

A) Office of Management and Budget.

B) Congressional tax committees.

C) president.

D) Treasury Department.

E) Congressional Budget Office.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National
79) Agencies' behavior and budgets are audited, monitored, and evaluated for Congress by the
A) Congressional Budget Office.
B) president.
C) Internal Revenue Service.
D) Office of Management and Budget.
E) General Accounting Office.
Answer: E
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National

80) The Office of Management and Budget parcels out money to government agencies and is accountable to
A) the Internal Revenue Service.
B) Congress.
C) the secretary of the treasury.
D) the president.
E) the Congressional Budget Office.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National

81) Which of the following statements about the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) is FALSE?
A) The OMB advises the president on budgetary matters.
B) The OMB is one of the few government agencies created by the Constitution.
C) The OMB supervises preparation of the federal budget.
D) Government agencies send their budget estimates to the OMB.
E) none of the above
Answer: B
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National
82) Once the Office of Management and Budget has prepared the federal budget,
   A) it is sent to the Treasury Department for implementation.
   B) the president makes revisions and submits it to Congress.
   C) it is either signed into law or vetoed by the president.
   D) Congress must vote it up or down as a package within ten days.
   E) it immediately becomes law.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National

83) According to the Constitution, all federal appropriations must be authorized by
   A) the General Accounting Office.
   B) the Office of Management and Budget.
   C) the president.
   D) Congress.
   E) the secretary of the treasury.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 455
Edition: National

84) The Congressional Budget and Impoundment Control Act of 1974 set up all of the following EXCEPT
   A) a Budget Committee in each house of Congress.
   B) the Congressional Budget Office.
   C) the Office of Management and Budget.
   D) a fixed budget calendar mandated by law.
   E) both A and B

Answer: C
Page Ref: 455
Edition: National
85) The Congressional Budget and Impoundment Act of 1974 requires that
   A) the president impound those moneys appropriated by Congress which exceed federal revenues.
   B) Congress develop a budget on the basis of the president’s budget, through coordinated efforts of the CBO and the OMB.
   C) Congress develop a budget by adding up the requests of all the government agencies.
   D) Congress impound that portion of the president’s budget in excess of government revenues.
   E) Congress agree on a budget according to a fixed schedule, with target figures for the total budget size.
   
   Answer: E
   
   Page Ref: 455
   Edition: National

86) The congressional equivalent of the Office of Management and Budget is the
   A) Congressional Office of Finance.
   B) Joint Committee on Ways and Means.
   C) Joint Committee on the Budget.
   D) General Accounting Office.
   E) Congressional Budget Office.
   
   Answer: E
   
   Page Ref: 455
   Edition: National

87) One of the important purposes of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974 is to
   A) require the federal government to balance its budget.
   B) force Congress to consider the budget as a whole rather than in terms of individual appropriations.
   C) restore budgetary control to the appropriations committees and subcommittees.
   D) delegate effective budgetary authority to the president.
   E) give Congress almost exclusive control over the federal budget.
   
   Answer: B
   
   Page Ref: 455
   Edition: National
88) The main purpose of the Congressional Budget Office is to

A) advise Congress on the consequences of its budget decisions.

B) act as a liaison with interest groups.

C) prepare Congress' own operating budget for salaries and supplies.

D) receive reports and recommendations from committees.

E) advise the president on congressional priorities in the budget.

Answer: A

89) To set a limit on total government spending, both houses of Congress are required to pass a(n) _______ every April, binding Congress to a total expenditure level, or bottom line, of all federal spending for all programs.

A) budget

B) budget resolution

C) omnibus appropriations package

D) circumscription bill

E) authorization bill

Answer: B

90) A budget resolution

A) revises program authorizations to achieve required savings.

B) resolves the differences between House and Senate versions of the budget.

C) is an act of Congress that establishes a discretionary government program or an entitlement.

D) must be passed to actually fund programs established by authorization bills.

E) sets limits on expenditures based on revenue projections.

Answer: E
91) Congress attempts to bind itself to a total expenditure level that should form the bottom line of all federal spending for all programs by passing

   A) a zero-based binding resolution.
   B) a budget reconciliation.
   C) a budget resolution.
   D) an appropriations bill.
   E) an authorization bill.

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 456
Edition: National

92) Budget _______ revises program authorizations to achieve required savings.

   A) impoundment
   B) realignment
   C) closure
   D) appropriation
   E) reconciliation

   Answer: E

Page Ref: 456
Edition: National

93) A budget reconciliation

   A) reconciles the differences between House and Senate versions of the budget.
   B) revises program authorizations to achieve required savings.
   C) is an act of Congress that establishes a discretionary government program or an entitlement.
   D) must be passed to actually fund programs established by authorization bills.
   E) sets limits on expenditures based on revenue projections.

   Answer: B

Page Ref: 456
Edition: National
94) An _______ bill is an act of Congress that establishes a discretionary government program or an entitlement, or that continues or changes such programs.

A) omnibus
B) authorization
C) impoundment
D) appropriations
E) enabling

Answer: B
Page Ref: 457
Edition: National

95) To actually fund a program, Congress must pass an _______ bill.

A) authorization
B) expenditure
C) appropriations
D) omnibus
E) impoundment

Answer: C
Page Ref: 457
Edition: National

96) Which of the following would be a specific example of an appropriations bill?

A) Congress voting to discontinue the federal income tax
B) a budget resolution passed by both Houses of Congress
C) a bill funding the Department of the Interior for the fiscal year
D) a bill to continue the space shuttle program for another five years
E) a bill establishing a national health insurance system

Answer: C
Page Ref: 457
Edition: National
97) Failing to meet its own budget timetable, Congress has frequently resorted to ________, which are laws that allow agencies to spend at the previous year's level.

   A) reconciliations
   B) revenue extensions
   C) appropriations
   D) continuing resolutions
   E) retrenchments

Answer: D
Page Ref: 457
Edition: National

98) An authorization bill

   A) provides the funding for discretionary programs.
   B) authorizes the president to spend specific line-item amounts in the final budget.
   C) covers only one year at a time.
   D) sets the maximum amount that may be spent for entitlement programs.
   E) establishes, continues, or changes a discretionary program or an entitlement.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 457
Edition: National

99) In order to actually fund programs established by authorization bills, Congress must pass

   A) a budget resolution.
   B) a budget reconciliation.
   C) an appropriations bill.
   D) authorization vouchers.
   E) a continuing resolution.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 457
Edition: National
100) The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act called for the president to order ________, if Congress failed to meet specific deficit-reduction goals.

A) reconciliations
B) defunding directives
C) re-authorizations
D) continuing resolutions
E) sequestrations

Answer: E
Page Ref: 457
Edition: National

101) The Gramm–Rudman–Hollings Act

A) mandated maximum allowable deficit levels for each year until 1993, when the budget was to be balanced.
B) required automatic budget cuts, primarily in the area of defense.
C) froze all United States government expenditures at their 1988 levels for three years in an effort to eliminate the budget deficits.
D) allowed agencies to spend at the previous year’s level.
E) called for tax increases to pay for federal spending.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 457-458
Edition: National

102) In 1990, Congress split discretionary spending into three categories. Which of the following was NOT one of the three categories?

A) domestic
B) defense
C) debt service
D) international
E) None of the above; debt service is a part of domestic expenditures.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 458-459
Edition: National
103) Near the end of 1990, Congress approved a major change in the making of budget policy that shifted the focus from cutting spending to

A) controlling increases in spending.
B) eliminating government programs.
C) increasing taxes.
D) increasing non-tax revenues.
E) controlling the size of the deficit.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 458-459
Edition: National

104) By 2002, the budget deficit had increased again due to

A) decreased tax revenues.
B) income tax cut of 2001.
C) the first Iraq war.
D) both A and B
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 459
Edition: National

105) Some economists argue that less affluent voters will always use their votes to support public policies that

A) cut all tax rates.
B) redistribute benefits from the rich to the poor.
C) favor large defense budgets.
D) keep taxes low.
E) increase spending on foreign aid and international programs.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 460
Edition: National
106) _______ are not unwilling victims of big government and its big taxes in a democracy, they are at least its co-conspirators.

A) Citizens
B) Members of Congress
C) Presidents
D) Bureaucrats
E) Political parties

Answer: A

Page Ref: 461
Edition: National

107) Research has found that the public sector expands principally

A) as a result of liberal political parties controlling the government.
B) as a result of Federal Reserve Board monetary policies influencing interest rates and currency reserves.
C) as a function of increased international economic competition.
D) in response to changes in economic and social conditions that affect the public’s preferences for government activity.
E) in response to the perceived need for increased defense expenditures.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 462
Edition: National

108) Economists Allen Meltzer and Scott Richard argue that the cost of government grows because

A) democracy works best at the federal level.
B) big government is necessary for the maintenance of a capitalist system.
C) democracy is by nature an expensive form of government to operate.
D) people in a democracy use the government to secure benefits.
E) iron triangles pressure the government to expand their favored programs.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 460-461
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Corporate income taxes today account for over half of all federal government revenue.

Answer: FALSE

Page Ref: 438
Edition: National
2) Corporate taxes yield almost twice as much revenue as individual income taxes.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 438
Edition: National

3) The federal debt makes it more difficult and expensive for individuals and businesses to borrow money from private lenders.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 439
Edition: National

4) The bulk of all the net private savings in the country goes to the federal government as it borrows money.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 439
Edition: National

5) Tax expenditures are reviewed regularly by Congress.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 441
Edition: National

6) On the whole, tax expenditures benefit middle- and upper-income taxpayers and corporations.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 441
Edition: National

7) As a percentage of GDP, Americans pay less taxes than those who live in most other countries with developed economies.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 444
Edition: National

8) In 1993, Congress agreed to President Clinton’s proposal to decrease the energy tax paid by those with low incomes.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 442
Edition: National


Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 442
Edition: National
10) President Reagan’s tax simplification plan of 1985, among other things, reduced the number of tax brackets from fifteen to two.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 444
Edition: National

11) Before World War II, the United States customarily disbanded a large part of its military forces at the end of a war.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 447
Edition: National

12) Defense spending remains the biggest slice of the federal budget pie.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 447
Edition: National

13) Two-thirds of the federal budget consists of what are called "uncontrollable expenditures."

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 451
Edition: National

14) The Office of Management and Budget serves as the major budgetary arm of Congress, and is frequently at odds with the president’s budget office.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National

15) The Congressional Impoundment and Control Act of 1974 has failed to bring spending in line with revenues.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 455
Edition: National

16) Congress was able to briefly balance the budget in the mid-1980s through the use of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 457–458
Edition: National

17) The size of the United States federal budget today actually discourages new programs or the expanding of old ones.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 460–462
Edition: National
Short Answer Questions

1) The federal _______ is the annual disparity between how much money the government takes in, and how much it spends.

   Answer: deficit
   Page Ref: 436
   Edition: National

2) What is the name of the agency which is responsible for collecting federal taxes?

   Answer: Internal Revenue Service
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

3) The _______ authorized Congress to levy a tax on individuals' income.

   Answer: Sixteenth Amendment
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

4) What are Social Security taxes, and how do they differ from other taxes?

   Answer: Answers will vary.
   Page Ref: 438
   Edition: National

5) The federal debt is more than $_______ trillion.

   Answer: 9
   Page Ref: 439
   Edition: National

6) What is meant by a tax expenditure?

   Answer: revenue losses that result from special exemptions, exclusions, or deductions on federal tax law
   Page Ref: 441
   Edition: National

7) Among the most important changes of the twentieth century is the rise of _______.

   Answer: large governments
   Page Ref: 446-447
   Edition: National

8) The rise of the _______ state and the _______ state have both caused the size of the federal government to increase.

   Answer: social service; national security
   Page Ref: 447-450
   Edition: National
9) What is the Social Security Act, and what is its importance to budgeting?

Answer: a 1935 law passed during the Great Depression that was intended to provide a minimal level of sustenance to older Americans and thus save them from poverty; the Social Security program is the largest social policy of the federal government, accounting, with Medicare, for about one-third of the federal budget.

Page Ref: 448
Edition: National

10) ________ suggests that the best prediction of a budget is last year's budget, plus a little extra.

Answer: Incrementalism
Page Ref: 451
Edition: National

11) How do entitlements affect the budgeting process?

Answer: Entitlements are policies for which Congress obligates itself to pay a certain level of benefits to a group of recipients, with no limit as to the fund available for the program. Because all eligible individuals receive the benefits, it is difficult to cut such programs.

Page Ref: 452
Edition: National

12) ________ programs such as Medicare are considered uncontrollable expenditures because all eligible people have a legal right to the benefits.

Answer: Entitlement
Page Ref: 452
Edition: National

13) About ________ of the national budget is "uncontrollable," meaning that Congress can only limit such expenditures by changing the law.

Answer: two-thirds
Page Ref: 453
Edition: National

14) In the House of Representatives, which committee is responsible for writing tax codes?

Answer: Ways and Means Committee
Page Ref: 453
Edition: National

15) What is the function of the General Accounting Office?

Answer: assists Congress by auditing, monitoring and evaluating what executive agencies are doing with their budgets
Page Ref: 454
Edition: National
16) As part of its fixed budgetary calendar, Congress must pass a(n) _______ every April.

   Answer: budget resolution
   Page Ref: 456
   Edition: National

17) What kind of bill is passed by Congress to fund an agency or program with a specific dollar amount?

   Answer: appropriations
   Page Ref: 457
   Edition: National

18) What does an authorization bill do?

   Answer: an act of Congress that establishes, continues or changes a discretionary government program or an entitlement; it specifies program goals and maximum expenditures for discretionary programs.
   Page Ref: 457
   Edition: National

19) The Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Reduction Act of 1985 is also known as _______, after its three principal cosponsors.

   Answer: Gramm–Rudman–Hollings
   Page Ref: 457–458
   Edition: National

20) What were the main provisions of the Gramm–Rudman–Hollings Act, and why did it fail to meet its goals?

   Answer: Answers will vary.
   Page Ref: 457–458
   Edition: National

21) In 1990, Congress divided discretionary spending into what three categories?

   Answer: domestic, defense, and international
   Page Ref: 459
   Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Where does the federal government’s money come from, and where does it go?

   Page Ref: 437–452
   Edition: National

2) Explain how tax policies can promote the interests of particular groups or encourage specific activities. How successful have attempts at tax reduction and tax reform been?

   Page Ref: 437–444
   Edition: National
3) Briefly describe how the rise of the social service state and the rise of the national security state have increased the scope of government. Were these necessary developments? Explain.

Page Ref: 447-450
Edition: National

4) Identify and evaluate the causes and effects of increased government spending or "big government."

Page Ref: 444-452
Edition: National

5) Present an argument, with examples, in favor of the view that the rise of the social service state and the rise of the national security state are the main causes of "big government" in America.

Page Ref: 444-452
Edition: National

6) Describe the role of incrementalism and uncontrollables in the budget process and what alternatives have been offered for each. Is incrementalism necessary for an efficient bureaucracy? In what sense are uncontrollables "really" uncontrollable? Why, or why not?

Page Ref: 451-452
Edition: National

7) What role do entitlements play in the rise of the large budget deficits? Should these be controlled? If so, how?

Page Ref: 452
Edition: National

8) Who is responsible for preparing the president's budget, and how has this process evolved? What sort of calendar is followed in this process? Do you see any noticeable flaws in this system? Explain.

Page Ref: 452-454
Edition: National

9) List and describe, in brief, the various actors who influence the budgetary process. In total, are the interests of democratic government served? By whom and in what ways?

Page Ref: 452-454
Edition: National

10) Identify the participants and explain the process of budget making in the United States government.

Page Ref: 452-454
Edition: National

11) Compare the role of the president with the role of Congress in the budgetary process. Who do you believe has the greater influence and why?

Page Ref: 452-457
Edition: National
12) Since 1974, Congress has attempted to reform its own budgetary process. Describe key reforms that have been made, and assess their success in limiting the size of the federal deficits.

Page Ref: 455
Edition: National

13) Explain the various reforms instituted to improve the budgetary process. How successful have the reforms been?

Page Ref: 455–460
Edition: National

14) Why do some economists attribute the growth in the scope of the government to the equality of the suffrage in America? Assess the legitimacy of this claim and whether or not you think it is a positive or negative aspect of democracy.

Page Ref: 460–462
Edition: National

15) Why is it so difficult to bring the increasing federal budget under control?

Page Ref: 460–462
Edition: National

16) In what ways is the very size of the federal budget an inhibition on adding or dramatically expanding government programs? How has President Bush been affected by this?

Page Ref: 463; 434–465
Edition: National
Chapter 15  The Federal Bureaucracy

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Each bureaucratic agency is created initially by
   A) constitutional provision.
   B) the president.
   C) the bureaucracy itself.
   D) Congress.
   E) order of a federal court.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 467
   Edition: National

2) Which of the following statements about bureaucracies is FALSE?
   A) Bureaucratic power extends to every corner of American economic and social life.
   B) Bureaucracies are scarcely hinted at in the Constitution.
   C) Nothing better illustrates the complexity of modern government than its massive bureaucracies.
   D) Each bureaucratic agency is created by the president.
   E) How to manage and control bureaucracies is a central problem of democratic government.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 467
   Edition: National

3) Which of the following is TRUE about the federal bureaucracy?
   A) Most federal bureaucrats work in Washington, D.C.
   B) The state and local governments have far more employees than the federal bureaucracy.
   C) The size of the federal bureaucracy has grown dramatically over the past twenty years.
   D) Most Americans are dissatisfied with their encounters with bureaucrats.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 469
   Edition: National
4) Studies have found that most Americans

   A) dislike bureaucrats.
   B) are indifferent about bureaucracies and bureaucrats.
   C) are satisfied with the help received from bureaucrats.
   D) actually like bureaucracies.
   E) want the government bureaucracy dismantled.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 469
   Edition: National

5) Which of the following statements about the size of bureaucracies is FALSE?

   A) State and local public employees far outnumber civilian federal government employees.
   B) As a percentage of America’s total work force, federal government employment has been growing.
   C) Almost all the growth in the number of public employees has occurred in state and local governments.
   D) Federal government employment amounts to about three percent of all civilian jobs.
   E) None of the above; all of the above statements are TRUE.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 469
   Edition: National

6) As a percentage of the total work force, federal government employment is

   A) rapidly becoming greater than employment in the private sector.
   B) greater than state and local government employment.
   C) rising.
   D) declining.
   E) stabilizing.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 469
   Edition: National
7) The classic conception of a bureaucracy was advanced by ________, who argued that the bureaucracy was a "rational" way for a modern society to conduct its business.

A) Max Weber
B) Thomas Jefferson
C) John Locke
D) Charles L. Schultze
E) James Madison

Answer: A

Page Ref: 468
Edition: National

8) In addition to a hierarchical authority structure, Max Weber argued that a bureaucracy involves all of the following EXCEPT

A) extensive rules.
B) an incentive system.
C) task specialization.
D) the merit principle.
E) hierarchical authority structure.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 468
Edition: National

9) The Weberian theory of bureaucracies views them in the most positive light as

A) acquisitive.
B) inefficient.
C) monopolistic.
D) hierarchical.
E) democratic.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 468
Edition: National
10) The Weberian model depicts a bureaucracy as

   A) fundamentally dangerous to a democratic society.
   B) inefficient, primarily concerned with maximizing its budget, and largely responsible for the growth of modern government.
   C) wasteful, bloated, over-staffed, over-paid and arrogant.
   D) a well-organized machine with plenty of working but hierarchical parts.
   E) ambling and groping, affected by chance, and largely operating by a loosely run style of trial and error.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 468
Edition: National

11) The Weberian model views bureaucracies as

   A) promoting good monopolies.
   B) loosely organized and loosely run.
   C) largely self-serving.
   D) efficient and necessary.
   E) hindering democracy.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 468
Edition: National

12) Which of the following would NOT be considered part of the Weberian model of bureaucracy?

   A) task specialization
   B) decentralized authority structure
   C) extensive rules
   D) impersonality
   E) A and D only

Answer: B

Page Ref: 468
Edition: National
13) Which of the following statements about bureaucracies is FALSE?

A) Bureaucracies are simply a way of organizing people to perform work.
B) The vast majority of tasks carried out by governments are noncontroversial.
C) Bureaucracies receive very little credit when they function well.
D) Government bureaucracies have been shown to be less efficient and effective than private bureaucracies.
E) Bureaucracies are prevalent in all levels of government.

Answer: D

14) The _______ employs about one-fourth of all federal civilian workers, more than any other department or agency.

A) Department of Education
B) Department of Health and Human Services
C) Department of Defense
D) Department of Justice
E) Department of Labor

Answer: C

15) There are roughly _______ civilian and military federal government employees

A) 800,000
B) 3,000,000
C) 2,100,000
D) 4,000,000
E) 500,000

Answer: D
16) As a whole, the permanent bureaucracy is
   A) nearly all white, male, and well-paid.
   B) overwhelmingly African American, female, and not so well-paid.
   C) more broadly representative of the American people than legislators, judges, or
      presidential appointees.
   D) better paid than are similar jobs in the private sector.
   E) a reflection of participatory politics, since most government workers are hired through
      the patronage system.

Answer: C  
Page Ref: 470  
Edition: National

17) As a whole, the permanent federal bureaucracy is
   A) less diverse in terms of the type of jobs than the private sector.
   B) dominated by white males.
   C) more broadly representative of the American people than the rest of the federal
      government.
   D) composed of an American elite.
   E) now employing 15 percent of the American work force.

Answer: C  
Page Ref: 470  
Edition: National

18) ________, is a hiring and promotion system based on knowing the right people, working in an
    election campaign, making large political donations, and/or having the right connections to
    win jobs with the government.
   A) The patronage system
   B) The federal Civil Service
   C) The bureaucracy
   D) The golden gate
   E) Administrative discretion

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 472  
Edition: National
19) Patronage is a hiring and promotion system based on
   A) knowing the right people.
   B) civil service exams.
   C) talent and skill.
   D) the Pendelton Act.
   E) the merit principle.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 472
   Edition: National

20) Until the late-nineteenth century, most government employees got their jobs through
   A) the patronage system.
   B) the merit principle.
   C) hereditary preferences.
   D) civil service testing.
   E) a lottery system.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 472
   Edition: National

21) The ________ Act was passed partly as a memorial to the memory of President James Garfield, who was assassinated in 1881.
   A) Pendleton Civil Service
   B) Treason
   C) Voting Rights
   D) Hatch
   E) Interstate Commerce

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 472
   Edition: National

22) The Pendleton Act established the
   A) patronage system.
   B) federal civil service.
   C) Office of Management and Budget.
   D) plum book.
   E) Interstate Commerce Commission.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 472
   Edition: National
23) The rationale for all civil service systems is based on
   A) patronage.
   B) the merit principle.
   C) the Hatch Act.
   D) the plum book.
   E) voluntary service.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 473
   Edition: National

24) The Hatch Act, passed in 1940,
   A) established the patronage system for federal employment.
   B) prohibited the president from firing the heads of independent executive agencies.
   C) prohibits federal civil service employees from active participation in partisan politics.
   D) required the publication of the plum book.
   E) established the federal civil service.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 473
   Edition: National

25) Once hired into the federal bureaucracy, a person is assigned a _______ rating, which determines one's salary range.
   A) Federal Register
   B) Weber
   C) General Schedule
   D) step ladder
   E) plum book
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 473
   Edition: National

26) The federal civil service was created by
   A) Article IV of the Constitution.
   B) an executive order of President Arthur.
   C) the Office of Management and Budget.
   D) the merit principle.
   E) the Pendleton Act.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 472
   Edition: National
27) The rationale for the civil service rests on the
   A) goal of centralizing government employment at the federal level.
   B) desire to create a nonpartisan government service and promotion on the basis of merit.
   C) General Schedule rating system for patronage appointees.
   D) the need to separate military institutions from civilian institutions to prevent undue military influence.
   E) need for job replacements when a new party comes to power.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 473
   Edition: National

28) Federal employees are prohibited from active participation in partisan politics through the
   A) Twenty-fifth Amendment.
   B) Pendleton Act.
   C) Supreme Court ruling in Democratic National Committee v. Hayes.
   D) Hatch Act.
   E) merit system.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 473
   Edition: National

29) Which of the following is a legitimate criticism of the federal civil service?
   A) Firing incompetents is extremely difficult.
   B) Workers are not protected against political firings.
   C) It does not operate on the merit principle.
   D) Too many federal civil servants are actively involved in partisan politics.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 473
   Edition: National

30) Which of the following would be included in a plum book?
   A) doctors at a Veteran’s Administration hospital
   B) postal carriers
   C) the phone numbers of a Congress member’s sex partners
   D) Senate committee chairs
   E) Cabinet secretaries

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 474
   Edition: National
31) Which of the following statements about the hiring and firing of civil servants is FALSE?

A) The Office of Personnel Management has elaborate rules about hiring, promotion, and firing of civil servants.
B) The top of the civil service is composed of about 9,000 members of the Senior Executive Service.
C) Once hired, civil servants are assigned a General Schedule ranging from GS–1 to GS–18.
D) Due to the merit system, it is easy to fire incompetent civil servants.
E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 473
Edition: National

32) The plum book lists

A) all federal contracts available for bid.
B) top federal jobs available by Presidential appointment.
C) all civil service jobs above GS–12.
D) job openings in the prestigious Office of Personnel Management.
E) appeals filed with the Merit Systems Protection Board.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 474
Edition: National

33) Which of the following statements about plum book appointees is FALSE?

A) Most presidents seek appointees with sympathy for similar policy positions.
B) Ambassadorship appointments often go to large campaign contributors.
C) Plum book appointees are often instrumental in changing and reforming their agencies.
D) Presidents often consider sex, region, and race in making plum book appointments.
E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 474
Edition: National
34) Which of the following is NOT true about presidential appointees to bureaucracies?

A) They often do not know their own agency subordinates very well, much less people in other agencies.
B) They must be recommended by the Office of Personnel Management’s “rule of three.”
C) As political appointees, they are often unaccustomed to the administrative routines, budget cycles, and legal complexities of their agencies or departments.
D) They tend to spend fewer years in their positions than those in the civil service.
E) none of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 474
Edition: National

35) According to Hugh Heclo, the plum book system of recruiting federal employees tends to result in the appointment of

A) talented experts with proven party loyalty.
B) people with access to the Internet, but not necessarily the most qualified people.
C) senior civil servants to sensitive posts.
D) administrators who do not stay long enough in their appointed position to be effective.
E) large numbers of women and minorities, just as it was intended to do.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 474
Edition: National

36) Which Cabinet department is charged with overseeing the nation’s national resources?

A) Homeland Security
B) Environmental Protection Agency
C) Defense
D) State
E) Interior

Answer: E

Page Ref: 475
Edition: National
37) The real work of a Cabinet department is done
   A) by the entire Cabinet.
   B) by the president's staff.
   C) by the undersecretaries.
   D) by the secretary.
   E) in the bureaus.
Answer: E

Page Ref: 475
Edition: National

38) The largest federal agency based on dollars spent is the
   A) Department of Defense.
   B) Department of Justice.
   C) State Department.
   D) Department of Health and Human Services.
   E) Social Security Administration.
Answer: E

Page Ref: 475
Edition: National

39) Which of these is the newest government agency?
   A) Drug Enforcement Agency
   B) Social Security Administration
   C) Department of Health and Human Services
   D) Drug Interdiction Agency
   E) Cyberspace Commission
Answer: B

Page Ref: 475
Edition: National

40) The Cabinet department that has the largest budget is the Department of
   A) Health and Human Services.
   B) Defense.
   C) Commerce.
   D) the Treasury.
   E) Education.
Answer: A

Page Ref: 475
Edition: National
41) Bureaus in the federal bureaucracy are also known as all of the following EXCEPT
   A) an administration.
   B) an office.
   C) a department.
   D) a service.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 475
   Edition: National

42) The Interstate Commerce Commission and the Federal Reserve Board are examples of
   A) dependent presidential boards.
   B) independent regulatory agencies.
   C) government corporations.
   D) Cabinet departments.
   E) independent executive agencies.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 475-477
   Edition: National

43) Which of the following statements about independent regulatory commissions is FALSE?
   A) Regulatory commission members cannot be fired by the president.
   B) Regulatory commissions consist of five to ten members.
   C) Regulatory commission members are appointed by the president and confirmed by the Senate.
   D) Regulatory commission members may not be drawn from the ranks of present or former employees of the regulated industry.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 475-478
   Edition: National
44) An independent regulatory agency is governed by

A) a small commission, usually with five to ten members, appointed by the president and subject to presidential firing.
B) members of the Senior Executive Service of the federal civil service.
C) a small commission, usually with five to ten members, appointed by the president for fixed terms.
D) a single executive appointed by and removable by the president.
E) a single executive appointed by the Senate committee responsible for the agency’s oversight.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 477–478
Edition: National

45) The parts of the federal bureaucracy with responsibility for different sectors of the economy, and making and enforcing rules designed to protect the public interest, are the

A) independent executive agencies.
B) independent regulatory agencies.
C) commercial ministries.
D) government corporations.
E) Cabinet departments.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 475
Edition: National

46) The General Services Administration and the National Aeronautical and Space Administration are examples of

A) government corporations.
B) independent regulatory agencies.
C) Cabinet departments.
D) presidential administrative agencies.
E) independent executive agencies.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 479–480
Edition: National
47) Independent regulatory agencies have
   A) complete independence from the president, but their policymakers are appointed by Congress.
   B) powerful rule-making, dispute-settling, and enforcement authority.
   C) no real enforcement power any more, and remain today as part of the federal government only in a ceremonial role.
   D) no formal ties to either the president or the Congress.
   E) governing commissions composed of long-time federal Civil Service employees.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 475
   Edition: National

48) Amtrak and the United States Postal Service are examples of
   A) government corporations.
   B) independent executive agencies.
   C) Cabinet departments.
   D) executive commercial agencies.
   E) independent regulatory agencies.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 479
   Edition: National

49) Government corporations
   A) operate an airline, manufacture steel, and provide health insurance.
   B) provide services and charge for them.
   C) tend to be captured by interest groups.
   D) are independent regulatory agencies.
   E) sell stock and pay dividends.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 479
   Edition: National
50) An obstacle to the successful implementation of public policy is
   A) the failure of Congress to pass authorizing legislation.
   B) the over-specialization of civil service employees.
   C) competition between the private and public sectors.
   D) unclear policy goals and poorly designed policies.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 481
   Edition: National

51) Once a policy decision has been made, such as by passing a legislative act or issuing an executive order, the bureaucracy is responsible for
   A) its ratification.
   B) its implementation.
   C) its deregulation.
   D) funding it.
   E) judging its merits.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 480
   Edition: National

52) The main job of federal bureaucrats is to
   A) advise the president and Cabinet on internal affairs.
   B) countervail the power of private corporations, especially monopolies.
   C) compete with the private sector for monopoly power.
   D) protect the interests of their constituencies.
   E) implement and regulate government policies.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 480
   Edition: National
53) Creating new agencies, developing guidelines, and coordinating resources to achieve a policy goal is called

A) bureaucratization.
B) regulation.
C) implementation.
D) actualization.
E) policymaking.

Answer: C

54) Which of the following is NOT a reason that policy implementation sometimes breaks down in the federal bureaucracy?

A) fragmentation of responsibilities
B) lack of standard operating procedures
C) lack of clarity in the original policy decision
D) faulty program design
E) lack of resources

Answer: B

55) Vigorous disputes over the implementation of Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 in regard to funding for women’s athletic programs arose primarily due to

A) faulty program design.
B) lack of clarity in the original policy decision.
C) adherence to administrative routine.
D) fragmentation of responsibilities.
E) all of the above

Answer: B
56) Section 844 of Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972

A) was declared unconstitutional by the Supreme Court.
B) specifically prohibits sex discrimination in college sports.
C) was supported by most colleges and universities.
D) was vaguely written, eventually resulting in scores of court cases.
E) was interpreted by Congress to exclude college football.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 482
Edition: National

57) A major complaint of the Food and Drug Administration is

A) its lack of clarity.
B) the fragmentation of responsibilities.
C) that there is no administrative discretion.
D) that too much food is contaminated by dirt and rodents.
E) the shortage of personnel.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 483
Edition: National

58) Which of the following is NOT true about standard operating procedures?

A) They provide routine rules to help bureaucrats make numerous everyday decisions.
B) Each federal department and agency has a plum book which lists its standard operating procedures.
C) They can sometimes be so routinized that they are difficult to change even in the face of changing circumstances.
D) They are referred to as "red tape" by those who find them burdensome.
E) They are used by street-level bureaucrats.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 484
Edition: National
59) Standard operating procedures
   A) usually prove to be unjust and discriminatory when followed to the letter.
   B) save time and bring uniformity to complex organizations.
   C) were waived by the Reagan Administration in an effort to make the bureaucracy more flexible and customize the solutions to problems.
   D) give authority to administrative actors to select among various responses to a given problem.
   E) are frustrating and inappropriate in addressing most situations.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 484
Edition: National

60) Standard operating procedures accomplish all of the following EXCEPT
   A) bring uniformity to complex organizations.
   B) save time.
   C) make personnel interchangeable.
   D) reduce red tape.
   E) treat citizens equally, regardless of class or race.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 484
Edition: National

61) ________ is the authority of administrative actors to select among various responses to a given problem.
   A) Standard operating procedure
   B) Administrative discretion
   C) Administrators' disposition
   D) Executive power
   E) Deregulation

Answer: B

Page Ref: 485
Edition: National
62) Standard operating procedures become frustrating to citizens and obstacles to action when they
   A) do not directly apply to a particular situation.
   B) slow bureaucratic responses to citizens' needs.
   C) are not specifically codified.
   D) transfer personnel to different posts.
   E) are not closely followed.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 484
   Edition: National

63) The authority of administrative actors to select among various responses to a given problem is called
   A) policy implementation.
   B) selective management.
   C) the merit principle.
   D) the definition of alternatives.
   E) administrative discretion.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 485
   Edition: National

64) Administrative discretion is greatest when
   A) rules and regulations are not written down.
   B) when standard operating procedures are used.
   C) an agency has elaborate rules and regulations.
   D) a particular agency is the subject of media coverage.
   E) rules do not fit a case.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 485
   Edition: National
65) The Federal Aviation Administration’s protocol for hijackings assumed that
   A) the pilot would be able to radio air traffic controllers and alert them to the problem.
   B) the FAA would be able to pinpoint the aircraft involved.
   C) there would be enough time for the government to formulate a response.
   D) the hijackers would be motivated in part by a desire to stay alive.
   E) All of the above

   Answer: E

   Page Ref: 485
   Edition: National

66) Those civil service employees who are in constant contact with the public (often a hostile one) and have considerable discretion are known as
   A) street–level bureaucrats.
   B) routinizers.
   C) General Schedule foot soldiers.
   D) the Senior Executive Service.
   E) civil servants.

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 485
   Edition: National

67) Administrative personnel who exercise discretion, pay attention to routine, and deal directly with clients,
   A) are called street–level bureaucrats.
   B) are limited to high–level positions in the administration.
   C) implement federal policies.
   D) are part of the Senior Executive Service.
   E) are usually dismissed for not following standard operating procedures.

   Answer: A

   Page Ref: 485
   Edition: National
68) Which of the following would not be considered a street-level bureaucrat?

A) a municipal court judge
B) an assistant secretary in the Department of Transportation
C) a welfare worker
D) a mail carrier who delivers mail exclusively in a high-rise building
E) a police officer

Answer: B
Page Ref: 485
Edition: National

69) When bureaucrats are asked to execute orders with which they do not agree,

A) they usually ignore the orders.
B) they are likely to lose their jobs if they do not follow through with the orders.
C) they can file a Conflict Of Interest Form and will be exempted from that duty by their boss.
D) implementation follows standard operating procedures.
E) slippage is likely to occur between policy decisions and performance.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 486
Edition: National

70) Which of the following statements is FALSE?

A) Bureaucrats are often fired for using too much administrative discretion.
B) Pay raises in the bureaucracy tend to be small and across-the-board.
C) Removing appointed officials may be politically embarrassing to the president.
D) A government agency cannot expand just because it is performing a service effectively and efficiently.
E) none of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 486
Edition: National
71) The diffusion of responsibility within the bureaucracy

A) makes the coordination of policies both time-consuming and difficult.
B) increases administrative discretion.
C) allows for a diversity of opinion thus facilitating effective administration.
D) helps diminish the use of administrative discretion.
E) facilitates the use of inter-bureaucracy standard operating procedures.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 487
Edition: National

72) Proposals to reorganize the government in order to solve the problem of bureaucratic fragmentation

A) are often opposed by agencies not wanting to be submerged within a broader bureaucratic unit.
B) tend to be supported by Republican presidents, who advocate governmental centralization.
C) are opposed by congressional committees, fearing they will be given greater responsibility to oversee larger and more diverse agencies.
D) are supported by interest groups, who feel they could better control the regulatory programs of a reorganized bureaucracy.
E) are supported and opposed for all of these reasons.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 488
Edition: National

73) The Voting Rights Act of 1965

A) was very difficult to implement because of the fragmentation of responsibility for implementing it.
B) was successfully implemented thanks to its clear goal, its clear methods to achieve the goal, and its lack of bureaucratic fragmentation.
C) failed to achieve its policy goals because of the outright hostility of street-level bureaucrats.
D) was impossible to implement because of a lack of clarity in the legislation.
E) All but D are true.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 488
Edition: National
74) The Voting Rights Act of 1965 was successful for all of the following reasons EXCEPT

A) its goal was clear.
B) its implementation was straightforward.
C) the authority of the implementors was plain.
D) it was universally supported.
E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 488-489
Edition: National

75) The use of government authority to control or change some practice in the private sector is known as

A) socialism.
B) regulation.
C) oversight.
D) executive review.
E) public administration.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 489
Edition: National

76) The use of governmental authority to control or change some practice in the private sector is called

A) regulation.
B) patronage.
C) administrative discretion.
D) policy implementation.
E) public administration.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 489
Edition: National
77) Which of the following statements about government regulation in America is accurate?

A) The Constitution set up only six regulatory agencies; the others have been created within the past 100 years or so.

B) The Federal Communications Commission was the first independent regulatory agency.

C) Until 1887, the federal government made almost no regulatory policies and had no regulatory agencies.

D) Regulatory agencies tended to be more popular in the early years of the nation’s history, then grew more controversial during the late-nineteenth century.

E) both A and C

Answer: C

Page Ref: 491
Edition: National

78) In the case of Munn v. Illinois, decided in 1877, the United States Supreme Court

A) ruled that states could not impose corporate income taxes.

B) ruled that the Civil Service System was constitutional.

C) outlawed the patronage system.

D) held that government had no right to regulate the business operations of a firm.

E) upheld the right of government to regulate the business operations of a firm.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 491
Edition: National

79) Until 1887, the federal government

A) had almost no regulatory policies.

B) was involved only in social regulation.

C) owned and operated most of the major industries in the country.

D) forbade the states from passing regulatory policies.

E) was involved only in economic regulation.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 491
Edition: National
80) The Supreme Court case of *Munn v. Illinois* (1877)

A) declared that regulation was not within the realm of state powers.
B) first established the right to own property as one of the rights of the Bill of Rights.
C) set the precedent for deregulation.
D) upheld the right of government to regulate the business operations of a firm.
E) upheld the constitutionality of the Interstate Commerce Commission.

Answer: D

81) Most regulatory agencies adopt specific ________ to carry out a policy, based on what they believe was the intended purpose of the specific policy at hand.

A) guidelines  
B) iron triangles  
C) incentive systems  
D) mandates  
E) merit principles

Answer: A

82) Whatever strategy Congress permits a regulatory agency to use, all regulation contains the following elements EXCEPT

A) some means of enforcing compliance. 
B) a grant of power and set of directions from Congress. 
C) a set of rules and guidelines by the regulatory agency itself. 
D) an incentive system to maximize performance by those regulated. 
E) none of the above

Answer: D
83) All regulations contain each of the following elements EXCEPT

A) a grant of power and set of directions from Congress
B) some means of enforcing compliance with congressional goals and agency regulations
C) presidential oversight and control of enforcement
D) a set of rules and guidelines by the regulatory agency itself
E) All of these are elements of the regulatory process.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 491
Edition: National

84) When Congress passes regulatory legislation for which it has established goals, it then

A) grants power to regulatory agencies to develop guidelines and enforce compliance.
B) assigns responsibility for administration to regulatory agencies and responsibility for enforcement to the courts.
C) establishes the guidelines that regulatory agencies must implement.
D) grants interest groups the power to develop the rules governing the new policy.
E) authorizes the president to use his administrative discretion to implement the legislation.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 491
Edition: National

85) One proposed solution to the "problem" of the proliferation of regulatory agencies and policies has been

A) deregulation.
B) deproliferation.
C) budget cuts.
D) standard operating procedures.
E) the incentive system.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 491
Edition: National
86) Deregulation has resulted, at least in part, in each of the following EXCEPT

A) environmental damage.
B) the proliferation of government agencies.
C) competitive airline fares.
D) an expensive bailout of the savings and loan industry.
E) less government oversight in some key areas.

Answer: B

87) Which of the following is NOT an accusation made against the regulatory system?

A) Excessive regulation contributed to the savings and loan industry disaster of the 1980s.
B) If the producer is faced with expensive regulations, costs will inevitably be passed along to the consumer in the form of higher prices.
C) Regulations do not always work well, and they simply create massive regulatory bureaucracies.
D) Other nations have laxer regulations on pollution, worker safety, and other business practices, thus American exports often cost more.
E) All of these have been criticisms of regulation.

Answer: A

88) Each of the following is a criticism of regulation EXCEPT that it

A) lowers prices.
B) does not work.
C) distorts market forces.
D) is too complex.
E) gives bureaucrats too much power.

Answer: A
89) Most of the government is composed of
   A) regulators.
   B) lawyers.
   C) bureaucrats.
   D) elected legislators.
   E) politicians.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 493
Edition: National

90) Executive orders are issued by
   A) independent regulatory agencies.
   B) any federal agency or department.
   C) Congress.
   D) members of the Senior Executive Service.
   E) the president.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 494
Edition: National

91) Which of the following is NOT a method a president can use to control the bureaucracy?
   A) issue executive orders or more informal requests
   B) rewrite statutes to make instructions clearer as to how policies are intended
   C) appoint people to head an agency who share the president’s goals and strategies
   D) tinker with an agency’s recommended budget
   E) request a congressional oversight hearing

Answer: B
Page Ref: 494-495
Edition: National

92) Which of the following statements about Congress and the bureaucracy is FALSE?
   A) Bureaucracies can help Congress find answers to policy problems.
   B) Bureaucracies help provide services to constituents.
   C) Members of Congress often find a big bureaucracy congenial.
   D) Congress has found it easy to control the bureaucracy.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 495-496
Edition: National
93) Congress tries to control the bureaucracy through each of the following EXCEPT

A) rewriting legislation.
B) influencing the appointment of agency heads.
C) holding hearings.
D) issuing congressional orders.
E) both A and B

Answer: D

94) Congress tries to control the bureaucracy through

A) rewriting laws and budgets and holding hearings.
B) deregulation.
C) the use of executive orders and appointments.
D) the creation of "iron triangles."
E) all of the above

Answer: A

95) To limit bureaucratic discretion and make its instructions clearer, Congress can

A) deregulate.
B) write new and more detailed legislation.
C) hold congressional hearings.
D) reregulate.
E) threaten to cut an agency's budget.

Answer: B

96) As the oversight powers of Congress in regard to the bureaucracy have become more vigorous,

A) Congress is increasingly the policy-implementation branch of government.
B) it has become easier to rein in the bureaucracy.
C) they have also become more fragmented.
D) "iron triangles" have weakened considerably.
E) the amount of government corruption has decreased dramatically.

Answer: C
97) A major problem for presidents and Congress in controlling bureaucracies is the existence of
   A) the plum book.
   B) Supreme Court rulings curbing the scope of their oversight.
   C) "iron triangles."
   D) standard operating procedures.
   E) the incentive system.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 496
Edition: National

98) An "iron triangle" is also referred to as
   A) a government corporation.
   B) a reverse diagonal.
   C) a subgovernment.
   D) the alphabet soup of American government.
   E) an issue network.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 496
Edition: National

99) An "iron triangle" consists of
   A) representatives of the executive, legislative, and judicial branches of the government.
   B) the president, the head of a relevant congressional committee, and the head of any
      regulatory agency.
   C) a bureaucratic agency, an interest group, and a congressional committee or
      subcommittee.
   D) the metal stamp used to certify that the president has approved a new regulation and it
      now takes legal effect.
   E) those favoring regulation X, those opposing regulation X, and the regulatory agency in
      charge of overseeing X.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 496
Edition: National
100) A(n) _______ consists of an administrative agency, an interest group, and a congressional committee or subcommittee.
   A) issue network
   B) independent executive agency
   C) triumvirate
   D) administrative discretion triad
   E) "iron triangle"
   Answer: E

101) "Iron triangles" face challenges from a growing number of
   A) street-level bureaucrats.
   B) subgovernments.
   C) plastics and softer metals.
   D) administrative discretions.
   E) issue networks.
   Answer: E

102) Issue networks are
   A) a growing participatory force in bureaucratic decision making whose members’ interest in issues is intellectual or emotional rather than material.
   B) the same as "iron triangles."
   C) the relatively new television stations that specialize in political coverage.
   D) subject to standard operating procedures.
   E) two or more agencies that share regulatory power when a policy or regulation affects more than one regulatory body.
   Answer: A
103) Subgovernments promote
   A) centralization of authority.
   B) strong executive branch control of policymaking.
   C) the control of the bureaucracy by Congress.
   D) decentralized and fragmented policymaking.
   E) presidential control of bureaucratic discretion.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 496-497
Edition: National

104) A group of participants in bureaucratic policymaking with technical policy expertise and intellectual and emotional commitment to the issue is called
   A) a government corporation.
   B) an "iron triangle".
   C) a subgovernment.
   D) an issue network.
   E) a vested cohort.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 496
Edition: National

105) Which of the following is NOT an area in which an "iron triangle" has controlled federal policy over the past several decades?
   A) nuclear power policy
   B) environmental policy
   C) pesticide policy
   D) smoking & tobacco policy
   E) none of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 496
Edition: National
106) Which of the following is NOT true about "iron triangles"?

A) They present tremendous difficulties for Congress and the president when they attempt to control the bureaucracy.

B) They add a strong decentralizing and fragmenting element to the government's policymaking process.

C) They are also known as subgovernments.

D) They are indestructible.

E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 496–497
Edition: National

107) "Iron triangles" are composed of

A) primarily iron, but also metallic, alloys.

B) bureaucratic agencies, interest groups, and congressional committees.

C) urban bureaucracies, state bureaucracies, and federal bureaucracies.

D) congressional committees, state governments, and bureaucratic agencies.

E) senators, governors, and department heads.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 496–497
Edition: National

108) In 1887, Congress established the first regulatory agency, the ________, and charged it with regulating the railroads, their prices, and their services to farmers.

A) Department of Transportation

B) Railroad Commission

C) American Railway Union

D) Federal Trade Commission

E) Interstate Commerce Commission

Answer: E

Page Ref: 491
Edition: National
109) Which of the following statements about bureaucracies and the scope of government is FALSE?

A) When the president and Congress chose to deregulate certain areas of the economy or cut taxes, the bureaucracy prevented them from doing so.
B) The federal bureaucracy has actually shrunk in size relative to the population it serves.
C) The bureaucracy is now expected to play an active role in dealing with social and economic problems.
D) The federal bureaucracy has not grown over the past two generations.
E) none of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 498-499
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Each bureaucratic agency is created by Congress, which sets its budget and writes the basic policies it is to administer.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 467
Edition: National

2) Most federal bureaucrats work in Washington, D.C., or the D.C. metropolitan area.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 470
Edition: National

3) Over the past two generations, the federal bureaucracy has shrunk in size relative to the population it serves.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 469
Edition: National

4) Bureaucracies are a little like referees: When they work well, no one gives them much credit, but when they work poorly, everyone calls them unfair, incompetent, or inefficient.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 470
Edition: National

5) Scholars have demonstrated that government bureaucracies are efficient and effective than private bureaucracies.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 470
Edition: National
6) The Department of Health and Human Services employs the largest number of civilian workers in the federal bureaucracy.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 470
Edition: National

7) Altogether, the Department of Defense employs about one-half of federal civilian workers in addition to the 1.5 million men and women in uniform.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 470
Edition: National

8) The Hatch Act of 1940 prohibits civil service employees from active participation in partisan politics.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 473
Edition: National

9) The Federal Trade Commission is an independent regulatory agency of the federal government which regulates the railroad and trucking industries.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 477
Edition: National

10) Commission members of independent regulatory commissions can be fired by the president.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 477
Edition: National

11) The government established Amtrak as the government corporation providing passenger railroad service when the private passenger railroads became a sick industry some years ago.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 479
Edition: National

12) The General Service Administration (GSA), the National Science Foundation (NSF), and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration are all examples of regulatory agencies.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 479
Edition: National

13) Section 844 of Title IX of the Education Act of 1972 is an example of clarity in legislative goals.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 481-482
Edition: National
14) Policy problems that Congress cannot resolve are likely to be easily resolved by bureaucrats.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 482
Edition: National

15) Government agencies are always given the necessary resources and authority to implement a policy by Congress.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 483
Edition: National

16) Street bureaucrats are those civil service employees who have the highest GS ratings.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 485
Edition: National

17) Most bureaucrats are guided by standard operating procedures (SOPs) to help them make numerous everyday decisions based on a consistent, set routine.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 485
Edition: National

18) A strong argument for deregulation is that the number and complexity of regulatory policies have made regulation too complex and burdensome.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 491–492
Edition: National

19) One of the staunchest supporters of deregulation was President Ronald Reagan.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 492
Edition: National

20) Since Congress holds the power of the purse, the president has no authority over an agency’s budget.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 493–494
Edition: National

21) The Supreme Court, Congress, and the federal bureaucracy headed by the president constitute what is often called the “iron triangle.”

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 496
Edition: National
Short Answer Questions

1) The classic conception of _______ was advanced by the German sociologist Max Weber, who stressed that it was a “rational” way for modern society to conduct its business: a well-organized machine with plenty of working, but hierarchical, parts.

Answer: bureaucracy
Page Ref: 468
Edition: National

2) What are the main elements of the Weberian model of bureaucracies?

Answer: a hierarchical authority structure, task specialization, extensive rules, merit principle and impersonality
Page Ref: 468
Edition: National

3) Only the _______ has more civilian employees in the federal bureaucracy than does the United States Postal Service.

Answer: Department of Defense
Page Ref: 470
Edition: National

4) Define the term *patronage* and give an example of how it was used.

Answer: a hiring and promotion system based on political reasons rather than on merit or competence; answers will vary
Page Ref: 472
Edition: National

5) After President James Garfield’s assassination in 1881, the new president pushed Congress into passing the Pendleton _______ Act.

Answer: Civil Service
Page Ref: 472
Edition: National

6) What is the function of the Office of Personnel Management?

Answer: in charge of hiring for most agencies of the federal government
Page Ref: 473
Edition: National

7) As a new administration prepares to take control of the government, Congress publishes the _______, which lists top federal jobs available for direct presidential appointment.

Answer: plum book
Page Ref: 474
Edition: National
8) The Securities and Exchange Commission and the Federal Reserve Board are both examples of ________, each governed by a small commission, usually with five to ten members appointed by the president for fixed terms and confirmed by the Senate.

Answer: independent regulatory agencies
Page Ref: 475–478
Edition: National

9) What are independent executive agencies? Give an example.

Answer: government agencies that are not regulatory agencies or government corporations yet whose administrators are appointed by the president and serve at his pleasure; General Services Administration, National Science Foundation, National Aeronautics and Space Administration
Page Ref: 479–480
Edition: National

10) To help bureaucrats make everyday decisions in a routine manner, they are required to follow set rules known as ________, which some criticize as "red tape."

Answer: standard operating procedures
Page Ref: 484
Edition: National

11) Why are standard operating procedures important to an agency?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 484
Edition: National

12) What is meant by administrative discretion, and when is it most often used?

Answer: the authority of administrative actors to select among various responses to a given problem; greatest when standard operating procedures do not fit for a case
Page Ref: 485
Edition: National

13) ________ bureaucrats are those who are in constant contact with the public (often a hostile one) and have considerable discretion; they include police officers, welfare workers, and lower court judges.

Answer: Street-level
Page Ref: 485
Edition: National

14) The first federal regulatory agency was the ________, set up in 1887 to regulate the railroads, their prices, and their services to farmers.

Answer: Interstate Commerce Commission
Page Ref: 491
Edition: National
15) What is the significance of the Supreme Court case of *Munn v. Illinois* (1877)?

Answer: Supreme Court case in which the Court upheld the right of government to regulate the business operations of a firm

*Page Ref: 491*
*Edition: National*

16) List the three elements contained in all regulation.

Answer: A grant of power from Congress, guidelines issued by a regulatory agency, and a means of enforcement.

*Page Ref: 491*
*Edition: National*

17) The idea behind ______ is that the number and complexity of regulatory policies have made regulation too complex and burdensome, and that regulation raises prices, distorts market forces, and does not do what it sets out to do.

Answer: deregulation

*Page Ref: 491–492*
*Edition: National*

18) What is an executive order and why are they issued?

Answer: regulations originating from the executive branch; used by presidents to control the bureaucracy

*Page Ref: 494*
*Edition: National*

19) An "iron triangle" consists of a(n) ______, a Congressional committee or subcommittee, and a bureaucratic agency.

Answer: interest group

*Page Ref: 496*
*Edition: National*

20) What are issue networks? Explain their significance.

Answer: consist of individuals with technical policy expertise and those who are drawn to an issue out of intellectual or emotional commitments rather than material interests; these individuals work aside subgovernments, complicating their calculations and decreasing the predictability of those involved in subgovernments

*Page Ref: 496*
*Edition: National*

**Essay Questions**

1) How does the American public feel about bureaucrats and bureaucracy? What are the most prevalent myths about bureaucracy?

*Page Ref: 468–470*
*Edition: National*
2) Describe some of the more prevalent myths about the federal bureaucracy, and why they are only myths. What has your experience been with government bureaucrats? Would you recommend any changes based on your experience? Explain.

Page Ref: 468-470; 466-501
Edition: National

3) Evaluate the size of the American bureaucracy. Is the bureaucracy too big or too small?

Page Ref: 469; 475-480
Edition: National

4) How were most federal jobs obtained up until the late-nineteenth century? What was the key event that prompted the federal government to start the civil service? What is the civil service based upon, and what are its strengths and weaknesses? Explain.

Page Ref: 472
Edition: National

5) Who are the bureaucrats and how do they become government workers? Compare and contrast the theories on what bureaucrats do and how they behave.

Page Ref: 470-474
Edition: National

6) What is the plum book, and what is its role in staffing the federal bureaucracy? How do its offices differ from those staffed through the civil service? How do the people who serve in plum book jobs differ from civil service employees? Explain.

Page Ref: 472-474
Edition: National

7) What is an independent regulatory agency, and what does it do? Briefly name two or three examples of such agencies. How do they differ from Cabinet departments in terms of presidential control? How do they differ from government corporations? Are these differences appropriate? Explain.

Page Ref: 475-478
Edition: National

8) Identify, describe, and give examples of the four basic types of bureaucracy in the federal government.

Page Ref: 475-480
Edition: National

9) Identify, describe, and give examples of the implementation functions of bureaucracies.

Page Ref: 480-489
Edition: National

10) Why is policy implementation left to the bureaucracy? What are some of the principal causes of implementation breakdown? What improvements do you think could be made to lessen the likelihood of such breakdowns? Explain.

Page Ref: 480-488
Edition: National
11) Explain why the implementation process sometimes fails. What are the obstacles to successful implementation? As an example, compare and contrast the implementation of Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972 and the Voting Rights Act of 1965. Why was one more successfully implemented than the other?

Page Ref: 480-489
Edition: National


Page Ref: 488-489
Edition: National

13) What methods are at the disposal of presidents and Congress to control the bureaucracy? Which are most widely used? How effective are they? Do you think these controls are sufficient? Explain.

Page Ref: 493-498
Edition: National

14) Discuss the various methods used by the president and Congress to control the bureaucracy. Who is generally more successful in getting the bureaucracy to do what it wants?

Page Ref: 493–498
Edition: National

15) Explain the methods that presidents and Congress use to try to control the bureaucracy. Why is it difficult to control and reform the bureaucracy in the United States?

Page Ref: 493–498
Edition: National

16) What is an "iron triangle," and what is its significance in American government? Give an example. Are these natural groupings which should be encouraged or at least tolerated, or are they fundamentally dangerous to a democracy? Explain.

Page Ref: 496–497
Edition: National
Chapter 16  The Federal Courts

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) The great majority of America's judicial business is transacted in
   A) state courts of original jurisdiction.
   B) Tax Court.
   C) Supreme Courts.
   D) the United States courts of appeal.
   E) federal courts of original jurisdiction.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 504
   Edition: National

2) Which of the following statements about the courts is FALSE?
   A) Supreme Court decisions may directly shape people's lives.
   B) Most of American judicial policy is made in the Supreme Court.
   C) The great bulk of American legal business is transacted in the less-noticed courts.
   D) The Supreme Court decides a handful of key issues each year.
   E) The judicial system in the U.S. is, at least in principle, an adversarial one.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 504
   Edition: National

3) One of the differences between criminal law and civil law is that in civil law
   A) there is no charge that a law has been violated.
   B) there is no jury.
   C) the case cannot be appealed.
   D) the government cannot be one of the litigants.
   E) common law takes precedent over statutory law.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 504
   Edition: National
4) Litigants are
   A) the attorneys.
   B) the plaintiff and the defendant.
   C) the plaintiff and the plaintiff’s attorney.
   D) the defendant and the defendant’s attorney.
   E) plaintiffs.
   Answer: B

5) Not everyone can challenge a law. Litigants must have what is called ________, meaning that they must have a serious personal stake in the case, typically determined by whether or not they have sustained or are in danger of an injury.
   A) standing to sue
   B) a writ of mandamus
   C) stare decisis
   D) original jurisdiction
   E) legal prerogative
   Answer: A

6) Class action suits
   A) are those which have to do with constitutional issues, thus broadening the standing to sue.
   B) are filed by students seeking to force a school district to offer additional sections of perpetually over-enrolled courses.
   C) permit a small number of people to sue on behalf of all other people similarly situated.
   D) may only be filed if all of those with a standing to sue agree to participate.
   E) are routinely filed by teachers’ groups to prepare the way for legal strikes.
   Answer: C
7) Courts may only decide _______ disputes.
   A) civil
   B) constitutional
   C) justiciable
   D) criminal
   E) class action

Answer: C
Page Ref: 505
Edition: National

8) Standing to sue is determined by
   A) the judiciary committee of Congress.
   B) whether or not the case involves a class action suit.
   C) the Solicitor General's office.
   D) whether or not the litigants have a serious interest in a case.
   E) a court-appointed jury.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 505
Edition: National

9) Merely being a taxpayer and being opposed to a law does not provide the standing necessary to challenge that law in court except in cases pertaining to
   A) taxation.
   B) governmental support for religion.
   C) environmental protection.
   D) civil liberties.
   E) racial or sexual discrimination.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 505
Edition: National
10) Class action suits
   A) permit a small number of people to sue on behalf of all other people similarly situated.
   B) are cases in which the government sues on behalf of groups of people unable to go to
      court for a variety of reasons.
   C) are civil suits brought to the courts by interest groups.
   D) are civil or criminal cases involving discrimination on the basis of income.
   E) involve groups of people suing each other rather than individuals.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 505
   Edition: National

11) One constraint on federal courts is that they may decide only
   A) statutory law.
   B) appellate cases.
   C) justiciable disputes.
   D) constitutional issues.
   E) interstate conflicts.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 505
   Edition: National

12) All of the following are examples of standing to sue EXCEPT
   A) having sustained a direct injury from another party.
   B) serious interest in the case.
   C) raising a political question.
   D) having sustained a direct injury from the government.
   E) being a member of a class

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 505
   Edition: National
13) The Constitution specifically provided that there would be a Supreme Court,
   A) and established a system of lower federal courts throughout the nation.
   B) but left it up to the individual states to establish lower federal courts of general
      jurisdiction.
   C) but left it to the discretion of Congress to establish lower federal courts of general
      jurisdiction.
   D) but left it up to the Supreme Court itself to establish lower federal courts of general
      jurisdiction.
   E) and granted the President the power to establish any lower federal courts he deemed
      necessary.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 507
   Edition: National

14) Lower federal courts of general jurisdiction were established by
   A) President George Washington.
   B) the Judiciary Act of 1789.
   C) the Eleventh Amendment.
   D) the Constitution.
   E) the Supreme Court.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 507
   Edition: National

15) Courts with _______ hear cases brought to them on appeal from a lower court.
   A) stare decisis
   B) original jurisdiction
   C) judicial review
   D) justiciable disputes
   E) appellate jurisdiction

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 507
   Edition: National
16) A legislative court is
   A) a state-level court.
   B) the initial level of federal courts for most disputes.
   C) staffed by judges who lack the protections against removal or salary reductions while in office.
   D) staffed by judges who serve for life.
   E) one that specializes in the review of legislation for its constitutionality.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

17) The entry point for most litigation in the federal courts is in one of the _______ courts.
   A) appellate
   B) district
   C) Superior
   D) legislative
   E) municipal

Answer: B
Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

18) There are _______ federal district courts.
   A) 53
   B) 12
   C) 9
   D) 91
   E) 50

Answer: D
Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

19) Courts of original jurisdiction are
   A) usually federal courts.
   B) trial courts.
   C) highly specialized in the types of cases they hear.
   D) usually appellate courts.
   E) the courts that were established by the original Constitution rather than by Congress.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 507
Edition: National
20) Courts with appellate jurisdiction
   A) determine the facts about a case.
   B) review the legal issues involved in a case.
   C) hear only criminal cases.
   D) have no original jurisdiction.
   E) hear only civil cases
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 507
   Edition: National

21) The Court of Claims is a
   A) district court.
   B) state court.
   C) legislative court.
   D) Constitutional court.
   E) presidential court.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 507
   Edition: National

22) Which one of the following is NOT true about the federal district courts?
   A) Each district has between 2 and 27 judges, with one judge usually presiding alone over most cases.
   B) They hear appeals from municipal, county, and state courts.
   C) They are the only federal courts in which trials are held, and juries may be impaneled.
   D) They are the entry points for most litigation in the federal court system.
   E) All federal district court judges are appointed by the president and confirmed by Congress.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 507-508
   Edition: National
23) Which of the following is NOT under the jurisdiction of the district courts?
   A) supervision of bankruptcy proceedings
   B) supervision of the naturalization of aliens
   C) admiralty and maritime law cases
   D) the majority of all criminal cases in the United States
   E) civil suits under federal law

Answer: D
Page Ref: 507-508
Edition: National

24) The only federal courts in which trials are held, and in which juries may be impaneled, are the
   A) superior courts.
   B) legislative courts.
   C) courts of claims.
   D) district courts.
   E) courts of appeal.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

25) About 98 percent of all criminal cases in the United States are heard in
   A) federal district courts.
   B) appellate courts.
   C) state and local court systems.
   D) the Supreme Court.
   E) legislative courts.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

26) An important player at the district court level in each district is the ________, nominated by
   the president and confirmed by the Senate. He or she serves at the discretion of the president.
   A) Solicitor General
   B) county clerk
   C) federal marshal
   D) United States attorney
   E) federal magistrate

Answer: D
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National
27) Most criminal and civil cases
   A) are decided by jury trial in state courts.
   B) never reach trial, but are settled out of court.
   C) are appealed to a higher court.
   D) are decided by a judge in federal district court.
   E) eventually end up in the Supreme Court.
   Answer: B

Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

28) The vast majority of all civil and criminal cases
   A) begin and end in state courts.
   B) involve federal law, but are tried in state courts.
   C) begin and end in federal courts.
   D) begin in state courts and are appealed to federal courts.
   E) involve state laws that are tried in federal courts.
   Answer: A

Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

29) Federal magistrates perform each of the following functions EXCEPT
   A) preside over some trials.
   B) issue warrants for arrest.
   C) hear motions subject to review.
   D) prosecute violations of federal law.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: D

Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

30) The United States government is represented in civil cases in district courts by a
   A) district judge.
   B) United States marshal.
   C) federal magistrate.
   D) United States attorney.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: D

Page Ref: 508
Edition: National
31) About 75 percent of the more than 63,000 cases heard in the United States courts of appeal come from
   A) challenges to orders of many federal regulatory agencies, such as the Securities and Exchange Commission.
   B) the Supreme Court.
   C) the Superior Courts.
   D) the district courts.
   E) the legislative courts.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 509
Edition: National

32) The jurisdiction of the district courts extends to each of the following EXCEPT
   A) federal crimes.
   B) supervision of bankruptcy proceedings.
   C) appeals from state courts.
   D) admiralty and maritime law cases.
   E) federal civil suits.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 509
Edition: National

33) Which of the following is NOT true about the United States courts of appeal?
   A) They hold no actual trials, hear no testimony, and do not impanel juries.
   B) Their focus is on correcting errors of procedure and law that occurred in the original proceedings of the case.
   C) Their decisions are final and cannot be appealed to the Supreme Court.
   D) Their decisions set precedent for all the courts and agencies within their jurisdiction.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 509
Edition: National
34) For handling cases at the courts of appeal level, the United States is divided into _______ judicial circuits, including one for the District of Columbia.

A) 55  
B) 26  
C) 12  
D) 51  
E) 91  

Answer: C

Page Ref: 509  
Edition: National

35) Each court of appeals normally hears cases in panels consisting of _______ judges.

A) 9  
B) 6  
C) 12  
D) 7  
E) 3  

Answer: E

Page Ref: 509  
Edition: National

36) The United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit

A) decides which cases will and will not be heard by the Supreme Court.  
B) screens all cases going to the Supreme Court, from which the Supreme Court decides which cases to take.  
C) consists of the Supreme Court itself.  
D) is responsible for determining the constitutionality of laws passed by Congress.  
E) consists of judges who hear appeals in specialized cases such as those regarding patents, copyrights, etc.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 509  
Edition: National
37) Appeals regarding patents would be heard by
   A) the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.
   B) the Court of Claims.
   C) the Solicitor General.
   D) a Federal District Court.
   E) the United States Supreme Court.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 509
   Edition: National

38) The Supreme Court consists of the chief justice and _______ associate justices.
   A) eight
   B) ten
   C) six
   D) twelve
   E) nine
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 510
   Edition: National

39) The functions of the Supreme Court include each of the following EXCEPT
   A) maintaining national supremacy in the law.
   B) resolving conflicts among the states.
   C) reviewing the evidence in cases involving crimes committed by public officials.
   D) ensuring uniformity in the interpretation of national laws.
   E) rule on cases accepted from lower courts.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 510
   Edition: National

40) The size of the Supreme Court has remained the same since
   A) the Judiciary Act of 1789.
   B) the Twelfth Amendment was ratified in 1804.
   C) President Roosevelt expanded it in 1937.
   D) the original Constitution specified the number of justices.
   E) President Ulysses S. Grant took office in 1869.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 510
   Edition: National
41) The United States Supreme Court's jurisdiction includes
   A) appellate jurisdiction from both state and federal courts.
   B) original jurisdiction only in cases involving foreign diplomats.
   C) only appellate jurisdiction.
   D) original jurisdiction in cases involving citizens from one state only if it involves a federal question.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 510
Edition: National

42) Most decisions handed down by the Supreme Court are cases involving
   A) original jurisdiction.
   B) appeals from state courts.
   C) federal felonies involving "exceptional circumstances."
   D) appeals from lower federal courts.
   E) appeals from state supreme courts.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 511
Edition: National

43) Most cases heard by the Supreme Court come from
   A) matters over which the Supreme Court has original jurisdiction.
   B) state criminal courts.
   C) the United States Court of Appeal for the Federal Circuit.
   D) civil actions from lower federal courts.
   E) civil actions from state courts.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 511
Edition: National
44) Which of the following statements about federal judges is FALSE?

A) All federal judges are nominated by the president and confirmed by a majority of the Senate.
B) Federal judges may be removed from office only by conviction of impeachment.
C) Members of the federal judiciary can not have their salaries reduced.
D) Only seven Supreme Court justices have ever been removed from office.
E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 511
Edition: National

45) The customary manner in which the Senate disposes of federal judicial nominations in one state is through

A) the seniority system.
B) senatorial courtesy.
C) majority vote, usually along party lines.
D) judicial review.
E) state's review.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 512
Edition: National

46) Senators have dominated the selection of judges for the federal district courts through

A) their control of the budget.
B) their power over court jurisdictions.
C) the influence of the Senate Judiciary Committee.
D) the custom of senatorial courtesy.
E) all of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 512
Edition: National
47) Which of the following statements about senatorial courtesy is FALSE?

A) When there is a vacancy for a federal judgeship, the relevant senator will suggest one or more names to the Attorney General and the president.

B) Presidents usually check carefully with the relevant senator ahead of time so that they will avoid making a nomination that will fail to be confirmed.

C) To invoke senatorial courtesy, the relevant senator must provide documented evidence why the nominee is not fit for office.

D) Federal judicial nominations are not confirmed when opposed by a senator of the president's party from the state in which the nominee is to serve.

E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 512
Edition: National

48) Which of the following statements about judicial selection in the lower courts is FALSE?

A) The president usually has more influence in the selection of judges to the federal courts of appeal than to federal district courts.

B) Sitting judges may be asked to evaluate prospective judicial nominees.

C) The Department of Justice and the Federal Bureau of Investigation conduct competency and background checks on prospective judicial nominees.

D) Candidates for judicial nomination rarely campaign for the positions themselves.

E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 512
Edition: National

49) Which of the following statements about the selection of Supreme Court justices is FALSE?

A) The president usually relies on the Attorney General and the Department of Justice to identify and screen candidates for the Court.

B) Senators play a greater role in the recruitment of Supreme Court justices than in the selection of lower court judges.

C) The president usually operates under fewer constraints in nominating members to the Supreme Court than to the lower courts.

D) Candidates for nomination to the Supreme Court usually keep a low profile.

E) none of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 513-514
Edition: National
50) About _______ of nominees to the Supreme Court fail to be confirmed.
   A) 38 percent
   B) 5 percent
   C) 50 percent
   D) 20 percent
   E) 10 percent
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 513
   Edition: National

51) In its investigation of Supreme Court nominees, the Senate Judiciary Committee
   A) follows the custom of senatorial courtesy and confirms nominees approved by their
       home state senators.
   B) limits its investigation to the nominee's judicial integrity and experience.
   C) is basically a rubber stamp for the president’s nomination.
   D) may probe a nominee’s judicial philosophy in great detail.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 514
   Edition: National

52) In order to convince moderate senators to join them, opponents of a nomination for the
   Supreme Court try to focus on a nominee's
   A) mistrial rate.
   B) ideology.
   C) political activities.
   D) competence or ethics.
   E) age.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 513
   Edition: National
53) In order to defeat a judicial nomination, opponents in the Senate usually must

A) get public support in opposition to the nomination.
B) be in the majority and be in the opposite party as the president.
C) be able to question a nominee’s competence or ethics.
D) get the American Bar Association on their side.
E) prove the nominee's ideological extremism.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 516
Edition: National

54) President Reagan's nomination of Robert Bork as an associate justice on the Supreme Court

A) was rejected by the Senate.
B) was rejected by both the House and the Senate.
C) was withdrawn after it came to light that Bork had smoked marijuana while a law professor at Harvard.
D) was confirmed by the closest margin in the twentieth century.
E) based on Bork's extensive legal experience.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 514
Edition: National

55) Supreme Court justice Clarence Thomas

A) has no identifiable ideology.
B) is an ideological moderate.
C) is an ideological moderate who advocates a jurisprudence of original intent.
D) is ideologically liberal.
E) is ideologically conservative.

Answer: E

Page Ref: 514-515
Edition: National
56) President _______ appointed more women, African Americans, and Hispanics to the federal district and circuit courts than all previous presidents combined.

A) Jimmy Carter  
B) Lyndon Johnson  
C) Ronald Reagan  
D) Gerald Ford  
E) George Bush  

Answer: A

Page Ref: 516  
Edition: National

57) The first woman appointed to the United States Supreme Court was

A) Sandra Day O’Connor.  
B) Frances Perkins.  
C) Hillary Clinton.  
D) Charlotte Perkins Gilman.  
E) Ruth Bader Ginsberg.  

Answer: A

Page Ref: 518  
Edition: National

58) Who currently serves on the Supreme Court as the chief justice?

A) William Rehnquist  
B) Samuel Alito  
C) Harriet Miers  
D) John Roberts  
E) Dennis Kucinich  

Answer: D

Page Ref: 518  
Edition: National

59) Usually more than 90 percent of presidents’ judicial nominations are members of

A) the Department of Justice.  
B) law school faculties.  
C) state legislatures.  
D) their own party.  
E) Congress.  

Answer: D

Page Ref: 519  
Edition: National
60) What percentage of presidents' judicial nominations are members of their own parties?
   A) almost 80 percent
   B) slightly more than half
   C) except for rare occasions, 100 percent
   D) usually more than 90 percent
   E) about 75 percent

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 519
   Edition: National

61) The most important factors influencing the president's selection of judges and justices appears to be
   A) ideology and partisanship.
   B) race and gender.
   C) judicial and elective experience.
   D) geography and religion.
   E) their law school rank.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 519
   Edition: National

62) Under Ronald Reagan's administration, there was a strong tendency to appoint federal judges on the basis of
   A) ascriptive characteristics.
   B) experience in the law profession.
   C) ideology.
   D) partisan involvement.
   E) their contributions to Reagan's presidential campaign.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 519
   Edition: National
63) Supreme Court justices often try to time their retirement

A) to maximize their government retirement pension.
B) in such a way as to maximize their historical impact.
C) so that a president with compatible views will choose their successor.
D) so they can resign in protest of a major majority decision that they disagree with.
E) near election time so that the Supreme Court nomination becomes an election issue.

Answer: C

64) President Eisenhower's selection of Earl Warren and William Brennan to the Supreme Court is an example of

A) the Senate majority's tendency to reject nominees of the opposing political party.
B) how religion and region were once important selection criteria.
C) how a president can mold the Court to his ideology.
D) how presidents can become disappointed with their selections.
E) the importance of partisanship in the selection of justices.

Answer: D

65) Presidents are disappointed with their judicial nominations to the Court about ______ percent of the time.

A) 33
B) 15
C) 10
D) 25
E) 50

Answer: D
66) President Franklin Roosevelt's appointees to the Supreme Court

   A) liberalized the Court.
   B) routinely ruled his New Deal legislation unconstitutional.
   C) made the Court more conservative.
   D) proved to have no effect upon the decisions of the Court.
   E) proved to be great disappointments to him on issue after issue.

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 520
Edition: National

67) One of the most important factors that brings potential federal judges to the attention of senators and the Department of Justice is their

   A) stand on issues.
   B) conviction rates.
   C) total honesty and integrity.
   D) ideological neutrality.
   E) involvement in partisan politics.

   Answer: E

Page Ref: 520
Edition: National

68) If _______ Supreme Court justices agree to grant review of a case, it can be scheduled for oral argument or decided on the basis of the written record already on file with the Court.

   A) six
   B) two
   C) four
   D) nine
   E) a majority of

   Answer: C

Page Ref: 521
Edition: National
69) The most common way for the Supreme Court to put a case on its docket is by issuing a(n) ________, a formal document that calls up a case which deals with a Constitutional question or in which state laws are claimed to violate federal law.

   A) writ of mandamus
   B) stare decisis
   C) amicus curiae brief
   D) per curiam decision
   E) writ of certiorari

Answer: E

Page Ref: 521
Edition: National

70) In order for the Supreme Court to hear oral arguments or decide a case on the written record,

   A) a majority of the justices must agree to take the case.
   B) four justices must agree to take the case.
   C) the case must first be sent to it by the president.
   D) only the chief justice must agree to take the case.
   E) all justices must agree to take the case.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 521
Edition: National

71) A writ of certiorari

   A) means that judges have decided a case on the basis of precedent.
   B) frees a detained person whom a court has found is being held in violation of due process.
   C) is used by the Supreme Court to call up a case.
   D) is the official record of a court's decision, stating the facts of the case and the rationale for the decision.
   E) is used to move a case from a court of original jurisdiction to a federal district court.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 521
Edition: National
72) The ________ is a presidential appointee who is in charge of the appellate court litigation of the federal government, works out of the Department of Justice, and can have an important influence on the Supreme Court.

A) Adjutant General
B) Solicitor General
C) United States attorney
D) Attorney General
E) chief justice

Answer: B
Page Ref: 521
Edition: National

73) Which of the following is NOT a function of the United States Solicitor General’s office?

A) decide whether or not to appeal cases the government has lost in the lower courts
B) review and modify the briefs presented in government appeals
C) require the Supreme Court to review a government case on appeal
D) represent the government before the Supreme Court
E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 521
Edition: National

74) In a typical year, the Supreme Court issues ________ formal written opinions that could serve as precedent, and thus as the basis of guidance for lower courts.

A) more than 1,000
B) fewer than 100
C) between 150 and 500
D) more than 500, but less than 1,000
E) fewer than ten

Answer: B
Page Ref: 522
Edition: National
75) A _______ is a Supreme Court ruling without explanation which resolves an immediate case but has no value as precedent because the Court does not offer reasoning that would guide lower courts in future decisions.

A) stare decisis
B) writ of certiorari
C) concurring opinion
D) per curiam decision
E) writ of mandamus

Answer: D
Page Ref: 522
Edition: National

76) Those who are interested in the outcome of a case, but are not formal litigants, sometimes submit _______ briefs, raising points of view and presenting information that they hope will influence the Supreme Court’s decision.

A) certiorari
B) stare decisis
C) amicus curiae
D) per curiam decision
E) concurring

Answer: C
Page Ref: 521
Edition: National

77) Principal reasons for the Court’s choosing to hear a case would include each of the following EXCEPT

A) conflict between different lower courts on the interpretation of federal law.
B) cases that involve major issues, like civil liberties.
C) disagreement between a majority of the Supreme Court and lower court decisions.
D) politically hot and divisive cases.
E) the justices’ law clerks recommend doing so.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 521
Edition: National
78) The decision to appeal cases the federal government has lost in the lower courts is made by the
   A) majority of the Supreme Court.
   B) Solicitor General.
   C) president.
   D) chief justice.
   E) district judge.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 521
   Edition: National

79) A per curiam decision is a
   A) decision without explanation.
   B) decision by the court not to hear a case.
   C) written opinion of a case.
   D) decision that can be used as a precedent.
   E) court decision of narrow scope that can be issued by a single judge in limited circumstances.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 522
   Edition: National

80) An amicus curiae brief may be submitted by
   A) lawyers representing each side of a case.
   B) a judge to a jury outlining the parameters a jury must follow in deciding a case.
   C) the chief justice.
   D) groups that are interested in the outcome of a case, but are not formal litigants.
   E) the actual litigants in a case.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 521
   Edition: National
81) _______ opinions are those offered by one or more Supreme Court justices not only to support a majority decision, but also to stress a different Constitutional or legal basis for the judgment.
   A) *Anticus curiae*
   B) Dissenting
   C) Concurring
   D) Adjunct
   E) Differential

Answer: C

Page Ref: 523
Edition: National

82) A written opinion in a Supreme Court case is a
   A) legal argument submitted by an attorney in a case seeking to sway a justice's decision.
   B) way of establishing the Court's agenda.
   C) statement of the legal reasoning behind a decision.
   D) formality handled by the chief justice's law clerks.
   E) form of press release written by the chief justice.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 523
Edition: National

83) An opinion written to stress a different Constitutional or legal basis for the judgment is called a(n)
   A) concurring opinion.
   B) dissenting opinion.
   C) amending opinion.
   D) majority opinion.
   E) minority opinion.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 523
Edition: National
84) The vast majority of cases reaching the federal courts are settled on the principle of ________, meaning that an earlier ruling should hold for the case being considered.
   
   A) historical authority  
   B) *stare decisis*  
   C) *amicus curiae*  
   D) *per curiam* decision  
   E) *certiorari*  

   Answer: B

85) All courts rely heavily upon ________—the way similar cases were handled in the past—as a guide to current decisions.
   
   A) *writs of certiorari*  
   B) *writs of mandamus*  
   C) precedent  
   D) original intent  
   E) *amicus curiae*  

   Answer: C

86) *Stare decisis* means that cases are
   
   A) decided using an adversarial system of opposing sides through which the truth hopefully will emerge.  
   B) decided on the grounds of constitutionality.  
   C) often used by judges to in effect enact new law and public policy.  
   D) decided on the basis of precedent.  
   E) appealable only on procedural grounds not on evidence.

   Answer: D
87) The Supreme Court _______ overrule is own precedents.
   A) can
   B) can, but has not tried to
   C) will routinely
   D) has tried but has failed to
   E) cannot
   Answer: A

88) Judicial _______ refers to how and whether court decisions are translated into real policy, affecting the behavior of others.
   A) restraint
   B) intent
   C) action
   D) review
   E) implementation
   Answer: E

89) The case of a black man named Virgil Hawkins who tried to get admitted to the University of Florida Law School illustrates
   A) how other courts and other institutions of government can be roadblocks in the way of judicial implementation.
   B) how controversial issues shape the Supreme Court agenda.
   C) the ability of the Supreme Court to resolve issues once and for all.
   D) the ways Supreme Court judges enforce their decisions.
   E) how the Supreme Court can remove all roadblocks in the way of judicial implementation.
   Answer: A
90) Which of the following is NOT one of the elements involved in the implementation of judicial decisions according to the categories noted by Charles Johnson and Bradley Canon?

A) institutionalized population  
B) interpreting population  
C) consumer population  
D) implementing population  
E) defining population

Answer: A  

Page Ref: 526  
Edition: National

91) The concept of original intent holds that

A) judges and justices should determine the intent of the framers of the Constitution regarding a particular matter and decide cases in line with that intent.  
B) the founders intended judges to use discretion.  
C) it is necessary to adapt the principles in the Constitution to the demands of each era.  
D) the founders embraced general principles that are open to interpretation.  
E) the founders intended judges to interpret the Constitution but make new law when necessary.

Answer: A  

Page Ref: 525  
Edition: National

92) In the immediate aftermath of the Supreme Court’s famous *Brown v. Board of Education* decision, the president and Congress

A) refused to enforce speedy compliance with the ruling, thus severely weakening implementation over the next decade.  
B) celebrated the fact that the Supreme Court had now joined them in supporting swift compliance with a new federal law.  
C) overruled the Supreme Court in a rare instance of judicial review.  
D) worked quickly to implement the decision nationwide.  
E) proposed a Constitutional amendment to overturn the Court’s decision, although the amendment was never ratified by the states.

Answer: A  

Page Ref: 527  
Edition: National
93) Until the Civil War, the dominant questions before the Supreme Court regarded

A) questions of the relationship between the federal government and the economy.
B) presidential powers.
C) the powers and legitimacy of the federal government.
D) issues of social and political equality and the expansion of the right to vote.
E) the interpretation of First Amendment rights.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 527
Edition: National

94) *Marbury v. Madison* established the principle of

A) Constitutional *penumbra*.
B) national supremacy.
C) original intent.
D) judicial review.
E) *stare decisis*.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 528
Edition: National

95) Which of the following statements about the Supreme Court case of *Marbury v. Madison* is FALSE?

A) The Court established its power to hold acts of Congress in violation of the Constitution.
B) The Court ruled part of the Judiciary Act of 1789 unconstitutional.
C) The Court ruled that Madison was in the right to withhold Marbury’s commission.
D) The Court ruled that it had no power to require that Marbury’s commission be delivered.
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 528
Edition: National
96) Judicial review means

A) the right of the Congress to determine whether a decision of the Supreme Court is or is not Constitutional.

B) the power to remove Supreme Court justices from the bench if deemed unfit to retain office.

C) the right of the president to determine whether a decision of the Supreme Court is or is not Constitutional.

D) the right of the courts to determine whether executive or legislative acts are or are not Constitutional.

E) the Solicitor General's oversight of the courts to make sure that rulings are uniform nationwide and that procedural due process is being followed by all courts.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 529
Edition: National

97) The principle of judicial review was first established expressly in writing in the Supreme Court decision of


B) McCulloch v. Maryland.


D) Marbury v. Madison.


Answer: D
Page Ref: 528
Edition: National

98) During the early New Deal era, the Supreme Court was dominated by conservatives who

A) came to be known as the Bad Deal Five for thwarting New Deal legislation and were impeached and removed as a group by Congress.

B) viewed federal intervention in the economy as unconstitutional, and declared several laws invalid.

C) strongly supported federal intervention in the economy, and voted to uphold all New Deal acts.

D) overturned the precedent of Marbury v. Madison and ruled that the Supreme Court has no power of judicial review.

E) were impeached one by one by Congress.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 530
Edition: National
99) The proposal to add justices to the Supreme Court, known as the "court packing plan" to critics, was made by President ________ who wanted to be able to appoint justices more sympathetic to his philosophy than the "nine old men."

A) Dwight Eisenhower
B) Harry Truman
C) Franklin Roosevelt
D) Richard Nixon
E) John F. Kennedy

Answer: C
Page Ref: 530
Edition: National

100) The president who tried to pack the Supreme Court by increasing its size in order to effect a sympathetic majority was

A) Franklin Roosevelt.
B) Harry Truman.
C) Richard Nixon.
D) Dwight Eisenhower.
E) Thomas Jefferson.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 530
Edition: National

101) The most liberal court of the modern era has been the

A) Rehnquist Court.
B) Marshall Court.
C) Warren Court.
D) Taft Court.
E) Burger Court.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 530
Edition: National
102) One of the most active Supreme Courts in shaping public policy in areas of desegregation and the rights of the accused was the
   A) Warren Court.
   B) Rehnquist Court.
   C) Marshall Court.
   D) Burger Court.
   E) Nixon Court.
Answer: A
Page Ref: 530
Edition: National

103) Richard Nixon chose _______ as the new chief justice in 1969, hoping with this appointment to move the Supreme Court toward a more “strict construction” interpretation of the Constitution in its subsequent decisions.
   A) John Marshall
   B) Nelson Rockefeller
   C) Warren Burger
   D) Harry Blackmun
   E) Earl Warren
Answer: C
Page Ref: 531
Edition: National

104) In the case of United States v. Nixon, the Supreme Court ruled that
   A) President Nixon did not have to hand over White House tape recordings to the courts.
   B) John Kennedy had lawfully won the presidential election of 1960, and Richard Nixon’s challenge was unfounded.
   C) President Nixon had to hand over White House tape recordings to the courts.
   D) President Nixon be removed from office and that Vice President Gerald Ford take over the presidency.
   E) President Nixon was guilty of conspiracy to obstruct justice by impeding the investigation of the Watergate burglary.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 531
Edition: National
105) The Rehnquist Court

A) has slowly chipped away at liberal decisions.
B) has been deeply divided between liberals and conservatives, and personality conflicts have added to a court in turmoil.
C) created a revolution in constitutional law.
D) has been a disappointment to conservatives.
E) has gone further to shape public policy than the Warren Court.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 531
Edition: National

106) Democratic theorists criticize the courts on the grounds that they are

A) used indiscriminately, leading to legal stagnation.
B) not representative of the victimized upper and upper-middle classes.
C) not representative of the people or majority public opinion.
D) and always have been used to persecute vulnerable minorities.
E) easily swayed by interest-group pressure.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 532
Edition: National

107) Studies of Supreme Court decisions found that

A) the Court prefers to base its decisions on the Constitution rather than narrower and more contentious technical grounds.
B) the Court is usually out of line with public opinion.
C) there is no correlation between public opinion and Court decisions.
D) the Court is normally in line with popular majorities.
E) the Court renders fewer decisions in election years.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 532
Edition: National
108) Which of the following statements about the courts and pluralism is FALSE?
   A) Almost every major policy decision these days ends up in court.
   B) Interest groups find it difficult to find judges who will rule in their favor.
   C) When groups go to court, they use litigation to achieve their policy objectives.
   D) The habit of always turning to the courts as a last resort can add to policy delay, deadlock, and inconsistency.
   E) Even though the courts are the least democratic institution, groups can still use them to achieve their goals.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 532
   Edition: National

109) The view that judges should play a minimal role in policymaking is called judicial

   A) jurisprudence.
   B) restraint.
   C) precedent.
   D) objectivity.
   E) neutrality.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 535
   Edition: National

110) Advocates of _______ emphasize that the courts may alleviate pressing needs, especially of those who are weak politically or economically, left unmet by the majoritarian political process.

   A) judicial activism
   B) the jurisprudence of original intent
   C) judicial restraint
   D) judicial implementation
   E) judicial review

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 535
   Edition: National
111) The justification used by federal courts primarily to avoid deciding cases regarding conflicts between the president and Congress is known as the doctrine of

A) judicial activism.
B) political questions.
C) independent grounds.
D) stare decisis.
E) judicial restraint.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 535
Edition: National

112) As a means to avoid deciding some cases, the federal courts have developed a doctrine of

A) judicial precedent.
B) strict constructionism.
C) statutory construction.
D) judicial activism.
E) political questions.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 535
Edition: National

113) When given a choice, the courts are least likely to decide a case on the basis of

A) standing.
B) precedent.
C) the Constitution.
D) mootness.
E) jurisdiction.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 535
Edition: National

114) How many times has the Supreme Court ruled a federal law unconstitutional?

A) fewer than 200
B) more than 500
C) once
D) never
E) about 1,000

Answer: A
Page Ref: 535
Edition: National
115) Cases that involve statutory construction

A) can be overturned by Congress by clarifying an existing law.
B) must be decided according to a strict construction of the Constitution.
C) are usually precedent setting.
D) involve policy issues.
E) can only be changed through a Constitutional amendment.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 536
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Federal judges are restricted by the Constitution to deciding real cases or controversies brought before it—actual disputes rather than hypothetical ones.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

2) More than 90 percent of court cases begin and end in the court of original jurisdiction.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

3) The majority of all the criminal cases in the United States are heard in state and local court systems, not in the federal courts.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

4) The vast majority of civil cases that commence in the federal courts are settled out of court.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

5) Although most federal litigation ends in district court, a large percentage of these cases that district court judges actually decide are appealed by the losers.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

6) Most of the cases handled in the federal district courts are routine.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National
7) A distinguishing feature of the American judicial system is the potential for appeals, as well as the length of time it takes to reach a final resolution in cases.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

8) The Constitution sets the number of Supreme Court justices at nine.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 510
Edition: National

9) Only members of the Supreme Court are called justices; all others are called judges.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 510
Edition: National

10) The president operates under far more constraints in nominating members to the Supreme Court than to the lower courts.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 511; 513
Edition: National

11) The Senate has not rejected a Supreme Court nominee this century.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 514–515
Edition: National

12) Senators usually do not oppose a president nominating a Supreme Court justice from their state because if a senator objects, the president can simply nominate someone from another state.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 513
Edition: National

13) Federal judges have typically held office as a judge or prosecutor, and often they have been involved in partisan politics.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 516
Edition: National

14) One of the most prominent criteria for selection to the Supreme Court is geographic diversity.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 518
Edition: National
15) *Amicus curiae* briefs may only be filed by formal litigants in a particular case being heard by the Supreme Court.

Answer: FALSE

Page Ref: 522
Edition: National

16) The vast majority of cases reaching the federal courts are settled on the basis of *stare decisis*.

Answer: TRUE

Page Ref: 523
Edition: National

17) Precedent is typically less firmly established in cases at the forefront of the law.

Answer: TRUE

Page Ref: 523
Edition: National

18) Strict constructionists argue for a jurisprudence of original intent.

Answer: TRUE

Page Ref: 525
Edition: National

19) Judicial decisions are more likely to be smoothly implemented if implementation is concentrated in the hands of a few highly visible officials.

Answer: TRUE

Page Ref: 526–527
Edition: National

20) The right of judicial review was first established definitively in the case of *McCulloch v. Maryland*.

Answer: FALSE

Page Ref: 529
Edition: National

21) *Marbury v. Madison* was the first case that struck down a legislative act in the United States.

Answer: FALSE

Page Ref: 529–530
Edition: National

22) The Supreme Court sits in a "marble palace" and is insulated from the normal forms of politics.

Answer: FALSE

Page Ref: 532
Edition: National
23) Advocates of judicial activism emphasize that the Supreme Court's decisions on such issues as abortion and school prayer go well beyond the "referee" role they feel is appropriate for courts in a democracy.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 535
Edition: National

24) During the twentieth century, liberals on the Supreme Court have engaged in judicial activism, but conservatives have not.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 535
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) In _______ law cases, an individual is charged with violating a specific law. The offense may be harmful to an individual or to society as a whole, but in either case it warrants punishment, such as imprisonment or a fine.

Answer: criminal
Page Ref: 504
Edition: National

2) _______ suits permit a small number of people to sue on behalf of all other people similarly situated.

Answer: Class action
Page Ref: 505
Edition: National

3) What is a class action suit? Why are they important? Give an example.

Answer: lawsuits permitting a small number of people to sue on behalf of all other people similarly situated; reflects a broadened notion of standing to sue, and used a variety of areas
Page Ref: 505
Edition: National

4) What is a justiciable dispute?

Answer: a requirement that to be heard a case must be capable of being settled as a matter of law rather than on other grounds as is commonly the case in legislative bodies
Page Ref: 505
Edition: National

5) Sometimes groups do not directly argue a case for a litigant but instead submit a(n) _______ that seeks to influence the decision of the court.

Answer: amicus curiae brief
Page Ref: 506
Edition: National
6) Courts with _______ jurisdiction hear cases brought to them on appeal from a lower court, and do not review the factual record, only the legal issues involved.

Answer: appellate

Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

7) The federal _______ courts are the courts of original jurisdiction for most federal cases; they hear no appeals.

Answer: district

Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

8) Explain the difference between original and appellate jurisdiction.

Answer: Original jurisdiction is jurisdiction of courts that hear a case first, usually in a trial and where the court determines the facts about the case. Appellate jurisdiction is jurisdiction of courts that hear cases brought to them on appeal from lower courts, focusing on legal issues involved rather than the facts of the case.

Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

9) What is the difference between Constitutional courts and legislative courts?

Answer: Constitutional courts are the district and appeals courts created by Congress in the Judiciary Act of 1789, while legislative courts are established by Congress for specialized purposes.

Page Ref: 507-508
Edition: National

10) In the _______ Congress created our system of Constitutional courts.

Answer: Judiciary Act of 1789

Page Ref: 507
Edition: National

11) _______ cases involve civil suits between citizens of different states or suits in which one of the parties is a citizen of a foreign nation and the matter in question exceeds $75,000.

Answer: Diversity of citizenship

Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

12) _______ issue warrants for arrest, determine whether to hold arrested persons for action by a grand jury, and sometimes set bail.

Answer: Federal magistrates

Page Ref: 508
Edition: National
13) ________ are assigned to each district to protect the judicial process and to serve the writs that the judges issue.

Answer: United States marshals
Page Ref: 508
Edition: National

14) Among its most important tasks, the Supreme Court resolves conflicts between or among ________.

Answer: the states
Page Ref: 510
Edition: National

15) Explain the process of senatorial courtesy.

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 512
Edition: National

16) Which two Supreme Court justices were nominated by George W. Bush?

Answer: Samuel Alito and John Roberts
Page Ref: 515
Edition: National

17) Explain why previous judicial experience is not that important in nominating individuals to the Supreme Court.

Answer: The Supreme Court's work is so unique compared to the other federal courts that previous judicial experience is not that relevant or useful.
Page Ref: 511
Edition: National

18) The most common way for the Supreme Court to put a case on its docket is by issuing to a lower federal or state court a(n) ________, which is a formal document that calls up a case.

Answer: writ of certiorari
Page Ref: 521
Edition: National

19) The Supreme Court occasionally issues a(n) ________ decision, which is one without a written explanation. Such a decision resolves an immediate case but has no value as precedent because it does not offer the Court's reasoning.

Answer: per curiam
Page Ref: 522
Edition: National
20) ________ briefs are written by parties who are interested in the outcome of a case, but are not formal litigants. These briefs try to influence the Supreme Court by raising additional points of view or presenting new information.

Answer: *Amicus curiae*
Page Ref: 522
Edition: National

21) What is a *per curiam* decision?

Answer: a decision without explanation issued by the Supreme Court
Page Ref: 522
Edition: National

22) Explain the importance of *amicus curiae* briefs.

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 522
Edition: National

23) All courts rely heavily upon _______, the way similar cases were handled in the past, as a guide to current decisions.

Answer: precedent
Page Ref: 523
Edition: National

24) Judicial ________ refers to how and whether court decisions are translated into actual policy, affecting the behavior of others.

Answer: implementation
Page Ref: 526
Edition: National

25) The 1803 Supreme Court decision which included Chief Justice John Marshall’s assertion of the right of judicial review was the case of ________.

Answer: *Marbury v. Madison*
Page Ref: 529
Edition: National

26) What is the importance of the Supreme Court case of *Marbury v. Madison*?

Answer: established the Supreme Court’s power of judicial review over acts of Congress
Page Ref: 529
Edition: National

27) Compare and contrast the principles of judicial restraint and judicial activism.

Answer: Judicial restraint is a judicial philosophy in which judges play minimal policymaking roles, leaving that duty strictly to legislatures. Judicial activism is a judicial philosophy in which judges make bold policy decisions, even charting new constitutional ground.
Page Ref: 535
Edition: National
28) What is the doctrine of political questions?

Answer: a doctrine developed by the federal courts and used as a means of deciding some cases, principally those involving conflicts between the president and Congress

Page Ref: 535
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Discuss three decisions of the Supreme Court and explain how they have affected how democratic our political system is.

Page Ref: 502-539
Edition: National

2) Describe the typical participants and types of cases involved in the judicial system.

Page Ref: 504-506
Edition: National

3) Over what kinds of cases do federal district courts have jurisdiction? Over what kinds of cases do federal district courts not have jurisdiction? Who are the major players in a district court?

Page Ref: 507-511
Edition: National

4) Explain the organization of the federal court system. What type of cases are heard in each of the different courts?

Page Ref: 507-511
Edition: National

5) Compare and contrast the Supreme Court with lower federal courts in terms of how judges are chosen, how cases are chosen, and who hears cases before the court.

Page Ref: 506-516
Edition: National

6) How are nominees to the federal district courts selected? Who has veto power over the selections, and what is this called? Who checks the background of nominees to these courts? Is the entire selection process sensible? Explain.

Page Ref: 507-511
Edition: National

7) Explain the relationship between the courts and Congress and the courts and the presidency. What is the relationship between these institutions in terms of judicial selection and policymaking?

Page Ref: 511-516; 520-527
Edition: National
8) Describe how federal judges and justices are chosen. What factors influence the selection process? What are the general characteristics of the Supreme Court justices chosen by this process?
   Page Ref: 507-515
   Edition: National

9) What do presidents look for in selecting a Supreme Court justice? How often are they successful in appointing judges who reflect their judicial philosophy? Provide a few examples from the twentieth century of presidents succeeding and failing to have a direct influence on the Court.
   Page Ref: 511-515
   Edition: National

10) What are the typical characteristics of the individuals chosen as judges and justices?
    Page Ref: 516-520
    Edition: National

11) What kinds of cases are accepted for review by the Supreme Court, and how does the process usually work? Why are the Court’s rulings so significant? Explain.
    Page Ref: 520-522
    Edition: National

12) Describe the strengths and weaknesses of the judiciary as a political institution. What do the courts have the power to do? What do they not have the power to do? How does this power compare to other political institutions?
    Page Ref: 520-527
    Edition: National

13) What role should original intent have in how the Supreme Court interprets the Constitution and laws of Congress? Should original intent be the most important criterion, or should other aspects be of equal or greater weight? Explain.
    Page Ref: 525
    Edition: National

14) How are court decisions translated into actual policy? What elements of the population are involved in judicial implementation, and how might implementation be hindered or helped? Use examples to illustrate your answer.
    Page Ref: 526-527
    Edition: National

15) Explain how the courts have affected the policy agenda throughout American history, citing specific court decisions as examples.
    Page Ref: 527-532
    Edition: National
16) Using examples from specific Supreme Courts, explain how the courts have affected the policy agenda throughout American history.

Page Ref: 527-532
Edition: National

17) Describe the significance of the Marbury v. Madison ruling by the Supreme Court. Has the legacy of this ruling been a positive or negative one? Did the dramatic ruling in this case serve to weaken American democracy? Explain.

Page Ref: 529-530
Edition: National

18) Describe President Franklin Roosevelt’s attempt to alter the Supreme Court. Why did Roosevelt make this attempt? Why did it eventually become unnecessary? Are you sympathetic with Roosevelt’s actions or not? Explain.

Page Ref: 530
Edition: National

19) In what ways has the judiciary made our political system more democratic? Less democratic?

Page Ref: 532-533
Edition: National

20) Evaluate the American court system from the point of view of democratic theory.

Page Ref: 532-533
Edition: National

21) What are the strengths and weaknesses of judicial restraint and judicial activism? To what extent are each of these associated with particular political ideologies (i.e., liberals or conservatives)?

Page Ref: 534-536
Edition: National
Chapter 17  Economic Policymaking

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) A capitalist economic system is one in which
   A) individuals and corporations own the principal means of production, through which they seek to earn profits.
   B) a central government determines production and price levels.
   C) private individuals act according to market principles and enhance the general welfare, with no government involvement.
   D) individuals and corporations share ownership of the principal means of production, and profits are distributed equally.
   E) all individuals have an equal chance of owning the principal means of production, often in the form of stock ownership.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 542
Edition: National

2) A mixed political economy is one in which
   A) both agricultural and manufacturing sectors are active.
   B) the government, while not commanding the economy, is still deeply involved in economic decisions.
   C) the government controls some, but not all, sectors of the economy.
   D) inflation and unemployment are uncorrelated.
   E) the government consults with corporate directors on the nature and magnitude of government regulation.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 542
Edition: National

3) Capitalism is
   A) an advanced system of stock management.
   B) an economic system in which individuals and corporations own the principal means of production.
   C) an economic system in which public agencies manage fundamental aspects of monetary policy.
   D) an economic system in which the government owns the means of production.
   E) an economic system based on the Federal Reserve.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 542
Edition: National
4) Conservatives complain about
   A) the size of the public sector.
   B) excessive regulation of the private sector.
   C) the oppressive scope of government.
   D) all of the above
   E) new legislation limiting corporate power.

   Answer: D
Page Ref: 560
Edition: National

5) The consumer price index measures
   A) the change what various incomes can buy.
   B) the change in the amount of taxes paid by individuals.
   C) the change in the cost of buying a fixed basket of good and services.
   D) the change in income, controlling for periods of unemployment.
   E) the change in the prime lending rate.

   Answer: C
Page Ref: 548
Edition: National

6) Hundreds, if not thousands, of studies by political scientists have concluded that voters
   A) ignore the economic consequences of government policies.
   B) vote for candidates who promise the most.
   C) vote solely on the basis of partisanship alone.
   D) vote for the candidate who will benefit the voter's financial condition the most.
   E) vote against their personal financial interests.

   Answer: D
Page Ref: 546
Edition: National
7) Which of the following statements is TRUE about America’s political parties and relatively high inflation?

A) Neither the Democrats nor the Republicans are willing to accept relatively high inflation.
B) The Democrats are more willing to accept relatively high inflation than the Republicans.
C) Both the Democrats and the Republicans are willing to accept relatively high inflation.
D) The Republicans are more willing to accept relatively high inflation than the Democrats.
E) Studies have found no correlation between a given political party and its acceptance of high inflation rates.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 546
Edition: National

8) Union members, minority group members, and the poor are more likely to vote _______ than higher income people are.

A) Republican (due to greater concern about unemployment)
B) Democratic (due to greater concern about both unemployment and inflation)
C) Democratic (due to greater concern about unemployment)
D) Democratic (due to greater concern about inflation)
E) Republican (due to greater concern about inflation)

Answer: C

Page Ref: 546
Edition: National

9) Business owners, managers, and professional people are more likely to vote _______ than lower income people are.

A) Republican (due to greater concern about inflation)
B) Democratic (due to greater concern about unemployment)
C) Democratic (due to greater concern about inflation)
D) Republican (due to greater concern about both inflation and unemployment)
E) Republican (due to greater concern about unemployment)

Answer: A

Page Ref: 546
Edition: National
10) The Republican party is more concerned than the Democrats about
A) crime and health problems that are linked to unemployment.
B) high interest rates.
C) inflation than unemployment.
D) staving off a recession.
E) raising the consumer price index.
Answer: C

11) The nation’s unemployment rate is determined by
A) monthly changes in income tax withholdings monitored by the Internal Revenue Service.
B) a monthly random survey of the population.
C) randomly selected payroll audits by Federal Reserve Board analysts.
D) monthly reports by the unemployment department of each state.
E) monthly reports filed by all employers regarding the number of their employees.
Answer: B

12) The _______ conducts a huge statistical survey of the population monthly to measure the nation’s unemployment rate.
A) Federal Reserve Board
B) Council of Economic Advisors
C) Bureau of Labor Statistics
D) Census Bureau
E) Office of Management and the Budget
Answer: C

13) The official unemployment rate underestimates unemployment because it leaves out
A) discouraged workers.
B) students.
C) housewives.
D) the high-tech sector.
E) the homeless.
Answer: A
14) In the 2004 presidential election, people who thought their families were doing better off voted

A) 2 to 1 for George W. Bush.
B) 4 to 1 for George W. Bush.
C) 10 to 1 for George W. Bush.
D) 4 to 1 for John Kerry.
E) 2 to 1 for John Kerry.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 546
Edition: National

15) Inflation was generally highest during the

A) 1930s.
B) 1970s.
C) 1960s.
D) 1980s.
E) 1990s.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 549
Edition: National

16) The principle that the government should not meddle with the economy is known as

A) Keynesian economic theory.
B) caveat emptor.
C) monetarism.
D) laissez faire.
E) conservatism.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 548
Edition: National

17) When the stock market crash of 1929 sent unemployment soaring, President Herbert Hoover

A) embraced Keynesian economic theory.
B) experimented with dozens of new federal policies and work projects to put the economy back on track.
C) pushed a massive tax cut through Congress to stimulate the economy.
D) clung to the laissez-faire economic theory.
E) put strict wage, price, and production controls into effect nationwide.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 549
Edition: National
18) *Laissez faire* is the

- A) principle that government should not meddle with the economy.
- B) term for a negative balance of trade, meaning imports exceed exports.
- C) belief that government, and particularly presidents, have virtually no influence over the economy because whatever mechanisms the government might use to affect economic growth are far too weak to change the individual, daily market decisions of 260 million Americans.
- D) theory that government spending can help the economy weather its normal ups and downs, even if it means going into debt.
- E) difference between the nation’s unemployment rate and inflation rate.

Answer: A
*Page Ref: 548–549*
*Edition: National*

19) Who is the current chair of the Federal Reserve Board?

- A) Alan Greenspan
- B) Ben Bernanke
- C) Mike Emmons
- D) Ralph Nader
- E) Robert Wagner

Answer: B
*Page Ref: 549*
*Edition: National*

20) ______ is the manipulation of the supply of money and credit in private hands to promote the nation’s economic health.

- A) Keynesianism
- B) *Laissez faire*
- C) Fiscal policy
- D) Monetary policy
- E) Supply-side policy

Answer: D
*Page Ref: 549*
*Edition: National*
21) An economic theory called monetarism holds that

A) government should stimulate economic growth by injecting large amounts of money into the economy by keeping interest rates low.
B) stimulating supply through lower taxes is the key to economic health.
C) the supply of money is the key to the nation's health, and having too much cash and credit in circulation stimulates inflation.
D) government should not meddle with the economy.
E) government spending can help the economy weather its normal ups and downs, even if it means running up a debt.

Answer: C

22) Monetarists want to

A) use government spending and job programs during economic downturns to inject money into the economy.
B) reduce taxes in order to stimulate the growth of the money supply.
C) hold the growth in money supply to equal the rise in the gross national product after inflation.
D) tie the value of the dollar to the value of gold, thus increasing and stabilizing the money supply.
E) keep the government's hands off the economy.

Answer: C

23) Monetary policy is directly regulated by

A) the United States Mint.
B) the Federal Reserve System.
C) Congress and the President.
D) the Department of Commerce.
E) the Treasury Department.

Answer: B
24) The Federal Reserve System is governed by

A) a seven-member Board of Governors appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.
B) the director of the Internal Revenue Service.
C) a twelve-member Board of Governors chosen by local bankers in each of the twelve Federal Reserve districts.
D) the President's Council of Economic Advisors.
E) the Secretary of the Treasury, whose name appears on all currency.

Answer: A

25) A supporter of laissez-faire policy would oppose

A) supply-side economics.
B) a strict separation between government and business.
C) governmental intervention in the economy.
D) reducing governmental economic regulation.
E) reducing government subsidies of failing businesses.

Answer: C

26) Since the New Deal,

A) policymakers have made it part of their regular business to seek to control the economy.
B) the federal government has become less involved in economic policy.
C) the principle of laissez faire has dominated economic policy.
D) economic issues have become less politicized.
E) Keynesian economics has replaced supply-side theory in American fiscal policy.

Answer: A
27) The economic theory that considers the supply of money as the key to the nation's economic health is
   A) supply-side economics.
   B) currency-reserve theory.
   C) monetarism.
   D) Keynesian economic theory.
   E) laissez-faire capitalism.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 549
   Edition: National

28) Monetarists emphasize that economic conditions are related to
   A) the level of government deficit spending.
   B) the value of the dollar in global currency markets.
   C) declining productivity.
   D) how much money government spends.
   E) the supply of money.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 549
   Edition: National

29) The main agency for making monetary policy is the
   A) Office of Management and Budget.
   B) United States Treasury.
   C) Federal Reserve Board.
   D) Congressional Budget Office.
   E) Council of Economic Advisors.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 549
   Edition: National

30) The Federal Reserve Board is intended to be
   A) formally under the control of Congress.
   B) half Democrat and half Republican.
   C) replaced by each new president.
   D) formally under the control of the president.
   E) independent of partisan politics.
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 550
   Edition: National
31) The Federal Reserve Board regulates
   A) antitrust policy.
   B) tax and spending policies.
   C) the nation’s gold reserves and the United States Mint.
   D) all United States government bank accounts and investments.
   E) the supply of money and credit in the economy.
   
   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 549-550
   Edition: National

32) An example of the use of monetary policy is
   A) instituting a freeze on prices.
   B) requiring banks to keep more money on reserve.
   C) subsidizing farmers.
   D) making low-interest, long-term loans to college students.
   E) all of the above
   
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 550
   Edition: National

33) According to monetarists, making too much money available to borrow may lead to
   A) widespread bankruptcies.
   B) economic belt-tightening.
   C) inflation.
   D) recession.
   E) too little credit.
   
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 549
   Edition: National

34) Members of the Federal Reserve System’s Board of Governors
   A) are subject to replacement by each new president.
   B) are given 14-year terms designed to insulate them from political pressures.
   C) can be fired by the president at any time.
   D) are career civil-servants, neither appointed nor fired by presidents.
   E) merely carry out policy decided by the Treasury Department.
   
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 550
   Edition: National
35) The Federal Reserve System’s Board of Governors sets discount rates at a higher level
   A) to assist incumbent presidents near election time.
   B) thus lowering the cost of money and stimulating borrowing.
   C) to combat high unemployment.
   D) to increase the amount of money in circulation.
   E) to decrease the amount of money in circulation.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 550
Edition: National

36) Which of the following is NOT one of the measures used by the Fed to control the money supply?
   A) It sets discount rates for the money that banks can borrow from the Federal Reserve.
   B) It can buy and sell government securities in the market, thereby either expanding or contracting the money supply.
   C) It sets reserve requirements that determine the amount of money that banks must keep in reserve at all times.
   D) It dictates the minimum prime lending rate by commercial banks.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 550
Edition: National

37) Which of the following is NOT influenced in a major way by the actions of the Fed?
   A) money supply
   B) inflation
   C) commercial interest rates
   D) the minimum wage
   E) the unemployment rate

Answer: D
Page Ref: 550
Edition: National
38) Fiscal policy is

A) taxing, spending, and borrowing decisions shaped mostly by Congress and the president.
B) the manipulation of interest rates by the government to affect economic growth rates.
C) based on the principle that government should not meddle with the economy.
D) the manipulation of the supply of money and credit in private hands.
E) the reduction of taxes in order to stimulate the economy.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 550
Edition: National

39) Taxing, spending, and borrowing decisions by Congress and the president are known collectively as

A) fiscal policy.
B) econometrics.
C) supply-side economics.
D) monetary policy.
E) laissez faire.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 550
Edition: National

40) The most important political action in setting monetary policy is

A) Congress.
B) secretary of the treasury.
C) the president.
D) the Federal Reserve.
E) International Monetary Fund.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 550
Edition: National
41) An important tool in fiscal policy is the
   A) control of interest rates.
   B) level of government spending as indicated in the budget.
   C) use of price supports.
   D) amount of money banks must keep on deposit.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 550
   Edition: National

42) Taxing, spending, and borrowing policies of the federal government are called
   A) fiscal policy.
   B) tax expenditure policy.
   C) apportionment policy.
   D) supply–side economics.
   E) monetarism.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 550
   Edition: National

43) Keynesian economic theory argues for
   A) the government keeping its hands off the economy.
   B) stimulating the economy through manipulating the nation’s money supply.
   C) stimulating the economy through massive tax cuts and reducing the size of the national government.
   D) stimulating the economy through government spending programs.
   E) government wage and price controls to control inflation.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 551
   Edition: National
44) _______ encourages government to create jobs for people during times of severe unemployment in order to get money into the hands of consumers and stimulate the entire economy.

A) Supply–side economics
B) Industrial policy
C) Laissez faire
D) Monetary policy theory
E) Keynesian economic theory

Answer: E
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National

45) The Keynesian economic theory argues that government’s role in an economic depression should be to

A) reduce demand.
B) lower taxes.
C) increase demand.
D) increase supply.
E) increase the total money supply with lower interest rates.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National

46) A believer in Keynesian economic theory would stress that

A) government should avoid involvement in the economy.
B) the Federal Reserve Board should be abolished.
C) government should stabilize the economy through its spending policies.
D) government spending should be reduced when unemployment rises.
E) the dollar should be convertible to gold on demand, thus tying its value to gold and stabilizing its value.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National
47) The economic theory that would argue that government can spend its way out of a depression by stimulating the economy through spending is
   A) Keynesianism.
   B) Marxism.
   C) Reaganomics.
   D) monetarism.
   E) red ink economics.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National

48) Jumping into the business of consumer protection in the 1960s and 1970s, the ______ made new rules about product labeling, exaggerated product claims, and the use of celebrities in advertising.
   A) Federal Trade Commission
   B) Consumer Products Safety Commission
   C) Food and Drug Administration
   D) Clayton Antitrust Act
   E) Consumer Protection Agency

Answer: A
Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

49) ______, supported by President Reagan, was encouraged by the economist Arthur Laffer.
   A) Deficit spending
   B) Supply-side economics
   C) Keynesian economic theory
   D) A strict laissez-faire system
   E) Monetarism

Answer: B
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National
50) According to proponents of supply-side economics,
   A) increasing government spending provides an incentive to invest in business expansion.
   B) decreasing the supply of money reduces the federal deficit.
   C) borrowing money decreases the risk of unemployment and recession.
   D) cutting taxes leads to more incentive to save, work harder, and create more jobs.
   E) increasing the supply of goods available for consumption lowers prices and reduces the inflation rate.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 551
   Edition: National

51) President Reagan’s economic policies emphasized
   A) balanced budgeting through across-the-board cuts in all categories of government spending.
   B) the application of Keynesian economic theory to stimulate or slow the economy through lowering or raising taxes.
   C) supply-side economics in which tax cuts and deregulation are designed to free funds for savings and investment.
   D) industrial policy which targeted high tech industries for government assistance in helping them develop and compete in international markets.
   E) first balancing the budget and then cutting taxes.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 551
   Edition: National

52) George W. Bush’s tax cuts in 2001 were based on
   A) stagflation.
   B) the Federal funds rate.
   C) supply-side economics.
   D) Keynesian economics.
   E) hyperinflation.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 552
   Edition: National
53) Major corporate corruption scandals in the 1990s
   A) were largely ignored by Congress.
   B) were ignored by conservatives.
   C) have had few economic effects.
   D) followed an era of corporate concentration.
   E) resulted in prosecution.

Answer: D

54) Since the 1980s big business was particularly characterized by
   A) the breakup of many multinational corporations.
   B) an increase in corporate mergers.
   C) a decline in foreign competition.
   D) an increase in government regulation.
   E) an increase in ethical concerns.

Answer: B

55) The Sherman Act of 1890 was passed as ________ measure.
   A) a tariff reform
   B) a monetary reform
   C) a Civil War reparations
   D) an antitrust
   E) a pro-labor

Answer: D

56) The purpose of antitrust legislation is to
   A) promote the rights of unions.
   B) prevent foreign investors from owning majority interests in American companies.
   C) stop the growth of multinational corporations.
   D) ensure competition and prevent monopolies.
   E) foster industrial growth through such measures as tariffs and quotas to keep out foreign competition.

Answer: D
57) A famous and recent antitrust case pursued by the Clinton administration involved

A) Disney Enterprises.
B) McDonald’s.
C) Microsoft.
D) AT&T.
E) none of the above

Answer: C

58) Which of the following is NOT true about the Food and Drug Administration?

A) It has the responsibility to ascertain the safety and effectiveness of new drugs before approving them for marketing in America.
B) It has broad regulatory powers over the manufacturing, contents, marketing, and labeling of food and drugs.
C) It has the regulatory power to cap the retail prices of food and drugs and prevent profiteering by food and drug companies.
D) Recent budget cuts have left it overburdened and seriously understaffed.
E) All of these are true.

Answer: C

59) The first major consumer protection policy was the

B) Food and Drug Act.
C) Environmental Protection Act.
E) Consumer Credit Protection Act.

Answer: B
60) Prior to the New Deal era of the 1930s, the national government
   A) usually allied itself with business elites to squelch labor unions.
   B) forbade workers from joining unions.
   C) actively encouraged workers to join unions.
   D) guaranteed collective bargaining rights for those workers who formed a viable union.
   E) set long prison terms for anyone convicted of unionization activity.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 558
   Edition: National

61) The right of American workers to collective bargaining was first guaranteed by the National Labor Relations Act, also known as the _______ Act.
   A) Taft-Hartley
   B) Clayton Antitrust
   C) Wagner
   D) Roosevelt
   E) Hawley-Smoot
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 558
   Edition: National

62) Which of the following is NOT true of the Wagner Act?
   A) It gave states the power to adopt right-to-work laws.
   B) It stated that the right of workers to collective bargaining was guaranteed by the national government.
   C) It represented a sharp break with the government’s traditional anti-labor stance.
   D) It barred employers from firing or discriminating against a worker who advocates the possibility of unionizing.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 558
   Edition: National
63) An example of the kind of consumer policy that was first adopted in the 1960s and 1970s was
   A) protection against unfair competition that would artificially raise consumer prices.
   B) creation of the Federal Trade Commission to regulate fair business practices.
   C) protection against adulterated food and drugs.
   D) trust-busting.
   E) creation of a Product Safety Commission to regulate the safety of items sold to consumers.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 558
   Edition: National

64) The agency responsible for protecting the public against false and misleading advertising is the
   A) Food and Drug Administration.
   B) Justice Department.
   C) Product Safety Commission.
   D) Federal Communications Commission.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 558
   Edition: National

65) Truth in lending is enforced by the
   A) National Labor Relations Board.
   B) Federal Trade Commission.
   C) Federal Reserve Board.
   D) Justice Department.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 558
   Edition: National
66) The right of workers to collective bargaining is guaranteed by the

   A) First Amendment.
   B) United States Constitution.
   C) National Labor Relations Act.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

67) An employer is forbidden to fire or discriminate against a worker who advocates the possibility of unionizing under a provision of the

   A) Landrum–Griffin Act.
   B) Taft-Hartley Act.
   C) Clayton Act.
   E) First Amendment.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

68) The Taft-Hartley Act was aimed at

   A) expanding the rights of organized labor.
   B) requiring employers to provide basic health insurance for their employees.
   C) guaranteeing the right to collective bargaining for the first time in United States history.
   D) establishing a minimum wage.
   E) limiting certain practices by organized labor.

Answer: E
Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

69) Right-to-work laws were permitted by the

   A) Clayton Antitrust Act.
   B) Wagner Act.
   C) National Labor Relations Act.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 558
Edition: National
70) Right-to-work laws are supported by
   A) union members, but not necessarily organized unions.
   B) illegal immigrants.
   C) organized labor unions.
   D) business management.
   E) both organized labor unions and management.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

71) States were given the right to pass right-to-work laws by the
   A) National Labor Relations Act.
   B) Supreme Court ruling in Standard Oil v. California.
   C) Clayton Antitrust Act.
   E) Sherman Antitrust Act.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

72) Right-to-work laws prohibit
   A) employers from discriminating against legal aliens in their hiring practices.
   B) discrimination in the work place on the basis of race or gender.
   C) requirements that workers join a union to hold their jobs.
   D) employers from hiring illegal aliens.
   E) the formation of labor unions.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

73) Government regulation affects businesses like Wal-Mart by
   A) monitoring stock transactions.
   B) affection labor practices such as the minimum wage.
   C) regulating working conditions and labor practices.
   D) none of the above
   E) all of the above (excluding D)

Answer: D

Page Ref: 559; 540–563
Edition: National

733
True/False Questions

1) Wal-Mart is the world’s largest company.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 544-545
   Edition: National

2) Economic conditions profoundly affect voter’s electoral decisions.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 546-547
   Edition: National

3) Ample evidence indicates that on election day voters pay less attention to the economic condition of the nation as a whole than they do to their own financial situation.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 546-547
   Edition: National

4) The nation’s unemployment rate is calculated based on a random survey conducted every month by the Bureau of Labor Statistics.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 547
   Edition: National

5) The nation’s unemployment rate is the percentage of Americans who are not employed full-time.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 547
   Edition: National

6) Each month the Bureau of Labor Statistics conducts a huge survey to determine the unemployment rate.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 547
   Edition: National

7) Voters typically exaggerate the power that politicians have to influence the economy.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 546-547
   Edition: National

8) Keynesian economic theory encourages the government to manipulate monetary policy in order to stimulate the economy.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 551
   Edition: National
9) The second President Bush used supply-side logic to justify his $1.3 trillion, ten-year tax cut of 2001.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 552
Edition: National

10) Ronald Reagan embraced supply-side economics in overseeing a massive tax cut early in his administration.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National

11) The World Trade Organization (WTO) is responsible for regulating international trade.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 556
Edition: National

12) The United States economy depends on international trade for its survival.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 553
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) Corporate giants have internationalized in the period since World War II becoming what are known as ________, with vast holdings in many countries that are often bigger than most governments.

Answer: multinational corporations
Page Ref: 542
Edition: National

2) How does the economy normally affect elections?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 546–547
Edition: National

3) The nation’s ________ is measured monthly by a random survey of the United States population by the Bureau of Labor Statistics, using a massive sample size to assure policymakers of its accuracy.

Answer: unemployment rate
Page Ref: 547
Edition: National
4) The government uses the monthly measurement known as the ________, to keep tabs on inflation in the economy.

Answer: Consumer Price Index  
*Page Ref: 548*  
*Edition: National*

5) Explain the laissez-faire principle of economics and its impact on American government.

Answer: the principle that government should not meddle in the economy; answers will vary  
*Page Ref: 549*  
*Edition: National*

6) When the stock market crash of 1929 sent unemployment soaring, President Herbert Hoover largely clung to the ________ principle that government should not meddle with the economy.

Answer: laissez-faire  
*Page Ref: 549*  
*Edition: National*

7) The main government agency for making monetary policy is the ________, headed by a seven-member Board of Governors.

Answer: Federal Reserve Board  
*Page Ref: 549-550*  
*Edition: National*

8) ________ describes the impact of the federal budget—taxing, spending and borrowing—on the economy.

Answer: Fiscal policy  
*Page Ref: 550*  
*Edition: National*

9) The English economist ________ made famous the economic theory that government spending, particularly on jobs programs during a depression, could help an economy weather its normal ups and downs.

Answer: John Maynard Keynes  
*Page Ref: 551*  
*Edition: National*

10) What are the main principles of Keynesian economic theory?

Answer: that government spending and deficits can help the economy weather its normal ups and downs; proponents advocate using the power of government to stimulate the economy when it is lagging  
*Page Ref: 551*  
*Edition: National*
11) ________ economics, made famous by the economist Arthur Laffer and embraced by President Reagan during his first year in office, holds that the more the government taxes, the less people work, and thus the lower the government’s total tax revenues.

Answer: Supply-side
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National

12) What is meant by supply–side economics, and how did Ronald Reagan attempt to institute this policy while president?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 551
Edition: National

13) The ________ is responsible for regulating international trade.

Answer: World Trade Organization (WTO)
Page Ref: 556
Edition: National

14) Starting with the Sherman Act in 1890, the national government has attempted to ensure competition in business and prevent monopolies through ________ legislation.

Answer: antitrust
Page Ref: 557
Edition: National

15) What is the purpose of antitrust policy, and how has it been used in the United States?

Answer: a policy designed to ensure competition and prevent monopoly, which is the control of a market by one company; answers will vary
Page Ref: 557
Edition: National

16) What are the primary functions of the Food and Drug Administration?

Answer: broad regulatory powers over the manufacturing, contents, marketing and labeling of food and drugs
Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

17) Created in 1972, the ________ has broad powers to ban hazardous products from the market, regulating the safety of items ranging from toys to lawn mowers.

Answer: Consumer Product Safety Commission
Page Ref: 558
Edition: National
18) Passed during the New Deal era, the _______ guaranteed workers the right of collective bargaining for the first time, and set rules to protect unions and organizers.

Answer: National Labor Relations (Wagner) Act

Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

19) In what ways is the Federal Trade Commission involved in consumer protection?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

20) What are the main provisions of the Taft–Hartley Act?

Answer: continued to guarantee unions the right of collective bargaining, but prohibited various unfair practices by unions, gave the president a power to halt major strikes by seeking a court injunction for an 80-day "cooling off" period, and permitted states to adopt "right-to-work" laws

Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) How does a high unemployment rate or high inflation affect the way that Americans vote? Is there logic behind how voters view the parties in regard to addressing unemployment or addressing inflation? Why are the parties and elected officials limited in how they can affect the economy? Explain.

Page Ref: 546-547; 558-560
Edition: National

2) What is the main agency for making monetary policy in the government? Who chooses its leaders, and how are they removed from direct control by either the president or Congress? Is this appropriate? Explain.

Page Ref: 549-550
Edition: National

3) Explain the different approaches to monetary and fiscal policy. What are their effects on the economy?

Page Ref: 549-552
Edition: National

4) Identify the instruments available to government for managing the economy and explain their effects. What are the obstacles to controlling the economy?

Page Ref: 548-553
Edition: National

5) How have the government's economic policies shaped the areas of agriculture, business, consumer, and labor policy?

Page Ref: 556-559
Edition: National

Page Ref: 558
Edition: National

7) Discuss the economic policy of protectionism. What are its advantages and disadvantages?

Page Ref: 555
Edition: National
Chapter 18  Social Welfare and Policymaking

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) About _______ of Americans recently reported that they agreed that "success in life is pretty much determined by forces outside our control."

   A) one-tenth  
   B) two-thirds  
   C) three-fourths  
   D) one-half  
   E) seven-eighths  

   Answer: B  
   Page Ref: 566  
   Edition: National

2) Americans believe strongly that

   A) Social Security is a bad policy.  
   B) government is responsible for social welfare.  
   C) families are responsible for social welfare.  
   D) social welfare is a collective good.  
   E) people should take personal responsibility for themselves.  

   Answer: E  
   Page Ref: 566  
   Edition: National

3) Examples of Social Welfare policies include

   A) entitlements.  
   B) means-tested programs.  
   C) project grants.  
   D) A and B  
   E) A and C  

   Answer: D  
   Page Ref: 567-568  
   Edition: National
4) Policies that attempt to provide assistance and support to specific groups in society are called
   A) equal opportunity policies.
   B) redistributive policies.
   C) social welfare policies.
   D) tax subsidies.
   E) anti-poverty policies.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 566
   Edition: National

5) Federal spending on social programs _______ spending on the military and homeland security.
   A) is slightly less than
   B) is about the same as
   C) is slightly higher than
   D) is substantially higher than
   E) is much lower than
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 566
   Edition: National

6) Programs to assist the poor have always been
   A) politically popular.
   B) controversial.
   C) supported at increasingly high levels.
   D) provided as entitlements.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 568
   Edition: National

7) The government spends more on the _______ than on the _______.
   A) military; civilians
   B) youth; elderly
   C) men; women
   D) non poor; poor
   E) non citizens; citizens
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 567
   Edition: National
8) The median American household income is approximately
   A) $27,000.
   B) $32,000.
   C) $46,000.
   D) $59,000.
   E) $60,000.
   Answer: C

9) Government benefits provided regardless of financial need are called
   A) means-tested.
   B) transfer payments.
   C) entitlements.
   D) non-merit benefits.
   E) generic expenditures.
   Answer: C

10) An entitlement program is one
    A) to which only a small group of people are entitled.
    B) which requires a means test to qualify.
    C) guaranteed in the Constitution.
    D) which provides benefits regardless of financial need.
    E) none of the above
    Answer: D

11) The distribution of income across segments of the American population is
    A) just about even.
    B) slightly uneven.
    C) highly uneven.
    D) impossible to gauge.
    E) constantly changing.
    Answer: C
12) During the 1960s and 1970s, the income distribution in the United States
   A) grew more equitable.
   B) remained much the same, which is fairly equal.
   C) remained much the same, which is fairly unequal.
   D) grew more unequal.
   E) narrowed considerably.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 569
   Edition: National

13) During the 1980s and 1990s, income distribution in the United States
   A) grew more equitable.
   B) remained much the same, which is fairly equal.
   C) remained much the same, which is fairly unequal.
   D) grew more unequal.
   E) narrowed considerably.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 569
   Edition: National

14) ________ is the amount of money owned, including stocks, bonds, bank accounts, cars, houses, and so forth.
   A) Income
   B) Wealth
   C) Taxable income
   D) Net earnings
   E) Net profit
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 569
   Edition: National

15) Which of the following is TRUE about wealth and income in American society?
   A) Wealth is distributed less equally than income.
   B) Wealth and income are distributed about the same in society.
   C) Income is distributed less equally than wealth.
   D) Wealth and income are the same thing.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 569
   Edition: National
16) The top one percent of wealth-holders currently possess about _______ of all American wealth.

A) one percent  
B) one tenth  
C) one quarter  
D) one third  
E) one half

Answer: D

Page Ref: 569  
Edition: National

17) Which best characterizes the distribution of wealth and income in the United States?

A) Wealth is more unequally distributed than income.  
B) Income is more unequally distributed than wealth.  
C) Wealth and income are each distributed in roughly the same pattern.  
D) The distribution of wealth is becoming slightly more equal, while the distribution of income is becoming slightly more unequal.  
E) The distribution of income is becoming slightly more equal, while the distribution of wealth continues to grow more unequal.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 569  
Edition: National

18) The distribution of income in the United States

A) makes Americans the richest people on earth.  
B) is quite uneven.  
C) has shifted since 1950 towards middle-income people.  
D) is fairly equal compared to most nations in the world.  
E) has shifted notably away from elderly people since 1965.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 569  
Edition: National
19) Statistics show that the distribution of income among American households was most unequal in
   A) 1960.
   B) 1970.
   C) 1980.
   D) 1990.
   E) 1950.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 569
   Edition: National

20) The amount of money collected between two points of time is called
   A) income.
   B) wealth.
   C) taxes.
   D) savings.
   E) asset accumulation.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 569
   Edition: National

21) Which of the following statements about wealth in the United States is FALSE?
   A) The top one percent of the wealth-holders currently possess about three percent of all American wealth.
   B) The wealth of the richest one percent exceeds the wealth of the bottom 90 percent.
   C) There are now over two million millionaires in the world, most in the United States.
   D) Between 1979 and 1995, the poorest one-fifth of the population saw their real incomes increase, while the richest one-fifth of the population saw their real incomes decrease.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 569
   Edition: National
22) Which of the following statements about the distribution of wealth in America is TRUE?

A) Many of the poor are slowly gaining ground, relatively speaking, to higher-income groups.
B) All groups are increasing their wealth, with the poor increasing at a slightly lower rate.
C) Many of the poor are losing ground to the higher-income groups in absolute terms.
D) All groups are increasing their wealth, with the poor increasing at a slightly higher rate.
E) The middle class (the middle quintile of the population) is increasing its share of the national income, while the top and bottom quintiles are losing their share of national income.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 569
Edition: National

23) The share of national income earned by various groups in the United States is described by the concept of

A) the apple pie.
B) income distribution.
C) income relativity.
D) socio-economic stratification.
E) wealth allocation.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 568
Edition: National

24) The poverty line is measured by

A) the minimum wage extended on a yearly basis.
B) taking into account what a family would need to spend to maintain an "austere" standard of living.
C) the number of people filing for unemployment benefits.
D) the boundaries of an urban ghetto.
E) proportion of the median income as determined by IRS records.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 569
Edition: National
25) The United States Bureau of Census' definition of the poverty line takes into account

A) the earning power of the head of the household and family size.
B) a daily intake of 2,000 calories and half the average hourly wage in the country.
C) what a family would need to spend for an austere standard of living and the size of the family.
D) the earning power of the head of the household and racial composition of the family.
E) all of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 569
Edition: National

26) To count the poor, the United States Bureau of the Census has established the ________ which takes into account what a family would need to spend to maintain an "austere" standard of living.

A) culture of poverty
B) urban underclass
C) poverty line
D) relative deprivation index
E) Poverty Index

Answer: C
Page Ref: 569
Edition: National

27) Officially, approximately _______ of Americans lived below the poverty line in 2005 (although many more could have fallen into it for short periods).

A) 4 percent
B) 12 percent
C) 17 percent
D) 31 percent
E) 6 percent

Answer: B
Page Ref: 570
Edition: National
28) One study of American families found that ________ were below the poverty line at least once during their lifetimes.
   A) nearly one-tenth
   B) nearly one-third
   C) nearly one-half
   D) nearly two-thirds
   E) nearly three-quarters

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 570
   Edition: National

29) Compared to the general population, poverty is more common among all of the following EXCEPT
   A) African Americans and Hispanics.
   B) the elderly.
   C) children.
   D) inner city residents.
   E) Asian Americans.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 571
   Edition: National

30) Official poverty counts tend to underestimate poverty because
   A) some families refuse to report their income level.
   B) some families go in and out of poverty without being counted.
   C) they do not include individuals’ wealth.
   D) the Republicans want it that way.
   E) the Democrats want it that way.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 571
   Edition: National
31) The poverty rate is highest among
   A) African Americans.
   B) people over 65.
   C) Caucasians who live in Appalachia.
   D) Hispanics.
   E) residents of central cities.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 571
   Edition: National

32) A _______ tax takes a higher percentage from the incomes of the rich than the poor.
   A) progressive
   B) proportional
   C) regressive
   D) relative deprivation
   E) flat

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 573
   Edition: National

33) The _______ of poverty refers to the increased concentration of poverty among women.
   A) feminization
   B) gender-enhancement
   C) female-orientation
   D) "pink"ening
   E) sexualization

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 571
   Edition: National

34) Poverty among the elderly declined over the past several decades primarily due to
   A) Social Security payments.
   B) the booming economy in the 1980s.
   C) changing attitudes in society regarding the elderly.
   D) the larger proportion of savings held by the elderly.
   E) none of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 571
   Edition: National
35) A _______ tax requires the same share from everyone, rich and poor alike.
   A) progressive  
   B) proportional  
   C) regressive  
   D) relative deprivation  
   E) flat  
   Answer: B  
   Page Ref: 573  
   Edition: National  

36) A _______ tax takes a higher percentage from those with lower incomes, and less from the wealthy.
   A) progressive  
   B) proportional  
   C) regressive  
   D) relative deprivation  
   E) flat  
   Answer: C  
   Page Ref: 573  
   Edition: National  

37) The federal income tax is an example of a _______ tax.
   A) progressive  
   B) proportional  
   C) regressive  
   D) relative deprivation  
   E) flat  
   Answer: A  
   Page Ref: 573  
   Edition: National
38) The best evidence indicates that the overall incidence of taxes—local, state, and federal—in America is
   A) progressive.
   B) proportional.
   C) regressive.
   D) relative deprivation.
   E) flat.
   Answer: B

39) The overall incidence of taxes in America is proportional, because
   A) federal, state, and local taxes all tend to be proportional.
   B) generally regressive federal taxes are counterbalanced by more progressive state and local taxes.
   C) generally regressive state and local taxes are counterbalanced by progressive federal taxes.
   D) relative deprivation serves as a counterbalance at each level.
   E) federal taxes are proportional.
   Answer: C

40) Government’s main tools for influencing the distribution of income and wealth are
   A) equal opportunity and affirmative action programs.
   B) income taxation and expenditure policies.
   C) extending eligibility for welfare and Medicare benefits.
   D) legislating and enforcing economic policies.
   E) monetary policy and wage and price controls.
   Answer: B
41) If the government takes a bigger bite from the income of a rich family than from the income of a poor family, then the tax system is
   A) progressive.
   B) proportional.
   C) regressive.
   D) redistributive.
   E) retrogressive.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 573
   Edition: National

42) If one person earns twice as much as another, but each pays 15 percent of their income in taxes, then the tax system is
   A) progressive.
   B) proportional.
   C) regressive.
   D) redistributive.
   E) egalitarian.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 573
   Edition: National

43) If a poor family pays 50 percent of its income in taxes and a rich one 5 percent, then the tax system is
   A) progressive.
   B) proportional.
   C) regressive.
   D) redistributive.
   E) retrogressive.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 573
   Edition: National
44) The poor are disadvantaged by regressive taxation, which
   A) does not occur in the United States.
   B) occurs in states with a sales tax.
   C) results from low welfare payments.
   D) results from the federal income tax.
   E) requires income withholding even though the wage earner will owe little or no tax in the end.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National

45) The tax that can be used to redistribute income from the rich to the poor is a
   A) sales tax.
   B) progressive tax.
   C) regressive tax.
   D) proportional tax.
   E) relative deprivation tax.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National

46) A tax that can make the rich richer and the poor poorer is a
   A) flat tax.
   B) progressive tax.
   C) regressive tax.
   D) proportional tax.
   E) graduated tax.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National

47) The best evidence indicates that the overall incidence of taxes in America is
   A) proportional.
   B) progressive.
   C) regressive.
   D) redistributive.
   E) relative deprivation.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National
48) The biggest chunk of transfer payments goes to
A) means-tested programs in general.
B) Temporary Aid to Needy Families (TANF) in particular.
C) unmarried black females with children.
D) the elderly and other recipients of social security.
E) foreign aid.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National

49) Food Stamps, low-interest student loans, and Temporary Aid to Needy Families are all examples of
A) transfer payments.
B) regressive taxes.
C) entitlements.
D) relative deprivation.
E) proportional taxes.
Answer: A
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National

50) A transfer payment is one which
A) requires some form of work in exchange for government assistance.
B) provides money from the government's general treasury to those in specific need.
C) is paid in lieu of cash.
D) is not based on need.
E) provides tax credits from the government general treasury to those in need.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National

51) Which of the following is NOT a means-tested program?
A) Medicaid
B) Medicare
C) Food Stamps
D) Aid to Families with Dependent Children
E) none of the above
Answer: B
Page Ref: 574
Edition: National
52) Which of the following is an example of an entitlement?

A) Food Stamps  
B) Aid to Families with Dependent Children  
C) Social Security  
D) low-interest college loans  
E) Pell Grants

Answer: C

Page Ref: 574  
Edition: National

53) Transfer payments

A) consist of cash and in-kind benefits from the government.  
B) are part of the proposed changes to make taxation more proportional.  
C) have significantly redistributed income in America.  
D) have the net effect of being regressive.  
E) all of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 573  
Edition: National

54) Transfer payments have

A) significantly redistributed income in America.  
B) raised many of the poor above the poverty line.  
C) created greater income equality.  
D) have had virtually no affect on poverty in America.  
E) conspicuously bypassed the elderly, while helping many other groups.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 573  
Edition: National

55) Social Security and Medicare

A) require an income and means test for eligibility.  
B) are the largest and most expensive social welfare programs in America.  
C) have had little effect on the health and income of older Americans.  
D) are voluntary programs aimed specifically at the poor.  
E) all of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 574  
Edition: National
56) Which of the following programs receives the most funding?

A) Medicare  
B) Medicaid  
C) Food Stamps  
D) Aid to Families with Dependent Children  
E) Supplemental Security Income  

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 574  
Edition: National

57) Medicaid provides

A) hospital care for the retired and disabled people covered by Social Security.  
B) medical insurance to those over 65 and disabled.  
C) medical and hospital aid to the poor on the basis of need through federally assisted state health programs.  
D) cash payments to aged, blind, or disabled people whose income is below a certain amount.  
E) hospital care for people covered by Social Security.  

Answer: C  
Page Ref: 574  
Edition: National

58) According to Martin Gilens, whites' attitudes toward welfare are strongly influenced by

A) whether they had ever personally experienced poverty.  
B) their religious beliefs about caring for the poor.  
C) their current wealth.  
D) whether they viewed African Americans as lazy or not.  
E) their educational background.  

Answer: D  
Page Ref: 575  
Edition: National
59) The feminization of poverty refers to

A) the high incidence of poverty among unmarried mothers and their children.
B) high poverty levels among the elderly, who tend to be female.
C) higher incarceration rates of women today compared to twenty years ago.
D) higher rates of homelessness among women.
E) the high incidence of poverty among married mothers and their children.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 571
Edition: National

60) Means-tested public assistance programs

A) are funded at much higher levels than entitlement programs.
B) were eliminated by President Reagan.
C) were strengthened as a result of Lyndon Johnson's "War on Poverty."
D) include Medicare, Unemployment Insurance and Old Age, Survivors, and Disability Insurance.
E) were eliminated by President Bush.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 575
Edition: National

61) The ________, passed by Congress in 1935, dramatically brought the government into the equation of one generation's obligations to another.

A) Aid to Families with Dependent Children Act
B) Medicaid bill
C) Social Security Act
D) National Direct Student Loan Act
E) Medicare Bill

Answer: C

Page Ref: 575
Edition: National
62) Social Security was begun in the United States during
   A) the Civil War.
   B) World War I.
   C) the New Deal.
   D) the Great Society era.
   E) Spanish American War.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 578
   Edition: National

63) The Social Security Act of 1935
   A) brought government into the equation of the obligations of one generation to another.
   B) substantially freed adults from the obligation of caring for both their children and parents.
   C) provided for free medical care for all citizens over the age of 65 until it was repealed by the Republican congress of 1953.
   D) freed American citizens from the obligation of supporting the poor.
   E) substantially freed children and adults from paying their parents’ medical expenses.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 575
   Edition: National

64) The “War on Poverty” was the set of social welfare policy initiatives begun by President
   A) Lyndon Johnson.
   B) Jimmy Carter.
   C) Franklin D. Roosevelt.
   D) Ronald Reagan.
   E) Harry S. Truman.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 575
   Edition: National
65) The "War on Poverty" programs were later attacked and had their funding reduced substantially by President
   A) Dwight Eisenhower.  
   B) Lyndon Johnson.  
   C) Ronald Reagan.  
   D) Richard Nixon.  
   E) George Bush.  
   Answer: C  
   *Page Ref: 575*  
   *Edition: National*

66) Which of the following presidents did not accept or expand many of the programs initiated under Johnson’s "War on Poverty"?
   A) Richard Nixon  
   B) Gerald Ford  
   C) Jimmy Carter  
   D) Ronald Reagan  
   E) both Nixon and Reagan  
   Answer: D  
   *Page Ref: 575*  
   *Edition: National*

67) President Ronald Reagan _______ the "War on Poverty" programs.
   A) was the mastermind behind the passage of  
   B) continued to support  
   C) severely reduced many of  
   D) completely abolished  
   E) enhanced the scope of  
   Answer: C  
   *Page Ref: 575*  
   *Edition: National*
68) Charles Murray’s evaluation of the Great Society programs concluded they

A) helped to curb the spread of poverty and made the situation much better for millions of the nation’s poor.
B) helped to curb the spread of poverty, but did not make the situation any better for the nation’s poor.
C) helped to curb the spread of poverty, but actually made the situation worse for the nation’s poor.
D) did not curb the spread of poverty, and actually increased the number of the nation’s poor.
E) did not curb the spread of poverty, but strengthened the family as a social institution.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 575
Edition: National

69) Charles Murray’s study of the programs of the Great Society concluded all of the following EXCEPT

A) a key problem all along was inadequate funding to see the anti-poverty programs through.
B) public policies discouraged the poor from solving their own problems.
C) the programs actually made it profitable to be poor and victimized.
D) many of the programs not only failed to halt the spread of poverty, they actually made matters worse.
E) many of the programs actually increase poverty in the U.S.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 575
Edition: National

70) A major study by Charles Murray argues that

A) although the Great Society did not eliminate poverty, it did reduce the number of poor.
B) not only did the social programs of the Great Society fail to curb the advance of poverty, they actually made the situation worse.
C) macroeconomic cycles were responsible for much of the movement into and out of poverty during the post-1965 period.
D) although the Great Society was able to reduce poverty in America, it had no effect on racial discrimination.
E) there is a “new poverty” in America that is largely the result of deindustrialization, foreign competition, the exploitation of part-time workers and stagnation of the minimum wage.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 575
Edition: National
71) According to Charles Murray, the problem with social welfare policies is that they
   A) cost too much.
   B) did not receive adequate funding.
   C) discouraged the poor from solving their own problems.
   D) did not address the basic problem of racism as a cause of poverty.
   E) robbed hard-working Peter to pay lazy Paul.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 575
   Edition: National

72) Criticisms of the current welfare system include each of the following EXCEPT
   A) they discourage the poor from solving their problems.
   B) they make it profitable to be poor and victimized.
   C) they do not include a means test to weed out welfare fraud.
   D) they discourage poor people from saving money.
   E) they discourage recipients from getting married or even living together.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 575
   Edition: National

73) Martin Gilens research suggested that Americans’ opposition to welfare was based on
   A) economic self-interest.
   B) conservative political ideology.
   C) negative attitudes toward blacks.
   D) negative attitudes toward the poor.
   E) negative attitudes toward government.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 575
   Edition: National

74) Each of the following were provisions of the 1996 welfare reform bill EXCEPT
   A) each state would receive a fixed amount of money to run its own welfare programs.
   B) people on welfare would have to find work within two years or lose all their benefits.
   C) basic health care benefits would be provided to those who found jobs.
   D) a lifetime maximum of five years on welfare was set.
   E) All of the above were provisional the 1996 welfare reform bill.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 576
   Edition: National
75) Nationally, over the past six decades, there has been a particularly strong redistribution of government benefits in favor of the

A) very wealthy.
B) corporations.
C) nation’s children.
D) elderly.
E) middle class.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 571; 578–579
Edition: National

76) Compared to other industrialized countries, the United States ________ in providing a safety net for all its citizens and in lifting a greater percentage of the poor above the poverty line with various programs.

A) does much better
B) does somewhat better
C) does about the same
D) does worse
E) does something similar

Answer: D

Page Ref: 582–584
Edition: National

77) The United States differs from other industrial countries in regard to social welfare in all of the following ways EXCEPT

A) the United States does not have a comprehensive family leave policy.
B) Americans tend to see poverty and social welfare needs as individual rather than government concerns.
C) Europeans tend to see government in a more positive light, while Americans tend to distrust government action.
D) only the Scandinavian countries spend a smaller proportion of their gross national products on social welfare policies than does the United States.
E) the universal provision of daycare to toddlers, paid for by the government.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 582–584
Edition: National
78) Compared to most Western democracies, the United States provides
   A) relatively few social welfare benefits.
   B) selective rather than universal social welfare payments.
   C) an average amount of social welfare benefits.
   D) more cash transfers, but fewer in-kind transfers.
   E) overly generous social welfare benefits.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 582–584
   Edition: National

79) Europeans tend to
   A) see poverty and social welfare needs as individual.
   B) have a more positive attitude toward government than Americans.
   C) distrust government action in areas like social welfare policy.
   D) leave people at low-income levels more on their own.
   E) prefer the perpetuation of a privileged and aristocratic upper class whose lifestyle they can envy even though they cannot live it.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 583
   Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Even President Reagan, the most conservative of recent presidents, favored a "safety net" of social programs.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 575
   Edition: National

2) Both entitlements and means-tested programs are needs based.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 567–568
   Edition: National

3) The increase in entitlement spending in 2006 is greater than all pork-barrel spending combined.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 567–568
   Edition: National
4) One's total income includes the amount already owned, such as stocks, bonds, houses, cars, bank accounts, and so forth.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 568
Edition: National

5) The 1980s and 1990s have been a period where the "rich get richer, and the poor get poorer."

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 568
Edition: National

6) During the 1960s and 1970s, there was relatively little change in the distribution of income in America.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 568
Edition: National

7) All income groups are increasing their wealth, with the poor increasing at a slightly lower rate.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 569
Edition: National

8) In 2005, the Census Bureau defined a family of three as falling below the poverty level if it had an annual income below $15,277.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 568
Edition: National

9) More than half of the people in the United States live below the poverty line.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 570
Edition: National

10) Poor families pay a higher percentage of their incomes in state sales taxes than well-to-do families.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National

11) The Earned Income Tax Credit may have done as much to alleviate poverty as all the other policy programs tried by the federal government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 573
Edition: National
12) Means-tested programs aimed specifically at the poor, such as Medicaid and Food Stamps, are funded at much lower levels than non-means tested entitlement programs for the elderly.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 571
Edition: National

13) Means-tested programs are funded at much lower levels than non-means tested programs.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 571
Edition: National

14) In these days of terrorism, wars, and rumors of wars, federal spending on social security is somewhat less than federal spending on the military and homeland security.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 567
Edition: National

15) Social welfare benefits provided by most other industrial nations are usually more generous than those provided in the United States, and are more effective in lifting a greater percentage of their poor above the poverty line.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 582-584
Edition: National

16) The United States is more generous than most industrial nations in providing social welfare benefits.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 582-584
Edition: National

17) Traditionally, families have been among our most important economic institutions.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 577
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) The _______ are victims of things they are not responsible for: the loss of the breadwinner, disabilities, or poor economic opportunities.

Answer: deserving poor
Page Ref: 568
Edition: National
2) Social welfare benefits that are provided regardless of financial need, such as Medicare, are termed _______.

Answer: entitlements

Page Ref: 567
Edition: National

3) Government programs with a(n) _______ are those which require a demonstration of need based on income and assets.

Answer: means test

Page Ref: 568
Edition: National

4) What is the difference between income and wealth? Give an example of each.

Answer: Income is the amount of funds collected between any two points in time. Wealth is the value of assets owned.

Page Ref: 569
Edition: National

5) To count the poor, the United States Bureau of the Census has established the _______, which takes into account what a family would need to spend in order to maintain an "austere" standard of living.

Answer: poverty line (or poverty level)

Page Ref: 569
Edition: National

6) What is the United States Bureau of the Census' definition of the poverty line, and why is it important?

Answer: a method used to count the number of poor people, defined by what a family must spend for an "austere" standard of living; defining poverty is a political decision and has political consequences for elected officials and social welfare programs

Page Ref: 569
Edition: National

7) Identify the demographic subgroups that have the highest rate of poverty.

Answer: African Americans, children, Hispanic non-whites, unmarried females

Page Ref: 571
Edition: National

8) One academic study concluded that about _______ percent of all working Americans experience poverty during their lifetimes.

Answer: fifty

Page Ref: 570
Edition: National
9) ________ refers to the increasing proportion of women and children living in poverty over the past several decades.
   
   Answer: Feminization of poverty
   
   Page Ref: 571
   Edition: National

10) A(n) ________ tax is one which takes a higher percentage from those at lower income levels than from the wealthy.

   Answer: regressive
   
   Page Ref: 573
   Edition: National

11) Explain the difference between progressive, proportional, and regressive taxes.

   Answer: A progressive tax in one in which the government takes a greater share of the income of the rich than of the poor. A proportional tax is one in which the government takes the same share of income from everyone, rich and poor alike. A regressive tax is one in which the burden falls relatively more heavily upon low-income groups than upon wealthy taxpayers.

   Page Ref: 573
   Edition: National

12) The Federal government spends more money on ________ programs than on ________ programs.

   Answer: entitlement; means-tested
   
   Page Ref: 567–568
   Edition: National

13) Government benefits that spend money from the general treasury to benefit those in specific need are called ________.

   Answer: transfer payments
   
   Page Ref: 573
   Edition: National

14) There is some evidence that people’s attitudes toward social welfare are based in part on their attitudes toward ________.

   Answer: African Americans
   
   Page Ref: 575
   Edition: National

15) What was Charles Murray’s main argument concerning the American social welfare system?

   Answer: The social welfare programs of the Great Society and later administrations not only failed to curb the advance of poverty but actually made it worse because these policies discouraged the poor from solving their own problems, made it profitable to be poor and discouraged people from pursuing means by which they could rise out of poverty.
16) The passage of the ________ Act in 1935, during the Great Depression, involved the national government in determining one generation’s obligations to another.

Answer: Social Security

Page Ref: 575
Edition: National

17) President ________ chose to target poverty programs as one major way to cut government spending, a policy which also served his own ideological beliefs of less government and more self-sufficiency.

Answer: Ronald Reagan

Page Ref: 575
Edition: National

18) Describe how Bill Clinton “ended welfare as we knew it,” what were the effects of welfare reform bills passed under his administration? How has George W. Bush tried to reform welfare? Why?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 576-578
Edition: National

**Essay Questions**

1) Describe how Americans’ individualistic attitudes are reflected in the politics and policies of social welfare. Who has “won” in social welfare policy over the past several decades?

Answer: examples throughout the chapter

Page Ref: 564-565
Edition: National

2) Why, according to the text, have programs to help the poor always been controversial?

Page Ref: 566-568; 575
Edition: National

3) Compare and contrast entitlement and means-tested social welfare programs in the United States Which one is more costly? Popular? Why?

Page Ref: 567-568
Edition: National

4) Describe the difference between the deserving poor and undeserving poor. How does this perception affect Americans’ attitudes toward entitlement programs and means-tested programs?

Page Ref: 567-568
Edition: National

5) How are income and wealth distributed in the United States? What are the characteristics of the poor, and how is poverty defined?

Page Ref: 569
Edition: National
6) Describe the general distribution of wealth in American society. What role does government play in determining this distribution?

Page Ref: 569; 573–574
Edition: National

7) Describe the differences between a progressive tax, a proportional tax, and a regressive tax. Why is a proportional tax often regressive in its effect? Is a progressive tax fair to those who make more money? Explain.

Page Ref: 573–574
Edition: National

8) Describe the principal social welfare programs sponsored by the American government. What is the difference between entitlements and means-tested programs, and which are better funded? Is the government spending too much, too little, or about the right amount on social welfare programs? Explain.

Page Ref: 567–568
Edition: National

9) How do the social welfare benefits provided in the United States compare to those of other industrial countries? Do Americans generally have a different attitude toward poverty than others? Is it correct? Explain.

Page Ref: 582–584
Edition: National

10) Compare the extent of social policies in the United States with those of other Western democracies.

Page Ref: 582–584
Edition: National

11) Describe how the United States social welfare system has evolved over the past century. How does our system differ from those in other countries?

Page Ref: 578–584
Edition: National

12) Describe the major features of the welfare reform bill signed by President Clinton in 1996. What issues relating to the scope of government did the welfare bill raise? How democratic was it?

Page Ref: 576–578
Edition: National

13) Describe how Social Security is funded and why the text describes it as “living on borrowed time.” Why are the possible scenarios for its future? What do you think will happen, and why?

Page Ref: 578–582
Edition: National
14) What is the place of social welfare in a democracy? What competing demands on democratic government does social welfare policy create, what groups are involved in the process, and how do these groups interact? What effect does social welfare policy have on the scope of government?

Page Ref: 584-585
Edition: National
Chapter 19  Policymaking for Health Care and the Environment

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Which of the following is NOT true about health care in America?
   A) The United States spends a higher proportion of its wealth on health care than any other country.
   B) Americans are the healthiest people in the world.
   C) Much of the money Americans pay for health care goes to services like organ transplants, kidney dialysis, and other treatments that are not widely available outside the United States.
   D) By the mid-1990s, Americans had spent over $1 trillion a year on health care.
   E) Informally, health care is rationed in the U.S.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 590
   Edition: National

2) Overall, about _______ of the Gross Domestic Product goes to the health industry.
   A) 20 percent  
   B) 15 percent  
   C) 25 percent  
   D) 40 percent  
   E) 8 percent

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 590
   Edition: National

3) Compared to Western European nations, the United States has a _______ infant mortality rate.
   A) higher  
   B) nearly identical  
   C) slightly lower  
   D) significantly lower  
   E) faster growing

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 591
   Edition: National
4) Which of the following countries has the highest infant mortality rate?
   A) United States
   B) France
   C) Japan
   D) Italy
   E) Canada

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 591
   Edition: National

5) Health care in the United States
   A) has decreased in cost due to the technological revolution.
   B) constitutes nearly 15 percent of America’s gross domestic product.
   C) has made the United States the healthiest country in the world.
   D) has failed to keep up with the technological revolution.
   E) All of the above

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 590
   Edition: National

6) Which of the following countries has the lowest life expectancy?
   A) Italy
   B) Japan
   C) United States
   D) Canada
   E) France

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 591
   Edition: National

7) Which of the following is a reason that American health care expenses are so high?
   A) Americans visit the doctor more often.
   B) Americans have longer hospital stays.
   C) Doctors practice "offensive medicine" to avoid medical liability.
   D) High-tech care is available for previously untreatable conditions.
   E) All of the above.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 592
   Edition: National
8) Americans have _______ health care.
   A) high-tech, expensive, and unequal
   B) low-tech, inexpensive, and unequal
   C) high-tech, expensive, and equal
   D) low-tech, expensive, and unequal
   E) high tech, inexpensive and equal

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 591-592
   Edition: National

9) The infant mortality rate in the United States
   A) is the lowest in the world.
   B) is second lowest in the world after Japan.
   C) ranks 18th among the world’s nations.
   D) is only worse than Finland, Japan, and Iceland.
   E) is half of what it is in Japan.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 591
   Edition: National

10) Which of the following contributes to higher costs of medical care in the United States?
    A) The best doctors tend to practice abroad where insurance premiums are lower.
    B) Americans are the healthiest people in the world.
    C) Insured patients have little incentive to ask for cheaper care.
    D) Malpractice insurance costs for doctors are covered by the federal government.
    E) None of the above

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 592
   Edition: National

11) Doctors have no reason to compete with each other to offer cheaper health care expenses because
    A) insurance companies and government pay for most health care expenses.
    B) government mandates that everyone receives equal access to health care.
    C) technology has made medical care more efficient and less costly.
    D) specialization has made competition unnecessary.
    E) All of the above

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 592
   Edition: National
12) Access to health insurance in the United States is strongly related to
   A) race and geographic location.
   B) gender and income.
   C) race and income.
   D) gender and geographic location.
   E) race and gender.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 593
   Edition: National

13) ______ is part of the Social Security system and covers 40 million American seniors with hospitalization insurance and other optional health insurance.
   A) Medicaid
   B) Medicare
   C) The National Institutes of Health
   D) The Superfund
   E) The United States Health Service
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 595
   Edition: National

14) In the United States, the largest single source of health care dollars comes from
   A) private insurance companies.
   B) private charities.
   C) government.
   D) citizens themselves in out-of-pocket medical payments.
   E) the private sector.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 594
   Edition: National
15) The United States government finances much of the medical research done in the country through

   A) Medicaid.
   B) the National Endowment for Medical Research.
   C) the National Institutes of Health.
   D) the National Science Foundation.
   E) the Department of Health and Human Services.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 594
Edition: National

16) The National Institutes of Health

   A) administers the national health insurance system in the United States.
   B) provides funds for medical research in the United States.
   C) is the largest hospital and physicians' interest group in the United States.
   D) administers the Medicare and Medicaid programs.
   E) is the federal agency that regulates private health insurance companies.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 594
Edition: National

17) Americans pay about _______ of their health care costs out of their own pockets.

   A) 4 percent
   B) 20 percent
   C) 40 percent
   D) 33 percent
   E) 54 percent

Answer: B
Page Ref: 594
Edition: National

18) Medicare was adopted in 1965 to provide government health insurance to

   A) veterans.
   B) government employees.
   C) the poor.
   D) the elderly.
   E) children living in poverty.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 595
Edition: National
19) The first president to call for national health insurance was
   A) Franklin Roosevelt.
   B) Harry Truman.
   C) Lyndon Johnson.
   D) Jimmy Carter.
   E) Bill Clinton.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 595
   Edition: National

20) The federal program that permits older Americans to purchase inexpensive coverage for
doctor fees and other non-hospital expenses is
   A) Medicare Part A.
   B) Medicare Part B.
   C) Medicaid.
   D) social insurance program.
   E) the American Association of Retired Persons.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 595
   Edition: National

21) Medicaid is a program designed to provide health care for
   A) the very poor.
   B) the elderly.
   C) everyone who lives below the poverty line.
   D) veterans.
   E) Social Security recipients.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 596
   Edition: National

22) Which of the following is NOT true about Medicaid?
   A) It is funded by both the states and national government.
   B) It is a means-tested program.
   C) It provides health care for all poor Americans.
   D) The costs of Medicaid are increasing rapidly.
   E) States have cut Medicaid coverage in recent years.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 596
   Edition: National
23) What is the largest voluntary association in the world?
   A) American Association of Retired Persons
   B) Sierra Club
   C) International Association of Workers and Peasants
   D) National Patients' Union
   E) Chinese Revolutionary Workers' Party

   Answer: A

24) Which of the following statements about the American Association of Retired Persons is FALSE?
   A) It is the largest voluntary association in the world.
   B) It can claim to represent one American in eight.
   C) Its widespread respect and authority are due to the fact that it has avoided involvement in political activity.
   D) It speaks with authority on all questions associated with the elderly.
   E) Its membership has been growing dramatically.

   Answer: C

25) Business groups are becoming increasingly active in health care policymaking because
   A) businesses contribute the most taxes that pay for Medicare and Medicaid.
   B) businesses are run primarily by elderly Americans who have a vested interest in health care.
   C) healthy employees are more profitable to businesses.
   D) private employers often pay the insurance premiums for their employees.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
26) The primary focus of President Clinton’s Health Security Act was
   A) fraud on the part of insurance companies.
   B) rationing and access.
   C) the establishment of national health insurance.
   D) providing health care for all Americans.
   E) the elderly.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 597
   Edition: National

27) Under Bill Clinton’s proposed Health Security Act, the brunt of the increased health care costs would have fallen most directly on
   A) employers.
   B) employees.
   C) those who purchased tobacco, alcohol, and pornography.
   D) patients.
   E) doctors.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 597-598
   Edition: National

28) George W. Bush’s proposal for lowering medical costs by encouraging health savings accounts can best be described as
   A) socialist.
   B) popular.
   C) cheap.
   D) market based.
   E) egalitarian.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 598
   Edition: National
29) Which aspect of health care costs has increased the fastest?

A) emergency room care  
B) prescription drugs  
C) prenatal care  
D) out-patient surgery  
E) treatment for drug and alcohol abuse

Answer: B  
Page Ref: 598-599  
Edition: National

30) Of the following, who can not be considered a strong advocate for stem cell research?

A) George W. Bush  
B) Michael J. Fox  
C) Nancy Reagan  
D) Christopher Reeve  
E) the State of California

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 599-600  
Edition: National

31) Oregon started rationing health care provided under Medicaid by

A) deciding not to pay for some costly treatments in order to provide medical care to more people.  
B) moving toward greater high-tech breakthroughs in medicine.  
C) giving everyone a certain number of health care "credits," which they can spend annually as they see fit.  
D) requiring Medicaid recipients to stop bearing children in order to receive free health coverage for their present families.  
E) distributing Medicare patients to a greater number of physicians.

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 600  
Edition: National
32) The enforcement of the Clean Air Act and other anti-pollution legislation is administered by what regulatory body?
   A) Department of Interior
   B) Environmental Protection Agency
   C) Department of Justice
   D) Occupational Safety and Health Administration
   E) Federal Pollution Board

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 601
   Edition: National

33) Which of the following is NOT true about the Environmental Protection Agency?
   A) It is the nation’s largest regulatory agency.
   B) It is in charge of administering policies dealing with toxic wastes such as dangerous chemicals.
   C) It enforces the Clean Air Act, the Water Pollution Control Act, and many other environmental bills.
   D) It was established in the 1910s.
   E) The head of the EPA is a cabinet member.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 601
   Edition: National

34) The National Environmental Policy Act, the Clean Air Act, and the Water Pollution Control Act are implemented by the
   A) Department of the Interior (DOI).
   B) Department of Transportation (DOT).
   C) Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
   D) Department of Energy (DOE).
   E) President’s National Environmental Council.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 601
   Edition: National
35) The Clean Air Act of 1970
   A) banned cigarette advertisements on television.
   B) empowered the Department of Interior with enforcing tough anti-pollution laws on industries near national forests or national parks.
   C) empowered the Department of Transportation to authorize mandatory reductions in automobile emissions.
   D) never passed Congress due to economic concerns about its effect.
   E) banned cigarette smoking in public buildings.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 601
Edition: National

36) The smaller size of American cars, the use of unleaded gasoline, and the lower gas consumption of new cars are all due in large part to
   A) self-regulation of the automobile industry.
   B) Supreme Court rulings.
   C) Department of Transportation regulations.
   D) consumer demands.
   E) the dramatic increases of Middle Eastern oil prices in the 1970s.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 601
Edition: National

37) Auto companies have been partially successful in their efforts to delay implementation of
   A) clean air standards.
   B) mandatory air bag requirements.
   C) oil price deregulation.
   D) the National Environmental Policy Act.
   E) auto safety legislation.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 601
Edition: National
38) The Water Pollution Control Act of 1972 has successfully
   A) improved the water quality of the Great Lakes and northeastern rivers.
   B) chlorinated the water systems of nearly every major city.
   C) abolished ocean dumping.
   D) banned all oil drilling in off-shore rigs.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 602
Edition: National

39) About _______ of the United States is now designated as protected wilderness.
   A) 4 percent
   B) 12 percent
   C) 24 percent
   D) 35 percent
   E) 17 percent

Answer: A

Page Ref: 602
Edition: National

40) Half of the designated wilderness area in the United States is located in
   A) Alaska.
   C) Texas.
   D) California.
   E) the Rocky Mountains.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 602
Edition: National

41) Perhaps the most consistently successful environmental campaigns in the post-war era have been those aimed at
   A) air pollution.
   B) wilderness preservation.
   C) water pollution.
   D) energy conservation.
   E) toxic waste cleanup.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 602
Edition: National
42) The Endangered Species Act of 1973, as originally passed, required that the government

A) choose which species were significant enough to protect from extinction, while others would be allowed to die off.

B) merely acknowledge that some species were likely to go extinct.

C) actively protect each of the hundreds of species listed as endangered, regardless of the economic effect on the surrounding region.

D) actively protect each of the hundreds of species listed as endangered unless that protection would cause severe economic harm to the local region.

E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

43) The Superfund is paid for by

A) a voluntary check-off system on federal income tax forms.

B) taxes on chemical products.

C) a special tax on automobiles, trucks, snowmobiles, and motorized farm vehicles.

D) the federal gasoline tax.

E) aviation fuel taxes.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

44) Which of the following is NOT true about Superfund?

A) Taxes on chemical products are used to pay for it.

B) It has successfully located and isolated the country’s toxic waste dump sites and has completely cleaned more than half of those sites.

C) It was created by Congress in part to respond to the Love Canal disaster in New York state.

D) Its costs represent the fastest growing segment of the nation’s environmental budget.

E) It is administered by the EPA.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National
45) The Superfund was created to
   A) clean up toxic waste.
   B) preserve endangered species.
   C) buy land for wilderness protection.
   D) finance the national park system.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

46) Which of the following statements about the Superfund is FALSE?
   A) The law can force polluters to clean up pollution that occurred even before the law was passed.
   B) Its purpose is to pay for cleaning up toxic waste.
   C) It was created by taxing chemical products.
   D) It has been highly successful.
   E) A single polluter can be forced to pay for cleanup of a site that was also polluted by many others.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

47) To successfully dispose of nuclear wastes, they must be isolated from the environment for ________ years.
   A) 10
   B) 100
   C) 1,000
   D) 5,000
   E) 10,000

Answer: E

Page Ref: 604
Edition: National
48) A large number of legal suits currently involve conflicts over who will pay to
   A) protect endangered species.
   B) fund environmental research.
   C) clean up radioactive wastes.
   D) administer wilderness preserves.
   E) purchase new wilderness lands.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

49) After more than a decade of political delays, President Bush in 2002 signed off on
   Congressional legislation choosing Yucca Flats, Nevada, as the
   A) official location of the Superfund.
   B) new office location of the EPA.
   C) only remaining pristine wilderness in the United States.
   D) site for the long-term storage of nuclear waste.
   E) site for the destruction of nuclear weapons.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 605
Edition: National

50) An estimated 90 percent of the energy resources of the United States is in
   A) oil reserves.
   B) coal deposits.
   C) natural gas reserves.
   D) uranium deposits.
   E) water.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 605
Edition: National

51) America’s coal deposits are expected to last
   A) 15 more years.
   B) 50 more years.
   C) for hundreds of years.
   D) for thousands of years.
   E) forever, as coal is a renewable resource.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 605
Edition: National
52) Which of the following is NOT true of coal?
   A) It is the nation’s most abundant fuel.
   B) It is responsible for the "black lungs" health hazard to coal miners.
   C) It accounts for half the energy Americans use.
   D) Its use to produce electricity is linked to acid rain.
   E) About 90 percent of all of America’s energy resources are in coal.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 605-606
   Edition: National

53) The "dirtiest" type of fuel is
   A) coal.
   B) oil.
   C) natural gas.
   D) nuclear fuel.
   E) wood.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 606
   Edition: National

54) The most controversial energy source is
   A) coal.
   B) oil.
   C) natural gas.
   D) nuclear fuel.
   E) solar.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 606
   Edition: National
55) Global warming refers to
   A) the expectation that the Earth's atmosphere is becoming warmer due to the decreasing size of ice masses in Antarctica.
   B) the expectation that the world will share a common weather pattern by the year 2010.
   C) the expectation that the Earth's atmosphere is becoming warmer due to high levels of carbon monoxide production.
   D) the spread of nuclear power throughout the world.
   E) the melting of the polar ice caps.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 607
Edition: National

56) At the end of 1997, 150 nations met in Kyoto, Japan, and agreed in principle to
   A) stop producing carbon monoxide.
   B) reduce their emissions of greenhouse gases below 1990 levels by about 2010.
   C) increase their reliance on renewable resources by 200 percent of their 1990 levels.
   D) offer tax incentives for reducing carbon monoxide production.
   E) stop using nuclear energy.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 608
Edition: National

57) Which of the following is a renewable resource?
   A) coal
   B) solar energy
   C) natural gas
   D) oil
   E) nuclear

Answer: B

Page Ref: 606
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Nearly half of the children of Wal-Mart employees are uninsured or on Medicaid.

Answer: TRUE

Page Ref: 588
Edition: National
2) Although many nations consider health care a right, the United States does not.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 590
Edition: National

3) The United States spends about 5 percent of its gross domestic product on health care.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 590
Edition: National

4) Americans are healthier and live longer than those who live in other democracies because Americans spend more for health care.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 591-592
Edition: National

5) About 60 percent of Americans participate in health maintenance organizations.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 592
Edition: National

6) Most Americans do not have health insurance.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 592
Edition: National

7) Most individuals over the age of 65 have health insurance.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 593
Edition: National

8) In the United States, young adults are the least likely to be covered by health insurance.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 593
Edition: National

9) About 85 percent of workers receive medical insurance through Health Maintenance Organizations.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 592
Edition: National
10) Enrollment in health maintenance organizations declined in the 1980s and 1990s.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 592
   Edition: National

11) The role of government in health care is smaller in the United States than in other democracies.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 594
   Edition: National

12) More than 40 percent of the country’s total health bill is paid for by government sources.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 593
   Edition: National

13) Medicare faces a more severe financial crisis than does Social Security.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 595
   Edition: National

14) Less than half of those living below the poverty line are eligible for Medicaid.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 596
   Edition: National

15) The health insurance industry opposed Clinton’s health reform plan.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 598
   Edition: National

16) The Medicare administration is legally prohibited from negotiating lower prescription drug costs with drug companies.
   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 599
   Edition: National

17) Under George W. Bush’s proposal, the federal government would provide health savings accounts for all Americans.
   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 598
   Edition: National
18) Congress added prescription drug coverage to Medicare despite the threat of a veto from President George W. Bush.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 599
   Edition: National

19) The Clean Air Act of 1970 succeeded in forcing automobile manufacturers to adhere to tough emissions requirements within six years.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 601
   Edition: National

20) Only about 4 percent of the United States is now designated as wilderness.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 602
   Edition: National

21) Perhaps the most consistently successful environmental campaigns in the postwar era have been those aimed at preserving wilderness lands.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 602
   Edition: National

22) Superfund was created to clean up the Great Lakes in the 1970s, an effort that has been fairly successful.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 603
   Edition: National

23) President Clinton never submitted the Kyoto Treaty to the Senate for approval and in 2001 George W. Bush renounced it.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 608
   Edition: National

24) The Kyoto Treaty on global warming was ratified by the Senate in 1999.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 608
   Edition: National
Short Answer Questions

1) What are some of the main causes for the increases in health care costs in the United States?

Answer: an increasing focus on high-tech medicine, with new technologies, drugs and procedures addressing previously untreatable conditions, health care providers having no incentive to lower cost by competing; doctors are facing rising insurance costs and practicing more "defensive medicine"; patients not facing the full consequences of health costs as insurance companies and government pick up most of the costs.

Page Ref: 590-592
Edition: National

2) The proportion of babies who do not survive their first year of life is known as a country's ________.

Answer: infant mortality rate
Page Ref: 591
Edition: National

3) What is meant by national health insurance, and why hasn't it been instituted in the United States?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 595
Edition: National

4) Government responsibility to address the health care problems of the elderly was accepted by Congress in 1965 when it adopted ________ to provide health insurance coverage for senior citizens.

Answer: Medicare
Page Ref: 595
Edition: National

5) Without reform of Medicare today, by 2030, Medicare expenditures will comprise ________ percent of the federal budget.

Answer: 30
Page Ref: 595
Edition: National

6) Discuss the major criticisms of managed care today in the United States. Have there been any policy proposals or adoptions intended to address these problems?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 596-600
Edition: National
7) What is the American Association of Retired Persons, and how do you explain its success in influencing public policy?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 596
Edition: National

8) How do Americans feel about rationed health care? Describe how rationed Medicaid has been used in Oregon. How well has it work?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 599-600
Edition: National

9) What are the main functions of the Environmental Protection Agency?

Answer: an agency of the federal government charged with administering all the government’s environmental legislation dealing with land, air and water quality, and also administering policies dealing with toxic wastes
Page Ref: 601
Edition: National

10) The _______ of 1970 gave to the Department of Transportation the responsibility of reducing automobile emissions.

Answer: Clean Air Act
Page Ref: 601
Edition: National

11) The Clean Air Act Amendments of 1990 permitted utility companies to _______ on the open market.

Answer: rights to pollute
Page Ref: 601
Edition: National

12) What were the main provisions of the Clean Air Act of 1970?

Answer: charges the Department of Transportation with the responsibility to reduce automobile emissions, as well as the authority to control emissions from oil refineries, chemical plants and coal–fired utility plants
Page Ref: 601
Edition: National

13) The _______ of 1973 created a program requiring the government to actively protect actively hundreds of species threatened with extinction, regardless of the economic impact on the surrounding area.

Answer: Endangered Species Act
Page Ref: 603
Edition: National
14) What are the main provisions of the Endangered Species Act of 1973? How was it later amended?

Answer: requires the federal government to protect actively each of the hundreds of species listed as endangered, regardless of the economic effect on the surrounding towns or region; amended during the Reagan administration to allow exceptions in cases of overriding national or regional interest

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

15) In the late–1970s Congress reacted to increased pressure to deal with toxic waste by establishing a(n) ________, financed by taxing chemical products.

Answer: Superfund

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

16) What is the Superfund and how successful has it been?

Answer: a fund created by Congress in 1980 to clean up hazardous waste sites; it has virtually eliminated haphazard dumping of toxic waste, but it has been less successful in cleaning up existing waste

Page Ref: 603
Edition: National

17) Identify the major features of the 1997 Kyoto agreement on global warming.

Answer: 150 nations agreed in principle to require 38 industrial nations to reduce their emissions of greenhouse gases below 1990 levels by 2010.

Page Ref: 608
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Describe the health care system in the United States. How do the infant mortality rate, life expectancy, access to health care, and health care costs in the United States compare with other western industrialized countries?

Page Ref: 590-596
Edition: National

2) Explain how health care is distributed in the United States. Which groups have the most access and which have the least access to quality health care and why?

Page Ref: 592-596
Edition: National

3) How does the health care system in the United States differ from the health care systems of other industrialized nations?

Page Ref: 590-591
Edition: National
4) What role does the government play in providing health care in the United States? What are Medicare and Medicaid, and why are they significant? To what extent is health care rationed in the United States?
Page Ref: 593-596
Edition: National

5) Describe the development of health management organizations in the United States. What are the key characteristics of HMOs? What problems did they solve? What problems have they created?
Page Ref: 593; 596-600
Edition: National

6) Compare the health care reforms proposed by Bill Clinton and George W. Bush. How successful were they in getting their proposals adopted? Why?
Page Ref: 597-599
Edition: National

7) Discuss the key issues that will be important in health care policy over the next decade or so. How do you think they should be resolved, and why?
Page Ref: 599-600
Edition: National

8) Describe some of the key laws passed by Congress in the past three decades to protect the environment. How effective have these laws been? What is the significance of the environmental impact statement requirement? Explain.
Page Ref: 601-605
Edition: National

9) Explain the role of interest groups in shaping environmental policy in the United States.
Page Ref: 609-610
Edition: National
Chapter 20  National Security Policymaking

Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Which of the following is NOT one of the three ultimate tools of foreign policy?
   A) military
   B) judicial
   C) economic
   D) diplomatic

Answer: B
Page Ref: 616
Edition: National

2) All of the following are instruments of foreign policy EXCEPT
   A) taxation.
   B) military.
   C) economic.
   D) diplomacy.
   E) none of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 616
Edition: National

3) Diplomacy refers to
   A) formal and informal communications with representatives of other governments.
   B) regulation of international travel.
   C) the exchange of military officials between countries.
   D) a recent philosophy regarding world relations.
   E) multi-sided arms negotiations.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 616
Edition: National
4) The United Nations was created in
   A) 1789.
   B) 1865.
   C) 1945.
   D) 1967.
   E) 1919.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 617
Edition: National

5) Member countries of the United Nations agree to
   A) renounce war and respect certain human and economic freedoms.
   B) elect their leaders through the democratic process.
   C) adopt the United States Constitution as their model for self-government.
   D) limit the organization's activities to a peacekeeping function, and not involve themselves in economic development or health, education, and welfare concerns.
   E) adopt capitalist economic systems.
Answer: A
Page Ref: 617
Edition: National

6) The United Nations General Assembly is made up of about _______ members.
   A) 15
   B) 60
   C) 185
   D) 320
   E) 144
Answer: C
Page Ref: 617
Edition: National

7) The _______ is the real focus of power in the United Nations.
   A) General Assembly
   B) Foreign Relations Committee
   C) Secretariat
   D) Security Council
   E) Secretary General
Answer: D
Page Ref: 617
Edition: National
8) The United Nations Security Council has ________ members.
   A) 5
   B) 15
   C) 35
   D) 175
   E) 100
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 617
   Edition: National

   A) no
   B) 2
   C) 5
   D) 15
   E) 9
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 617
   Edition: National

10) Which of the following is NOT a permanent member country on the United Nations Security Council?
    A) Japan
    B) Great Britain
    C) China
    D) France
    E) Russia
    Answer: A
    Page Ref: 617
    Edition: National

11) The United Nations is composed of nearly 200
    A) civil servants.
    B) diplomats.
    C) nations and international organizations.
    D) nations.
    E) regional caucuses.
    Answer: D
    Page Ref: 617
    Edition: National
12) New actors on the world stage include all of the following EXCEPT
   A) international organizations.
   B) non-governmental organizations.
   C) multinational corporations.
   D) diplomats.
   E) tourists.
   Answer: D

13) The European Union is an example of a _______ organization.
   A) nongovernmental
   B) domestic
   C) military
   D) diplomatic
   E) regional
   Answer: E

14) Regional organizations have _______ in the post-World War II era.
   A) declined in number
   B) decreased in influence
   C) proliferated
   D) disappeared
   E) remained active
   Answer: C
15) Permanent members of the United Nations Security Council have

A) veto power over any Security Council decisions, including any effort to deploy UN peacekeeping troops.
B) two votes each on the Security Council, making them more important than non-permanent members.
C) no more or no less clout on the Security Council than the non-permanent members, just guaranteed membership.
D) no voting power on the Security Council, but are guaranteed the right to listen in or speak at any meeting.
E) none of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 617
Edition: National

16) After the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait, the United Nations

A) sided with Iraq, but many countries refused to go along.
B) authorized an embargo on the shipment of goods into and out of Iraq, then authorized the use of force against Iraq.
C) authorized an embargo on the shipment of goods into and out of Iraq, but would not authorize the use of military force.
D) remained a neutral ground for diplomacy, siding neither with nor against Iraq’s actions, but calling for a peaceful resolution.
E) sided with Iraq.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 617-618
Edition: National

17) The seat of real power in the United Nations is the

A) General Assembly.
B) Security Council.
C) World Bank.
D) Superpower Caucus.
E) Secretariat.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 617
Edition: National
18) The North Atlantic Treaty Organization is an example of a
   A) United Nations agency.
   B) regional organization for military purposes.
   C) regional organization for economic purposes.
   D) multinational corporation.
   E) global organization for military purposes.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 618
Edition: National

19) During the Cold War era, the Soviet Union and its Eastern European allies formed a regional organization known as the
   A) Iron Curtain.
   B) European Economic Community.
   C) Trilateral Commission.
   D) Warsaw Pact.
   E) Geneva Convention.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 618
Edition: National

20) During the Cold War era, more than a million ________ troops were spread from West Germany to Portugal.
   A) North Atlantic Treaty Organization
   B) Trilateral Commission
   C) German
   D) United Nations peacekeeping
   E) United Nations combat

Answer: A
Page Ref: 618
Edition: National
21) The _______ is a regional economic organization of major nations.
   A) North Atlantic Treaty Organization
   B) Warsaw Pact
   C) European Union
   D) Trilateral Commission
   E) Geneva Convention
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 618
   Edition: National

22) Multinational corporations
   A) have been known to link forces with the CIA to overturn governments they disliked.
   B) are usually strictly regulated by their host country.
   C) are among the oldest actors on the international stage.
   D) contribute two-thirds of the world's industrial output.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 618
   Edition: National

23) An example of an interest group involved in international affairs would be
   A) the World Bank.
   B) the European Economic Community.
   C) Greenpeace.
   D) tourists.
   E) immigrants.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 619
   Edition: National

24) As chief diplomat, the president does all of the following EXCEPT
   A) negotiates treaties.
   B) deploys troops abroad.
   C) entertains foreign heads of state.
   D) appoints United States ambassadors.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 619
   Edition: National
25) The _______ is the primary foreign policy arm of the United States government.
   A) State Department
   B) Department of Defense
   C) Joint Chiefs of Staff
   D) National Security Council
   E) Central Intelligence Agency

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 620
   Edition: National

26) After the president, the _______ is considered the nation's foremost diplomat in the United States.
   A) National Security Adviser
   B) Secretary of State
   C) Secretary of Defense
   D) United States Ambassador to the United Nations
   E) chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 620
   Edition: National

27) The _______ staffs United States embassies and consulates in about 300 overseas posts from Albania to Zimbabwe, representing the interests of Americans.
   A) Department of Defense
   B) Justice Department
   C) State Department
   D) National Security Council
   E) Executive Office of the President

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 620
   Edition: National
28) The head of the foreign policy arm of the federal government who traditionally advises the president is the
   A) National Security Assistant.
   B) Secretary of Defense.
   C) Secretary of State.
   E) chair of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 620
   Edition: National

29) Many recent presidents have bypassed the Secretary of State for foreign policy advice and come to rely more on the
   A) Secretary of Defense.
   B) United States Ambassador to the United Nations.
   C) Joint Chiefs of Staff.
   D) special assistant for National Security Affairs.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 620
   Edition: National

30) "The Pentagon" refers to the
   A) State Department.
   B) Foreign Service.
   C) Joint Chiefs of Staff.
   D) Department of Defense.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 620
   Edition: National
31) The commanding officers of each of the services, plus a chair, constitute the

A) Armed Services Committee.
B) National Security Council.
C) Joint Chiefs of Staff.
D) Department of Defense.
E) Central Intelligence Agency.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 620
Edition: National

32) The president's principal civilian adviser on the military is the

A) National Security Adviser.
B) Secretary of State.
C) Secretary of Defense.
D) chair of the Joint Chiefs of Staff.
E) director of the Central Intelligence Agency.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 620
Edition: National

33) The chief role of the Secretary of Defense is to

A) manage the military budget.
B) be the president's chief foreign policy advisor.
C) coordinate American foreign and military policy.
D) act as Commander in Chief of the armed forces.
E) declare war.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 620
Edition: National

34) The National Security Council is officially composed of the president and all of the following EXCEPT the

A) director of the Central Intelligence Agency.
B) Secretary of Defense.
C) Secretary of State.
D) vice president.
E) Secretary of Homeland Security.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 621
Edition: National
35) The _______ is officially composed of the president, the vice president, the Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of State.

A) National Security Agency
B) Pentagon
C) Joint Chiefs of Staff
D) National Security Council
E) Trilateral Commission

Answer: D

Page Ref: 621
Edition: National

36) The _______ was formed in 1947 to coordinate American foreign and military policies and advise the president.

A) State Department
B) Department of Defense
C) Joint Chiefs of Staff
D) National Security Council
E) Central Intelligence Agency

Answer: D

Page Ref: 621
Edition: National

37) The Iran-Contra affair erupted in 1986 when it came to light that members of the _______ were involved in a secret operation selling arms to Iran in return for Iranian help in returning American hostages held in Lebanon, and using money from the arms sale to fund rebels in Nicaragua.

A) Joint Chiefs of Staff
B) National Security Council staff
C) Department of Defense
D) State Department
E) Central Intelligence Agency

Answer: B

Page Ref: 621
Edition: National
38) The government body responsible for coordinating foreign and military policy is the
   A) National Security Council.
   B) Joint Chiefs of Staff.
   C) Central Intelligence Agency.
   D) State Department.
   E) Department of Defense.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 621
   Edition: National

39) The Iran–Contra affair involved covert activities staged by the
   A) State Department.
   B) National Security Council.
   C) Pentagon.
   D) Central Intelligence Agency.
   E) Joint Chiefs of Staff.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 621
   Edition: National

40) Lieutenant Colonel Oliver North became a national celebrity when he explained his involvement in the ________ to a televised Congressional hearing.
   A) Iran–Contra scandal
   B) Watergate scandal
   C) defense procurement scandal
   D) liberation of Kuwait
   E) Whitewater scandal
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 621
   Edition: National
41) The _______ was established after World War II in order to coordinate American information and data-gathering operations abroad and to collect, analyze, and evaluate its own data.
   A) OSS
   B) CIA
   C) JCS
   D) National Security Council
   E) North Atlantic Treaty Organization

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 622
   Edition: National

42) Which of the following statements about the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) is FALSE?
   A) The CIA was created after World War II to coordinate American information and intelligence activities abroad.
   B) The bulk of the material gathered and analyzed by the CIA comes from readily available sources.
   C) The CIA has never been involved in domestic affairs.
   D) Congress requires the CIA to inform relevant Congressional committees of current and anticipated covert operations.
   E) It was involved in the overthrow of the Iranian government.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 622
   Edition: National

43) The _______ helped to overthrow the governments of Iran in 1953 and Guatemala in 1954, and has a long history of involvement in the internal affairs of other nations.
   A) Department of Defense
   B) National Security Council
   C) Central Intelligence Agency
   D) Joint Chiefs of Staff
   E) Federal Bureau of Investigation

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 622
   Edition: National
44) The Central Intelligence Agency is required by law to report its activities to
   A) relevant Congressional committees.
   B) the Joint Chiefs of Staff.
   D) the Secretary of State.
   E) no one, not even the president.
   Answer: A

Page Ref: 622
Edition: National

45) A study by Richard Betts showed that the advice given to the president by the Joint Chiefs of Staff tends to
   A) be split, with the Army and Marine Corps favoring aggressive policies and the Navy favoring peaceful policies.
   B) favor aggressive solutions to crises.
   C) be no more aggressive than advice given by civilian advisors.
   D) be ignored by the president who listens mainly to the national security advisor.
   E) favor the use of nuclear weapons.
   Answer: C

Page Ref: 621
Edition: National

46) What caused a public uproar involving the National Security Agency in 2005?
   A) revelations that the NSA had tortured prisoners at Guantanamo, Cuba
   B) revelations that the NSA was monitoring the communications of American citizens without obtaining warrants
   C) a leaked memo that linked the events of September 11, 2001 with the Democratic National Committee
   D) a scathing report condemning the George W. Bush administration for "building a case for the war in Iraq on a quicksand foundation"
   E) the resignation of Donald Rumsfeld under a cloud of suspicion for his role in a Columbian-based drug smuggling operation
   Answer: B

Page Ref: 623
Edition: National
47) Which of the following is NOT true about the Central Intelligence Agency?
   A) Its precise budget and most of its staff are kept secret.
   B) Much of its business is collecting basic information from newspapers and government reports in foreign cities.
   C) It has helped overthrow foreign governments through successful espionage.
   D) Due to its need for secrecy, it does not have to report to any congressional committee.
   E) The head of the CIA is a member of the president’s National Security Council.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 622–623
Edition: National

48) Which of the following is NOT a power of Congress in foreign and defense policy?
   A) to declare war
   B) to ratify treaties
   C) to appoint ambassadors
   D) to confirm presidential nominees to head the State Department and Department of Defense
   E) to provide oversight of the CIA

Answer: C
Page Ref: 623
Edition: National

49) The foreign-policy powers of Congress
   A) have no constitutional basis.
   B) include raising and organizing the armed forces.
   C) include making treaties.
   D) are negligible when compared with the president's.
   E) appoint the top military officials including the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 623
Edition: National
50) Throughout most of American history, American foreign policy has centered on the concept of
   A) isolationism.
   B) brinkmanship.
   C) containment.
   D) McCarthyism.
   E) internationalism.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 624
Edition: National

51) The Monroe Doctrine
   A) ended the American policy of isolationism.
   B) showed again that America was not concerned with Europe's problems.
   C) affirmed America's intention to stay out of Latin American affairs.
   D) symbolized the start of the Cold War.
   E) first enunciated the policy of isolationism.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 624
Edition: National

52) Throughout most of its history up to the early twentieth century, the United States followed a foreign policy course of ________, particularly with regard to Europe.
   A) isolationism
   B) internationalism
   C) intervention
   D) collective security
   E) laissez faire

Answer: A
Page Ref: 624
Edition: National

53) It was, above all else, ________ that dealt a death blow to American isolationism.
   A) World War I
   B) World War II
   C) the Cuban Missile Crisis
   D) the Vietnam War
   E) World War III

Answer: B
Page Ref: 624
Edition: National
54) The death-blow to American isolationism occurred as a result of

A) the Monroe Doctrine.
B) World War I.
C) World War II.
D) the League of Nations.
E) the Soviet takeover of Eastern Europe.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 624
Edition: National

55) The containment doctrine did not prevent the communists from winning a stunning victory in _______ in 1949.

A) Turkey
B) West Berlin
C) China
D) Taiwan
E) Vietnam

Answer: C
Page Ref: 625
Edition: National

56) America's principal foreign policy strategy toward the Soviet Union throughout the Cold War, proposed by the foreign policy strategist George Kennan in 1947, was

A) isolationism.
B) containment.
C) peaceful coexistence.
D) covert operations.
E) laissez faire.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 625
Edition: National
57) The Marshall Plan
   A) warned European nations to stay out of Latin America.
   B) poured billions of dollars into war-ravaged European nations after World War II.
   C) established the containment doctrine.
   D) imposed democratic constitutions on Germany and Japan in the wake of World War II.
   E) created NATO.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 625
Edition: National

58) The containment doctrine was
   A) intended to prevent Soviet expansion after World War II.
   B) the policy of nuclear arms agreements to limit the spread of nuclear weapons.
   C) the Soviet policy of building the Iron Curtain and Berlin Wall to hold American influence to Western Europe after World War II.
   D) first proposed as a military maneuver during the Korean War as a means to prevent Chinese advances.
   E) the policy of cooperation and relaxation of tensions with the Soviet Union.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 625
Edition: National

59) Almost immediately following World War II, the United States entered into _______ with the Soviet Union.
   A) the Korean War
   B) the Cuban Missile Crisis
   C) a Cold War
   D) peaceful coexistence
   E) a lend lease plan

Answer: C

Page Ref: 625
Edition: National
60) During the 1950s, John Foster Dulles, the Secretary of State under Eisenhower, proclaimed a policy of ________ in America's dealings with the Soviet Union.

   A) containment
   B) détente
   C) peaceful coexistence
   D) brinkmanship
   E) laissez faire

Answer: D

Page Ref: 626
Edition: National

61) Fear of a serious communist conspiracy in the United States during the early years of the Cold War led to the rise of a near panic that communism was infiltrating American government and cultural institutions, and became known as

   A) brinkmanship.
   B) McCarthyism.
   C) détente.
   D) isolationism.
   E) the Deep Freeze.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 626
Edition: National

62) McCarthyism was strongest during

   A) World War II.
   B) the Vietnam War.
   C) the Korean War.
   D) détente.
   E) World War I.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 626
Edition: National
63) McCarthyism

A) was an anti-war movement during the Korean War.
B) was the clandestine name of the communist movement in the United States.
C) claimed that communism was infiltrating American government and cultural institutions.
D) was the name of the policy that called for the United States to isolate the Soviet Union.
E) was the policy of using United States tax dollars to rebuild Germany and Japan after World War II.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 626
Edition: National

64) The cold war led to all of the following EXCEPT

A) an arms race between the United States and the Soviet Union.
B) the use of atomic weapons.
C) the growth of the military-industrial complex.
D) mutual assured destruction.
E) none of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 625-626
Edition: National

65) The growth of the military budget during the 1950s under President Eisenhower led him to remark at the end of his second term that

A) although the Soviets were not aware of it yet, the United States had won the Cold War.
B) atomic bombs should be dropped on the Soviet Union.
C) the military-industrial complex that had developed between private defense contractors and the Pentagon was worrisome.
D) due to the Soviet launching of the Sputnik satellite, peaceful coexistence between the superpowers was over.
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 626
Edition: National
66) By the mid-1950s, defense expenditures
   A) declined below World War II levels.
   B) gave way to expenditures on social-welfare policies.
   C) grew to be the largest component of the federal budget.
   D) reduced the profits of defense contractors.
   E) shifted to the Middle East to protect American oil supplies.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 626
Edition: National

67) President _______ was responsible for initiating the use of United States ground troops in Vietnam (eventually over 500,000), and the massive bombing of North Vietnam, but his failure to win the war after four years and the mounting anti-war protests back home led him to decide not to seek reelection.
   A) Harry Truman
   B) Franklin Roosevelt
   C) Richard Nixon
   D) Lyndon Johnson
   E) John F. Kennedy

Answer: D
Page Ref: 627
Edition: National

68) The Vietnam War
   A) began during the Johnson administration.
   B) illustrates the ability of government to lie to its citizens.
   C) received widespread popular support despite the attention given to a very vocal minority opposition.
   E) began during the Nixon administration.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 627
Edition: National
69) The rise of détente and the first Strategic Arms Limitation Treaty (SALT) were brought about under President

A) Harry Truman.
B) Dwight Eisenhower.
C) Ronald Reagan.
D) Richard Nixon.
E) John F. Kennedy.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 628
Edition: National

70) The relaxation of tensions between the United States and the Soviet Union throughout the 1970s was known as

A) détente.
B) containment.
C) the Strategic Defense Initiative.
D) glasnost.
E) New Thinking.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 628
Edition: National

71) Détente refers to

A) irrevocable differences between the United States and the Soviet Union.
B) the threat of nuclear war.
C) the foreign policy of the Reagan administration.
D) a shift toward cooperation among world powers.
E) France's policy of maintaining a nuclear arsenal and foreign policy independent of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 628
Edition: National
72) In détente,
   A) nuclear rearmament was emphasized.
   B) diplomacy and propaganda replaced the threat of force.
   C) unilateral arms reductions were common.
   D) international relations shifted from a multipolar to a bipolar world.
   E) international relations shifted from a bipolar to a multipolar world.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 628
Edition: National

73) A product of détente was the
   A) end of the Korean War.
   B) start of the Strategic Arms Limitation Talks.
   C) 1979 Israeli–Egyptian peace treaty.
   D) creation of the United Nations.
   E) all of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 628
Edition: National

74) The United States and Soviet Union agreement on SALT I reflected
   A) a policy of containment.
   B) brinkmanship.
   C) a policy of détente.
   D) McCarthyism.
   E) the two nations' first effort to coordinate the development of a natural resource.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 628
Edition: National
75) The largest increase in peacetime defense spending occurred under President _______, who argued that the Soviets had used arms control agreements to gallop ahead of the United States in military spending.

A) Gerald Ford
B) Jimmy Carter
C) Richard Nixon
D) Ronald Reagan
E) Harry Truman

Answer: D
Page Ref: 629
Edition: National

76) President Ronald Reagan proposed a massive new spending program called the ________ to create a global umbrella in space, wherein computers would scan the skies and use various high-tech devices to destroy invading missiles.

A) brinkmanship
B) Superpatriot Missile Shield
C) Strategic Defense Initiative
D) Anti-Ballistic Missile System
E) Early Warning System

Answer: C
Page Ref: 629
Edition: National

77) During the early years of his administration, Reagan’s foreign and defense policies emphasized

A) détente.
B) anticommunism.
C) arms reduction talks.
D) nuclear disarmament.
E) international free trade agreements.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 629
Edition: National
78) The Strategic Defense Initiative was a(n)
   A) proposal for arms reduction between the United States and the Soviet Union.
   B) treaty between the United States and Western European countries for mutual defense.
   C) proposal for an umbrella in space to destroy invading missiles.
   D) attempt by the military to increase its nuclear forces during the Reagan administration.
   E) secret Pentagon operation to topple communist governments worldwide through assassinations if necessary.

   Answer: C

79) The cold war ended
   A) spontaneously with freedom and self-determination erupting in Eastern Europe.
   B) with the signing of the East-West Corollaries in 1993.
   C) with the American occupation of Eastern Europe in 1945.
   D) shortly after Chinese students held peaceful protests for democracy in Tiananmen Square.
   E) with Iraq's defeat in Kuwait in 1991.

   Answer: A

80) Which of the following statements about events in the late 1980s and early 1990s marking the end of the Cold War is FALSE?
   A) The Berlin Wall, separating East and West Germany, was torn down.
   B) Eastern European nations overthrew their communist regimes and established free, democratic governments.
   C) The former Soviet Union split into 15 separate nations.
   D) Mass protests in Tiananmen Square led to sweeping democratic reforms in China.
   E) The collapse of communism was sparked by the policies of Soviet communist leader Mikhail Gorbachev.

   Answer: D
81) One of the few spots where violence and brutal government force crushed a pro-democracy reform movement in 1989 and allowed the communist government to endure was in Tiananmen Square in
   A) Warsaw.
   B) Beijing.
   C) Prague.
   D) Quito.
   E) Ho Chi Minh City.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 630
Edition: National

82) The use of violence to demoralize and frighten a country’s population or government is referred to as
   A) isolationism.
   B) détente.
   C) mutual assured destruction.
   D) terrorism.
   E) psychological warfare.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 631
Edition: National

83) In response to the terrorist acts of September 11, 2001, the George W. Bush administration has developed a new foreign policy emphasizing
   A) negotiation.
   B) deterrence.
   C) détente.
   D) preemptive strikes.
   E) diplomacy.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 632
Edition: National
84) What errors did the United States make in planning post-war Iraq?
   A) The U.S. believed that the American soldiers would be welcomed as liberators.
   B) The U.S. believed that Iraqi oil revenues would pay for most reconstruction costs.
   C) The U.S. believed Iraqis had the skill and infrastructure to do most of the rebuilding.
   D) all of the above
   E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 632
Edition: National

85) The United States originally pursued a "decapitation" strategy for confronting al-Qaida. What did this strategy propose to do?
   A) attack the root causes of terrorism, namely poverty
   B) reduce America's cultural influence on the Muslim world
   C) eliminate a small number of al-Qaida leaders
   D) execute publicly all al-Qaida members by way of the guillotine
   E) spread democracy to the Middle East

Answer: C
Page Ref: 632
Edition: National

86) The threat posed by terrorist groups and the hostile states supporting them has caused America to
   A) reconsider basic principles of its foreign policy.
   B) recall many of its senior diplomats from the Middle East.
   C) emphasize the principles of deterrence and containment in foreign policy.
   D) make dramatic cuts in domestic expenditures to pay for the new war on terrorism.
   E) shift back to isolationism.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 633
Edition: National
87) Defense spending now makes up about _______ of the federal budget.
   A) one-fifth
   B) one-third
   C) one-half
   D) three-fifths
   E) one-fourth
   Answer: A

88) The phrase "guns and butter" refers to
   A) politicians who promise money for both military and domestic spending programs.
   B) the general economic improvement accompanying the nation’s involvement in a major war, though at a high human cost.
   C) what many scholars claim is the trade-off a nation faces between defense spending and social spending.
   D) the economic impact on cities and towns with military bases or large defense industries.
   E) the economic impact of foreign countries with large defense industries.
   Answer: C

89) In general, American conservatives argue that the breakup of the communist regimes in Eastern Europe and the demise of the Soviet Union were principally due to
   A) the serious defects of the Soviet economy—the inertia, the wastefulness, and the corruption inherent in the system.
   B) Mikhail Gorbachev’s unexpected and unyielding commitment to glasnost and perestroika.
   C) America’s defense build-up during the 1980s which the Soviet Union could not match and eventually toppled it.
   D) brilliant efforts over several years by various agencies and representatives of the United Nations.
   E) political revolution in the Soviet Union.
   Answer: C
90) Which of the following statements about defense spending is FALSE?

A) Evidence indicates that as defense spending increases, domestic spending decreases.
B) Pressures to cut defense spending and allocate funds to decrease the budget deficit are strong.
C) Conservatives fight deep cuts in defense spending in order to maintain readiness at a high level.
D) Liberals maintain that the Pentagon wastes money and that the United States buys too many guns and too little butter.
E) Defense spending now comprises half of the federal budget.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 635
Edition: National

91) Liberals argue that the most crucial aspect of national defense is

A) diplomacy.
B) a strong military capability.
C) a strong economy.
D) international alliances.
E) nuclear deterrence.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 635
Edition: National

92) Whatever their ideology, members of Congress tend to support military spending most consistently

A) when it means jobs for their constituents.
B) when the Pentagon argues that such programs are necessary.
C) if they are asked to do so by the president.
D) once a project has already begun and needs additional funding.
E) during election years.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 635
Edition: National
93) The structure of America's defenses has been based on
   A) complete control of the sea and large overseas bases.
   B) military control of outer space.
   C) strategic nuclear air command and a small but specialized standing army.
   D) a large standing military force and a triad of strategic nuclear weapons.
   E) the defense of our borders and the ability to fight one minor regional conflict.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 636
Edition: National

94) Which of the following is NOT part of America's triad of nuclear weapons delivery systems?
   A) Strategic Defense Initiative
   B) intercontinental ballistic missiles
   C) strategic bombers
   D) submarine-launched ballistic missiles
   E) both A and C

Answer: A

Page Ref: 636
Edition: National

95) The first American president to sign a treaty to actually reduce current levels of nuclear weapons in the United States arsenal was
   A) Dwight Eisenhower.
   B) Richard Nixon.
   C) Jimmy Carter.
   D) Ronald Reagan.
   E) John Kennedy.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 636
Edition: National
96) Arms reduction talks were pushed onto the agenda of discussions between the two superpowers in the late 1980s due to all of the following reasons EXCEPT

A) the rapid drive toward democracy in Eastern Europe.
B) Moscow’s economic torpor.
C) the Pentagon’s budgetary squeeze.
D) President Reagan’s consistent policy of détente.
E) the thaw of the Cold War.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 636–637
Edition: National

97) The first American president to sign a treaty to reduce existing levels of nuclear weapons was

A) Richard Nixon.
B) Jimmy Carter.
C) Ronald Reagan.
D) George Bush.
E) Bill Clinton.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 636
Edition: National

98) The Intermediate-range Nuclear Forces (INF) treaty is a significant event in arms control because

A) it is the first treaty to reduce current levels of nuclear weapons.
B) the United States agreed to scrap its SDI proposal.
C) it eliminated nuclear weapons in Europe.
D) it prohibited the development of antiballistic missiles.
E) it was illegally abrogated by the Soviet Union and lead to the Reagan arms buildup of the early 1980s.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 636–637
Edition: National
99) The Strategic Arms Reduction Treaty was the first accord
   A) on nuclear weapons signed between the United States and the Soviet Union.
   B) to reduce current levels of nuclear weapons.
   C) mandating the elimination of many long-range nuclear missiles.
   D) cutting conventional arms in Europe.
   E) to be rejected by the United States Senate.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 636-637
   Edition: National

100) The first American president to unilaterally dismantle some United States nuclear weapons was
   A) Jimmy Carter.
   B) Ronald Reagan.
   C) George Bush.
   D) Bill Clinton.
   E) Richard Nixon.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 637
   Edition: National

101) An agreement between President Bush and President Yeltsin in January 1993 called for
   A) the total elimination of nuclear weapons in Europe.
   B) elimination of over two-thirds of their long-range nuclear weapons.
   C) a moratorium on the manufacture of nuclear weapons.
   D) a ban on all intermediate-range nuclear weapons.
   E) an indefinite freeze on overall levels of nuclear weapons.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 637
   Edition: National
102) Which instrument of foreign policy used to guarantee world dominance but no longer does so?

A) military strength  
B) economic sanctions  
C) diplomacy  
D) none of the above  
E) all of the above

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 638–641  
Edition: National

103) Economic sanctions are

A) non-military sanctions imposed on a foreign government in an attempt to modify its behavior.  
B) sanctions imposed by the United States government on multinational corporations.  
C) accomplished through the use of tariffs and quotas.  
D) typically used as a second resort in an escalating military conflict.  
E) an example of a last resort sanction.

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 640–641  
Edition: National

104) The primary means the United States has used to keep rogue nations from acquiring nuclear weapons has been by

A) successful monitoring of the international arms market.  
B) dramatically increasing foreign aid to rogue nations.  
C) infiltrating the intelligence communities of the rogue nations.  
D) encouraging nations to agree that they would not acquire, or at least test, nuclear weapons.  
E) both A and D

Answer: D  
Page Ref: 641  
Edition: National
105) All of the following countries have agreed to give up their nuclear weapons EXCEPT
   A) Argentina.
   B) Sweden.
   C) North Korea.
   D) Brazil.
   E) Norway.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 641
Edition: National

106) All of the following countries are seeking to acquire nuclear weapons EXCEPT
   A) Algeria.
   B) Iran.
   C) Iraq.
   D) North Korea.
   E) none of the above

Answer: A
Page Ref: 641
Edition: National

107) The international economy today is one characterized by
   A) independence.
   B) isolationism.
   C) interdependence.
   D) intransigence.
   E) protectionism.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 642
Edition: National

108) A tariff is a
   A) good imported from another country.
   B) good exported to another country.
   C) tax added to the price of imported goods.
   D) tax added to the price of exported goods.
   E) tax added to the price of technological goods.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 644
Edition: National
109) ______ are intended to raise the price of imported goods and thereby protect a nation’s businesses and workers from foreign competition.

A) Tariffs  
B) Quotas  
C) Balances of trade  
D) Subsidies  
E) Excise taxes  

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 644  
Edition: National

110) The one key word that could be used to describe today’s international economy is

A) interdependency.  
B) protectionism.  
C) isolationism.  
D) self-sufficiency.  
E) bankruptcy.  

Answer: A  
Page Ref: 642  
Edition: National

111) The International Monetary Fund (IMF) is a cooperative international organization intended to stabilize

A) diplomatic costs.  
B) the exchange of currencies.  
C) economic policies between the developed and less developed countries.  
D) stock markets in new democracies.  
E) protective tariffs.  

Answer: B  
Page Ref: 642  
Edition: National
112) The U.S. was involved in humanitarian intervention in which of the following countries?
   A) Somalia
   B) Haiti
   C) Bosnia
   D) Kosovo
   E) all of the above
   Answer: E

113) The North American Free Trade Agreement is designed to eventually eliminate most ________ among Canada, Mexico, and the United States.
   A) subsidies
   B) imports
   C) tariffs
   D) border patrols
   E) exports
   Answer: C

114) International economic policies today tend to emphasize
   A) high tariffs and protectionism.
   B) central planning and policymaking.
   C) lower tariffs and freer trade.
   D) heavy reliance on international economic organizations.
   E) free trade and protectionism.
   Answer: C

115) The ratio of what a country pays for imports to what it earns in exports is known as its
   A) federal deficit.
   B) balance of trade.
   C) international productivity quotient.
   D) tariff.
   E) trade gap.
   Answer: B
116) Which of the following statements about the balance of trade is FALSE?
   
   A) When a country exports more than it imports, it has a balance of trade deficit.
   
   B) The excess of imports over exports decreases the dollar’s buying power against foreign currencies.
   
   C) Since the late 1980s, the United States has experienced an export boom that has given us a balance of trade surplus with Western Europe.
   
   D) A poor balance of trade exacerbates unemployment.
   
   E) A decline in the dollar makes American products cheaper abroad and increases exports.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 646
   Edition: National

117) Which of the following is TRUE about America’s foreign aid programs?
   
   A) Nearly all of the money spent goes to help modernize agriculture and industry in poorer nations, or directly provides food to the hungry.
   
   B) The United States spends a greater percentage of its gross national product on foreign aid than any other developed nation.
   
   C) Among the developed countries of the world, the United States donates the smallest actual amount of foreign aid.
   
   D) Foreign aid has always been a highly popular expenditure with Americans.
   
   E) A substantial percentage of foreign aid is military assistance.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 649
   Edition: National

118) Which of the following statements about foreign aid is FALSE?
   
   A) Presidents of each party have pressed for aid to nations in the developing world.
   
   B) A major goal of foreign aid is to stabilize nations friendly to the United States.
   
   C) A substantial percentage of foreign aid is in the form of military assistance.
   
   D) Foreign food aid often ends up in the pockets of American farmers.
   
   E) Congress usually increases the president’s foreign aid requests.

   Answer: E
   Page Ref: 648–649
   Edition: National
119) The United States
   A) donates more total aid than any other country.
   B) devotes a larger share of its GNP to foreign economic development than any other
country.
   C) no longer gives military aid to less developed countries.
   D) funnels all of its foreign aid through the United Nations.
   E) all of the above

Answer: A

Page Ref: 649
Edition: National

120) Which of the following countries spends the smallest percentage of its gross domestic product
on foreign economic development?
   A) New Zealand
   B) Japan
   C) United States
   D) Italy
   E) Norway

Answer: C

Page Ref: 649
Edition: National

121) Which of the following nations is least dependent on foreign oil?
   A) Japan
   B) United States
   C) Germany
   D) Great Britain
   E) the European nations together

Answer: B

Page Ref: 647
Edition: National
122) Americans are usually least interested in
   A) domestic policy.
   B) foreign policy.
   C) economic policy.
   D) social policy.
   E) tax policy.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 650
   Edition: National

123) When the American people hold strong opinions regarding international relations,
   A) they are usually ignored.
   B) policymakers manipulate the agenda to emphasize domestic issues.
   C) they find policymakers responsive to them.
   D) they follow the lead of the president.
   E) national security policy decisions are delayed.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 650
   Edition: National

124) The most pervasive characteristic of American international economic policy is
   A) elitism.
   B) secrecy.
   C) the dominance of the president.
   D) pluralism.
   E) the lead role played by top State Department officials.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 650
   Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Instruments of foreign policy are different from those of domestic policy.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 616
   Edition: National

2) With the breakup of the Soviet Union, only the United States now holds veto power in the United Nations Security Council.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 617
   Edition: National
3) Presidents usually find it more convenient to use treaties rather than executive agreements.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 619
Edition: National

4) The State Department is the foreign policy arm of the United States government.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 620
Edition: National

5) President Reagan relied less on his assistant for national security affairs and more on his Secretary of State than most recent presidents.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 620
Edition: National

6) Academic studies suggest that the Joint Chiefs of Staff tend to encourage military, as opposed to non-military, actions to resolve foreign policy conflicts.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 620–621
Edition: National

7) The Central Intelligence Agency is not required to inform any congressional committee of its activities due to the importance of maintaining secrecy.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 623
Edition: National

8) The Cuban Missile Crisis dealt the death blow to America’s longstanding policy of isolationism.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 624
Edition: National

9) The arms race never quite reached a point where each side could annihilate the other.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 626
Edition: National

10) It was under President Richard Nixon that the United States embraced a policy of détente with the Soviet Union.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 628
Edition: National
11) During Ronald Reagan’s presidency, the Pentagon budget was sharply increased.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 629
   Edition: National

12) The Cold War was characterized by a stable and predictable set of relations among the great powers.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 625
   Edition: National

13) Critics of the Bush administration's policies in Iraq argue that U.S. involvement has increased the threat of terrorism.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 632
   Edition: National

14) Even though the war in Iraq has not gone as smoothly as some would like, there is still strong support for U.S. efforts in Iraq.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 632
   Edition: National

15) President George W. Bush has embraced longstanding tenets of foreign policy even more firmly after the September 11, 2001 terrorist attacks.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 633
   Edition: National

16) One of the reasons the United States is often frustrated in foreign policy issues is that military power is no longer the primary instrument of foreign policy.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 638
   Edition: National

17) Over the past several decades, the world economy has moved from high tariffs and protectionism to lower tariffs and freer trade.

   Answer: TRUE
   Page Ref: 645
   Edition: National

18) In recent years, the United States has undertaken a large-scale humanitarian military intervention in Sudan to quell violence in Darfur.

   Answer: FALSE
   Page Ref: 640
   Edition: National
19) The high tariffs that the government enacted early in the Great Depression were the last of their kind.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 645
Edition: National

20) When a country exports more than it imports, it has a trade deficit.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 647
Edition: National

21) Compared to all other industrialized nations, the United States spends a higher percentage of its gross domestic product on foreign aid.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 649
Edition: National

22) The era of scarce oil in the 1970s resulted in part due to OPEC embargoing oil shipments to the U.S.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 647
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) The United Nations has _______ member nations

Answer: 191
Page Ref: 617
Edition: National

2) _______ of the countries with seats on the United Nations Security Council are permanent members and may exercise a veto over any Security Council decision.

Answer: Five
Page Ref: 617
Edition: National
3) Explain the organization and function of the United Nations.

Answer: The United Nations was created in 1945, with members pledged to renounce war and respect certain human and economic freedoms. It is composed of 191 member nations, each having one vote. The Security Council is the seat of power; five of its 15 members (the United States, Great Britain, China, France and Russia) are permanent members; the others are chosen from session to session by the General Assembly. Each permanent member has a veto over Security Council decisions, including any decisions that would commit the UN to a military peacekeeping operation. The Secretariat is the executive arm of the UN and directs the administration of the UN programs. Composed of 8,900 international civil servants, it is headed by the secretary general.

Page Ref: 617–618
Edition: National

4) The United States, Canada, and several western European nations agreed to a powerful military alliance in 1949 known as the ________.

Answer: North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)

Page Ref: 618
Edition: National

5) In what ways have multinational corporations and groups been actors on the global stage?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 618–619
Edition: National

6) The ________ is the main force behind foreign policy.

Answer: president

Page Ref: 619
Edition: National

7) The ________ is made up of the commanding officers of each branch of the United States armed services, plus a chair.

Answer: Joint Chiefs of Staff

Page Ref: 620–621
Edition: National

8) Who are the Joint Chiefs of Staff, and what has been their traditional function?

Answer: the commanding officers of the armed services who advise the president on military policy

Page Ref: 620–621
Edition: National
9) Contrast the roles of the Secretary of State and Secretary of Defense in national security policymaking.

Answer: The secretary of state is the head of the Department of State and traditionally a key adviser to the president on foreign policy. The secretary of defense is the head of the Department of Defense and the president’s key adviser on military policy and a key foreign policy actor.

Page Ref: 620–621
Edition: National

10) Throughout most of its history and up until the United States involvement in World War II, the United States generally followed a foreign policy course of ________, particularly with regard to Europe.

Answer: isolationism

Page Ref: 624
Edition: National

11) During the Cold War, the United States pursued a policy toward the Soviet Union based on the ________ doctrine articulated by foreign policy strategist George Kennan, wherein the United States would focus on keeping communism from spreading, using force if necessary.

Answer: containment

Page Ref: 625
Edition: National

12) Explain the principle of the containment doctrine.

Answer: a foreign policy strategy advocated by George Kennan that called for the United States to isolate the Soviet Union, "contain" its advances, and resist its encroachments by peaceful means, if possible, but by force if necessary.

Page Ref: 625
Edition: National

13) What was the policy of détente, and how did it differ from the policy of containment?

Answer: Containment was a foreign policy strategy advocated by George Kennan that called for the United States to isolate the Soviet Union, "contain" its advances, and resist its encroachments by peaceful means, if possible, but by force if necessary. Détente was a slow transformation from conflict thinking to cooperative thinking in foreign policy strategy and policymaking. It sought a relaxation of tensions between the superpowers, coupled with firm guarantees of mutual security.

Page Ref: 625; 628
Edition: National

14) What was McCarthyism and what effect did it have on domestic policy in the United States?

Answer: Answers will vary.

Page Ref: 626
Edition: National
15) The relaxation of tensions between the United States and the Soviet Union during the 1970s was known as ________.

   Answer: détente
   Page Ref: 628
   Edition: National

16) Ronald Reagan’s ________, nicknamed "Star Wars," was a plan to create a global umbrella in space, wherein computers would scan the skies and use various high-tech devices to destroy invading missiles.

   Answer: Strategic Defense Initiative
   Page Ref: 629
   Edition: National

17) What was the Strategic Defense Initiative, and why did it fail?

   Answer: A plan for defense against the Soviet Union unveiled by President Reagan in 1983, SDI would create a global umbrella in space, using computers to scan the skies and high-tech devices to destroy invading missiles; it failed because the technology was questioned and the costs were estimated to be too high.

   Page Ref: 629
   Edition: National

18) Identify the major shift in the basic tenets of foreign policy adopted by the George W. Bush administration.

   Answer: from the Cold War pillars of containment and deterrence
   Page Ref: 625; 628; 631
   Edition: National

19) What was the significance of the Intermediate-range Nuclear Forces Treaty and the Strategic Arms Reduction Treaty?

   Answer: Answers will vary.
   Page Ref: 636–637
   Edition: National

20) A(n) ________ is a tax added to the cost of imported goods.

   Answer: tariff
   Page Ref: 643
   Edition: National

21) How does the concept of interdependency explain the nature of international economy today?

   Answer: Answers will vary.
   Page Ref: 642
   Edition: National
22) An unfavorable _______ means that a country imports more than it exports.

Answer: balance of trade
Page Ref: 647
Edition: National

23) American dependence on foreign oil was made clear in 1973–1974 when the Arab members of _______ put an embargo on oil shipments to the United States.

Answer: Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC)
Page Ref: 647–648
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Compare and contrast the major issues in foreign policy during the cold war era, and the United States’ policies for dealing with the major issues and strategies of the post–cold war era. What key differences must be acknowledged in developing contemporary foreign policy?

Page Ref: 614–653
Edition: National

2) How is American foreign policy made, and who makes it?

Page Ref: 616–623
Edition: National

3) Describe the role of the State Department in national security policymaking, and how it is organized. Why do some presidents bypass the department and rely on others for advice and action on foreign policy? Is this appropriate? Explain.

Page Ref: 620
Edition: National

4) Describe the containment doctrine pursued by the United States during the Cold War, where it led the U.S., its cost, and its effect on American society. In retrospect, what were the strengths and weaknesses of the policy? Explain.

Page Ref: 625
Edition: National

5) Trace the history of American political philosophy in relation to foreign policy after World War II. What were the characteristics of the Cold War? How did presidential administrations differ in their handling of the Cold War?

Page Ref: 624–630
Edition: National

6) Explain the events leading up to the end of the Cold War. How have relations between the former Soviet Union and the United States changed? Speculate on what new issues will arise on the international scene.

Page Ref: 624–630
Edition: National
7) Describe the rise of détente in the 1970s, and why President Ronald Reagan initiated a different policy when he took office. How do conservatives and liberals differ on interpreting the legacy of Reagan’s policies toward the Soviet Union? What do you think? Explain.

Page Ref: 628–629; 635
Edition: National

8) Describe the U.S. foreign policy in Iraq and Afghanistan. How are these policies similar and different to previous U.S. foreign policies?

Page Ref: 632–633
Edition: National

9) What is the structure of national defense in America in terms of budgets, people, and equipment?

Page Ref: 634–638
Edition: National

10) How does the term interdependency explain the nature of the international economy? What are the major features of American international economic policy?

Page Ref: 642–649
Edition: National

11) Does democracy really have anything to do with international relations and the foreign policy of the United States? In what ways has foreign and defense policymaking affected the scope of the American government?

Page Ref: 650–651
Edition: National
Multiple-Choice Questions

1) Since the 1960s the states have become
   A) more irrelevant to governance in modern society.
   B) revitalized in their institutions, personnel and governance role.
   C) more dependent on the federal government.
   D) less powerful in their policymaking capacity.
   E) more homogeneous in how they govern.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 656
Edition: National

2) Every state is governed by ________, in which the basic rules of the political game for that particular state are established.
   A) the state government clause in the United States Constitution
   B) a collection of state statutes
   C) a state constitution
   D) an official state guidebook
   E) the laws of the United States Congress

Answer: C
Page Ref: 657
Edition: National

3) Most states
   A) do not have their own constitutions.
   B) have constitutions more detailed and longer than the United States Constitution.
   C) have constitutions less detailed and shorter than the United States Constitution.
   D) have unwritten constitutions rather than written constitutions.
   E) have constitutions with about the same level of detail as the United States Constitution.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 657
Edition: National
4) Which of the following statements about state constitutions is FALSE?
   A) A state constitution spells out basic rules of the political game for that particular state.
   B) State constitutions are subordinate to the United States Constitution.
   C) State constitutions take precedence over state laws.
   D) State constitutions are typically much shorter than the United States Constitution.
   E) All fifty states have constitutions.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 657-658
   Edition: National

5) All state constitutions
   A) have provisions for a bicameral legislature.
   B) require one legislative session per year.
   C) require a balanced budget.
   D) have a bill of rights.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 657
   Edition: National

6) Historically, state elections have been decided by
   A) national political and economic forces.
   B) vigorous campaigning on the part of candidates.
   C) strong political parties.
   D) contributions of Political Action Committees.
   E) state political bosses.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 659
   Edition: National
7) Most states allow for amending their constitutions, and this is usually accomplished through
A) a simple majority vote of the legislature followed by the governor’s signature.
B) a two-thirds vote of the legislature followed by the governor’s signature.
C) a two-thirds vote of the legislature followed by a simple majority vote of state voters in the next election.
D) a two-thirds vote of the legislature followed by ratification by three-fourths of the counties.
E) a simple majority vote of the legislation followed by a simple majority vote of the state voters in the next election.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 659
Edition: National

8) The _______ is the most common method of amending a state constitution.
A) legislative proposal
B) constitutional convention
C) popular initiative
D) simple statute
E) United States Congress

Answer: A
Page Ref: 659
Edition: National

9) Which of the following is NOT one of the methods used by states to amend their constitutions?
A) legislative proposal
B) constitutional convention
C) popular initiative
D) simple statute
E) none of the above

Answer: D
Page Ref: 659
Edition: National
10) The most common method used to amend state constitutions is through
   A) legislative proposal.
   B) constitutional convention.
   C) popular initiative.
   D) judicial review.
   E) executive order of the governor.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 659
Edition: National

11) One of the consequences of the greater visibility of state elections is that
   A) state administration has become more efficient.
   B) state policies have become more progressive.
   C) state officials have become more representative.
   D) media coverage of state politics has increased.
   E) citizens know more about state politics.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 659
Edition: National

12) Gubernatorial elections have become more "presidentialized" in that they
   A) have become more policy-oriented.
   B) have come to rely on political party organizations more.
   C) have become more personality-focused.
   D) receive greater media coverage
   E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 659–660
Edition: National

13) Since the 1960s, most states have
   A) shifted gubernatorial elections to off–Presidential years.
   B) reduced the number of elected state executives.
   C) changed the governor’s term of office to four years.
   D) both A and C
   E) both B and C

Answer: D

Page Ref: 659–660
Edition: National
14) Gubernatorial elections tend to be decided based on
   A) presidential coattails.
   B) campaign spending.
   C) what voters think about the candidates.
   D) "hot-button" issues such as abortion.
   E) the national economy.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 660
   Edition: National

15) One result of the personalization of gubernatorial elections has been
   A) more of an emphasis on policy positions.
   B) the adoption of sunset legislation.
   C) weakening of state political parties.
   D) divided government.
   E) less media coverage.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 660
   Edition: National

16) State legislative races are
   A) more personalized than gubernatorial races.
   B) less personalized than gubernatorial races.
   C) more personalized than congressional races.
   D) not personalized at all.
   E) more personalized than presidential elections.

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 661
   Edition: National

17) In the 1960s, a succession of United States Supreme Court decisions required that state legislative districts be redrawn to
   A) follow county lines.
   B) ensure the election of more women to the legislature.
   C) give rural areas more clout.
   D) adhere to the principle of "one man, one vote."
   E) give minority parties more opportunity.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 661
   Edition: National
18) Prior to the Supreme Court’s rulings in the 1960s to end the malapportionment, ________ areas were overrepresented in many state legislatures.

A) urban  
B) suburban  
C) rural  
D) Republican  
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 661
Edition: National

19) Until the mid-1960s, the one group that was over-represented in state legislatures was

A) the rural population.  
B) women.  
C) urban dwellers.  
D) minorities.  
E) Southerners.

Answer: A

Page Ref: 661
Edition: National

20) Increasingly close partisan divisions in state legislatures

A) are relatively new as of the 1990s.  
B) are evident only in the South.  
C) have occurred in both the North and South.  
D) are relatively new as of the 1980s.  
E) are evident only in the North.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 662
Edition: National
21) Divided government exists when
   A) the major parties do not control both chambers of the state legislature and a majority of state elected officials.
   B) a single party does not control both chambers of the state legislature.
   C) a single party does not control both chambers of the state legislature and a majority of state elected offices.
   D) a single party does not control both chambers of the state legislature and the governor's office.
   E) when the Republicans and the Democrats hold an equal number of congressional seats.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 662
   Edition: National

22) Over a ten-year period, about _______ of state legislative seats turned over.
   A) 10 percent
   B) 30 percent
   C) 50 percent
   D) 75 percent
   E) 90 percent

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 662
   Edition: National

23) Voters in many states have recently approved _______ to guarantee legislative turnover.
   A) term limits
   B) reapportionment
   C) malapportionment
   D) shorter terms of office for state legislative seats
   E) recall elections

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 662; 664
   Edition: National
24) The ten-year turnover of state legislative seats
   A) occurs at a very slow rate.
   B) averages over 90 percent.
   C) results in a significant change in the people holding office.
   D) is costly to taxpayers, but results in nicely furnished capitols.
   E) results in a completely new legislature every ten years.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 662
   Edition: National

25) Which of these is INCORRECT?
   A) The Nebraska legislature only has one house.
   B) Although it is the second largest state, the Texas legislature is only scheduled to meet every other year.
   C) All states now limit the terms of their legislators.
   D) Most state legislatures have become much more professionalized over the past thirty years.
   E) Many state legislators are part-timers who have other careers.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 662; 664
   Edition: National

26) Since 1975, women have
   A) had numerous successes in running for governor.
   B) had limited success in running for governor.
   C) been less successful than African Americans in running for governor.
   D) had little interest in running for governor.
   E) been less successful than Hispanic Americans in running for governor.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 664
   Edition: National
27) The states most likely to send women to the United States Senate are those which
   A) have elected women as governors.
   B) have had high rates of women in the state legislature.
   C) have had a strong tradition of women’s involvement in school politics.
   D) have been in the Midwest.
   E) have a high proportion of women in the workforce.
   Answer: B

28) Modernization in state governments has resulted in
   A) weaker governors.
   B) resolving the fragmentation of executive power.
   C) enhanced powers for governors.
   D) fewer incumbent governors winning reelection.
   E) greatly increasing the number of independently elected officials and independent boards and commissions.
   Answer: C

29) The executive powers of governors
   A) have decreased in modern times.
   B) are very strong in almost all states.
   C) vary from state to state.
   D) usually do not include a veto power.
   E) all of the above
   Answer: C

30) Approximately how many states have governors with strong executive powers?
   A) 7  B) 14  C) 21  D) 28  E) 33
   Answer: A
31) Most governors have ______ authority, allowing them to reject certain parts of legislation approved by the state legislature.
   A) popular initiative
   B) Missouri Plan
   C) line-item veto
   D) legislative turnover
   E) executive clemency

   Answer: C
Page Ref: 666
Edition: National

32) About how many gubernatorial vetoes are overridden by state legislatures?
   A) 10 percent
   B) 20 percent
   C) 30 percent
   D) 15 percent
   E) 40 percent

   Answer: A
Page Ref: 666
Edition: National

33) One power most governors have, but that the president does not, is the
   A) ability to initiate legislation.
   B) responsibility for preparing the budget.
   C) symbolic head of state.
   D) line-item veto.
   E) executive clemency.

   Answer: D
Page Ref: 666
Edition: National

34) Which of the following does NOT serve to limit the power of a governor?
   A) civil service employment policies in many states
   B) the line-item veto
   C) other elected executive branch officials, such as the attorney general
   D) state constitutional separation of powers
   E) none of the above

   Answer: B
Page Ref: 666–668
Edition: National
35) Which of the following powers is NOT given to most state governors?

A) line-item veto
B) overseeing the preparation of the state budget
C) holding sole authority in the state's executive branch
D) calling the legislature into special session
E) informal ceremonial authority similar to the president being "Head of State"

Answer: C

Page Ref: 666-668
Edition: National

36) The fact that most states have a number of elected state executives in addition to the governor

A) gives the governor greater authority.
B) reduces the authority of the governor.
C) reduces the authority of the legislature.
D) reduces the democratic accountability of the executive branch of state government.
E) has no effect on the authority of the governor.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 668-669
Edition: National

37) A governor's control over policy administration is somewhat diminished because

A) new state constitutions tend to limit the powers of the governor.
B) a large number of other executive branch officials are also elected in most states.
C) of the weakness of state political party structures.
D) state legislatures have taken over many traditional executive duties.
E) all of the above

Answer: B

Page Ref: 668-669
Edition: National

38) The governor and lieutenant governor are elected in separate elections and can be of different parties

A) in all fifty states.
B) in about half the states.
C) in none of the states.
D) in eight states.
E) in about one-third of the states.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 669
Edition: National
39) The lieutenant governor

A) is appointed by the governor in 43 states.
B) runs separately from the governor in seven states.
C) does not exist in seven states.
D) runs with the governor as a team in 42 states.
E) runs with the governor as a team in eight states.

Answer: C

Page Ref: 669
Edition: National

40) Most lieutenant governors

A) have substantial authority in the budgetary process.
B) are not in line for succession to the governor.
C) preside over the state house chamber.
D) have few formal duties.
E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 669
Edition: National

41) Which of the following statements about executive offices other than the governor is FALSE?

A) In some states, it is possible for the two top executives to be members of different political parties.
B) Most lieutenant governors have few formal duties.
C) Eight states don’t have a lieutenant governor.
D) Re-organization of state executive branches has resulted in cost-savings and efficiency.
E) One governor was afraid to leave his state because of the lieutenant governor.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 668–669
Edition: National

42) Most modern state legislators are

A) inexperienced.
B) very effective and professional.
C) corrupt.
D) paid on a part-time basis.
E) millionaires.

Answer: B

Page Ref: 670
Edition: National
43) Except for Nebraska, each state has a
   A) governor and lieutenant governor.
   B) unicameral legislature.
   C) bicameral legislature.
   D) supreme court.
   E) plural executive.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 670
   Edition: National

44) A bicameral legislature is one that
   A) meets every two years.
   B) holds two sessions a year.
   C) has only one house.
   D) has two houses.
   E) is evenly divided between Democrats and Republicans by law.
   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 670
   Edition: National

45) Most states provide for legislative sessions every
   A) year.
   B) two years.
   C) three years.
   D) four years.
   E) week except holidays.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 670
   Edition: National

46) In the states, making laws is the legal function of
   A) state legislatures.
   B) governors.
   C) state courts.
   D) state agencies.
   E) direct democracy.
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 670
   Edition: National

854
47) Most state legislators
   A) mirror the characteristics of their constituents.
   B) have professional jobs.
   C) are women.
   D) lack a college education.
   E) are from rural areas.
   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 670
   Edition: National

48) Reforms of state legislatures oriented toward enhancing their "legislative professionalism" include all of the following EXCEPT
   A) lengthening legislative sessions.
   B) increasing the number of legislative committees.
   C) increasing the salary of state legislators.
   D) increasing the staff available to state legislators.
   E) none of the above
   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 670-671
   Edition: National

49) A recent policy change in some states that actually "deprofessionalizes" legislature is
   A) sunset legislation.
   B) line-item veto.
   C) term limits.
   D) Dillon's rule.
   E) Missouri Plan.
   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 671
   Edition: National
50) The judicial system in most states is set up
   A) as the lowest level of the federal court system, with the states having little say over
   structure or operations.
   B) in a haphazard fashion, with trial courts and appellate courts differing county by county,
   municipality by municipality.
   C) without an appellate level; any appeals of state trial court decisions go directly to the
   United States Supreme Court.
   D) as a hierarchical system under state control, similar in its organization to the federal
   court system.
   E) as a merit system.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 672
Edition: National

51) Compared to the federal district courts, state courts, on average, hear ________ trials and
   appeals.
   A) far fewer
   B) somewhat fewer
   C) somewhat more
   D) far more
   E) about the same number of

Answer: D
Page Ref: 672
Edition: National

52) The judicial branch in most states operates on a ________ system.
   A) single-level
   B) two-tier
   C) three-tier
   D) four-tier
   E) circular

Answer: C
Page Ref: 672
Edition: National
53) In the state judicial system, it is at the _______ level that the facts are considered before a single judge and a jury.
   A) federal district court
   B) trial court
   C) appellate court
   D) court of last resort
   E) none of the above

Answer: B
Page Ref: 672
Edition: National

54) All states have a _______, usually called the supreme court, that is the final appellate level in a state.
   A) court of last resort
   B) trial court
   C) intermediate court of appeals
   D) judicial review
   E) criminal court

Answer: A
Page Ref: 672-673
Edition: National

55) Which of the following statements about the state court of last resort is FALSE?
   A) State courts of last resort are the final appellate level in a state.
   B) State courts of last resort only hear criminal cases.
   C) State courts of last resort are headed by a chief justice.
   D) State courts of last resort may practice judicial review.
   E) They have recently exhibited a new wave of liberal activism.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 672-673
Edition: National
56) State courts of appeals
   A) are organized on a local basis.
   B) hear only the facts of a case.
   C) decide cases using a panel of three or more judges.
   D) have seen their case load decrease in recent years.
   E) use juries in 42 states.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 673
Edition: National

57) The _______ is a system of appointing judges based on merit, with the governor given a list of qualified persons from the state bar or a committee of jurists and other officials from whom to make a selection, and the appointment subject to the state's voters deciding on retaining the judge.
   A) judicial review
   B) judicial restraint
   C) Merit Plan
   D) sunset law
   E) Missouri Plan

Answer: C
Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

58) Only _______ state(s) does not have at least the initiative, referendum, OR recall available.
   A) one    B) ten    C) twenty    D) fifteen    E) five

Answer: A
Page Ref: 675–677
Edition: National

59) The Merit Plan
   A) attempts to make appointments to the state courts based upon merit.
   B) involves electing judges on a partisan basis.
   C) does not involve an election for judges.
   D) calls for appointing judges to serve for life.
   E) establishes an electoral college of legislatively appointed officials who select the governor.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 674
Edition: National
60) Most state judges
   A) are appointed by the governor.
   B) are elected by the voters.
   C) serve for life.
   D) are not reelected.
   E) are appointed by the legislature.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

61) The form of direct democracy that allows the public to directly adopt a policy without any involvement of the state legislature is
   A) recall.
   B) referendum.
   C) initiative.
   D) direct primary.
   E) none of the above

Answer: C
Page Ref: 675
Edition: National

62) The initiative is undemocratic to the extent that it
   A) puts power in the hands of citizens.
   B) contains ambiguous language.
   C) may be used to restrict tax increases.
   D) is often the tool of wealthy groups and individuals.
   E) contains specific language.

Answer: D
Page Ref: 675
Edition: National

63) Issues dealing with _______ are often proposed by referenda.
   A) corrupt public officials
   B) special district creation
   C) school bonds
   D) racial equality
   E) the tax system

Answer: C
Page Ref: 676
Edition: National
64) Under state constitutions, local governments are considered ______ the state government.
   A) subdivisions of
   B) coequal with
   C) superior to
   D) totally separate from
   E) interchangeable with

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 678
Edition: National

65) County government usually consists of an elected county ______ that makes policy and a collection of "row officers" who run county services.
   A) congress
   B) board of education
   C) directorate
   D) commission
   E) mayor

   Answer: D

Page Ref: 679
Edition: National

66) Which of the following is NOT one of the "row officers" who usually run county services?
   A) commissioner
   B) sheriff
   C) clerk
   D) assessor
   E) prosecutor

   Answer: A

Page Ref: 679
Edition: National
67) _______ governments are found in only twenty states, with those in New England having the most power.
   A) Municipal
   B) Township
   C) County
   D) Special district
   E) Borough

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 679-680
   Edition: National

68) Which of the following do rural residents rely on most for services?
   A) state governments
   B) county governments
   C) the Farm Bureau
   D) special districts
   E) agricultural cooperatives

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 679
   Edition: National

69) The administrative arm of state government in local areas is
   A) special districts.
   B) municipalities.
   C) county governments.
   D) districts and wards.
   E) the state legislator.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 679
   Edition: National

70) Which of the following statements about townships is FALSE?
   A) Almost every state has township governments.
   B) Most township governments have limited powers.
   C) In New England, townships function much like city governments.
   D) Most townships lack power to pass local ordinances.
   E) They are extensions of state and county government.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 679-680
   Edition: National
71) _______ government normally provides police and fire protection, street maintenance, solid waste collection, water and sewage works, and similar services.

   A) National  
   B) State  
   C) Municipal  
   D) School district  
   E) County

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 680*  
*Edition: National*

72) The level of government that typically provides most of the police and fire protection is

   A) state government.  
   B) counties.  
   C) municipalities.  
   D) special districts.  
   E) township.

Answer: C  
*Page Ref: 680*  
*Edition: National*

73) Originally, most local communities in the United States operated under a

   A) town meeting system.  
   B) mayor–council government.  
   C) council–manager government.  
   D) commission government.  
   E) mayor–only system.

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 680*  
*Edition: National*

74) Which of the following types of municipal government is not in common use today?

   A) town meeting government  
   B) mayor–council government  
   C) council–manager government  
   D) commission government  
   E) weak–mayor government

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 680*  
*Edition: National*
75) Under the _______ system of municipal government, the city government bureaucracy is directed by an appointed administrator.

   A) mayor–council with a strong mayor
   B) mayor–council with a weak mayor
   C) council–manager
   D) commission
   E) command

Answer: C

Page Ref: 681
Edition: National

76) In the _______ government, used in only a few cities, voters elect a panel of officials who serve both as legislators and as executives of a functional area of city government, such as public safety.

   A) strong mayor, mayor–council
   B) weak mayor, mayor–council
   C) council–manager
   D) commissioner
   E) mayor–manager

Answer: D

Page Ref: 681-682
Edition: National

77) Most city council members and mayors are

   A) appointed by the governor.
   B) appointed by city managers.
   C) elected on partisan ballots.
   D) elected on non–partisan ballots.
   E) none of the above

Answer: D

Page Ref: 681
Edition: National
78) At-large elections for the city council were begun

A) to reform municipal government and reduce the power of political machine bosses.
B) to give more power to old-time political machine bosses.
C) as a way to increase minority group representation on city councils.
D) to simplify the printing of election ballots throughout the city.
E) to consolidate elections into one election to cut election costs.

Answer: A
Page Ref: 682
Edition: National

79) Most mayor–council cities

A) follow the strong mayor form.
B) follow the weak mayor form.
C) have a city manager to carry out policy.
D) have over 500,000 residents.
E) use the commission system.

Answer: B
Page Ref: 680–681
Edition: National

80) In a council–manager form of government, the implementation and administration of policy is placed in the hands of

A) the city council itself.
B) a mayor.
C) a city manager.
D) a county manager.
E) the chief administrative officer.

Answer: C
Page Ref: 681
Edition: National
81) The type of city government that combines legislative and executive function in the same body is the
   A) mayor–council government.
   B) council–manager government.
   C) commission government.
   D) district–ward government.
   E) consolidated municipality.

   Answer: C
   Page Ref: 681
   Edition: National

82) The type of municipal government used least in the United States is the
   A) mayor–council government with weak mayor.
   B) mayor–council government with strong mayor.
   C) council–manager government.
   D) commission government.
   E) mayor–manager–government.

   Answer: D
   Page Ref: 681
   Edition: National

83) A majority of cities elect council members
   A) at large.
   B) in partisan elections.
   C) according to districts or wards.
   D) on the basis of proportional representation.
   E) by multiple–member districts.

   Answer: A
   Page Ref: 682
   Edition: National

84) A consequence of at–large city council elections is that
   A) they tend to create public policies that benefit individual neighborhoods.
   B) minority group members have had difficulty gaining election to city council.
   C) elections have become much less competitive.
   D) they have given greater power to city bosses.
   E) all of the above

   Answer: B
   Page Ref: 682
   Edition: National
85) Most school systems are run
A) by city government.
B) as independent local governments.
C) by the state governments.
D) by the national government.
E) by county government.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 682-683
Edition: National

86) Which of the following does state government generally NOT do in regard to public education in the 1990s?
A) mandate certain programs
B) provide a certain amount of state funding
C) adopt general standards for educational policy and school buildings
D) build and operate the schools
E) none of the above
Answer: D
Page Ref: 682-683
Edition: National

87) Independent school districts are responsible for each of the following EXCEPT
A) electing a board of education.
B) picking administrators and teachers.
C) adopting and funding an education budget.
D) adopting general standards for education policy and school buildings.
E) designing and running education programs.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 682-683
Edition: National

88) Local revenue sources for schools are heavily dependent upon the ________ tax.
A) federal income
B) state income
C) local property
D) state and/or local sales
E) lottery revenue
Answer: C
Page Ref: 682-683
Edition: National
89) Which of the following is the most widely expressed criticism of paying for public schools primarily through the local property taxes?

A) It makes local control over schools more difficult.
B) It means that wealthier school districts can provide more educational money than poorer districts.
C) The elderly and those without children are forced to pay for public education.
D) Property values rise and fall so much that local school boards have no idea how much money they will have to spend.
E) Higher property taxes discourage local development.

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 682–683  
*Edition: National

90) ________ represent the fastest growing form of subnational government during the past decade.

A) Municipal governments  
B) Special districts  
C) County governments  
D) School districts  
E) State governments

Answer: B  
*Page Ref: 683  
*Edition: National

91) Which of the following is normally classified as a special district?

A) park  
B) county  
C) municipal  
D) township  
E) city borough

Answer: A  
*Page Ref: 683  
*Edition: National
92) The fastest growing form of local government in the United States is
   A) county.
   B) municipality.
   C) special district.
   D) school districts.
   E) townships.
Answer: C
Page Ref: 683
Edition: National

93) Which of the following types of governments are the most numerous in the United States?
   A) counties
   B) municipalities
   C) townships
   D) special districts
   E) school districts
Answer: D
Page Ref: 683
Edition: National

94) Local revenue sources for schools are disproportionally based upon the
   A) income tax.
   B) property tax.
   C) sales tax.
   D) state lotteries.
   E) local business tax.
Answer: B
Page Ref: 683
Edition: National

95) Special districts in the United States are characterized by their
   A) uniformity.
   B) scarcity.
   C) partisanship.
   D) organizational diversity.
   E) inflexibility.
Answer: D
Page Ref: 683
Edition: National
96) All of the following are limits on local government EXCEPT

A) fragmentation of local government power.
B) constitutional limitations.
C) high levels of citizen involvement.
D) competition with other local governments.
E) none of the above

Answer: C

Page Ref: 683-686
Edition: National

97) Particularly in rural areas, _______ government is the administrative arm of most state governments, keeping records of births, deaths, and marriages, conducting a system of justice and law enforcement, maintaining roads and bridges, and providing other services.

A) regional
B) county
C) municipal
D) township
E) commission

Answer: B

Page Ref: 679
Edition: National

98) Councils of Governments have been formed to

A) reform state and local campaign practices.
B) improve the public image of local governments.
C) lobby state legislatures on behalf of localities.
D) improve cooperation between local governments.
E) streamline local government bureaucracy.

Answer: D

Page Ref: 686
Edition: National
99) Which of these is not a source of state revenue?
   A) property taxes
   B) the federal government
   C) state insurance programs
   D) charges for services
   E) fuel taxes
   Answer: A
   
100) Which of the following program areas would tend to receive the smallest percentage of state money in most states?
   A) education
   B) prisons
   C) natural resources
   D) transportation
   E) health care
   Answer: C

101) States receive the largest portion of revenue from
   A) lotteries.
   B) federal government.
   C) user fees.
   D) taxes.
   E) business property taxes.
   Answer: D

102) Most local government moneys are allocated to
   A) social services.
   B) public safety.
   C) education.
   D) transportation.
   E) local government administrative expenses.
   Answer: C
103) Which of the following is NOT one of the largest sources of local government revenues?

A) property tax and other taxes  
B) charges on users of services  
C) intergovernmental funds  
D) lotteries  
E) income tax

Answer: D

Page Ref: 688  
Edition: National

True/False Questions

1) Between 1898 and 1998, approximately 80 percent of initiative proposals for constitutional amendments were approved by state voters.

Answer: FALSE  
Page Ref: 659  
Edition: National

2) One result of the presidentialization of gubernatorial elections is that gubernatorial election outcomes today are far less predictable and more likely to lead to divided government.

Answer: TRUE  
Page Ref: 660  
Edition: National

3) In recent years, partisanship has increased in state legislatures.

Answer: TRUE  
Page Ref: 662  
Edition: National

4) Almost one-fourth of state legislators are women.

Answer: TRUE  
Page Ref: 665  
Edition: National

5) Voters in a growing number of states are placing term limits on their state officials.

Answer: TRUE  
Page Ref: 671  
Edition: National

6) The number of African Americans being elected to state legislatures increased until the 1980s, at which point no further gains have been made.

Answer: FALSE  
Page Ref: 665  
Edition: National
7) Most states allow the governor to veto or amend portions of legislation.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 666
Edition: National

8) To enhance their influence, governors supplement their formal institutional powers with more "personal powers."

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 667
Edition: National

9) Most top-level state policymakers are elected to office.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 669
Edition: National

10) Every state holds elections for governor, lieutenant governor, secretary of state, attorney general, and state treasurer, and many states have additional elected executive officials.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 669
Edition: National

11) Every state has undertaken a re-organization of the executive branch in the last decade, and most have benefited from enhanced efficiency and effectiveness.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 666–667
Edition: National

12) Not all state legislatures are full-time bodies.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 670
Edition: National

13) Recent data show that state courts have 100 times the trials and hear 50 times more appeals than federal courts.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 672
Edition: National

14) State trial court decisions can only be appealed to the federal courts.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 673
Edition: National
15) State judges are typically elected, some in partisan elections, some in nonpartisan elections.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

16) Not all states use elections to choose judges.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

17) In many states, popular elections are used to choose judges, justices, and the chief justice.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

18) The Merit Plan would require all fifty states to hold constitutional conventions in order to standardize the government systems of every state.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

19) Popular initiatives can be used for adopting legislation in about forty states.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 675
Edition: National

20) The recall is different from the initiative and the referendum in that it is used to make decisions about public officials rather than public policy.

Answer: TRUE
Page Ref: 675–676
Edition: National

21) Every United States citizen lives within the jurisdiction of one national government, one state government, and two local governments.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 678
Edition: National

22) The council-manager form of municipal government places the administration of the city in the hands of a city manager elected by the voters.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 681
Edition: National
23) A school district is a part of a county, township, or municipal government, and gets its funding from that government source.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 682–683
Edition: National

24) School districts have been the fastest-growing form of local democracy during the past two decades.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 682–683
Edition: National

25) All special district governments are run by commissions that are appointed by the governor.

Answer: FALSE
Page Ref: 683
Edition: National

Short Answer Questions

1) The most common method used by states to amend their constitutions is through the ________.

Answer: legislative proposal
Page Ref: 659
Edition: National

2) Compare and contrast the different methods that can be used to amend state constitutions.

Answer: Most common method is by a two-step process by which the legislature "proposes" an amendment and a majority vote in the next general election "ratifies" it. Voters can also propose through the use of the initiative and state constitutions can also be amended through a constitutional convention.
Page Ref: 659
Edition: National

3) The ________ of gubernatorial elections refers to how they have come to resemble the personality-focused mega-events that occur in the presidential election campaigns.

Answer: presidentialization
Page Ref: 660
Edition: National

4) Briefly discuss the advantages and disadvantages of turnover in state legislatures.

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 662
Edition: National
5) _______ exists when a single party does not control both chambers of the state legislature and the governor’s office.

Answer: Divided government
Page Ref: 662
Edition: National

6) In recent years voters have attempted to increase turnover rates in state legislatures by passing ________.

Answer: term limits
Page Ref: 662
Edition: National

7) Most state governors have a(n) ________, meaning that they can reject portions of a bill passed by the legislature without rejecting the entire bill.

Answer: line-item veto
Page Ref: 666
Edition: National

8) What is meant by the line-item veto, and why is it important?

Answer: the power possessed by 42 state governors to veto only certain parts of a bill while allowing the rest of it to pass into law; gives some power to governors so they aren’t forced to sign a popular bill, but is also useful on appropriations bills, where governors might want to cut out specific items they view as excessive
Page Ref: 666
Edition: National

9) Except for Nebraska, all states have a(n) ________ legislature.

Answer: bicameral
Page Ref: 670
Edition: National

10) ________, known by a variety of labels in different states, are the lowest level state courts, where a single judge presides and citizens are called upon to serve as jurors and members of grand jury panels.

Answer: Trial courts
Page Ref: 672
Edition: National

11) All states have a(n) ________, usually called the supreme court, that is the final appellate level in a state.

Answer: court of last resort
Page Ref: 672–673
Edition: National
12) According to the ________, now being used by many states, appointments to the courts are to be based upon merit, with the governor provided a list of recommendations by the state bar or a blue ribbon panel, and the judge serving until voters are given a chance to decide whether the judge should retain the office.

Answer: Merit Plan

Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

13) Explain the Merit Plan for choosing a state's judges.

Answer: method for selecting state judges in which governors appoint persons based on the recommendations of a committee; after serving a short term, the judge then often faces a retention election

Page Ref: 674
Edition: National

14) A method of policymaking that is unique in the United States to subnational governments, and which allows citizens to have more immediate input into policy choices is ________. 

Answer: direct democracy

Page Ref: 675
Edition: National

15) The ________ is the purest form of direct democracy. 

Answer: initiative

Page Ref: 675
Edition: National

16) Constitutional amendments and legislation passed through the ________ are often poorly drafted and may contain ambiguous or contradictory provisions.

Answer: initiative

Page Ref: 675
Edition: National

17) The ________ for ratifying state constitutions is available in most states, while the ________ is available in about half the states, and the ________ is available in even fewer states.

Answer: referendum; initiative; recall

Page Ref: 675-677
Edition: National

18) The ________ is different than the initiative or referendum because it is about elected officials rather than public policy.

Answer: recall

Page Ref: 677
Edition: National
19) According to _______, local governments have only those powers that are explicitly given to them by the states.

Answer: Dillon’s Rule
Page Ref: 678
Edition: National

20) Briefly explain the nature of the relationship between local governments and state governments. What is the legal basis for this relationship?

Answer: Answers will vary.
Page Ref: 689–691
Edition: National

21) How are county governments organized, and what are their main purpose?

Answer: The largest geographic unit of government at the local level, county governments are administrative arms of state government, typically responsible for keeping records of births, deaths, and marriages; establishing a system of justice and law enforcement; maintaining roads and bridges; collecting taxes; conducting voter registration and elections and providing for public welfare and education.
Page Ref: 679
Edition: National

22) How is the mayor–council form of municipal government organized?

Answer: Citizens elect a major and a city council; in "strong mayor" cities, the city council makes public policy and the mayor and city bureaucrats who report to the mayor implement the policy; in "weak mayor" cities, the council directs the actions of the city bureaucracies and the mayor serves as the ceremonial head of city government.
Page Ref: 680–681
Edition: National

23) What are the functions of special districts? Give an example.
Page Ref: 683
Edition: National

24) Local governments spend more money on ________ than on any other item in their state budget.

Answer: education
Page Ref: 688
Edition: National

Essay Questions

1) Describe the diversity of state and local governments in the United States, with respect to government structure, spending and taxing policies, and representation. Does this diversity make state and local government in the United States more democratic? Why or why not?
Page Ref: all
Edition: National

877
2) Evaluate to what extent state and local governments are democratic.

Page Ref: 689-691
Edition: National

3) Discuss the chapter’s themes of revitalization and diversity with respect to state governors, the legislature, the courts, and local government. Does this revitalization and diversity enhance the democracy of subnational governments?

Page Ref: all
Edition: National

4) What are the primary characteristics of state constitutions? How are they different and similar to the United States Constitution?

Page Ref: 657-659
Edition: National

5) Briefly describe the methods by which states can amend their constitutions. What is the most typical method used? In general, is the amending process too cumbersome, too easy, or about right? Explain.

Page Ref: 659
Edition: National

6) Explain in what ways have legislative and gubernatorial elections become similar to congressional and presidential elections? What are the consequences of these changes?

Page Ref: 659-665
Edition: National

7) Describe patterns of partisan competition, legislative turnover, and the adoption of term limits in the states. How are these developments associated with divided government?

Page Ref: 662-664
Edition: National

8) Describe what is meant by professionalism of state legislatures, and the trends in professionalism on the past several decades. What are the consequences of these changes?

Page Ref: 662; 664
Edition: National

9) Describe the basic organization of state court systems. How are state judges chosen? What is the Merit Plan, and what method does it use to select state judges? Do you approve of the Missouri Plan? Explain.

Page Ref: 672-674
Edition: National

10) Discuss how the state court system is similar to, and different from, the federal court system.

Page Ref: 672-674
Edition: National
11) Explain what is meant by "direct democracy." Has the use of direct democracy made state politics more democratic?
   Page Ref: 675
   Edition: National

12) What role do school districts, counties, townships, and special districts play in local governing? Do these add unnecessary layers to government or make for greater democratic control of government? Why, or why not?
   Page Ref: 679–683
   Edition: National

13) List and describe the different types of municipal governments. Which seems the most democratic? The most effective? Preferable? Explain.
   Page Ref: 680–682
   Edition: National

14) Discuss the factors that limit the nature of local government.
   Page Ref: 683–686
   Edition: National

15) Where do states and local governments get most of their revenue? What programs receive most state government money? What programs receive most local government money? Have these patterns changed much over the past several decades?
   Page Ref: 686–689
   Edition: National

16) How does the scope of local government compare to the scope of the federal government? Is local government more democratic than federal government? Why or why not?
   Page Ref: 689–691
   Edition: National